# XS/SC26 and SC10-2 Safety Controllers Product Manual

Original Instructions
p/n: 174868 Rev. ZAA
07-Aug-25
© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved. www.bannerengineering.com

ПРОМЭЛЕКТРОНИКА/ sales@prom-elec.com

# Contents


## Chapter 1 About This Document ..... 8
1.1 Important... Read This Before Proceeding! ..... 8
1.2 Use of Warnings and Cautions ..... 8
1.3 EU/UK Declaration of Conformity (DoC) ..... 9

## Chapter 2 Product Description ..... 10
2.1 Terms Used in this Manual ..... 10
2.2 Software ..... 10
2.3 USB Connections ..... 11
2.4 Ethernet Connections ..... 11
2.5 Internal Logic ..... 11
2.6 Password (Ethernet) or PIN (USB) ..... 12
2.7 SC-XM2/3 Drive and SC-XMP2 Programming Tool ..... 12

## Chapter 3 XS/SC26 Overview ..... 13
3.1 XS/SC26 Models ..... 13
3.2 XS/SC26 Features and Indicators ..... 14
3.3 Using XS/SC26 Safety Controllers with Different FIDs ..... 14
3.4 Input and Output Connections ..... 15
3.4.1 XS/SC26 Safety and Non-Safety Input Devices ..... 15
3.4.2 XS/SC26 Safety Outputs ..... 16
3.5 XS/SC26 Automatic Terminal Optimization (ATO) Feature ..... 17

## Chapter 4 SC10-2 Overview ..... 20
4.1 SC10-2 Models ..... 20
4.2 SC10-2 Features and Indicators ..... 20
4.3 Using SC10-2 Safety Controllers with Different FIDs ..... 21
3.4 Input and Output Connections ..... 15
4.4.1 SC10-2 Safety and Non-Safety Input Devices ..... 22
4.4.2 SC10-2 Safety Relay Outputs ..... 22
4.4.3 SC10-2 Status Outputs and Virtual Status Outputs ..... 22
4.5 SC10-2 Automatic Terminal Optimization (ATO) Feature with External Terminal Blocks (ETB) ..... 23

## Chapter 5 Specifications and Requirements ..... 24
5.1 XS/SC26 Specifications ..... 24
5.1.1 Base Controller and Expansion Modules ..... 24
5.1.2 XS26-2, SC26-2, and XS26-ISD Base Safety Controller Modules ..... 24
5.1.3 XS2so and XS4so Solid-State Safety Output Modules ..... 25
5.1.4 XS8si and XS16si Safety Input Modules ..... 26
5.1.5 XS1ro and XS2ro Safety Relay Modules ..... 26
5.1.6 XSeCAT EtherCAT Communications Gateway Module ..... 27
5.2 SC10-2 Specifications ..... 27
5.3 Dimensions ..... 30
5.4 PC Requirements ..... 31

## Chapter 6 System Installation ..... 32
6.1 Installing the Software ..... 32
6.2 Installing the Safety Controller ..... 32
6.2.1 Mounting Instructions ..... 32
6.3 Electrical Installation ..... 33

## Chapter 7 Installation Considerations ..... 34
7.1 Appropriate Application ..... 34
7.2 XS/SC26 Applications ..... 34
7.3 SC10-2 Applications ..... 35
7.4 Safety Input Devices ..... 36
7.4.1 Safety Circuit Integrity and ISO 13849-1 Safety Circuit Principles ..... 36
7.4.2 Safety Input Device Properties ..... 38
7.5 Safety Input Device Options ..... 40
7.5.1 Safety Circuit Integrity Levels ..... 41
7.5.2  Emergency Stop Push Buttons ..... 41


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved. www.bannerengineering.com

7.5.3  Rope (Cable) Pull ..... 42
7.5.4  Enabling Device ..... 43
7.5.5  Protective (Safety) Stop ..... 43
7.5.6  Interlocked Guard or Gate ..... 43
7.5.7  Optical Sensor ..... 44
7.5.8  Two-Hand Control ..... 44
7.5.9  Safety Mat ..... 47
7.5.10  Muting Sensor ..... 50
7.5.11  Bypass Switch ..... 51
7.5.12  Adjustable Valve Monitoring (AVM) Function ..... 52
7.5.13  ISD Inputs ..... 53
7.5.14  Cycle Initiation for Press Control Function Block ..... 59
7.5.15  Press Control Sequential Stop (SQS) Function ..... 59
7.5.16  Press Control Mute Sensor ..... 60
7.5.17  Foot Switch ..... 61
7.6 Non-Safety Input Devices ..... 62
7.6.1 Manual Reset Input ..... 63
7.7 Virtual Non-Safety Input Devices ..... 65
7.7.1 Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence ..... 65
7.7.2 **Virtual Cancel OFF-Delay Timing** ..... 68
7.7.3 Virtual ON/OFF and Mute Enable ..... 68
7.8 Safety Outputs ..... 68
7.9 **XS/SC26** ..... 68
7.10 SC10-2 ..... 69
7.11 **XS/SC26 and SC10-2** ..... 69
7.12 Linking Outputs ..... 70
7.12.1 Solid-State Safety Outputs ..... 71
7.12.2 Safety Relay Outputs ..... 74
7.12.3 EDM and FSD Wiring ..... 76
7.13 Status Outputs ..... 83
7.13.1 Status Output Signal Conventions ..... 83
7.13.2 Status Output Functionality ..... 84
7.13.3 Press Control Status Output Functionality ..... 85
7.14 Virtual Status Outputs ..... 86

**Chapter 8 Getting Started ..... 88**
8.1 Creating a Configuration ..... 88
8.2 Adding Inputs and Status Outputs ..... 88
8.2.1 Adding Safety and Non-Safety Inputs ..... 89
8.2.2 Adding Status Outputs ..... 92
8.3 Designing the Control Logic ..... 93
8.4 Saving and Confirming a Configuration ..... 94
8.4.1 Saving a Configuration ..... 94
8.4.2 Confirming a Configuration ..... 94
8.4.3 Write a Confirmed Configuration to an SC-XM2/3 using the Programming Tool ..... 96
8.4.4 Notes on Confirming or Writing a Configuration to a Configured SC10-2 or XS/SC26 FID 3 or later ..... 96
8.4.5 User1 ..... 96
8.4.6 User2 or User3—Successful Configuration Confirmation or Writing ..... 96
8.4.7 User2 or User3—Unsuccessful Configuration Confirmation or Writing ..... 97
8.5 Sample Configurations ..... 97
8.5.1 XS/SC26 Sample Configuration ..... 97
8.5.2 XS/SC26: Simple Press Control with Mutable Safety Input Sample Configuration ..... 100

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved. www.bannerengineering.com

8.5.3 XS/SC26: Full Feature Press Control Sample Configuration ..... 103

**Chapter 9 Connect to the Safety Controller on the Network ..... 107**

9.1 Connect to the Safety Controller ..... 107
9.2 Allow the Software Through the Windows Firewall ..... 108
9.3 Find Safety Controllers on the Network ..... 110
9.3.1 Manually Finding Controllers on the Network ..... 112
9.4 Connect to a Safety Controller via Ethernet ..... 112
9.5 System Reset via Ethernet Connection ..... 113
9.5.1 IP Address Change ..... 113
9.5.2 Configuration Change ..... 113
9.6  Shortcuts ..... 114

**Chapter 10 Software ..... 115**

10.1 Abbreviations ..... 116
10.2 Software Overview ..... 117
10.3  New Project ..... 119
10.4 XS/SC26 ..... 119
10.5 SC10-2 ..... 119
10.6  Project Settings ..... 120
10.7 **Equipment** Tab ..... 121
10.8 **Functional View** Tab ..... 122
10.8.1 Logic Blocks ..... 123
10.8.2 Function Blocks ..... 126
10.9 **Wiring Diagram** Tab ..... 126
10.10 **Ladder Logic** Tab ..... 128
10.11 **ISD** Tab ..... 128
10.12 **Industrial Ethernet** Tab ..... 132
10.12.1 Network Settings: **Basic** Tab ..... 134
10.12.2 Network Settings: **Network Access** Tab ..... 135
10.12.3 Network Settings: **Field Bus** Tab ..... 136
10.12.4 PLC Tags/Labels File Creation ..... 138
10.12.5 EtherNet/IP Assembly Objects ..... 139
10.13 **Configuration Summary** Tab ..... 140
10.14  Print Options ..... 141
10.15  Password Manager ..... 142
10.15.1 XS/SC26 Password Manager ..... 142
10.15.2 SC10-2 Password Manager ..... 143
10.15.3 Recover the PIN or Password ..... 143
10.16  Viewing and Importing Controller Data ..... 144
10.17 **Viewing System and Network Settings Snapshot** ..... 144
10.17.1 View the **Fault Log** ..... 146
10.17.2 View the **Configuration Log** ..... 146
10.17.3 View Module Information ..... 147
10.18  Live Mode ..... 147
10.19  Simulation Mode ..... 150
10.19.1 Timed Action Mode ..... 154
10.20  Settings ..... 155
10.21  Help ..... 156
10.22 Reference Signals ..... 156

**Chapter 11 Function Block Descriptions ..... 158**

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved. www.bannerengineering.com

11.1  Bypass Block ..... 158
11.1.1 Lockout/Tagout ..... 159
11.2  Delay Block ..... 159
11.3  Enabling Device Block ..... 161
11.4  Latch Reset Block ..... 162
11.5  Muting Block ..... 165
11.5.1 Optional Muting Attributes ..... 172
11.6  One Shot Block ..... 174
11.7 One Shot Mode ..... 175
11.8  Press Control ..... 176
11.8.1 Mode Function Block ..... 178
11.8.2 Press Control Inputs Function Block ..... 178
11.8.3 Press Control Function Block Examples ..... 180
11.8.4 Closed Loop Control ..... 182
11.9  Two-Hand Control Block (For XS/SC26 FID 3 and older and SC10-2 FID 1) ..... 183
11.10  Two-Hand Control Block (XS/SC26 FID 4 and later and SC10-2 FID 2 and later ) ..... 186

**Chapter 12 XS/SC26 Onboard Interface ..... 188**
12.1 XS/SC26 Configuration Mode ..... 190
12.2 To *write* data to the SC-XM2/3 drive using the onboard interface: ..... 190
12.3 To *import* data from the SC-XM2/3 drive using the onboard interface: ..... 191

**Chapter 13 Industrial Ethernet (Field Bus) Overview ..... 192**
13.1 Configuring the Safety Controller ..... 192
13.1.1 ClickSet IP Process ..... 193
13.2 Industrial Ethernet Definitions ..... 195
13.3 Retrieving Current Fault Information ..... 196
13.4 EtherNet/IP™ ..... 196
13.4.1 L5X File Connection ..... 196
13.4.2 EDS File Connection ..... 200
13.4.3 Generic Ethernet Module Connection ..... 210
13.4.4 Inputs to the Safety Controller (Outputs from the PLC) ..... 217
13.4.5 Outputs from the Safety Controller (Inputs to the PLC) ..... 218
13.4.6 Configuration Assembly Object ..... 231
13.4.7 Fault Examples ..... 231
13.4.8 Flags ..... 233
13.4.9 Extended Flags ..... 234
13.4.10 ISD System Status Words ..... 234
13.4.11 RSLogix5000 Configuration (Explicit Messaging) ..... 235
13.4.12 EIP on Omron PLC Configuration ..... 245
13.5 Modbus® TCP ..... 259
13.5.1 Input and Coil Bits ..... 259
13.5.2 Input and Holding Registers ..... 260
13.6 PLC5, SLC500, and MicroLogix (PCCC) ..... 274
13.6.1 PLC Configuration ..... 274
13.6.2 Outputs from Safety Controller (Inputs to PLC) ..... 276
13.6.3 Inputs to Safety Controller (Outputs from PLC) ..... 288
13.6.4 Flags ..... 288
13.6.5 Extended Flags ..... 289
13.7 PROFINET® ..... 289
13.7.1 PROFINET® and the Safety Controllers ..... 289
13.7.2 General Station Description (GSD) File ..... 289
13.7.3 PROFINET® IO Data Model ..... 290
13.7.4 Configuring the Safety Controller for a PROFINET IO Connection ..... 290
13.7.5 Create a XML File For PROFINET ..... 290
13.7.6 Description of Modules ..... 292
13.7.7 Configuration Instructions ..... 304
13.8 EtherCAT® ..... 318
13.8.1 EtherCAT® and the Safety Controllers ..... 319
13.8.2 EtherCAT® Slave Information (ESI) File ..... 319

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved. www.bannerengineering.com

13.8.3 EtherCAT® IO Data Model ... 319
13.8.4 Configuring the Safety Controller for EtherCAT® IO Connection ... 319
13.8.5 Create a PLCopenXML for EtherCAT® for TwinCAT® 3.0 ... 319
13.8.6 Description of Process Data Objects ... 321
13.7.7 Configuration Instructions ... 304
13.8.8 EtherCAT® PDO Modification ... 328
13.9 ISD: Additional Information ... 329
13.9.1 ISD: Temperature, Voltage, and Distance Conversion Information ... 329

**Chapter 14 System Checkout ... 332**
14.1 Schedule of Required Checkouts ... 332
14.2 Commissioning Checkout Procedure ... 333
14.2.1 Verifying System Operation ... 333
14.2.2 Initial Setup, Commissioning, and Periodic Checkout Procedures ... 333

**Chapter 15 Status and Operating Information ... 340**
15.1 XS/SC26 LED Status ... 340
15.2 Input Module Status Indicators ... 342
15.3 Output Module (Solid-State or Relay) Status Indicators ... 342
15.4 EtherCAT® Communication Gateway Module Status Indicators ... 343
15.5 SC10-2 LED Status ... 343
15.6 Live Mode Information: Software ... 345
15.7 Live Mode Information: Onboard Interface ... 345
15.8 Lockout Conditions ... 345
15.9 Recovering from a Lockout ... 346
15.10 AutoDetect ISD Option ... 346
15.11 SC10-2 Using Automatic Terminal Optimization ... 348
15.12 SC10-2 Example Configuration without Automatic Terminal Optimization ... 350
15.13 XS/SC26 Models without an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3 ... 354
15.14 XS/SC26 Models with an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3 ... 356
15.14.1 XS/SC26 FID 1 or FID 2 Controllers with an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3 ... 356
15.14.2 XS/SC26 FID 3 – FID 6 Controllers with an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3 ... 357
15.14.3 XS/SC26 FID 7 and Later Controllers with an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3 ... 361
15.15 SC10-2: Using the SC-XM3 ... 361
15.16 Reset the Safety Controller to Factory Defaults ... 362
15.17 Factory Defaults ... 363

**Chapter 16 Troubleshooting ... 364**
16.1 Software: Troubleshooting ... 364
16.2 **Live Mode** button is unavailable (grayed out) ... 364
16.3 Unable to read from the Safety Controller or send the configuration to the Safety Controller (buttons grayed out) ... 364
16.4 Unable to move a block to a different location ... 365
16.5 SC-XM2/3 button is unavailable (grayed out) ... 365
16.6 Software: Error Codes ... 365
16.7 Verifying Driver Installation ... 367
16.8 Safety Controller Drivers—Windows 7, 10, and 11 ... 367
16.9 SC-XMP2 Drivers—Windows 7, 10, and 11 ... 368
16.10 Resolve an Exclamation Mark, a Red ×, or a Down Arrow Indicator ... 369
16.11 Resolve the Safety Controller listed in Device Manager as 'Generic USB Device' ... 369
16.12 Finding and Fixing Faults ... 370
16.12.1 XS/SC26 Fault Code Table ... 370
16.12.2 SC10-2 Fault Code Table ... 375

**Chapter 17 Components and Accessories ... 379**
17.1 Replacement Parts and Accessories ... 379
17.2 Ethernet Cordsets ... 379
17.3 Interface Modules ... 379
17.3.1 Mechanically Linked Contactors ... 379

**Chapter 18 Product Support and Maintenance ... 381**
18.1 Cleaning ... 381
18.2 Repairs and Warranty Service ... 381
18.3 Contact Us ... 381
18.4 Banner Engineering Corp Limited Warranty ... 381
18.5 Banner Engineering Corp. Software Copyright Notice ... 382

**Chapter 19 Standards and Regulations ... 383**

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved. www.bannerengineering.com

19.1 Applicable US Standards ..... 383
19.2 Applicable OSHA Regulations ..... 384
19.3 Applicable European and International Standards ..... 384

**Index ..... 385**

**Glossary ..... 390**

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved. www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

1.1 Important... Read This Before Proceeding! ..... 8
1.2 Use of Warnings and Cautions ..... 8
1.3 EU/UK Declaration of Conformity (DoC) ..... 9

# Chapter 1 About This Document

## 1.1 Important... Read This Before Proceeding!

It is the responsibility of the machine designer, controls engineer, machine builder, machine operator, and/or maintenance personnel or electrician to apply and maintain this device in full compliance with all applicable regulations and standards. The device can provide the required safeguarding function only if it is properly installed, properly operated, and properly maintained. This manual attempts to provide complete installation, operation, and maintenance instructions. *Reading the manual in its entirety is highly recommended to ensure proper understanding of the operation, installation, and maintenance.* Please direct any questions regarding the application or use of the device to Banner Engineering Corp..

For more information regarding U.S. and international institutions that provide safeguarding application and safeguarding device performance standards, see "Standards and Regulations" on page 383.

**WARNING:**

- The user is responsible for following these instructions.
- **Failure to follow any of these responsibilities may potentially create a dangerous condition that could result in serious injury or death.**
- Carefully read, understand, and comply with all instructions for this device.
- Perform a risk assessment that includes the specific machine guarding application. Guidance on a compliant methodology can be found in ISO 12100 or ANSI B11.0.
- Determine what safeguarding devices and methods are appropriate per the results of the risk assessment and implement per all applicable local, state, and national codes and regulations. See ISO 13849-1, ANSI B11.19, and/or other appropriate standards.
- Verify that the entire safeguarding system (including input devices, control systems, and output devices) is properly configured and installed, operational, and working as intended for the application.
- Periodically re-verify, as needed, that the entire safeguarding system is working as intended for the application.

## 1.2 Use of Warnings and Cautions

The precautions and statements used throughout this document are indicated by alert symbols and must be followed for the safe use of the Banner Safety Controller. Failure to follow all precautions and alerts may result in unsafe use or operation. The following signal words and alert symbols are defined as follows:

| Signal Word and Symbol | Definition |
|---|---|
| **WARNING**: | **Warnings** refer to potentially hazardous situations which, if not avoided, could result in serious injury or death. |
| **CAUTION**: | **Cautions** refer to potentially hazardous situations which, if not avoided, could result in minor or moderate injury. |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

These statements are intended to inform the machine designer and manufacturer, the end user, and maintenance personnel, how to avoid misapplication and effectively apply the Banner Safety Controller to meet the various safeguarding application requirements. These individuals are responsible to read and abide by these statements.

## 1.3 EU/UK Declaration of Conformity (DoC)

Banner Engineering Corp. herewith declares that these products are in conformity with the provisions of the listed directives and all essential health and safety requirements have been met. For the complete DoC, please go to www.bannerengineering.com.

| Product | Directive |
|---|---|
| SC26-2 Programmable Safety Controller, XS26-2 Programmable Safety Controller, XS26-ISD Programmable Safety Controller, XS2so and XS4so Solid-State Safety Output Modules, XS8si and XS16si Safety Input Modules, XS1ro and XS2ro Safety Relay Modules, XSeCAT EtherCAT Communication Gateway Module, and SC10-2 Safety Controller | EU: Machine Safety Directive 2006/42/EC and EMC Directive 2004/108/EC |
| | UKCA: Machinery (Safety) Regulations 2008 and EMC Regulations 2016 |

Representative in EU: Spiros Lachandidis, Managing Director, **Banner Engineering BV** Park Lane | Culliganlaan 2F bus 3 | 1831 Diegem, BELGIUM

Representative in UK: Tony Coghlan, Managing Director, **Turck Banner LTD** Blenheim House | Blenheim Court | Wickford, Essex SS11 8YT | Great Britain


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

2.1 Terms Used in this Manual ..... 10
2.2 Software ..... 10
2.3 USB Connections ..... 11
2.4 Ethernet Connections ..... 11
2.5 Internal Logic ..... 11
2.6 Password (Ethernet) or PIN (USB) ..... 12
2.7 SC-XM2/3 Drive and SC-XMP2 Programming Tool ..... 12

# Chapter 2 Product Description

Safety control is a critical and required part of any safety system. This is because safety controllers ensure that your safety measures 1) do not fail, or 2) if failure is inevitable, fail in a predictable safe way.

A safety controller is often an ideal safety control solution, because it provides more functionality than a safety relay, at a lower cost than a safety PLC. In addition, a smart, scalable safety controller can expand with your needs as well as enable remote monitoring of your machine safety systems.

Banner Engineering Corp. Safety Controllers are easy-to-use, configurable, and expandable modules (XS26 models) designed to monitor multiple safety and non-safety input devices, providing safe stop and start functions for machines with hazardous motion. The Safety Controller can replace multiple safety relay modules in applications that include such safety input devices as E-stop buttons, interlocking gate switches, safety light curtains, two-hand controls, safety mats, and other safeguarding devices. The Safety Controller may also be used in place of larger and more complex safety PLCs with the use of additional input and/or output expansion modules.

The onboard interface:

- Provides access to fault diagnostics
- Allows reading and writing the configuration file from and to the SC-XM2 and SC-XM3 drives
- XS/SC26: Displays configuration summary, including terminal assignments and network settings

## 2.1 Terms Used in this Manual

The following terms are used in this manual.

**Safety Controller**—an abbreviated version referring to the entire XS/SC26 Safety Controller system, as well as to the SC10-2, both of which are covered by this manual
**Expandable Safety Controller**—refers to expandable models
**Base Controller**—refers to the main module in the XS/SC26 Safety Controller System
**SC26-2 Programmable Safety Controller, XS26-2 Programmable Safety Controller, XS26-ISD Programmable Safety Controller, XS2so and XS4so Solid-State Safety Output Modules, XS8si and XS16si Safety Input Modules, XS1ro and XS2ro Safety Relay Modules, XSeCAT EtherCAT Communications Gateway Module**—formal name of the XS/SC26 product line

## 2.2 Software

The Banner Safety Controller Software is an application with real-time display and diagnostic tools that are used to:

- Design and edit configurations
- Test a configuration in Simulation Mode
- Write a configuration to the Safety Controller
- Read the current configuration from the Safety Controller
- Display real-time information, such as device statuses
- Display fault information

The Software uses icons and circuit symbols to assist in making appropriate input device and property selections. As the various device properties and I/O control relationships are established on the **Functional View** tab, the program automatically builds the corresponding wiring and ladder logic diagrams.

See "Software Overview" on page 117 for details.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## 2.3 USB Connections

The micro USB port on the Base Controller and the SC10-2 is used to connect to a PC (via the SC-USB2 cable) and the SC-XM2/3 drive to read and write configurations created with the Software.

**CAUTION:**

- **Potential for Unintended Ground Return Path**
- A large current could damage the PC and/or the Safety Controller.
- The USB interface is implemented in an industry standard way and is not isolated from the 24 V return path.
- The USB cable makes it possible for the computer and Safety Controller to become part of an unintended ground return path for other connected equipment. A large current could damage the PC and/or the Safety Controller. To minimize this possibility, Banner Engineering Corp. recommends that the USB cable is the only cable connected to the PC and the PC is placed on a non-conducting surface. This includes disconnecting the AC power supply from a laptop whenever possible.
- The USB interface is intended for downloading configurations and temporary monitoring or troubleshooting. It is not designed for continuous use as a maintenance port.

## 2.4 Ethernet Connections

Ethernet connections are made using an Ethernet cable connected from the Ethernet port of the Base Safety Controller (Ethernet-enabled models only), dual ports of the XSeCAT communication gateway, or SC10-2 to a network switch or to the control or monitoring device. The Safety Controller supports either the standard or crossover-style cables. A shielded cable may be needed in high-noise environments.

**NOTE:** The Ethernet cable bringing communications to the XSeCAT communications gateway (that is, from the PLC, upstream) must be connected to ECAT IN on the top of the module. The Ethernet cable taking communications away from the XSeCAT communications gateway (that is, to the PLC, upstream) must be connected to ECAT OUT on the bottom of the module.

The Ethernet port can also be used to connect to a PC with the Banner Safety Controller Software. This feature is available on XS/SC26 FID7 or later Ethernet-enabled Safety Controller models only.

## 2.5 Internal Logic

The Safety Controller's internal logic is designed so that a Safety Output can turn On only if all the controlling safety input device signals and the Safety Controller's self-check signals are in the Run state and report that there is no fault condition.

The Banner Safety Controller Software uses both Logic and Safety Function blocks for simple and more advanced applications.


Logic Blocks are based on Boolean (True or False) logic laws. The following Logic Blocks are available:

- NOT
- AND
- OR
- NAND
- NOR
- XOR
- Flip Flop (Set priority and Reset priority)

See "Logic Blocks" on page 123 for more information.


Function Blocks are pre-programmed blocks with built-in logic which provide various attribute selections to serve both common and complex application needs. The following Function Blocks are available:


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- Bypass Block
- Delay Block (XS/SC26 FID 2 or later and SC10-2)
- Enabling Device Block
- Latch Reset Block
- Muting Block
- THC (Two-Hand Control) Block
- One Shot Block (XS/SC26 FID 4 or later)
- Press Control Block (XS/SC26 FID 4 or later)

See "Function Blocks " on page 126 for more information.

## 2.6 Password (Ethernet) or PIN (USB)

To confirm and write the configuration to the Safety Controller and to access the Password Manager via the Software, a password is required if the connection is via an Ethernet port (XS/SC26 FID7 or later Safety Controller only) or a PIN is required if the connection is via an USB port.

See " XS/SC26 Password Manager" on page 142 and "SC10-2 Password Manager" on page 143 for more information.

## 2.7 SC-XM2/3 Drive and SC-XMP2 Programming Tool

Use the SC-XM2 and SC-XM3 drives to store a **confirmed** configuration.

**XS/SC26:** The configuration can be written directly by the Safety Controller, when the drive is plugged into the micro-USB port (see "XS/SC26 Configuration Mode " on page 190), or via the SC-XMP2 Programming Tool using only the Software without the need to plug in the Safety Controller.

> **IMPORTANT:** Verify that the configuration that is being imported to the Safety Controller is the correct configuration (via the Software or writing on the white label on the SC-XM2/3 drive).

Click  to access the programming tool options:

- **Read**—reads the current Safety Controller configuration from the SC-XM2/3 drive and loads it to the Software
- **Write**—writes a confirmed configuration from the Software to the SC-XM2/3 drive
- **Lock**—locks the SC-XM2/3 drive preventing any configurations from being written to it (an empty drive cannot be locked)

> **NOTE:** You will not be able to unlock the SC-XM2/3 drive after it has been locked.

> **IMPORTANT:** For a Safety Controller with Configuration via Network or Live Monitor via Network enabled (FID 7 or higher), using an SC-XM2/3 drive created prior to Banner Safety Controller Software version 5.0 or for a Controller with an FID less than 7 may result in disabling the Configuration via Network or Live Monitor via Network feature. If this happens, re-enable Configuration via Network or Live Monitor via Network using the USB connection.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

3.1 XS/SC26 Models ..... 13
3.2 XS/SC26 Features and Indicators ..... 14
3.3 Using XS/SC26 Safety Controllers with Different FIDs ..... 14
3.4 Input and Output Connections ..... 15
3.5 XS/SC26 Automatic Terminal Optimization (ATO) Feature ..... 17

# Chapter 3 XS/SC26 Overview

With the option to add up to eight I/O expansion modules, the XS26 Expandable Safety Controller has the capacity to adapt to a variety of machines, including large scale machines with multiple processes.

*Figure 1. XS/SC26 Safety Controller*




- Program in minutes with intuitive, easy-to-use configuration software
- Up to eight expansion I/O modules can be added as automation requirements grow or change
- Choose from six expansion module models
- Expansion module models have a variety of safety inputs, solid-state safety outputs and safety relay outputs
- Innovative live display feature and diagnostics allow for active monitoring of I/O on a PC and assist in troubleshooting and commissioning
- Safety Controller and input modules allow safety inputs to be converted to status outputs for efficient terminal use
- Ethernet-enabled models can be configured for up to 256 virtual status outputs
- Optional SC-XM2/3 external drive for fast swap and quick configuration without a PC
- In-Series Diagnostic (ISD) provides detailed status and performance data from each connected safety device which can be accessed with an HMI or similar device (XS26-ISD models only)
- Configure and Live view via an Ethernet connection on the expandable base controller

## 3.1 XS/SC26 Models

All Expandable and Non-Expandable Base controllers have 18 Safety Inputs, 8 Convertible Safety I/Os, and 2 Solid-State Safety Output pairs. Up to eight expansion modules, in any combination of input and output modules, can be added to the expandable models of the Base Controller. One communication gateway can be added to FID 6 and later expandable, Ethernet-enabled models of Base Controller.

*Table 1. Expandable Base Models*

| Model | Display | Ethernet-enabled | # of ISD Channels |
|---|---|---|---|
| **XS26-2** | No | No | 0 |
| **XS26-2d** | Yes | No | 0 |
| **XS26-2e** | No | Yes | 0 |
| **XS26-2de** | Yes | Yes | 0 |
| **XS26-ISDd** | Yes | Yes | 8 |

*Table 2. Non-Expandable Base Models*

| Model | Display | Ethernet-enabled | # of ISD Channels |
|---|---|---|---|
| **SC26-2** | No | No | 0 |
| **SC26-2d** | Yes | No | 0 |
| **SC26-2e** | No | Yes | 0 |
| **SC26-2de** | Yes | Yes | 0 |

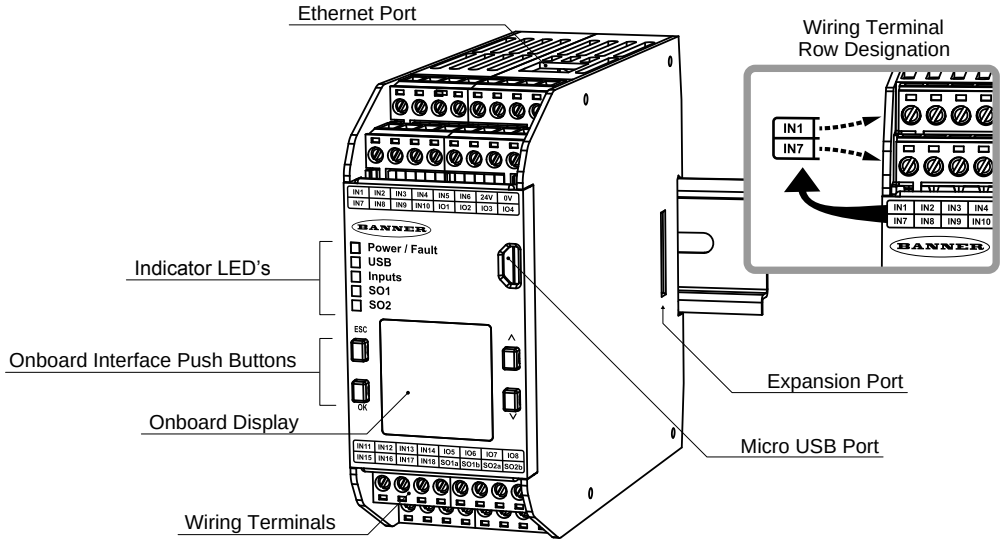

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Table 3. I/O Expansion Modules*

| Model | Description |
|---|---|
| **XS16si** | Safety Input Module - 16 inputs (4 convertible) |
| **XS8si** | Safety Input Module - 8 inputs (2 convertible) |
| **XS2so** | 2 Dual Channel Solid-State Safety Output Module |
| **XS4so** | 4 Dual Channel Solid-State Safety Output Module |
| **XS1ro** | 1 Dual Channel Safety Relay Module |
| **XS2ro** | 2 Dual Channel Safety Relay Module |
| **XSeCAT** | EtherCAT Communication Gateway |

# 3.2 XS/SC26 Features and Indicators

*Figure 2. XS/SC26 Features and Indicators*

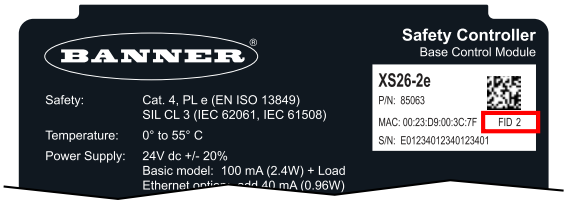



# 3.3 Using XS/SC26 Safety Controllers with Different FIDs

Over time, Banner adds new features to some devices. The Feature ID (FID) identifies the set of features and functions included in a particular model. Generally, an increasing FID number corresponds to an increasing feature set. A configuration using a higher numbered FID feature is not supported by a Safety Controller of a lower FID. Feature sets are forward compatible, not backwards compatible.

XS/SC26 Base Controllers that have different FIDs, can be used in the same application, however steps must be taken to ensure compatibility. See the side label on the module ("Figure: Example Label" on page 14) or query the Module Information of the Base Controller to determine the FID of a particular device. In order to have one configuration file that applies to a device of any FID, create configurations without using the features listed in the following table. Confirm all configurations after loading to ensure that they are correct.

*Figure 3. Example Label*





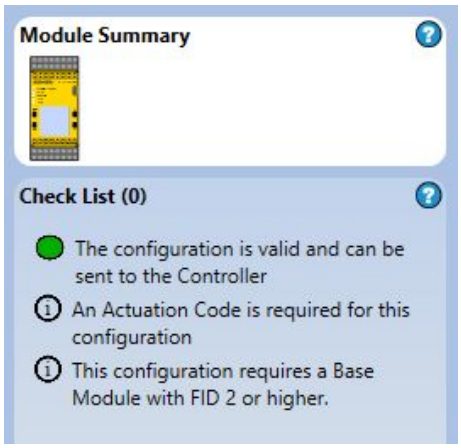
© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Table 4. FID Descriptions*

| FID Number | Added Feature Set |
|---|---|
| FID 1 | Initial feature set |
| FID 2 | PROFINET®, virtual non-safety inputs, delay blocks, Track Function Block status output and an increase from 64 to 256 virtual status outputs |
| FID 3 | Factory Default functionality, SC-XM3 transfer |
| FID 4 | Hydraulic/Pneumatic Press Control block, the ability to perform OR logic on reset inputs, One Shot timing block, and setting a physical status output to cycle on and off |
| FID 5 | Released XS26-ISD models, which added the ability to directly convert In-Series Diagnostic Information from 8 ISD chains to USB (using the Software) and Industrial Ethernet protocols |
| FID 6 | Released XSeCAT Communication Gateway for use with EtherCAT® communications. |
| FID 7 | Ability to communicate to a Controller with the Banner Safety Controller Software via the Ethernet port. |

The checklist in the Banner Safety Controller Software shows a warning when a feature is added that requires a Safety Controller with firmware other than an FID 1 Safety Controller.

*Figure 4. Example Checklist Warning*




**NOTE:** Expansion modules are FID 1. They can run most functionality because the functionality is controlled by the Base Controller.

# 3.4 Input and Output Connections

## 3.4.1 XS/SC26 Safety and Non-Safety Input Devices

The Base Controller has 26 input terminals that can be used to monitor either safety or non-safety devices; these devices may incorporate either solid-state or contact-based outputs. Some of the input terminals can be configured to either source 24 V DC for monitoring contacts or to signal the status of an input or an output. The function of each input circuit depends on the type of the device connected; this function is established during the controller configuration.

The FID 2 and later Base Controller also supports non-safety virtual inputs.

Some of the input terminals on the XS26-ISD models can be configured to monitor a chain of ISD enabled devices; this functionality is established during the controller configuration.

The expansion modules XS8si and XS16si add additional inputs to the Safety Controller System.

Contact Banner Engineering Corp. for additional information about connecting other devices not described in this manual.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## 3.4.2 XS/SC26 Safety Outputs

The Safety Outputs are designed to control final switching device(s) (FSDs) and machine primary control element(s) (MPCEs) that are the last elements (in time) to control the dangerous motion. These control elements include relays, contactors, solenoid valves, motor controls, and other devices that typically incorporate force-guided (mechanically-linked) monitoring contacts, or electrical signals needed for external device monitoring (EDM).

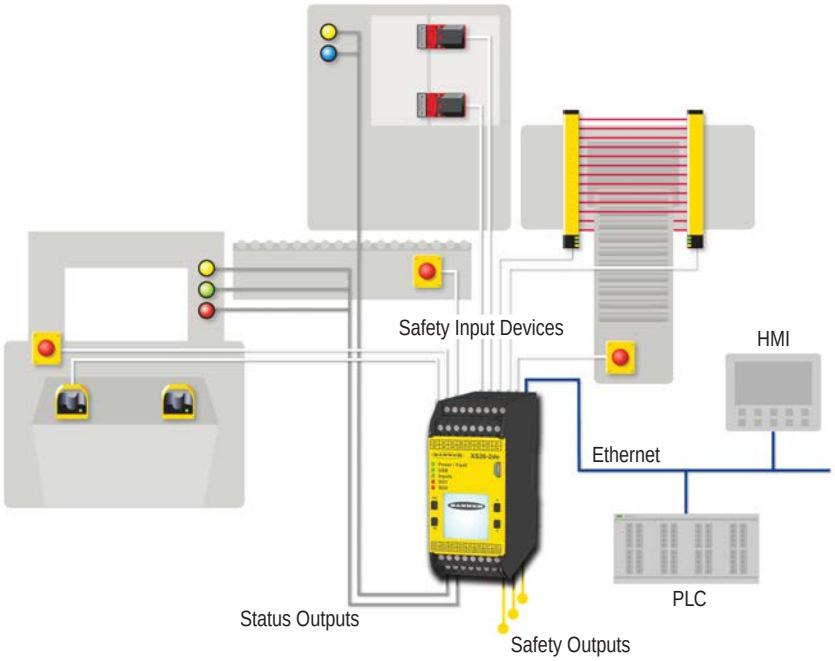
The Safety Controller has two independently controlled and redundant solid-state Safety Outputs (terminals SO1a & SO1b, and SO2a & SO2b). The Safety Controller's self-checking algorithm ensures that the outputs turn On and Off at the appropriate times, in response to the assigned input signals.

Each redundant solid-state Safety Output is designed to work either in pairs or as two individual outputs. When controlled in pairs, the Safety Outputs are suitable for Category 4 applications; when acting independently, they are suitable for applications up to Category 3 when appropriate fault exclusion has been employed (see *Single-channel Control* in "Safety (Protective) Stop Circuits" on page 78 and "Safety Circuit Integrity and ISO 13849-1 Safety Circuit Principles" on page 36). See "Safety Outputs" on page 68 for more information about hookup, solid-state and safety relay outputs, external device monitoring, single/dual-channel Safety Stop Circuits, and configuring Safety Outputs.

Additional solid-state or safety relay outputs can be added to expandable models (XS26) of the Base Controller by incorporating expansion output modules (XS2so, XS4so, XS1ro, and XS2ro). Up to eight expansion modules, in any combination of input or output modules, can be added.

The Safety Outputs can be controlled by input devices with both automatic reset and manual reset operation.

*Figure 5. Safety Outputs (Example Application)*




### Functional Stops according to IEC 60204-1 and NFPA 79

The Safety Controller is capable of performing two functional stop types:

- Category 0: an uncontrolled stop with the immediate removal of power from the guarded machine
- Category 1: a controlled stop with a delay before power is removed from the guarded machine

Delayed stops can be used in applications where machines need power for a braking mechanism to stop the hazardous motion.

### XS/SC26 Status Outputs and Virtual Status Outputs

The Base Controller has eight convertible I/Os (labeled **IOx**) that can be used as Status Outputs which have the capability to send non-safety status signals to devices such as programmable logic controllers (PLCs) or indicator lights. In addition, any unused Safety Output terminals may be configured to perform a Status Output function with the benefit of higher current capacity (see "XS/SC26 Specifications" on page 24 for more information). For the solid-state safety outputs configured as status outputs, the safety test pulses stay enabled even when designated as a status output. The Status Output signal


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

convention can be configured to be 24 V DC, 0 V DC, or cycling on and off. See "Status Output Signal Conventions " on page 83 for information on the specific functions of a Status Output.

Ethernet models, using the Software, can be configured for up to 64 Virtual Status Outputs on FID 1 XS/SC26 Safety Controllers and up to 256 virtual status outputs on FID 2 and later XS/SC26 Safety Controllers. These outputs can communicate the same information as the status outputs over the network. See "Virtual Status Outputs " on page 86 for more information.

**WARNING:**

- **Status Outputs and Virtual Status Outputs are not safety outputs and can fail in either the On or the Off state.**
- If a Status Output or a Virtual Status Output is used to control a safety-critical application, a failure to danger is possible and may lead to serious injury or death.
- Never use a Status Output or Virtual Status Output to control any safety-critical applications.

## 3.5 XS/SC26 Automatic Terminal Optimization (ATO) Feature

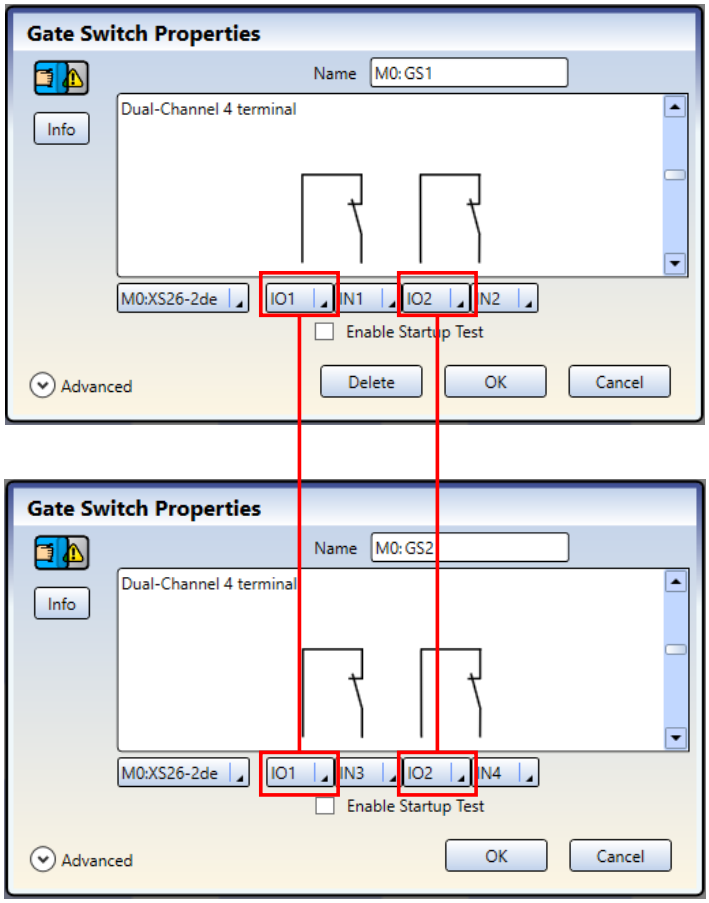
Automatic Terminal Optimization (ATO) is a standard feature on all XS/SC26 models. This feature automatically combines up to two I/O terminals for two devices that require +24 V test pulses from the Safety Controller. When applicable, the Software automatically does this for every pair of devices that are added, until I/O terminals are no longer available. Sharing is limited to two because the screw-type terminals are capable of accepting up to two wires.

If preferred, terminals may be manually reassigned in the device **Properties** window.

The following figures illustrate the XS/SC26 ATO feature optimizing terminals for two gate switches. This results in a total terminal usage of six, versus eight if ATO is not utilized. The first gate switch (GS1) is added. This is a dual-channel, four-wire gate switch that requires two independent +24 V pulsed outputs from the Safety Controller. IO1 is assigned as +24 V test pulse 1 which runs through channel 1 of GS1 to IN1. IO2 is assigned as +24 V test pulse 2 which runs through channel 2 of GS1 to IN2. When the second gate switch GS2 is added, it also uses IO1 and IO2 but uses IN3 and IN4 to monitor its two channels.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

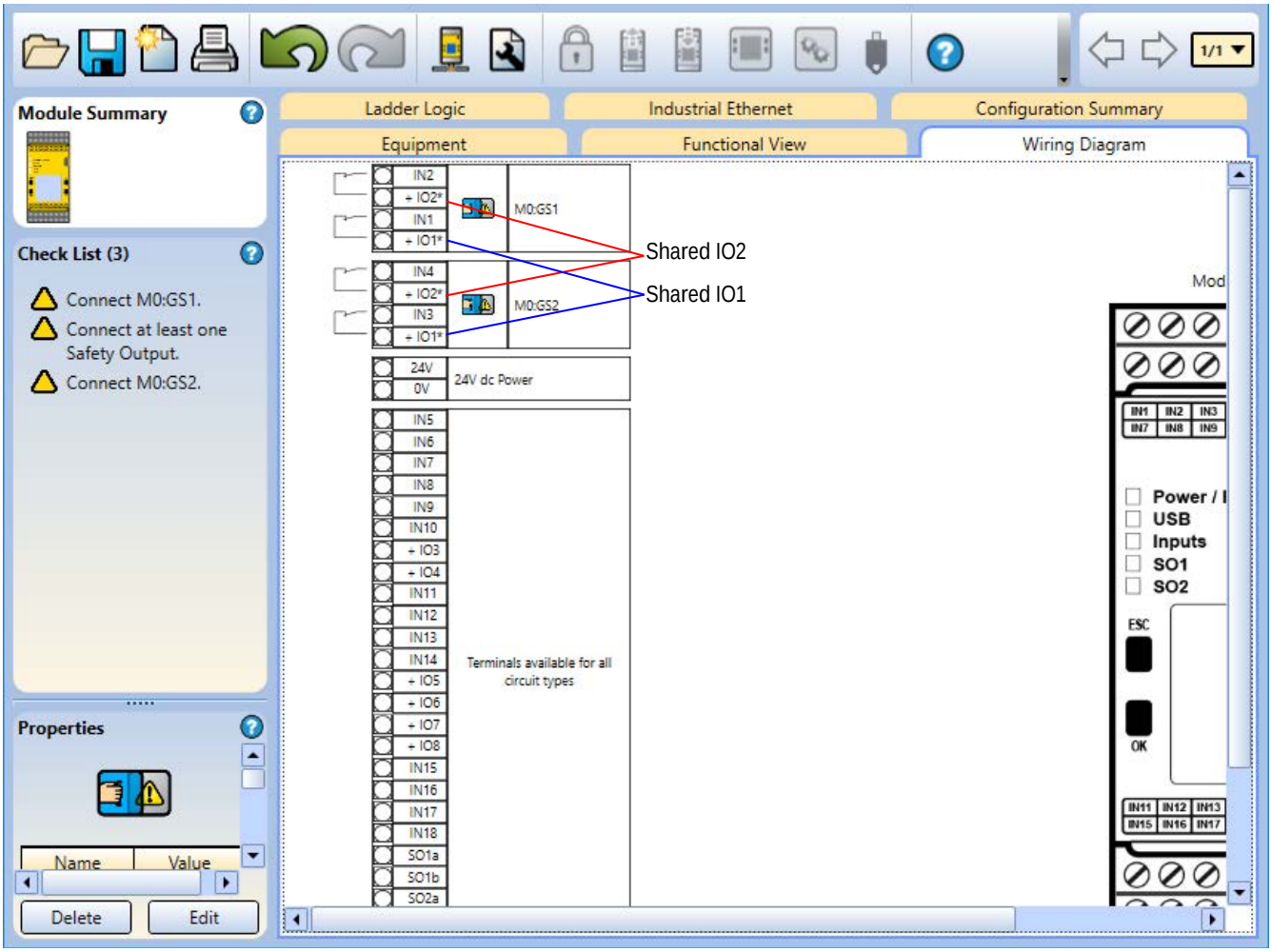
*Figure 6. GS1 and GS2 Sharing IO1 and IO2*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 7. **Wiring Diagram** Tab View of Shared I/Os*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

4.1 SC10-2 Models ..... 20
4.2 SC10-2 Features and Indicators ..... 20
4.3 Using SC10-2 Safety Controllers with Different FIDs ..... 21
3.4 Input and Output Connections..... 15
4.5 SC10-2 Automatic Terminal Optimization (ATO) Feature with External Terminal Blocks (ETB)..... 23

# Chapter 4 SC10-2 Overview

*Figure 8. SC10-2 Safety Controller*




The SC10-2 configurable safety relay controller is an easy-to-use and cost-effective alternative to safety relay modules. It replaces the functionality and capability of two independent safety relay modules while offering the configurability, simplicity, and advanced diagnostics capabilities offered by the rest of the Banner Engineering Corp. Safety Controller line-up.

- In-Series Diagnostics (ISD) provides detailed status and performance data from each connected safety device which can be accessed with an HMI or similar device
- Intuitive, icon-based programming with drag-and-drop PC configuration simplifies device setup and management
- Supports a wide range of safety devices, eliminating the need to buy and stock safety relay modules dedicated to specific safety devices
- Two six-amp safety relay outputs, each with three normally open (NO) sets of contacts
- Ten inputs, including four that can be used as non-safe outputs
- Automatic Terminal Optimization (ATO) can increase the inputs from 10 to up to 14
- Industrial Ethernet two-way communication
  - 256 virtual non-safe status outputs
  - 80 virtual non-safe inputs (reset, ON/OFF, cancel OFF-delay, mute enable)
- Optional SC-XM3 external drive for fast swap and quick configuration without a PC (see " SC10-2: Using the SC-XM3" on page 361)

## 4.1 SC10-2 Models

| Model | Description |
|---|---|
| **SC10-2roe** | Configurable safety relay controller - 10 inputs (4 convertible), two 3-channel safety relay outputs, industrial ethernet |

## 4.2 SC10-2 Features and Indicators

Connection points are push-in spring clamp connectors.

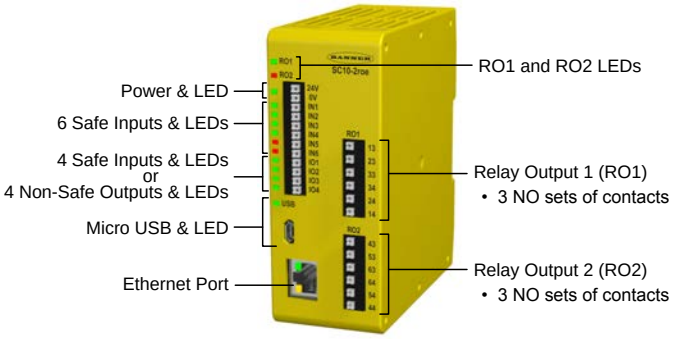
**Wire Size:** 24 to 16 AWG, 0.2 mm² to 2.08 mm²


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**IMPORTANT:** Clamp terminals are designed for one wire only. If more than one wire is connected to a terminal, a wire could loosen or become completely disconnected from the terminal, causing a short. Use a stranded wire or a wire with an accompanying ferrule. Tinned wires are not recommended.

After inserting the wire into the terminal, tug the wire to make sure it is properly retained. If the wire is not retained, consider using a different wiring solution.

*Figure 9. Features and Indicators*




# 4.3 Using SC10-2 Safety Controllers with Different FIDs

Over time, Banner adds new features to some devices. The Feature ID (FID) identifies the set of features and functions included in a particular model. Generally, an increasing FID number corresponds to an increasing feature set. A configuration using a higher numbered FID feature is not supported by a Safety Controller of a lower FID. Feature sets are forward compatible, not backwards compatible.

*Figure 10. Example SC10-2 Label*

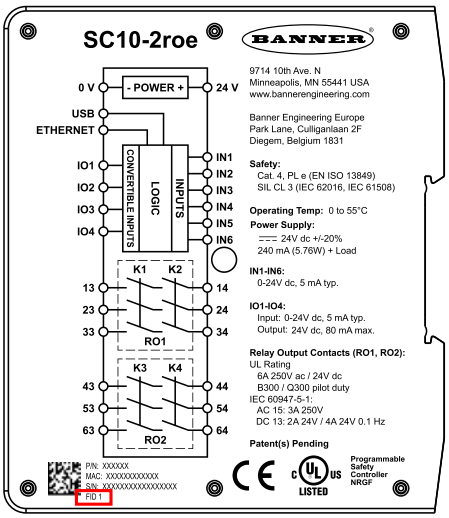


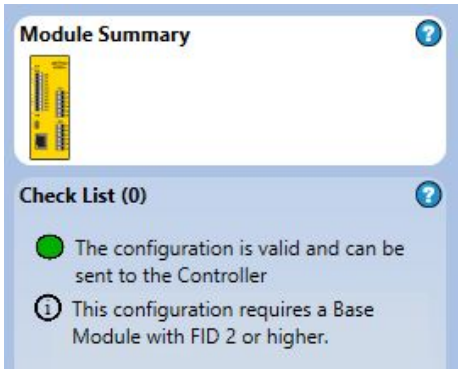

*Table 5. FID Descriptions*

| FID Number | Added Feature Set |
|---|---|
| FID 1 | Initial feature set |
| FID 2 | Added the ability to directly convert In-Series Diagnostic information to USB (using the Software) and Industrial Ethernet protocols. |

The checklist in the Banner Safety Controller Software shows a warning when a feature is added that requires a Safety Controller with firmware other than an FID 1 Safety Controller.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 11. Example Checklist Warning*




# 4.4 Input and Output Connections

## 4.4.1 SC10-2 Safety and Non-Safety Input Devices

The SC10-2 has 10 input terminals that can be used to monitor either safety or non-safety devices; these devices may incorporate either solid-state or contact-based outputs.

Some of the input terminals can be configured to either source 24 V DC for monitoring contacts or to signal the status of an input or an output. The function of each input circuit depends on the type of the device connected; this function is established during the controller configuration.

## 4.4.2 SC10-2 Safety Relay Outputs

The SC10-2 has two, three-channel, normally open (NO), safety relay outputs.

The Safety Outputs are designed to control final switching device(s) (FSDs) and machine primary control element(s) (MPCEs) that are the last elements (in time) to control the dangerous motion. These control elements include relays, contactors, solenoid valves, motor controls, and other devices that typically incorporate force-guided (mechanically-linked) monitoring contacts, or electrical signals needed for external device monitoring (EDM).

### Functional Stops according to IEC 60204-1 and NFPA 79

The Safety Controller is capable of performing two functional stop types:

- Category 0: an uncontrolled stop with the immediate removal of power from the guarded machine
- Category 1: a controlled stop with a delay before power is removed from the guarded machine

Delayed stops can be used in applications where machines need power for a braking mechanism to stop the hazardous motion.

## 4.4.3 SC10-2 Status Outputs and Virtual Status Outputs

Using the Software, the SC10-2 can be configured for up to 256 virtual status outputs to communicate information over the network. These outputs have the capability to send non-safety status signals to devices such as programmable logic controllers (PLCs) or human-machine interfaces (HMIs). See "Virtual Status Outputs " on page 86 for more information.

The SC10-2 has four convertible I/Os (labeled **IOx**) that can be used as Status Outputs to directly control indicator lights or be hard-wired inputs to PLCs. These outputs communicate the same information as the virtual status outputs.

**WARNING:**

- **Status Outputs and Virtual Status Outputs are not safety outputs and can fail in either the On or the Off state.**
- If a Status Output or a Virtual Status Output is used to control a safety-critical application, a failure to danger is possible and may lead to serious injury or death.
- Never use a Status Output or Virtual Status Output to control any safety-critical applications.

The SC10-2 FID 2 or later can act as an interface to provide data from a chain of devices with imbedded In-Series Diagnostic (ISD) data, such as Banner SI-RF Safety Switches, over the network.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## 4.5 SC10-2 Automatic Terminal Optimization (ATO) Feature with External Terminal Blocks (ETB)

Automatic Terminal Optimization (ATO) Feature with External Terminal Blocks (ETB) is a standard feature on all SC10-2 models and is enabled by default.

The ATO feature can expand the 10 terminals on the SC10-2 to work with additional inputs by optimizing terminals and using ETBs. As devices are added, deleted, or edited, the Software automatically provides the optimum terminal assignment to minimize wiring and maximize terminal utilization.

ATO is a smart feature that provides all available device types and configuration options as a configuration is created. After all IN and I/O terminals are occupied and another device is added, ATO looks for devices that require +24 V test pulses from the Safety Controller. These devices are combined via an External Terminal Block (ETB) to free up an I/O terminal. Each ETB allows for up to three different devices to share a single I/O +24 V signal.

Disable ATO by editing the module properties of the SC10-2 in the Software, if preferred. ETBs will still be active, but you will be required to re-assign I/O terminals manually as needed to fully optimize terminal utilization.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.

Chapter Contents

5.1 XS/SC26 Specifications ..... 24
5.2 SC10-2 Specifications ..... 27
5.3 Dimensions ..... 30
5.4 PC Requirements ..... 31

# Chapter 5 Specifications and Requirements

## 5.1 XS/SC26 Specifications

### 5.1.1 Base Controller and Expansion Modules

**Mechanical Stress**

**Shock:** 15 *g* for 11 ms, half-sine wave, 18 shocks total (per IEC 61131-2)

**Vibration:** 3.5 mm occasional / 1.75 mm continuous at 5 Hz to 9 Hz, 1.0 *g* occasional and 0.5 *g* continuous at 9 Hz to 150 Hz: all at 10 sweep cycles per axis (per IEC 61131-2)

**Safety**

Category 4, PL e (EN ISO 13849)

SIL CL 3 (IEC 62061, IEC 61508)

**Product Performance Standards**

See "Standards and Regulations" on page 383 for a list of industry applicable U.S. and international standards

**EMC**

Meets or exceeds all EMC requirements in IEC 61131-2, IEC 62061 Annex E, Table E.1 (increased immunity levels), IEC 61326-1:2006, and IEC61326-3-1:2008

**Operating Conditions**

**Temperature:** 0 °C to +55 °C (+32 °F to +131 °F)

**Storage Temperature:** –30 °C to +65 °C (–22 °F to +149 °F)

**Humidity:** 90% at +50 °C maximum relative humidity (non-condensing)

**Operating Altitude:** 2000 m maximum (6562 ft maximum) per IEC 61010-1

**Environmental Rating**

NEMA 1 (IEC IP20), for use inside NEMA 3 (IEC IP54) or better enclosure

**Removable Screw Terminals**

**Wire size:** 24 to 12 AWG (0.2 to 3.31 mm²)

**Wire strip length:** 7 to 8 mm (0.275 in to 0.315 in)

**Tightening torque:** 0.565 N·m (5.0 in-lb)

**Removable Clamp Terminals**

***Important:*** *Clamp terminals are designed for one wire only. If more than one wire is connected to a terminal, a wire could loosen or become completely disconnected from the terminal, causing a short. If more than one wire is required, a ferrule or an external terminal block should be used.*

**Wire size:** 24 to 16 AWG (0.20 to 1.31 mm²)

**Wire strip length:** 8.00 mm (0.315 in)

**IMPORTANT:** The power supply must meet the requirements for extra low voltages with protective separation (SELV, PELV).

### 5.1.2 XS26-2, SC26-2, and XS26-ISD Base Safety Controller Modules

**Power**

24 V DC ± 20% (incl. ripple), 100 mA no load

**Ethernet models:** add 40 mA

**Display models:** add 20 mA

**Expandable models:** 3.6 A maximum bus load

**Network Interface (Ethernet models only)**

Ethernet 10/100 Base-T/TX, RJ45 modular connector

Selectable auto-negotiate or manual rate and duplex

Auto MDI/MDIX (auto-cross)

**Protocols:**[1] EtherNet/IP™ (with PCCC), Modbus® TCP, PROFINET® (FID 2 or later), and EtherCAT® (requires XSeCAT gateway)

**Data**: 64 configurable virtual Status Outputs on FID 1 XS/SC26 Safety Controllers or 256 virtual Status Outputs on FID 2 or later XS/SC26 Safety Controllers; fault diagnostic codes and messages; access to fault log

[1] EtherNet/IP™ is a trademark of ODVA, Inc.; Modbus® is a registered trademark of Schneider Electric USA, Inc.; PROFINET® is a registered trademark of PROFIBUS Nutzerorganisation e.V.; EtherCAT® is a registered trademark and patented technology, licensed by Beckhoff Automation GmbH, Germany.

**Convertible I/O**

**Sourcing current:** 80 mA maximum (overcurrent protected)

Test Pulses: about 1 ms every 25 ms to 75 ms

**Automatic Terminal Optimization Feature**

Up to two devices

**Test Pulse**

**Width:** 200 µs maximum

**Rate:** 200 ms typical

**Output Protection**

All solid-state outputs (safety and non-safety) are protected from shorts to 0 V or +24 V, including overcurrent conditions

**Safety Ratings**

**PFH [1/h]:** $1.05 \times 10^{-9}$

**Proof Test Interval:** 20 years


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**Safety Inputs (and Convertible I/O when used as inputs)**

**Input ON threshold:** > 15 V DC (guaranteed on), 30 V DC max.

**Input OFF threshold:** < 5 V DC and < 2 mA, –3 V DC min.

**Input ON current:** 5 mA typical at 24 V DC, 50 mA peak contact cleaning current at 24 V DC

**Input lead resistance:** 300 Ω max. (150 Ω per lead)

**Input requirements for a 4-wire Safety Mat:**

- Max. capacity between plates: 0.22 µF
- Max. capacity between bottom plate and ground: 0.22 µF
- Max. resistance between the 2 input terminals of one plate: 20 Ω

**Solid-State Safety Outputs**

0.5 A max. at 24 V DC (1.0 V DC max. drop), 1 A max. inrush

**Output OFF threshold:** 1.7 V DC typical (2.0 V DC max.)

**Output leakage current:** 50 µA max. with open 0 V

**Load:** 0.1 µF max., 1 H max., 10 Ω max. per lead

**Response and Recovery Times**

**Input to Output Response Time (Input Stop to Output Off):** see the Configuration Summary in the Software, as it can vary

**Input Recovery Time (Stop to Run):** ON-Delay (if set) plus 250 ms typical (400 ms maximum)

**Output xA to Output xB turn On differential (used as a pair, not split):** 5 ms max.

**Output X to Output Y turn on Differential (same input, same delay, any module):** 3 scan times + 25 ms maximum

**Virtual Input (Mute Enable and On/Off) Timing (FID 2 or later):** RPI + 200 ms typical

**Virtual Input (Manual Reset and Cancel Delay) Timing (FID 2 or later):** see "Virtual Non-Safety Input Devices" on page 65 for details

**OFF-Delay Tolerance**

The maximum is the response time given in the configuration summary plus 0.02%

The minimum is the configured OFF-Delay time minus 0.02% (assuming no power loss or faults)

**ON-Delay Tolerance**

The maximum is the configured ON-Delay plus 0.02% plus 250 ms typical (400 ms maximum)

The minimum is the configured ON-Delay minus 0.02%

**Certifications**

c UL us LISTED IND. CONT. EQ. 3NVF

UL LISTED Programmable Safety Controller 3NBN

PI CERTIFIED PROFIBUS • PROFINET

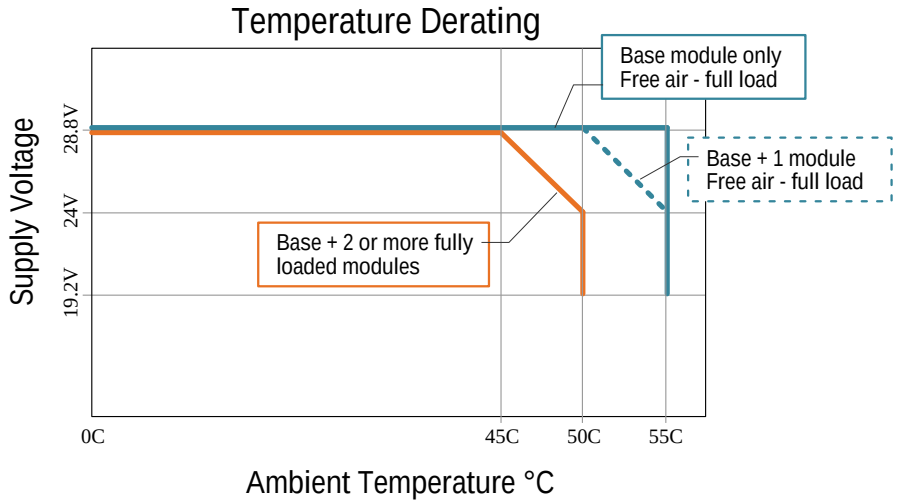
EtherNet/IP

Does not apply to XS26-ISDd.

Banner Engineering BV
Park Lane, Culliganlaan 2F bus 3
1831 Diegem, BELGIUM

UKCA Turck Banner LTD Blenheim House
Blenheim Court
Wickford, Essex SS11 8YT
GREAT BRITAIN

*Figure 12. XS26-ISD Temperature Derating*




## 5.1.3 XS2so and XS4so Solid-State Safety Output Modules

**Solid-State Safety Outputs**

**XS2so:** 0.75 A maximum at 24 V DC (1.0 V DC maximum drop)

**XS4so:** 0.5 A maximum at 24 V DC (1.0 V DC maximum drop)

**Inrush:** 2 A maximum

**Output off threshold:** 1.7 V DC typical (2.0 V DC maximum)

**Output leakage current:** 50 µA maximum with open 0 V

**Load:** 0.1 µF max., 1 H max., 10 Ω maximum per lead

**Safety Ratings**

**PFH [1/h]:** $5.8 \times 10^{-10}$

**Proof Test Interval:** 20 years


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**External Power**

**XS2so:** 24 V DC ± 20% (including ripple); 0.075 A no-load, 3.075 A maximum load

**XS4so:** 24 V DC ± 20% (including ripple); 0.1 A no-load, 4.1 A maximum load

**Maximum Power-up Delay:** 5 seconds after the Base Controller

**Limited Isolation:** ±30 V DC maximum referenced to 0 V on the Base Controller

**Bus Power**

0.02 A

**Test Pulse**

**Width:** 200 µs maximum

**Rate:** 200 ms typical

**Output Protection**

All solid-state outputs (safety and non-safety) are protected from shorts to 0 V or +24 V, including overcurrent conditions

**Certifications**

Banner Engineering BV
Park Lane, Culliganlaan 2F bus 3
1831 Diegem, BELGIUM

Turck Banner LTD Blenheim House
Blenheim Court
Wickford, Essex SS11 8YT
GREAT BRITAIN

## 5.1.4 XS8si and XS16si Safety Input Modules

**Convertible I/O**

**Sourcing current:** 80 mA maximum at 55 °C (131 °F) operating ambient temperature (overcurrent protected)

Test Pulses: about 1 ms every 25 ms to 75 ms

**Bus Power**

**XS8si**: 0.07 A no load; 0.23 A maximum load

**XS16si**: 0.09 A no load; 0.41 A maximum load

**Safety Ratings**

**PFH [1/h]:** $4 \times 10^{-10}$

**Proof Test Interval:** 20 years

**Safety Inputs (and Convertible I/O when used as inputs)**

**Input On threshold:** > 15 V DC (guaranteed on), 30 V DC maximum

**Input Off threshold:** < 5 V DC and < 2 mA, –3 V DC minimum

**Input On current:** 5 mA typical at 24 V DC, 50 mA peak contact cleaning current at 24 V DC

**Input lead resistance:** 300 Ω max. (150 Ω per lead)

**Input requirements for a 4-wire Safety Mat:**

· Maximum capacity between plates: 0.22 µF

· Maximum capacity between bottom plate and ground: 0.22 µF

· Maximum resistance between the 2 input terminals of one plate: 20 Ω

**Output Protection**

The convertible inputs are protected from shorts to 0 V or +24 V, including overcurrent conditions

**Certifications**

Banner Engineering BV
Park Lane, Culliganlaan 2F bus 3
1831 Diegem, BELGIUM

Turck Banner LTD Blenheim House
Blenheim Court
Wickford, Essex SS11 8YT
GREAT BRITAIN

## 5.1.5 XS1ro and XS2ro Safety Relay Modules

**Bus Power**

**XS1ro:** 0.125 A (outputs On)

**XS2ro:** 0.15 A (outputs On)

**Maximum Power**

2000 VA, 240 W

**Electrical Life**

50,000 cycles at full resistive load

**Overvoltage Category**

III

**Safety Ratings**

**PFH [1/h]:** $7.6 \times 10^{-10}$

**Proof Test Interval:** 20 years

**Pollution Degree**

2

**Mechanical Life**

40,000,000 cycles

**NOTE:** Transient suppression is recommended when switching inductive loads. Install suppressors across load. Never install suppressors across output contacts.

**Contact Rating**

**UL/NEMA:**

- **NO Contacts:** 6 A 250 V AC/24 V DC resistive; B300/ Q300 pilot duty
- **NC Contacts:** 2.5 A 150 V AC/24 V DC resistive; Q300 pilot duty

**IEC 60947-5-1:**

- **NO Contacts:** 6 A 250 V AC/DC continuous; AC 15: 3 A 250 V; DC13: 1 A 24 V/4 A 24 V 0.1 Hz
- **NC Contacts:** 2.5 A 150 V AC/DC continuous; AC 15: 1 A 150 V; DC13: 1 A 24 V/4 A 24 V 0.1 Hz


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**B10d Values**

| Voltage | Current | B10d |
|---|---|---|
| 230 V AC | 3 A | 300,000 |
| 230 V AC | 1 A | 750,000 |
| 24 V DC | ≤ 2 A | 1,500,000 |

**Contact Ratings to preserve 5 µm AgNi gold plating**

| | Minimum | Maximum |
|---|---|---|
| **Voltage** | 100 mV AC/DC | 60 V AC/DC |
| **Current** | 1 mA | 300 mA |
| **Power** | 1 mW (1 mVA) | 7 W (7 VA) |

**Required Overcurrent Protection**

**WARNING:** Electrical connections must be made by qualified personnel in accordance with local and national electrical codes and regulations.

Overcurrent protection is required to be provided by end product application per the supplied table.

Overcurrent protection may be provided with external fusing or via Current Limiting, Class 2 Power Supply.

Supply wiring leads < 24 AWG shall not be spliced.

For additional product support, go to www.bannerengineering.com.

| Supply Wiring (AWG) | Required Overcurrent Protection (A) | Supply Wiring (AWG) | Required Overcurrent Protection (A) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 20 | 5.0 | 26 | 1.0 |
| 22 | 3.0 | 28 | 0.8 |
| 24 | 2.0 | 30 | 0.5 |

**Certifications**

Banner Engineering BV
Park Lane, Culliganlaan 2F bus 3
1831 Diegem, BELGIUM

Turck Banner LTD Blenheim House
Blenheim Court
Wickford, Essex SS11 8YT
GREAT BRITAIN

## 5.1.6 XSeCAT EtherCAT Communications Gateway Module

**Network Interface**

EtherCAT® [2]

**Data Transmission Rate:** 100 Mbits/s, 100 Base-T Autosensing

**Connection Type:** Two female RJ-45 connectors

**Mechanical Stress**

**Shock:** 15 *g* for 11 ms, half-sine wave, 18 shocks total (per IEC 61131-2)

**Vibration:** 3.5 mm occasional / 1.75 mm continuous at 5 Hz to 9 Hz, 1.0 *g* occasional and 0.5 *g* continuous at 9 Hz to 150 Hz: all at 10 sweep cycles per axis (per IEC 61131-2)

**EMC**

Meets or exceeds all EMC requirements in IEC 61131-2, IEC 62061 Annex E, Table E.1 (increased immunity levels), IEC 61326-1:2006, and IEC61326-3-1:2008

**Bus Power**

0.06 A

[2] EtherCAT® is a registered trademark and patented technology, licensed by Beckhoff Automation GmbH, Germany.

**Operating Conditions**

**Temperature:** 0 °C to +55 °C (+32 °F to +131 °F)

**Storage Temperature:** –30 °C to +65 °C (–22 °F to +149 °F)

**Humidity:** 90% at +50 °C maximum relative humidity (non-condensing)

**Operating Altitude:** 2000 m maximum (6562 ft maximum) per IEC 61010-1

**Environmental Rating**

NEMA 1 (IEC IP20), for use inside NEMA 3 (IEC IP54) or better enclosure

**Certifications**

# 5.2 SC10-2 Specifications

**Power**

**Voltage:** 24 V DC ±20% (SELV)

**Current:**

240 mA maximum, no-load (relays on)

530 mA maximum, full-load (IO1 to IO4 used as auxiliary outputs)


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**Safety Inputs (and Convertible I/O when used as inputs)**

**Input ON threshold:** > 15 V DC (guaranteed on), 30 V DC maximum

**Input OFF threshold:** < 5 V DC and < 2 mA, –3 V DC minimum

**Input ON current:** 5 mA typical at 24 V DC, 50 mA peak contact cleaning current at 24 V DC

**Input lead resistance:** 300 Ω maximum (150 Ω per lead)

**Input requirements for a 4-wire Safety Mat:**

- Maximum capacity between plates: 0.22 µF[3]
- Maximum capacity between bottom plate and ground: 0.22 µF[3]
- Maximum resistance between the 2 input terminals of one plate: 20 Ω

**Response and Recovery Times**

**Input to Output Response Time (Input Stop to Output Off):** see the Configuration Summary in the Software, as it can vary

**Input Recovery Time (Stop to Run):** ON-Delay (if set) plus 250 ms typical (400 ms maximum)

**Virtual Input (Mute Enable and On/Off) Timing:** RPI + 200 ms typical

**Virtual Input (Manual Reset and Cancel Delay) Timing:** see "Virtual Non-Safety Input Devices" on page 65 for details

[3] If the safety mats share a convertible I/O, this is the total capacitance of all shared safety mats.

**OFF-Delay Tolerance**

The maximum is the response time given in the configuration summary plus 0.02%

The minimum is the configured OFF-delay time minus 0.02% (assuming no power loss or faults)

**ON-Delay Tolerance**

The maximum is the configured ON-delay plus 0.02% plus 250ms typical (400 ms maximum)

The minimum is the configured ON-delay minus 0.02%

**Safety Outputs**

3 NO sets of contacts for each output channel (RO1 and RO2). Each normally open output is a series connection of contacts from two forced-guided (mechanically linked) relays. RO1 consists of relays K1 and K2. RO2 consists of relays K3 and K4.

**Contacts**

AgNi + 0.2 µm gold

**Overvoltage Category**

Output relay contact voltage of 1 V to 150 V AC/DC: Category III Output relay contact voltage of 151 V to 250 V AC/DC: Category II (Category III, if appropriate overvoltage reduction is provided, as described in this document.)

**EMC**

Meets or exceeds all EMC requirements for immunity per IEC 61326-3-1:2012 and emissions per CISPR 11:2004 for Group 1, Class A equipment

**NOTE:** Transient suppression is recommended when switching inductive loads. Install suppressors across load. Never install suppressors across output contacts (see Warning).

**Safety**

Category 4, PL e (EN ISO 13849)

SIL CL 3 (IEC 62061, IEC 61508)

**Safety Ratings**

**PFH [1/h]:** $5.01 \times 10^{-10}$

**Proof Test Interval:** 20 years

**Product Performance Standards**

See "Standards and Regulations" on page 383 for a list of industry applicable U.S. and international standards

**Convertible I/O**

**Sourcing current:** 80 mA maximum (overcurrent protected)

**Test Pulses:** ~1 ms every 25 to 75 ms

**Automatic Terminal Optimization Feature**

Up to three devices connected with user-provided terminal blocks

**Network Interface**

Ethernet 10/100 Base-T/TX, RJ45 modular connector

Selectable auto negotiate or manual rate and duplex

Auto MDI/MDIX (auto cross)

**Protocols:**[4] EtherNet/IP™ (with PCCC), Modbus® TCP, and PROFINET®

**Data**: 256 virtual Status Outputs; fault diagnostic codes and messages; access to fault log

[4] EtherNet/IP™ is a trademark of ODVA, Inc. Modbus® is a registered trademark of Schneider Electric USA, Inc. PROFINET® is a registered trademark of PROFIBUS Nutzerorganisation e.V.

**Operating Conditions**

**Temperature:** 0 °C to +55 °C (+32 °F to +131 °F) (see Temperature Derating graph)

**Storage Temperature:** –30 °C to +65 °C (–22 °F to +149 °F)

**Humidity:** 90% at +50 °C maximum relative humidity (non-condensing)

**Operating Altitude:** 2000 m maximum (6562 ft maximum) per IEC 61010-1

**Environmental Rating**

NEMA 1 (IEC IP20), for use inside NEMA 3 (IEC IP54) or better enclosure

**Mechanical Stress**

**Shock:** 15 g for 11 ms, half-sine wave, 18 shocks total (per IEC 61131-2)

**Vibration:** 3.5 mm occasional / 1.75 mm continuous at 5 Hz to 9 Hz, 1.0 g occasional and 0.5 g continuous at 9 Hz to 150 Hz: all at 10 sweep cycles per axis (per IEC 61131-2)

**Mechanical Life**

20,000,000 cycles

**Electrical Life**

50,000 cycles at full resistive load

**UL Pilot Duty**

B300 Q300

**Push-in Spring Clamp Terminals**

**Wire Size:** 24 to 16 AWG, 0.2 mm² to 2.08 mm²

**IMPORTANT:** Clamp terminals are designed for one wire only. If more than one wire is connected to a terminal, a wire could loosen or become completely disconnected from the terminal, causing a short. Use a stranded wire or a wire with an accompanying ferrule. Tinned wires are not recommended.

After inserting the wire into the terminal, tug the wire to make sure it is properly retained. If the wire is not retained, consider using a different wiring solution.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### B10d Values

| Voltage | Current | B10d |
|---|---|---|
| 230 V AC | 2 A | 350,000 |
| 230 V AC | 1 A | 1,000,000 |
| 24 V DC | ≤ 4 A | 10,000,000 |

### Individual Contact Current Rating

Refer to the Temperature Derating graph when more than one contact output is used.

| | Minimum | Maximum |
|---|---|---|
| Voltage | 10 V AC/DC | 250 V AC / 24 V DC |
| Current | 10 mA AC/DC | 6 A |
| Power | 100 mW (100 mVA) | 200 W (2000 VA) |

### Switching Capacity (IEC 60947-5-1)

| | |
|---|---|
| AC 15 | NO: 250 V AC, 3 A |
| DC 13 | NO: 24 V DC, 2 A |
| DC 13 at 0.1 Hz | NO: 24 V DC, 4 A |

### Required Overcurrent Protection

**WARNING:** Electrical connections must be made by qualified personnel in accordance with local and national electrical codes and regulations.

Overcurrent protection is required to be provided by end product application per the supplied table.

Overcurrent protection may be provided with external fusing or via Current Limiting, Class 2 Power Supply.

Supply wiring leads < 24 AWG shall not be spliced.

For additional product support, go to www.bannerengineering.com.

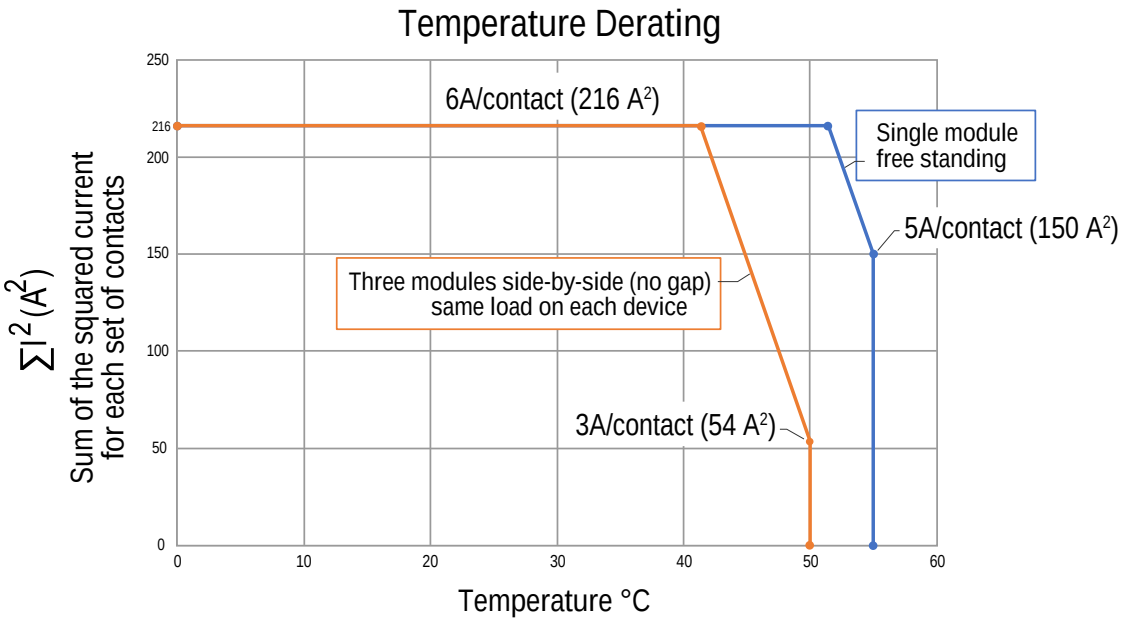
| Supply Wiring (AWG) | Required Overcurrent Protection (A) | Supply Wiring (AWG) | Required Overcurrent Protection (A) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 20 | 5.0 | 26 | 1.0 |
| 22 | 3.0 | 28 | 0.8 |
| 24 | 2.0 | 30 | 0.5 |

### Certifications

Banner Engineering BV
Park Lane, Culliganlaan 2F bus 3
1831 Diegem, BELGIUM

Turck Banner LTD Blenheim House
Blenheim Court
Wickford, Essex SS11 8YT
GREAT BRITAIN

*Figure 13. SC10-2 Temperature Derating*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

| Example Temperature Derating Calculations | |
|---|---|
| **Single Unit, Free Standing** | **Three Modules** |
| $\sum I^2 = I_1{}^2 + I_2{}^2 + I_3{}^2 + I_4{}^2 + I_5{}^2 + I_6{}^2$ | $\sum I^2 = I_1{}^2 + I_2{}^2 + I_3{}^2 + I_4{}^2 + I_5{}^2 + I_6{}^2$ (all six modules) |
| $I_1$ = 4 A (normally open output RO1 channel 1) | $I_1$ = 4 A |
| $I_2$ = 4 A (normally open output RO1 channel 2) | $I_2$ = 4 A |
| $I_3$ = 4 A (normally open output RO1 channel 3) | $I_3$ = 4 A |
| $I_4$ = 4 A (normally open output RO2 channel 4) | $I_4$ = 4 A |
| $I_5$ = 4 A (normally open output RO2 channel 5) | $I_5$ = 4 A |
| $I_6$ = 4 A (normally open output RO2 channel 6) | $I_6$ = 4 A |
| $\sum I^2 = 4^2 + 4^2 + 4^2 + 4^2 + 4^2 + 4^2 = 96\ A^2$ | $\sum I^2 = 4^2 + 4^2 + 4^2 + 4^2 + 4^2 + 4^2 = 96\ A^2$ |
| $T_{max}$ = 55 °C | $T_{max}$ = 46 °C |

## 5.3 Dimensions

All measurements are listed in millimeters [inches], unless noted otherwise. The measurements provided are subject to change.

*Figure 14. XS/SC26 Base Controller Dimensions*

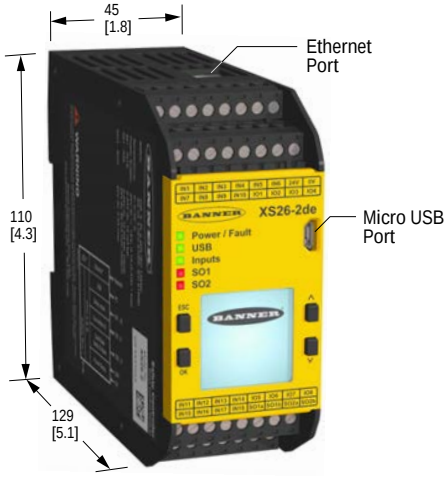
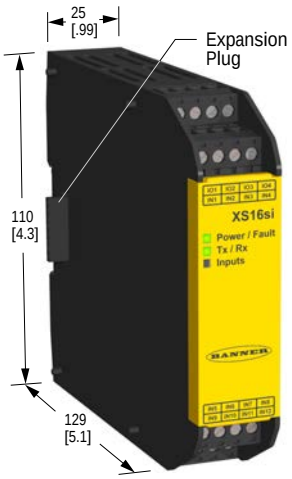



*Figure 15. Expansion Module Dimensions*




Continued on page 31


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 30

*Figure 16. SC10-2 Dimensions*

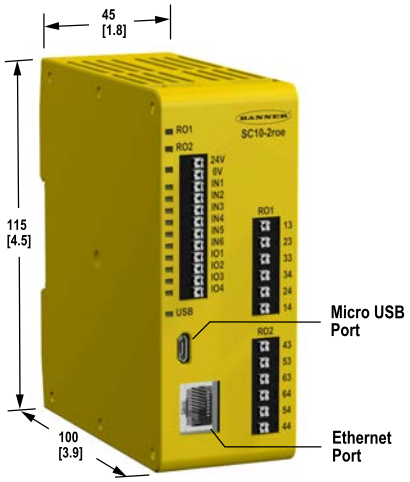
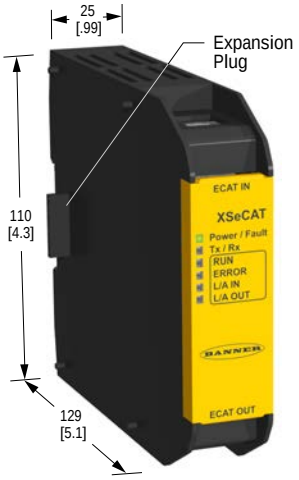



*Figure 17. EtherCAT Module*




# 5.4 PC Requirements

**IMPORTANT:** Administrative rights are required to install the Safety Controller drivers (needed for communication with the Safety Controller).

**Operating system**
Microsoft Windows 7, Windows 10, or Windows 11[5]

**System type**
32-bit, 64-bit

**Hard drive space**
80 MB (plus up to 280 MB for Microsoft .NET 4.0, if not already installed)

**Memory (RAM)**
512 MB minimum, 1 GB+ recommended

[5] Microsoft and Windows are trademarks of the Microsoft group of companies.

**Processor**
1 GHz minimum, 2 GHz+ recommended

**Screen resolution**
1024 × 768 full color minimum, 1650 × 1050 full color recommended

**Third-party software**
Microsoft .NET 4.0 (included with installer), PDF Viewer (such as Adobe Acrobat)

**USB port**
USB 2.0 (not required to build configurations)

The computer must have an available Ethernet interface.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

6.1 Installing the Software ..... 32
6.2 Installing the Safety Controller ..... 32
6.3 Electrical Installation ..... 33

# Chapter 6 System Installation

## 6.1 Installing the Software

**IMPORTANT:** Administrative rights are required to install the Safety Controller drivers (needed for communication with the Safety Controller).

1. Download the latest version of the software from www.bannerengineering.com/safetycontroller.
2. Navigate to and open the downloaded file.
3. Click **Next** to begin the installation process.
4. Confirm the software destination and availability for users and click **Next**.
5. Click **Install** to install the software.
6. Depending on your system settings, a popup window may appear prompting to allow the Banner Safety Controller software to make changes to your computer. Click **Yes**.
7. Click **Finish** to exit the installer.

Open the **Banner Safety Controller** software from the **Desktop** or the **Start Menu**.

## 6.2 Installing the Safety Controller

Do not exceed the operating specifications for reliable operation. The enclosure must provide adequate heat dissipation so that the air closely surrounding the Safety Controller does not exceed its maximum operating temperature (see "Specifications and Requirements " on page 24).

**IMPORTANT:** Mount the Safety Controller in a location that is free from large shocks and high-amplitude vibration.

**IMPORTANT:**
- **Electrostatic discharge (ESD) sensitive device**
- ESD can damage the device. Damage from inappropriate handling is not covered by warranty.
- Use proper handling procedures to prevent ESD damage. Proper handling procedures include leaving devices in their anti-static packaging until ready for use; wearing anti-static wrist straps; and assembling units on a grounded, static-dissipative surface.

### 6.2.1 Mounting Instructions

The Safety Controller mounts to a standard 35 mm DIN-rail track. It must be installed inside an enclosure rated NEMA 3 (IEC IP54) or better. It should be mounted to a vertical surface with the vent openings at the bottom and the top to allow for natural convection cooling.

Follow the mounting instructions to avoid damage to the Safety Controller.

To **mount** the SC26-2 Programmable Safety Controller, XS26-2 Programmable Safety Controller, XS26-ISD Programmable Safety Controller, XS2so and XS4so Solid-State Safety Output Modules, XS8si and XS16si Safety Input Modules, XS1ro and XS2ro Safety Relay Modules, XSeCAT EtherCAT Communication Gateway Module, and SC10-2 Safety Controller:

1. Tilt the top of the module slightly backward and place it on the DIN rail.
2. Straighten the module against the rail.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

3. Lower the module onto the rail.

**NOTE:** If using an EtherCAT module, it must be the first module in the chain, next to the Base Controller.

To **remove** the SC26-2 Programmable Safety Controller, XS26-2 Programmable Safety Controller, XS26-ISD Programmable Safety Controller, XS2so and XS4so Solid-State Safety Output Modules, XS8si and XS16si Safety Input Modules, XS1ro and XS2ro Safety Relay Modules, XSeCAT EtherCAT Communication Gateway Module, and SC10-2 Safety Controller:

1. Push up on the bottom of the module.
2. Tilt the top of the module slightly forward.
3. Lower the module after the top rigid clip is clear of the DIN rail.

**NOTE:** To remove an expansion module or communication gateway, pull apart other modules on each side of the desired module to free bus connectors.

## 6.3 Electrical Installation

The Safety Controller must be installed inside an electrical enclosure.

Follow proper electrical procedures when working on the Safety Controller. The following must be observed, depending on the type of connection:

- Turn off the power supply to the Safety Controller before starting work on the Controller (connecting modules or wiring the units)
- Use only a voltage-free connection of the network cable to the Safety Controller
- Apply power only after all electrical connections have been established


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

7.1 Appropriate Application ..... 34
7.2 XS/SC26 Applications ..... 34
7.3 SC10-2 Applications ..... 35
7.4 Safety Input Devices ..... 36
7.5 Safety Input Device Options ..... 40
7.6 Non-Safety Input Devices ..... 62
7.7 Virtual Non-Safety Input Devices ..... 65
7.8 Safety Outputs ..... 68
7.9 **XS/SC26** ..... 68
7.10 SC10-2 ..... 69
7.11 **XS/SC26 and SC10-2** ..... 69
7.12 Linking Outputs ..... 70
7.13 Status Outputs ..... 83
7.14 Virtual Status Outputs ..... 86

# Chapter 7 Installation Considerations

## 7.1 Appropriate Application

The correct application of the Safety Controller depends on the type of machine and the safeguards that are to be interfaced with the Safety Controller. **If there is any concern about whether or not your machinery is compatible with this Safety Controller, contact Banner Engineering Corp..**

**Read this Section Carefully Before Installing the System.**

The Safety Controller is a control device that is intended to be used in conjunction with a machine safeguarding device. Its ability to perform this function depends upon the appropriateness of the application and upon the Safety Controller's proper mechanical and electrical installation and interfacing with the machine to be guarded.

If all mounting, installation, interfacing, and checkout procedures are not followed properly, the Safety Controller cannot provide the protection for which it was designed. The user is responsible for satisfying all local, state, and national laws, rules, codes, or regulations relating to the installation and use of this control system in any particular application. Make sure that all safety requirements have been met and that all technical installation and maintenance instructions contained in this document are followed.



**WARNING:**

- **Not a stand-alone safeguarding device**
- Failure to properly safeguard hazards according to a risk assessment, local regulations, and applicable standards might lead to serious injury or death.
- This Banner Engineering Corp. device is considered complementary equipment that is used to augment safeguarding that limits or eliminates an individual's exposure to a hazard without action by the individual or others.



**WARNING:**

- **User Is Responsible for Safe Application of this device**
- The application examples described in this document depict generalized guarding situations. Every guarding application has a unique set of requirements.
- Make sure that all safety requirements are met and that all installation instructions are followed. Direct any questions regarding safeguarding to Banner Engineering Corp. at the number or addresses listed this document.

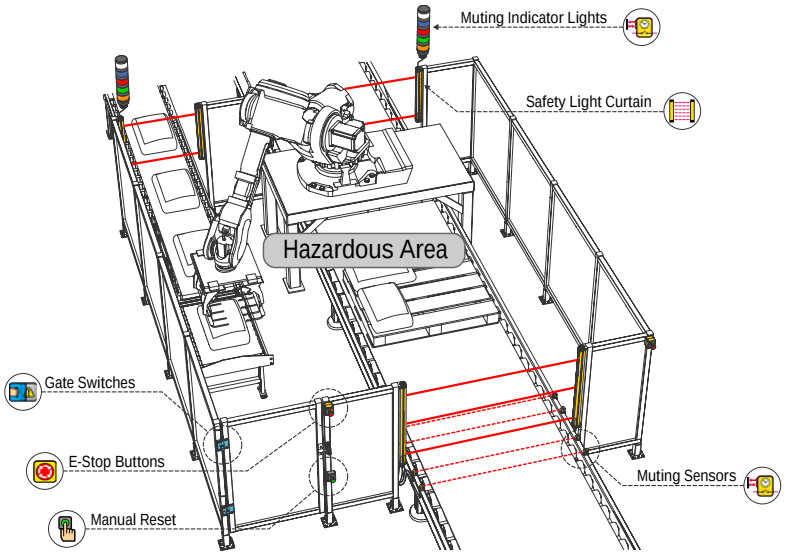
## 7.2 XS/SC26 Applications

The Safety Controller can be used wherever safety modules are used. The Safety Controller is well suited to address many types of applications, including, but not limited to:


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- Two-hand control with mute function
- Robot weld/processing cells with dual-zone muting
- Material-handling operations that require multiple inputs and bypass functions
- Manually loaded rotary loading stations
- Multiple two-hand-control station applications
- Lean manufacturing stations
- Dynamic monitoring of single- or dual-solenoid valves or press safety valves

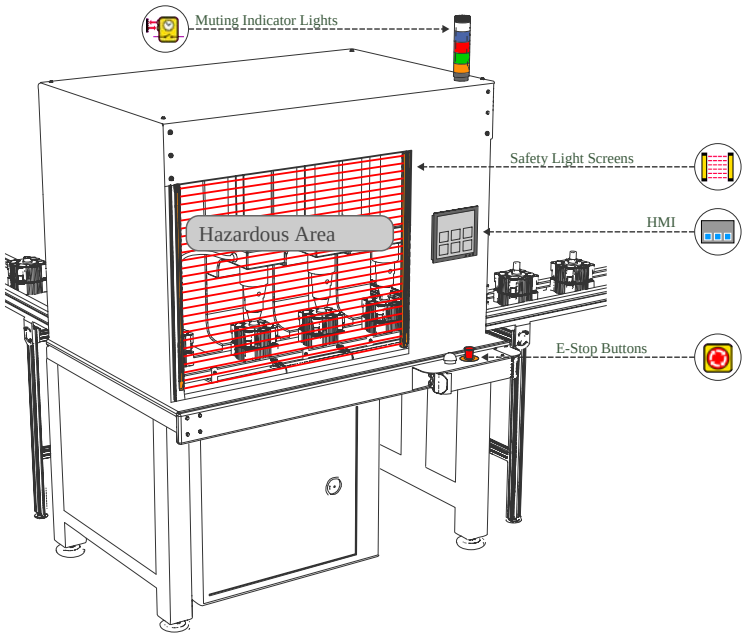
*Figure 18. Sample Application - Robotic Cell*




# 7.3 SC10-2 Applications

The SC10-2 Safety Controller is ideal for a small to medium size machine that would typically use two independent safety relay modules.

*Figure 19. SC10-2 Sample Application*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 7.4 Safety Input Devices

The Safety Controller monitors the state of the safety input devices that are connected to it. In general, when all of the input devices that have been configured to control a particular Safety Output are in the Run state, the Safety Output turns or remains On. When one or more of the safety input devices change from Run state to Stop state, the Safety Output turns Off. A few special safety input device functions can, under predefined circumstances, temporarily suspend the safety input stop signal to keep the Safety Output On, for example, muting or bypassing.

The Safety Controller can detect input faults with certain input circuits that would otherwise result in a loss of the control of the safety function. When such faults are detected, the Safety Controller turns the associated outputs Off until the faults are cleared. The function blocks used in the configuration impact the safety outputs. It is necessary to carefully review the configuration if the input device faults occur.

Methods to eliminate or minimize the possibility of these faults include, but are not limited to:

- Physically separating the interconnecting control wires from each other and from secondary sources of power
- Routing interconnecting control wires in separate conduit, runs, or channels
- Locating all control elements (Safety Controller, interface modules, FSDs, and MPCEs) within one control panel, adjacent to each other, and directly connected with short wires
- Properly installing multi-conductor cabling and multiple wires through strain-relief fittings. Over-tightening of a strain-relief can cause short circuits at that point
- Using positive-opening or direct-opening components, as described by IEC 60947-5-1, that are installed and mounted in a positive mode
- Periodically checking the functional integrity/safety function
- Training the operators, maintenance personnel, and others involved with operating the machine and the safeguarding to recognize and immediately correct all failures

**NOTE:** Follow the device manufacturer's installation, operation, and maintenance instructions and all relevant regulations. If there are any questions about the device(s) that are connected to the Safety Controller, contact Banner Engineering Corp. for assistance.

*Figure 20. XS/SC26 Terminal Locations*

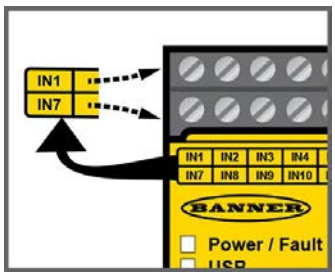
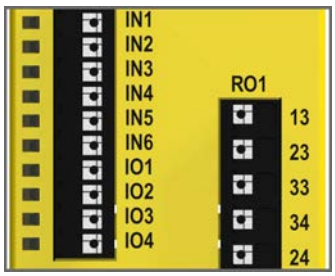



*Figure 21. SC10-2 Terminal Locations*




**WARNING:**

- **Input Device and Safety Integrity**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- The Safety Controller can monitor many different safety input devices. The user must conduct a Risk Assessment of the guarding application to determine what Safety Integrity Level needs to be reached to know how to properly connect the input devices to the Safety Controller.
- The user must also eliminate or minimize possible input signal faults/failures that may result in the loss of the safety functions.

## 7.4.1 Safety Circuit Integrity and ISO 13849-1 Safety Circuit Principles

Safety circuits involve the safety-related functions of a machine that minimize the level of risk of harm. These safety-related functions can prevent initiation, or they can stop or remove a hazard. The failure of a safety-related function or its associated safety circuit usually results in an increased risk of harm.

The integrity of a safety circuit depends on several factors, including fault tolerance, risk reduction, reliable and well-tried components, well-tried safety principles, and other design considerations.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Depending on the level of risk associated with the machine or its operation, an appropriate level of safety circuit integrity (performance) must be incorporated into its design. Standards that detail safety performance levels include ANSI B11.19 Performance Criteria for Safeguarding and ISO 13849-1 Safety-Related Parts of a Control System.

## Safety Circuit Integrity Levels

Safety circuits in International and European standards have been segmented into Categories and Performance Levels, depending on their ability to maintain their integrity in the event of a failure and the statistical likelihood of that failure. ISO 13849-1 details safety circuit integrity by describing circuit architecture/structure (Categories) and the required performance level (PL) of safety functions under foreseeable conditions.

In the United States, the typical level of safety circuit integrity has been called "Control Reliability". Control Reliability typically incorporates redundant control and self-checking circuitry and has been loosely equated to ISO 13849-1 Category 3 or 4 and/or Performance Level “d” or “e” (see ANSI B11.19).

Perform a risk assessment to ensure appropriate application, interfacing/hookup, and risk reduction (see ANSI B11.0 or ISO 12100). The risk assessment must be performed to determine the appropriate safety circuit integrity in order to ensure that the expected risk reduction is achieved. This risk assessment must take into account all local regulations and relevant standards, such as U.S. Control Reliability or European "C" level standards.

The Safety Controller inputs can support up to Category 4 PL e (ISO 13849-1) and Safety Integrity Level 3 (IEC 61508 and IEC 62061) interfacing/hookup. The actual safety circuit integrity level is dependent on the configuration, proper installation of external circuitry, and the type and installation of the safety input devices. The user is responsible for the determination of the overall safety rating(s) and full compliance with all applicable regulations and standards.

The following sections deal only with Category 2, Category 3, and Category 4 applications, as described in ISO 13849-1. The input device circuits shown in the table below are commonly used in safeguarding applications, though other solutions are possible depending on fault exclusion and the risk assessment. The table below shows the input device circuits and the safety category level that is possible if all of the fault detection and fault exclusion requirements are met.



**WARNING:**

- **Determine the safety category**
- The design and installation of the safety devices and the means of interfacing of those devices could greatly affect the level of safety circuit integrity.
- Perform a risk assessment to determine the appropriate safety circuit integrity level or safety category, as described by ISO 13849-1, to ensure that the expected risk reduction is achieved and that all applicable regulations and standards are met.



**WARNING:**

- **For input devices with dual contact inputs using two or three terminals, detecting a short between two input channels (contact inputs, but not complementary contacts) is not possible if the two contacts are closed.**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- A short can be detected when the input is in the Stop state for at least two (2) seconds (see the **INx & IOx input terminals** Tip in "Safety Input Device Options" on page 40).



**WARNING:**

- **Category 2 or 3 Input Shorts**
- It is not possible to detect a short between two input channels (contact inputs, but not complementary contacts) if they are supplied through the same source (for example, the same terminal from the Safety Controller in a dual-channel, 3-terminal wiring, or from an external 24 V supply) and the two contacts are closed.
- Such a short can be detected only when both contacts are open and the short is present for at least two (2) seconds.

## Fault Exclusion

An important concept within the requirements of ISO 13849-1 is the probability of the occurrence of a failure, which can be reduced using a technique termed "fault exclusion." The rationale assumes that the possibility of certain well-defined


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

failure(s) can be reduced via design, installation, or technical improbability to a point where the resulting fault(s) can be, for the most part, disregarded—that is, "excluded" in the evaluation.

Fault exclusion is a tool a designer can use during the development of the safety-related part of the control system and the risk assessment process. Fault exclusion allows the designer to design out the possibility of various failures and justify it through the risk assessment process to meet the requirements of ISO 13849-1/-2.

Requirements vary widely for the level of safety circuit integrity in safety applications (that is, Control Reliability or Category/ Performance Level) per ISO 13849-1. Although Banner Engineering Corp. always recommends the highest level of safety in any application, the user is responsible to safely install, operate, and maintain each safety system and comply with all relevant laws and regulations.

**WARNING:**

- **Determine the safety category**
- The design and installation of the safety devices and the means of interfacing of those devices could greatly affect the level of safety circuit integrity.
- Perform a risk assessment to determine the appropriate safety circuit integrity level or safety category, as described by ISO 13849-1, to ensure that the expected risk reduction is achieved and that all applicable regulations and standards are met.

## 7.4.2 Safety Input Device Properties

The Safety Controller is configured via the Software to accommodate many types of safety input devices. See "Adding Inputs and Status Outputs " on page 88 for more information on input device configuration.

### Reset Logic: Manual or Automatic Reset

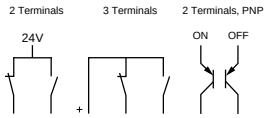
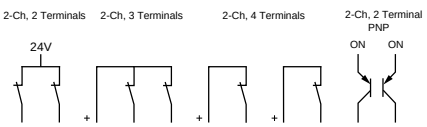
A manual reset may be required for safety input devices by using a Latch Reset Block or configuring a safety output for a latch reset before the safety output(s) they control are permitted to turn back On. This is sometimes referred to as “latch” mode because the safety output “latches” to the Off state until a reset is performed. If a safety input device is configured for automatic reset or “trip” mode, the safety output(s) it controls will turn back On when the input device changes to the Run state (provided that all other controlling inputs are also in the Run state).

### Connecting the Input Devices

The Safety Controller needs to know what device signal lines are connected to which wiring terminals so that it can apply the proper signal monitoring methods, Run and Stop conventions, and timing and fault rules. The terminals are assigned automatically during the configuration process and can be changed manually using the Software.

### Signal Change-of-State Types

Two change of state (COS) types can be used when monitoring dual-channel safety input device signals: simultaneous (also simultaneity) or concurrent.

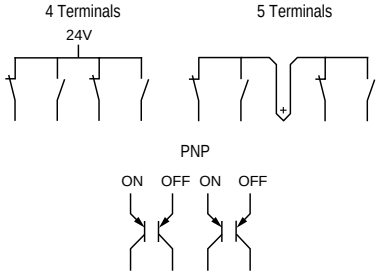
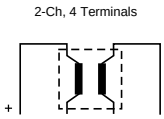
| Input Circuit | Input Signal COS Timing Rules | |
|---|---|---|
| | Stop State—SO turns Off when[6]: | Run State—SO turns On when[7]: |
| **Dual-Channel A and B Complementary**<br> | At least 1 channel (A or B) input is in the Stop state. | **Simultaneous:** A and B are both in the Stop state and then both switch to the Run state within 3 seconds before outputs turn On.<br>**Concurrent:** A and B concurrently switch to the Stop state, then both switch to the Run state with no simultaneity to turn outputs On. |
| **Dual-Channel A and B**<br> | | |

Continued on page 39

[6] Safety Outputs turn Off when one of the controlling inputs is in the Stop state.
[7] Safety Outputs turn On only when all of the controlling inputs are in the Run state and after a manual reset is performed (if any safety inputs are configured for manual reset and were in their Stop state).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 38

| Input Circuit | Input Signal COS Timing Rules | |
|---|---|---|
| | Stop State—SO turns Off when: | Run State—SO turns On when: |
| **2X Complementary A and B**<br><br> | At least 1 channel (A or B) within a pair of contacts is in the Stop state. | **Simultaneous:** A and B are concurrently in the Stop state, then the contacts within a channel switch to the Run state within 400 ms (150 ms for two-hand control), both channels are in the Run state within 3 seconds (0.5 seconds for two-hand control).<br>**Concurrent:** A and B are concurrently in the Stop state. Contacts within a single-channel switch to the Run state within 3 seconds. There is no simultaneity requirement between the switching of channel A and channel B. |
| **4-Wire Safety Mat**<br><br> | One of the following conditions is met:<br>• Input channels are shorted together (normal operation)<br>• At least one of the wires is disconnected<br>• One of the normally low channels is detected high<br>• One of the normally high channels is detected low | Each channel detects its own pulses. |

## Signal Debounce Times

**Closed-to-Open Debounce Time (from 6 ms to 1000 ms in 1 ms intervals, except 6 ms to 1500 ms for mute sensors).** The closed-open debounce time is the time limit required for the input signal to transition from the high (24 V DC) state to the steady low (0 V DC) state. This time limit may need to be increased in cases where high-magnitude device vibration, impact shock, or switch noise conditions result in a need for longer signal transition times. If the debounce time is set too short under these harsh conditions, the system may detect a signal disparity fault and lock out. The default setting is 6 ms.

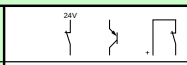
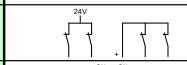
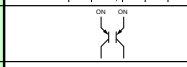
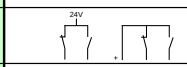
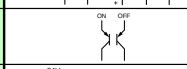
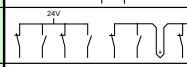
**CAUTION: Debounce and Response—Any changes in the debounce times may affect the Safety Output response (turn OFF) time.** This value is computed and displayed for each Safety Output when a configuration is created.

**Open-to-Closed Debounce Time (from 10 ms to 1000 ms in 1 ms intervals, except 10 ms to 1500 ms for mute sensors).** The open-closed debounce time is the time limit required for the input signal to transition from the low (0 V DC) state to the steady high (24 V DC) state. This time limit may need to be increased in cases where high magnitude device vibration, impact shock, or switch noise conditions result in a need for longer signal transition times. If the debounce time is set too short under these harsh conditions, the system may detect a signal disparity fault and lock out. The default setting is 50 ms.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 7.5 Safety Input Device Options

*Figure 22. Input Device Circuit—Safety Category Guide*

| General Circuit Symbols | | Circuits shown in Run State | | | | | | | Circuits shown in Stop State | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | ES | GS | OS | RP | PS | SM | ISD | THC | ED |
| **1 & 2 Terminal Single Channel** (see note 1) |  | Cat 2 | Cat 2 | Cat 2 | Cat 2 | Cat 2 | | | | |
| **2 & 3 Terminal Dual Channel** (see note 2) |  | Cat 3 | Cat 3 | Cat 3 | Cat 3 | Cat 3 | | | Type IIIa Cat 1<br>Type IIIb Cat 3 | Cat 3 |
| **2 Terminal Dual Channel PNP w/ integral monitoring** (see note 3) |  | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | | Cat 4 | Type IIIa Cat 1 | Cat 4 |
| **3 & 4 Terminal Dual Channel** (see notes 2 & 4) |  | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | | | Type IIIa Cat 1<br>Type IIIb Cat 3 | Cat 4 |
| **2 & 3 Terminal Dual Channel Complementary** |  | | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | | | | Cat 4 |
| **2 Terminal Dual Channel Complementary PNP** |  | | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | Cat 4 | | | | Cat 4 |
| **4 & 5 Terminal Dual Channel Complementary** |  | | Cat 4 | | | | | | Type IIIc Cat 4 | Cat 4 |
| **4 Terminal Dual Channel Complementary PNP** |  | | Cat 4 | | | | | | Type IIIc Cat 4 | Cat 4 |
| **4 Terminal Safety Mat** |  | | | | | | Cat 3 | | | |

**NOTE:**

1. Circuit typically meets up to ISO 13849-1 Category 2 if input devices are safety rated and fault exclusion wiring practices prevent a) shorts across the contacts or solid-state devices and b) shorts to other power sources.
2. Circuit typically meets up to ISO 13849-1 Category 3 if input devices are safety rated (see **Tip: INx &IOx input terminals**, following). The 2 Terminal circuit detects a single-channel short to other power sources when the contacts open and close again (concurrency fault). The 3 Terminal circuit detects a short to other power sources whether the contacts are open or closed.
3. Circuit meets up to ISO 13849-1 Category 4 if input devices are safety rated and provide internal monitoring of the PNP outputs to detect a) shorts across channels and b) shorts to other power sources.
4. Circuit meets up to ISO 13849-1 Category 4 if input devices are safety rated (see **Tip: INx & IOx input terminals** above). These circuits can detect both shorts to other power sources and shorts between channels.

**CAUTION:**

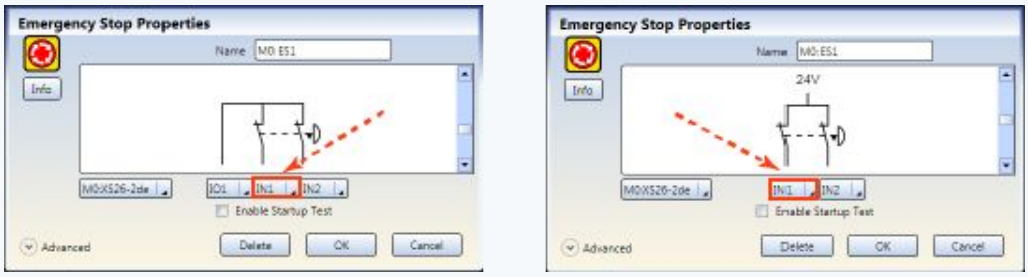
- **Incomplete installation information**
- Many installation considerations necessary to properly apply these devices are not covered by this document.
- Refer to the appropriate device installation instructions to ensure the safe application of the device.

**WARNING:** This table lists the highest safety categories possible for common safety-rated input device circuits. If the additional requirements stated in the following notes are not possible due to safety device or installation limitations, or if, for example, the Safety Controller's IOx input terminals are all in use, then the highest safety category may not be possible.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**TIP: INx & IOx input terminals**, these circuits can be manually configured to meet Category 4 circuit requirements by changing the first (left most) standard input terminal (INx) to any available convertible terminal (IOx) as shown below. These circuits will detect shorts to other power sources and between channels when the input has been in the Stop state for at least 2 seconds.

*Figure 23. Manually Configured Circuits*




## 7.5.1 Safety Circuit Integrity Levels

The application requirements for safeguarding devices vary for the level of control reliability or safety category per ISO 13849-1. While Banner Engineering Corp. always recommends the highest level of safety in any application, the user is responsible to safely install, operate, and maintain each safety system and comply with all relevant laws and regulations.

The safety performance (integrity) must reduce the risk from identified hazards as determined by the machine's risk assessment. See "Safety Circuit Integrity and ISO 13849-1 Safety Circuit Principles" on page 36 for guidance.

## 7.5.2 Emergency Stop Push Buttons

The Safety Controller safety inputs may be used to monitor Emergency Stop (E-stop) push buttons.

**WARNING:**
- **Do not mute or bypass any emergency stop device**
- Muting or bypassing the safety outputs renders the emergency stop function ineffective.
- ANSI B11.19, NFPA 79 and IEC/EN 60204-1 require that the emergency stop function remains active at all times.

**WARNING:**
- **Configuration Conforms to Applicable Standards**
- Failure to verify the application may result in serious injury or death.
- The Banner Safety Controller Software primarily checks the logic configuration for connection errors. The user is responsible for verifying the application meets the risk assessment requirements and that it conforms to all applicable standards.

**WARNING:**
- **Reset routine required**
- Failure to prevent the machine from restarting without actuating the normal start command/device can create an unsafe condition that could result in serious injury or death.
- Do not allow the machine to restart without actuating the normal start command/device. Perform the reset routine after clearing the cause of a stop condition, as required by U.S. and international standards.

In addition to the requirements stated in this section, the design and installation of the Emergency Stop device must comply with NFPA 79 or ISO 13850. The stop function must be either a functional stop Category 0 or a Category 1 (see NFPA79).

### Emergency Stop Push Button Requirements

The E-stop switch must provide one or two contacts for safety which are closed when the switch is armed. When activated, the E-stop switch must open all its safety-rated contacts, and must require a deliberate action (such as twisting, pulling, or unlocking) to return to the closed-contact, armed position. The switch must be a positive-opening (or direct-opening) type, as


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

described by IEC 60947-5-1. A mechanical force applied to such a button (or switch) is transmitted directly to the contacts, forcing them to open. This ensures that the switch contacts open whenever the switch is activated.

Standards NFPA 79, ANSI B11.19, IEC/EN 60204-1, and ISO 13850 specify additional emergency stop switch device requirements, including the following:

- Emergency Stop push buttons must be located at each operator control station and at other operating stations where emergency shutdown is required
- Stop and Emergency Stop push buttons must be continuously operable and readily accessible from all control and operating stations where located. **Do not mute or bypass any E-stop button**
- Actuators of emergency stop devices must be colored red. The background immediately around the device actuator must be colored yellow. The actuator of a push-button-operated device must be of the palm or mushroom-head type
- The emergency stop actuator must be a self-latching type

> **NOTE:** Some applications may have additional requirements; the user is responsible to comply with all relevant regulations.

> **NOTE:** For Banner Lighted E-stop buttons with ISD, see also " ISD Inputs" on page 53. The user must ensure the input is not muted or bypassed. This is because the controller applies gate switch rules because the E-stop is added as device type: ISD input, and then selected as an emergency stop.

## 7.5.3  Rope (Cable) Pull

Rope (cable) pull emergency stop switches use steel wire rope; they provide emergency stop actuation continuously over a distance, such as along a conveyor.

Rope pull emergency stop switches have many of the same requirements as Emergency Stop push buttons, such as positive (direct) opening operation, as described by IEC 60947-5-1. See " Emergency Stop Push Buttons" on page 41 for additional information.

In emergency stop applications, the rope pull switches must have the capability not only to react to a pull in any direction, but also to a slack or a break of the rope. Emergency stop rope pull switches also need to provide a latching function that requires a manual reset after actuation.

### Rope (Cable) Pull Installation Guidelines

NFPA 79, ANSI B11.19, IEC/EN 60204-1, and ISO 13850 specify emergency stop requirements for rope (cable) pull installations, including the following:

- Rope (cable) pulls must be located where emergency shutdown is required
- Rope (cable) pulls must be continuously operable, easily visible, and readily accessible; do not mute or bypass
- Rope (cable) pulls must provide constant tension of the rope (cable) pull
- Rope (cable) pulls, as well as any flags or markers, must be colored red
- Rope (cable) pulls must have the capability to react to a force in any direction
- The switch must:
  - Have a self-latching function that requires a manual reset after actuation
  - Have a direct opening operation
  - Detect a slack condition or a break of the rope (cable)

**Additional installation guidelines:**

- The wire rope (cable) should be easily accessible, red in color for E-Stop functions, and visible along its entire length. Markers or flags may be fixed on the rope (cable) to increase its visibility
- Mounting points, including support points, must be rigid and allow sufficient space around the rope (cable) to allow easy access
- The rope (cable) should be free of friction at all supports. Pulleys are recommended. Lubrication may be necessary. Contamination of the system, such as dirt, metal chips or swarf, etc., must be prevented from adversely affecting operation
- Use only pulleys (not eye bolts) when routing the rope (cable) around a corner or whenever direction changes, even slightly
- Never run rope (cable) through conduit or other tubing
- Never attach weights to the rope (cable)
- A tensioning spring is recommended to ensure compliance with direction-independent actuation of the wire rope (cable) and must be installed on the load-bearing structure (machine frame, wall, etc.)


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- Temperature affects rope (cable) tension. The wire rope (cable) expands (lengthens) when temperature increases, and contracts (shrinks) when temperature decreases. Significant temperature variations require frequent checks of the tension adjustment

**WARNING:**
- **Properly install the device**
- Failure to follow the installation instructions can result in ineffective or non-operation of the Banner Engineering Corp. device, which could create an unsafe condition resulting in serious injury or death.
- Follow all installation instructions.

## 7.5.4  Enabling Device

An enabling device is a manually operated control which, when continuously actuated, allows a machine cycle to be initiated in conjunction with a start control. Standards that cover the design and application of enabling devices include: ISO 12100-1/-2, IEC 60204-1, NFPA 79, ANSI/RIA R15.06, and ANSI B11.19.

The enabling device actively controls the suspension of a Stop signal during a portion of a machine operation where a hazard may occur. The enabling device permits a hazardous portion of the machine to run, but must not start it. An enabling device can control one or more safety outputs. When the enable signal switches from the Stop state to the Run state, the Safety Controller enters the Enable mode. A separate machine command signal from another device is needed to start the hazardous motion. **This enabling device must have ultimate hazard turn Off or Stop authority.**

## 7.5.5  Protective (Safety) Stop

A Protective (Safety) Stop is designed for the connection of miscellaneous devices that could include safeguarding (protective) devices and complementary equipment. This stop function is a type of interruption of operation that allows an orderly cessation of motion for safeguarding purposes. The function can be reset or activated either automatically or manually.

### Protective (Safety) Stop Requirements

The required safety circuit integrity level is determined by a risk assessment and indicates the level of control performance that is acceptable, for example, category 4, Control Reliability (see "Safety Circuit Integrity and ISO 13849-1 Safety Circuit Principles" on page 36). The protective stop circuit must control the safeguarded hazard by causing a stop of the hazardous situation(s) and removing power from the machine actuators within the safety function response time. This functional stop typically meets category 0 or 1 as described by NFPA 79 and IEC60204-1.

## 7.5.6  Interlocked Guard or Gate

The Safety Controller safety inputs may be used to monitor electrically interlocked guards or gates.

### Safety Interlock Switch Requirements

The following general requirements and considerations apply to the installation of interlocked guards and gates for the purpose of safeguarding. In addition, the user must refer to the relevant regulations to ensure compliance with all necessary requirements.

Hazards guarded by the interlocked guard must be prevented from operating until the guard is closed; a stop command must be issued to the guarded machine if the guard opens while the hazard is present. Closing the guard must not, by itself, initiate hazardous motion; a separate procedure must be required to initiate the motion. The safety interlock switches must not be used as a mechanical or end-of-travel stop.

The guard must be located an adequate distance from the danger zone (so that the hazard has time to stop before the guard is opened sufficiently to provide access to the hazard), and it must open either laterally or away from the hazard, not into the safeguarded area. The guard also should not be able to close by itself and activate the interlocking circuitry. In addition, the installation must prevent personnel from reaching over, under, around, or through the guard to the hazard. Any openings in the guard must not allow access to the hazard (see OSHA 29CFR1910.217 Table O-10, ANSI B11.19, ISO 13857, EN ISO14120 or the appropriate standard). The guard must be strong enough to contain hazards within the guarded area, which may be ejected, dropped, or emitted by the machine.

The safety interlock switches, actuators, sensors, and magnets must be designed and installed so that they cannot be easily defeated. They must be mounted securely so that their physical position cannot shift, using reliable fasteners that require a


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

tool to remove them. Mounting slots in the housings are for initial adjustment only; final mounting holes must be used for permanent location.

**WARNING:** If the application could result in a pass-through hazard (for example, perimeter guarding), either the safeguarding device or the guarded machine's MSCs/MPCEs must cause a Latched response following a Stop command (for example, interruption of the sensing field of a light curtain, or opening of an interlocked gate/guard). The reset of this Latched condition may only be achieved by actuating a reset switch that is separate from the normal means of machine cycle initiation. The switch must be positioned as described in this document.

**WARNING:**

- **Perimeter guarding applications**
- Failure to observe this warning could result in serious injury or death.
- Use lockout/tagout procedures per ANSI Z244.1, or use additional safeguarding as described by ANSI B11.19 safety requirements or other applicable standards if a passthrough hazard cannot be eliminated or reduced to an acceptable level of risk.

## 7.5.7  Optical Sensor

The Safety Controller safety inputs may be used to monitor optical-based devices that use light as a means of detection.

### Optical Sensor Requirements

When used as safeguarding devices, optical sensors are described by IEC61496-1/-2/-3 as Active Opto-electronic Protective Devices (AOPD) and Active Opto-electronic Protective Devices responsive to Diffuse Reflection (AOPDDR).

AOPDs include safety light curtains and safety grids and points (multiple-/single-beam devices). These devices generally meet Type 2 or Type 4 design requirements. A Type 2 device is allowed to be used in a Category 2 application, per ISO 13849-1, and a Type 4 device can be used in a Category 4 application.

AOPDDRs include area or laser scanners. The primary designation for these devices is a Type 3, for use in up to Category 3 applications.

Optical safety devices must be placed at an appropriate safety distance (minimum distance), according to the application standards. Refer to the applicable standards and to manufacturer documentation specific to your device for the appropriate calculations. The response time of the Safety Controller outputs to each safety input is provided on the **Configuration Summary** tab in the Software.

If the application includes a pass-through hazard (a person could pass through the optical device beams and stand undetected on the hazard side), other safeguarding may be required, and manual reset should be selected (see "Manual Reset Input" on page 63).

**WARNING:** If the application could result in a pass-through hazard (for example, perimeter guarding), either the safeguarding device or the guarded machine's MSCs/MPCEs must cause a Latched response following a Stop command (for example, interruption of the sensing field of a light curtain, or opening of an interlocked gate/guard). The reset of this Latched condition may only be achieved by actuating a reset switch that is separate from the normal means of machine cycle initiation. The switch must be positioned as described in this document.

## 7.5.8  Two-Hand Control

The Safety Controller may be used as an initiation device for most powered machinery when machine cycling is controlled by a machine operator.

The Two-Hand Control (THC) actuators must be positioned so that hazardous motion is completed or stopped before the operator can release one or both of the buttons and reach the hazard (see "Two-Hand Control Safety Distance (Minimum Distance)" on page 46).

The Safety Controller safety inputs used to monitor the actuation of the hand controls for two-hand control comply with the functionality of Type III requirements of IEC 60204-1 and ISO 13851 and the requirements of NFPA 79 and ANSI B11.19 for two-hand control, which include:

- Simultaneous actuation by both hands within a 500 ms time frame


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- When this time limit is exceeded, both hand controls must be released before operation is initiated
- Continuous actuation during a hazardous condition
- Cessation of the hazardous condition if either hand control is released
- Release and re-actuation of both hand controls to re-initiate the hazardous motion or condition (anti-tie down)
- The appropriate performance level of the safety-related function (Control Reliability, Category/Performance level, or appropriate regulation and standard, or Safety Integration Level) as determined by a risk assessment



**WARNING:**

- **Use adequate point-of-operation guarding**
- Failure to properly guard hazardous machinery can result in a dangerous condition that could lead to serious injury or death.
- When properly installed, a two-hand control safety device provides protection only for the hands of the machine operator. It might be necessary to install additional safeguarding, such as safety light curtains, additional two-hand controls, and/or hard guards, to protect all individuals from hazardous machinery.



**CAUTION:**

- **Avoid installing hand controls in contaminated environments**—Severe contamination or other environmental influences could cause a slow response or false on condition of mechanical or ergonomic buttons.
- A slow response or false on condition could result in exposure to a hazard.
- The environment in which hand controls are installed must not adversely affect the means of actuation.

The level of safety achieved (for example, ISO 13849-1 Category) depends in part on the circuit type selected.

Consider the following when installing hand controls:

- Failure modes, such as a short circuit, a broken spring, or a mechanical seizure, that may result in not detecting the release of a hand control
- Severe contamination or other environmental influences that may cause a slow response when released or false ON condition of the hand control(s), for example, sticking of a mechanical linkage
- Protection from accidental or unintended operation, for example, mounting position, rings, guards, or shields
- Minimizing the possibility of defeat, for example, hand controls must be far enough apart so that they cannot be operated by the use of one arm—typically, not less than 550 mm (21.7 in) in a straight line, per ISO 13851
- The functional reliability and installation of external logic devices
- Proper electrical installation per NEC and NFPA 79 or IEC 60204



**CAUTION:**

- **Install hand controls to prevent accidental actuation**
- It is not possible to completely protect the two-hand control system from defeat.
- OSHA regulations require the user to arrange and protect hand controls to minimize possibility of defeat or accidental actuation.



**CAUTION:**

- **Machine control must provide anti-repeat control**
- U.S. and International standards for single-stroke or single-cycle machines require that the machine control provides appropriate anti-repeat control.
- This Banner Engineering Corp. device can assist in accomplishing anti-repeat control, but a risk assessment must be performed to determine the suitability of such use.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## Two-Hand Control Safety Distance (Minimum Distance)

Install all hand controls far enough away from the nearest hazard point that the operator cannot reach the hazard with a hand or other body part before the hazardous motion ceases. This is the separation distance (safety distance), and may be calculated as follows.

**WARNING:**

- **Mount hand controls at a safe distance from moving machine parts**
- Failure to establish and maintain the safety distance (minimum distance) could result in serious injury or death.
- Mount hand controls as determined by the applicable standard. The operator or other non-qualified persons must not be able to relocate the hand controls.

### U.S. Applications

The Safety Distance formula, as provided in ANSI B11.19:

***Part-Revolution Clutch Machinery*** (the machine and its controls allow the machine to stop motion during the hazardous portion of the machine cycle)

$$D_s = K \times (T_s + T_r + T_h) + D_{pf}$$

***For Full-Revolution Clutch Machinery*** (the machine and its controls are designed to complete a full machine cycle)

$$D_s = K \times (T_m + T_r + T_h) + D_{pf}$$

**$D_s$**
the Safety Distance (in inches)

**K**
the OSHA/ANSI recommended hand-speed constant (in inches per second), in most cases is calculated at 63 in/s, but may vary between 63 in/s to 100 in/s based on the application circumstances;

not a conclusive determination; consider all factors, including the physical ability of the operator, when determining the value of K to be used.

**$T_h$**
the response time of the slowest hand control from the time when a hand disengages that control until the switch opens;

$T_h$ is usually insignificant for purely mechanical switches. However, $T_h$ should be considered for safety distance calculation when using electronic or electromechanical (powered) hand controls.

For Banner Engineering Corp. Self-checking Touch Buttons (STBs), see the de-actuate time listed in the specification section of the STB Manual, p/n 64136.

**$T_m$**
the maximum time (in seconds) the machine takes to cease all motion after it has been tripped. For full revolution clutch presses with only one engaging point, $T_m$ is equal to the time necessary for one and one-half revolutions of the crankshaft. For full revolution clutch presses with more than one engaging point, $T_m$ is calculated as follows:

$$T_m = (1/2 + 1/N) \times T_{cy}$$

**N** = number of clutch engaging points per revolution

**$T_{cy}$** = time (in seconds) necessary to complete one revolution of the crankshaft

**$T_r$**
the response time of the safety monitoring device as measured from the time a stop signal from either hand control is received. For a Banner Engineering Corp. Safety Controller, the response time is obtained from the **Configuration Summary** tab in the Software.

**$T_s$**
the overall stop time of the machine (in seconds) from the initial stop signal to the final ceasing of all motion, including stop times of all relevant control elements and measured at maximum machine velocity.

$T_s$ is usually measured by a stop-time measuring device. If the specified machine stop time is used, add at least 20% as a safety factor to account for brake system deterioration. If the stop-time of the two redundant machine control elements is unequal, the slower of the two times must be used for calculating the separation distance.

**$D_{pf}$**
Per ANSI B11.19, the adder to account for the distance that is possible for the individual to be reaching toward the hazard zone before a protective stop is initiated. For two-hand control applications where encroachment towards the hazard is not restricted, $D_{pf}$ = 550 mm (21.65 in). When encroachment is obstructed (for example, shrouding the two-hand actuating controls, orientation of the work station, etc.), the reaching distance ($d_{ds}$) may be reduced to zero. $D_{pf}$ is also known as "$d_{ds}$".

### European Applications

The Minimum Distance Formula, as provided in EN 13855:


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

```
S = (K × T) + C
```

**S**
the Minimum Distance (in millimeters)

**K**
the EN 13855 recommended hand-speed constant (in millimeters per second), in most cases is calculated at 1600 mm/s, but may vary between 1600 mm/s to 2500 mm/s based on the application circumstances;

not a conclusive determination; consider all factors, including the physical ability of the operator, when determining the value of K to be used.

**T**
the overall machine stopping response time (in seconds), from the physical initiation of the safety device to the final ceasing of all motion.

**C**
the added distance due to the depth penetration factor equals 250 mm, per EN 13855. ISO/DIS 13855:2022 increases the C factor ($d_{ds}$) to 550 mm. The EN 13855 **C** factor may be reduced to 0 if the risk of encroachment is eliminated, but the safety distance must always be 100 mm or greater.

## 7.5.9 Safety Mat

The Safety Controller may be used to monitor pressure-sensitive safety mats and safety edges.

The purpose of the Safety Mat input of the Safety Controller is to verify the proper operation of 4-wire, presence-sensing safety mats. Multiple mats may be connected in series to one Safety Controller, 150 ohms maximum per input (see "Safety Mat Hookup Options" on page 50).

**IMPORTANT:** The Safety Controller is not designed to monitor 2-wire mats, bumpers, or edges (with or without sensing resistors).

The Safety Controller monitors the contacts (contact plates) and the wiring of one or more safety mat(s) for failures and prevents the machine from restarting if a failure is detected. A reset routine after the operator steps off the safety mat may be provided by the Safety System, or, if the Safety Controller is used in auto-reset mode, the reset function must be provided by the machine control system. This prevents the controlled machinery from restarting automatically after the mat is cleared.

**WARNING:**
- **Application of Safety Mats**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- Safety Mat application requirements vary for the level of control reliability or category and performance level as described by ISO 13849-1 and ISO 13856. Although Banner Engineering Corp. always recommends the highest level of safety in any application, the user is responsible to safely install, operate, and maintain each safety system per the manufacturer's recommendations and comply with all relevant laws and regulations.
- Do not use safety mats as a tripping device to initiate machine motion (such as in a presence-sensing device initiation application), because of the possibility of unexpected start or re-start of the machine cycle resulting from failure(s) within the mat and the interconnect cabling.
- Do not use a safety mat to enable or provide the means to allow the machine control to start hazardous motion by simply standing on the safety mat (for example, at a control station). This type of application uses reverse/negative logic and certain failures (for example, loss of power to the Module) can result in a false enable signal.

### Safety Mat Requirements

The following are minimum requirements for the design, construction, and installation of four-wire safety mat sensor(s) to be interfaced with the Safety Controller. These requirements are a summary of standards ISO 13856-1, ANSI/RIA R15.06 and ANSI B11.19. The user must review and comply with all applicable regulations and standards.

#### Safety Mat System Design and Construction

The safety mat system sensor, Safety Controller, and any additional devices must have a response time that is fast enough to reduce the possibility of an individual stepping lightly and quickly over the mat’s sensing surface (less than 100 to 200 ms, depending on the relevant standard).

For a safety mat system, the minimum object sensitivity of the sensor must detect, at a minimum, a 30 kg (66 lb) weight on an 80 mm (3.15 in) diameter circular disk test piece anywhere on the mat’s sensing surface, including joints and junctions. The effective sensing surface or area must be identifiable and can comprise one or more sensors. The safety mat supplier should state this minimum weight and diameter as the minimum object sensitivity of the sensor.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

User adjustments to actuating force and response time are not allowed (ISO 13856-1). The sensor should be manufactured to prevent any reasonably foreseeable failures, such as oxidation of the contact elements which could cause a loss in sensitivity.

The environmental rating of the sensor must meet a minimum of IP54. When the sensor is specified for immersion in water, the sensor's minimum enclosure level must be IP67. The interconnect cabling may require special attention. A wicking action may result in the ingress of liquid into the mat, possibly causing a loss of sensor sensitivity. The termination of the interconnect cabling may need to be located in an enclosure that has an appropriate environmental rating.

The sensor must not be adversely affected by the environmental conditions for which the system is intended. The effects of liquids and other substances on the sensor must be taken into account. For example, long-term exposure to some liquids can cause degradation or swelling of the sensor's housing material, resulting in an unsafe condition.

The sensor's top surface should be a lifetime non-slip design, or otherwise minimize the possibility of slipping under the expected operating conditions.

The four-wire connection between the interconnect cables and the sensor must withstand dragging or carrying the sensor by its cable without failing in an unsafe manner, such as broken connections due to sharp or steady pulls, or continuous flexing. If such connection is not available, an alternative method must be employed to avoid such failure, for example, a cable which disconnects without damage and results in a safe situation.

## Safety Mat Installation

The mounting surface quality and preparation for the safety mat must meet the requirements stated by the manufacturer of the sensor. Irregularities in the mounting surfaces may impair the function of the sensor and should be reduced to an acceptable minimum. The mounting surface should be level and clean. Avoid the collection of fluids under or around the sensor. Prevent the risk of failure due to a build-up of dirt, turning chips, or other material under the sensor(s) or the associated hardware. Special consideration should be given to joints between the sensors to ensure that foreign material does not migrate under or into the sensor.

Any damage (cuts, tears, wear, or punctures) to the outer insulating jacket of the interconnect cable or to any part of the exterior of the safety mat must be immediately repaired or replaced. Ingress of material (including dirt particles, insects, fluid, moisture, or turning-chips), which may be present near the mat, may cause the sensor to corrode or to lose its sensitivity.

Routinely inspect and test each safety mat according to the manufacturer's recommendations. Do not exceed operational specifications, such as the maximum number of switching operations.

Securely mount each safety mat to prevent inadvertent movement (creeping) or unauthorized removal. Methods include, but are not limited to, secured edging or trim, tamper-resistant or one-way fasteners, and recessed flooring or mounting surface, in addition to the size and weight of large mats.

Each safety mat must be installed to minimize tripping hazards, particularly towards the machine hazard. A tripping hazard may exist when the difference in height of an adjacent horizontal surface is 4 mm (1/8 in) or more. Minimize tripping hazards at joints, junctions, and edges, and when additional coverings are used. Methods include a ground-flush installation of the mat, or a ramp that does not exceed 20° from horizontal. Use contrasting colors or markings to identify ramps and edges.

Position and size the safety mat system so that persons cannot enter the hazardous area without being detected, and cannot reach the hazard before the hazardous conditions have ceased. Additional guards or safeguarding devices may be required to ensure that exposure to the hazard(s) is not possible by reaching over, under, or around the device's sensing surface.

A safety mat installation must take into account the possibility of easily stepping over the sensing surface and not being detected. ANSI and international standards require a minimum depth of field of the sensor surface (the smallest distance between the edge of the mat and hazard) to be from 750 mm to 1200 mm (30 in to 48 in), depending on the application and the relevant standard. The possibility of stepping on machine supports or other physical objects to bypass or climb over the sensor also must be prevented.

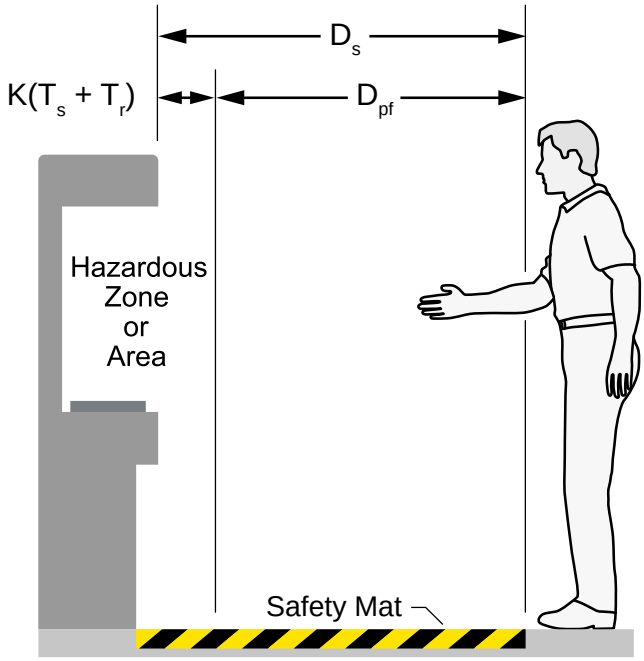
### Safety Mat Safety Distance (Minimum Distance)

As a stand-alone safeguard, the safety mat must be installed at a safety distance (minimum distance) so that the exterior edge of the sensing surface is at or beyond that distance, unless it is solely used to prevent start/restart, or solely used for clearance safeguarding (see ANSI B11.19, ANSI/RIA R15.06, and ISO 13855).

The safety distance (minimum distance) required for an application depends on several factors, including the speed of the hand (or individual), the total system stopping time (which includes several response time components), and the depth penetration factor. Refer to the relevant standard to determine the appropriate distance or means to ensure that individuals cannot be exposed to the hazard(s).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.

*Figure 24. Determining safety distance for the safety mat*




## U.S. Applications

The Safety Distance formula, as provided in ANSI B11.19:

$$D_s = K \times (T_s + T_r) + D_{pf}$$

**$D_s$**
the Safety Distance (in inches)

**$T_r$**
the response time of the Safety Controller as measured from the time a stop signal from either hand control. The Safety Controller response time is obtained from the **Configuration Summary** tab in the Software.

**K**
the OSHA/ANSI recommended hand-speed constant (in inches per second), in most cases is calculated at 63 in/s, but may vary between 63 in/s to 100 in/s based on the application circumstances;

not a conclusive determination; consider all factors, including the physical ability of the operator, when determining the value of K to be used.

**$T_s$**
the overall stop time of the machine (in seconds) from the initial stop signal to the final ceasing of all motion, including stop times of all relevant control elements and measured at maximum machine velocity.

$T_s$ is usually measured by a stop-time measuring device. If the specified machine stop time is used, add at least 20% as a safety factor to account for brake system deterioration. If the stop-time of the two redundant machine control elements is unequal, the slower of the two times must be used for calculating the separation distance.

**$D_{pf}$**
the added distance due to the penetration depth factor

equals 48 in, per ANSI B11.19

## European Applications

The Minimum Distance Formula, as provided in EN 13855:

$$S = (K \times T) + C$$

**S**
the Minimum Distance (in millimeters)

**K**
the EN 13855 recommended hand-speed constant (in millimeters per second), in most cases is calculated at 1600 mm/s, but may vary between 1600 mm/s to 2500 mm/s based on the application circumstances;

not a conclusive determination; consider all factors, including the physical ability of the operator, when determining the value of K to be used.

**T**
the overall machine stopping response time (in seconds), from the physical initiation of the safety device to the final ceasing of all motion.

**C**
the added distance due to the depth penetration factor equals 1200 mm, per EN 13855.

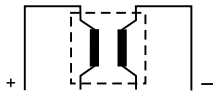

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### Safety Mat Hookup Options

Pressure-sensitive mats and pressure-sensitive floors must meet the requirements of the category for which they are specified and marked. These categories are defined in ISO 13849-1.

The safety mat, its Safety Controller, and any output signal switching devices must meet, at a minimum, the Category 1 safety requirements. See ISO 13856-1 and ISO 13849-1 for relevant requirement details.

**The Safety Controller is designed to monitor 4-wire safety mats and is not compatible with two-wire devices** (mats, sensing edges, or any other devices with two wires and a sensing resistor).

| 4-Wire | |
|---|---|
| This circuit typically meets ISO 13849-1 Category 2 or Category 3 requirements depending on the safety rating and installation of the mat(s). The Safety Controller enters a Lockout mode when an open wire, a short to 0 V, or a short to another source of power is detected. |  |

## 7.5.10 Muting Sensor

Safety device muting is an automatically controlled suspension of one or more safety input stop signals during a portion of a machine operation when no immediate hazard is present or when access to the hazard is safeguarded. Muting sensors can be mapped to one or more of the following safety input devices:

- Safety gate (interlocking) switches
- Optical sensors
- Two-hand controls
- Safety mats
- Protective stops

US and International standards require the user to arrange, install, and operate the safety system so that personnel are protected and the possibility of defeating the safeguard is minimized.

### Examples of Muting Sensors and Switches

**WARNING:**

- **Avoid hazardous installations**
- Improper adjustment or positioning could result in serious injury or death.
- Properly adjust or position the two or four independent position switches so that they close only after the hazard no longer exists and open again when the cycle is complete or the hazard is again present.
- The user is responsible for satisfying all local, state, and national laws, rules, codes, and regulations relating to the use of safety equipment in any particular application. Ensure that all appropriate agency requirements have been met and that all installation and maintenance instructions contained in the appropriate manuals are followed.

#### Photoelectric Sensors (Opposed Mode)

Opposed-mode sensors should be configured for dark operate (DO) and have open (non-conducting) output contacts in a power Off condition. Both the emitter and receiver from each pair should be powered from the same source to reduce the possibility of common mode failures.

#### Photoelectric Sensors (Polarized Retroreflective Mode)

The user must ensure that false proxying (activation due to shiny or reflective surfaces) is not possible. Banner Engineering Corp. low profile sensors with linear polarization can greatly reduce or eliminate this effect.

Use a sensor configured for light operate (LO or NO) if initiating a mute when the retroreflective target or tape is detected (home position). Use a sensor configured for dark operate (DO or NC) when a blocked beam path initiates the muted condition (entry/exit). Both situations must have open (non-conducting) output contacts in a power Off condition.

#### Positive-Opening Safety Switches

Two (or four) independent switches, each with a minimum of one closed safety contact to initiate the mute cycle, are typically used. An application using a single switch with a single actuator and two closed contacts may result in an unsafe situation.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### Inductive Proximity Sensors

Typically, inductive proximity sensors are used to initiate a muted cycle when a metal surface is detected. Do not use two-wire sensors due to excessive leakage current causing false On conditions. Use only three- or four-wire sensors that have discrete PNP or hard-contact outputs that are separate from the input power.

## Mute Device Requirements

The muting devices must, at a minimum, comply with the following requirements:

1. There must be a minimum of two independent hard-wired muting devices.
2. The muting devices must have one of the following: normally open contacts, PNP outputs (both of which must fulfill the input requirements listed in the "Specifications and Requirements " on page 24), or a complementary switching action. At least one of these contacts must close when the switch is actuated, and must open (or not conduct) when the switch is not actuated or is in a power-off state.
3. The activation of the inputs to the muting function must come from separate sources. These sources must be mounted separately to prevent an unsafe muting condition resulting from misadjustment, misalignment, or a single common mode failure, such as physical damage to the mounting surface. Only one of these sources may pass through, or be affected by, a PLC or a similar device.
4. The muting devices must be installed so that they cannot be easily defeated or bypassed.
5. The muting devices must be mounted so that their physical position and alignment cannot be easily changed.
6. It must not be possible for environmental conditions, such as extreme airborne contamination, to initiate a mute condition.
7. The muting devices must not be set to use any delay or other timing functions unless such functions are accomplished so that no single component failure prevents the removal of the hazard, subsequent machine cycles are prevented until the failure is corrected, and no hazard is created by extending the muted period.

# 7.5.11  Bypass Switch

The safety device bypass is a manually activated and temporary suspension of one or more safety input stop signals, under supervisory control, when no immediate hazard is present. It is typically accomplished by selecting a bypass mode of operation using a key switch to facilitate machine setup, web alignment/adjustments, robot teach, and process troubleshooting.

Bypass switches can be mapped to one or more of the following safety input devices:

- Safety gate (interlocking) switches
- Optical sensors
- Two-Hand Controls
- Safety mats
- Protective stop

## Requirements of Bypassing Safeguards

Requirements to bypass a safeguarding device include[8]:

- The bypass function must be temporary
- The means of selecting or enabling the bypass must be capable of being supervised
- Automatic machine operation must be prevented by limiting range of motion, speed, or power (use inch, jog, or slow-speed modes). Bypass mode must not be used for production
- Supplemental safeguarding must be provided. Personnel must not be exposed to hazards
- The means of bypassing must be within full view of the safeguard to be bypassed
- Initiation of motion should only be through a hold-to-run type of control
- All emergency stops must remain active
- The means of bypassing must be employed at the same level of reliability as the safeguard
- Visual indication that the safeguarding device has been bypassed must be provided and be readily observable from the location of the safeguard
- Personnel must be trained in the use of the safeguard and in the use of the bypass
- Risk assessment and risk reduction (per the relevant standard) must be accomplished
- The reset, actuation, clearing, or enabling of the safeguarding device must not initiate hazardous motion or create a hazardous situation

[8] This summary was compiled from sources including NFPA79, ANSI/RIA R15.06, ISO 13849-1, IEC60204-1, and ANSI B11.19. The user is responsible to verify safeguards required by these specs and all other relevant laws and regulations.

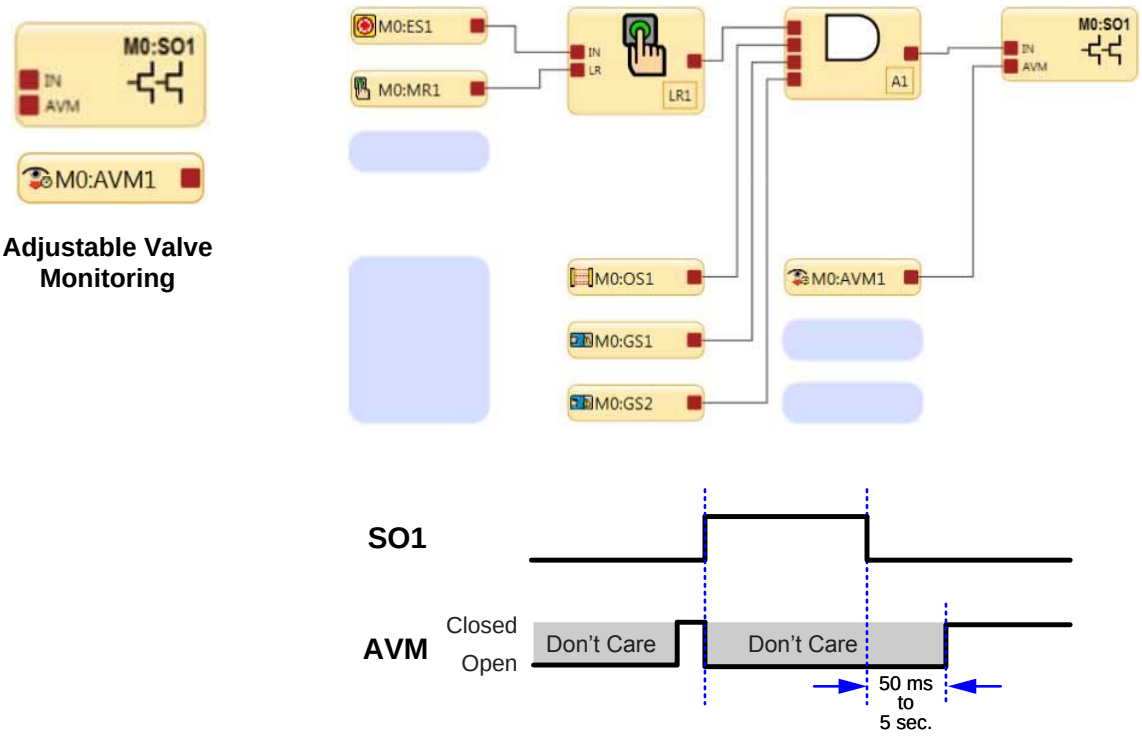

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Bypassing a safeguarding device should not be confused with *muting*, which is a temporary, automatic suspension of the safeguarding function of a safeguarding device during a non-hazardous portion of the machine cycle. Muting allows for material to be manually or automatically fed into a machine or process without issuing a stop command. Another term commonly confused with bypassing is *blanking*, which desensitizes a portion of the sensing field of an optical safeguarding device, such as disabling one or more beams of a safety light curtain so that a specific beam break is ignored.

## 7.5.12 Adjustable Valve Monitoring (AVM) Function

The Adjustable Valve (Device) Monitoring (AVM) function is similar in function to One-Channel External Device Monitoring (1-channel EDM, see "External Device Monitoring (EDM)" on page 76). The AVM function monitors the state of the device(s) that are controlled by the safety output to which the function is mapped. When the safety output turns OFF, the AVM input must be high/On (+24 V DC applied) before the AVM timer expires or a lockout will occur. The AVM input must also be high/ON when the safety output attempts to turn ON or a lockout will occur.

*Figure 25. Timing logic—AVM Function*




Adjustable Valve Monitoring AVM is a way to check the operation of dual-channel valves. The force guided NC monitoring contacts of the valves are used as an input to detect a "stuck on" fault condition and will prevent the Safety Controller outputs from turning On.

**NOTE:** 50 ms to 5 s time period is adjustable in 50 ms intervals (default is 50 ms).

The Adjustable Valve (Device) Monitoring function is useful for dynamically monitoring devices under the control of the safety output that may become slow, stick, or fail in an energized state or position, and whose operation needs to be verified after a Stop signal occurs. Example applications include single- or dual-solenoid valves controlling clutch/brake mechanisms, and position sensors that monitor the home position of a linear actuator.

Synchronization or checking a maximum differential timing between two or more devices, such as dual valves, may be achieved by mapping multiple AVM functions to one safety output and configuring the AVM timer to the same values. Any number of AVM inputs can be mapped to one safety output. An input signal can be generated by a hard/relay contact or a solid-state PNP output.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**WARNING:**
- **Adjustable Valve Monitoring (AVM) Operation**
- When the AVM function is used, the Safety Output(s) will not turn ON until the AVM input is satisfied. This could result in an ON-delay up to the configured AVM monitoring time.
- It is the user's responsibility to ensure the AVM monitoring time is properly configured for the application and to instruct all individuals associated with the machine about the possibility of the ON-Delay effect, which may not be readily apparent to the machine operator or to other personnel.

## 7.5.13 ISD Inputs

ISD inputs are available on SC10-2 and XS26-ISD models.

The SC10 safety inputs
- IN3/IN4 Ethernet ISD Chain 2
- IN5/IN6 Ethernet ISD Chain 1

and the XS26-ISD safety inputs
- IN1/IN2 Ethernet ISD Chain 1
- IN3/IN4 Ethernet ISD Chain 2
- IN5/IN6 Ethernet ISD Chain 3
- IN7/IN8 Ethernet ISD Chain 4
- IN9/IN10 Ethernet ISD Chain 5
- IN11/IN12 Ethernet ISD Chain 6
- IN13/IN14 Ethernet ISD Chain 7
- IN15/IN16 Ethernet ISD Chain 8

may be used to monitor chains of devices with embedded In-Series Diagnostics (ISD) data, such as the Banner SI-RFD Safety Switches, the Banner Lighted Emergency Stop Buttons with ISD, or the Banner ISD Connect. The Banner SI-RFD Safety Switches use RFID technology as a means of detection.

ISD-enabled devices have a maximum cable run of 30 meters between devices and from the last device to the Safety Controller.

**NOTE:** The response time of the Safety Controller is based on the state of the output signal switching devices (OSSDs) of the ISD inputs, not the ISD information carried on the OSSDs. The ISD information is non-safety chain/device status information.

ISD devices, such as SI-RFD Safety Switches, must be placed at an appropriate safety distance (minimum distance), according to the application standards. Refer to the applicable standards and to the documentation specific to the device for the appropriate calculations. The response time of the Safety Controller outputs to each safety input is provided on the **Configuration Summary** tab in the Software. This time must be added to the response time of the ISD chain of devices. See the individual ISD device manuals to determine the response time of the ISD chain.

The active ISD devices' solid-state outputs have (and must have) the ability to detect external shorts to power, to ground, or to each other. The devices will lockout if such a short is detected.

If the application includes a pass-through hazard (a person could pass through an opened gate and stand undetected on the hazard side), other safeguarding may be required, and manual reset should be selected. See "Manual Reset Input" on page 63.

**WARNING:**
- Configuration Conforms to Applicable Standards
- Failure to verify the application may result in serious injury or death.
- The Banner Safety Controller Software primarily checks the logic configuration for connection errors. The user is responsible for verifying the application meets the risk assessment requirements and that it conforms to all applicable standards.
- The user is responsible to wire the ISD chain to match the configuration; errors in the chain length and/or order are only reported via Ethernet (input still seen as ON).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**IMPORTANT:** The machine builder (user) is responsible to ensure the wiring/cabling is not easily manipulated by an operator to defeat the safety function(s). For example, the operator cannot remove a device from the system.

**NOTE:** In a long chain or chains with a lot of ISD devices, the voltage at the first unit (closest to the terminating plug) must stay above 19.5 volts for the chain to operate properly.

**NOTE:** The Banner Safety Controller Software applies the gate switch rules to the ISD Inputs.

## Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD

Use the following procedure to get performance and status information about an individual ISD device using ISD.

1. Change the ISD Chain Requested register to match the ISD chain number for the device in question (1 or 2).
2. Change the ISD Device Requested register to match the ISD device number for the device in question (1 to 32).
3. Change the ISD Read Request register from 0 to 1 to perform a one-time read.
4. Observe the ISD Individual Device-Specific Data register array to read the desired device data.

## Request Device List and Re-baseline an ISD Chain via ISD

Use the following procedure to get a list of the ISD devices in order from a chain and to reset the baseline.

1. Enter the desired Chain number into the ISD Chain Requested register (1–8).
2. Enter `2` into the ISD Read Request register.

   When the ISD Read Request Acknowledge register also reads `2`, the process is complete. An array of 32 bytes is provided in the List of Detected ISD Devices on a Chain register block, giving the code for each ISD device, and a new device count, type, and order baseline is established.

## Request Device List and Clear Count Change Flag in an ISD Chain via ISD

Use the following procedure to get a list of the ISD devices in order from a chain and to clear the Count Change flag.

1. Enter the desired Chain number into the ISD Chain Requested register (1–8).
2. Enter `4` into the ISD Read Request register.

   When the ISD Read Request Acknowledge register also reads `4`, the process is complete. An array of 32 bytes is provided in the List of Detected ISD Devices on a Chain register block, giving the code for each ISD device.

**NOTE:** This does not establish a new baseline.

## ISD Chain System Status

Banner Engineering Corp. has created a couple of words that can be accessed quickly by the PLC to indicate if there are any problems with the ISD chain.

**NOTE:** The ISD data is not immediately available upon power up. The ISD data can be delayed up to 10 seconds after the system power has been turned on.

This information has the following format:

| Information | Type | Data Size | Steps to Resolve |
|---|---|---|---|
| ISD chain count does not match configuration (XS26-ISD FID 5 or later (only when not using Auto Detect mode) and SC10 FID 2 or later.) | Controller Alert | 1 bit | Check the number of physical units against the number configured in the chain |
| ISD chain order does not match configuration (XS26-ISD FID 5 or later (only when not using Auto Detect mode) and SC10 FID 2 or later.) | Controller Alert | 1 bit | Check the order of the physical units against the configured order. Note the location of the terminator plug and the controller. |

Continued on page 55


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 54

| Information | Type | Data Size | Steps to Resolve |
|---|---|---|---|
| ISD data update pending (no data or buffered data) | Controller Alert | 1 bit | Caused by non-ISD devices in chain or a buffering situation<br>If the data is not present from power up (never present):<br>• Verify that all devices in ISD Chain are ISD enabled devices<br>If data was present but then lost:<br>• Verify that the chain has not been broken<br>• Data could be disrupted and will return in a few seconds |
| Invalid (non-ISD) device in ISD chain | Controller Alert | 1 bit | Incorrect data types are being received<br>• Verify that all devices in the chain are Banner ISD devices |
| ISD device detected but not configured (*reserved* in XS26-ISD) | Informative | 1 bit | • Verify the ISD chain is wired to the correct terminals<br>• Verify that the correct input device type (ISD) was selected for this input in the configuration. |
| ISD chain terminator plug missing | ISD Status | 1 bit | • Verify that the terminator plug has not come loose<br>• Verify that the chain has not been broken (loose connections) |
| SI-RF high or unique sensor not taught an actuator | ISD Fault | 1 bit | An SI-RF switch (-UP8 or -HP8) have not been taught<br>• Configure the unit to its actuator per instructions in Banner datasheet p/n 208885 |
| Wrong actuator presented to a high or unique sensor | ISD Fault | 1 bit | An SI-RF switch (-UP8 or -HP8) is seeing an actuator but not the one to which it was configured.<br>• Check for tampering (wrong actuator being used)<br>• Teach High coded sensor (-HP8) the new actuator |
| Internal error on an ISD device in the chain | ISD Fault | 1 bit | • Verify which device has the error, cycle power to the system<br>• If the error persists, replace the device |
| ISD Output fault detected, output turn off counter started | ISD Fault | 1 bit | ISD device output will turn off in 20 minutes<br>• Verify which device has the error, check wiring for shorts<br>• Cycle power, if issue persists, replace the device |
| Change in ISD chain detected (only in XS26-ISD FID 5 or later) | ISD Status | 1 bit | If AutoDetect ISD is configured and an ISD chain length or order has changed, this flag will be set and must be recognized by the PLC.<br>See "Request Device List and Re-baseline an ISD Chain via ISD" on page 54. |
| ISD Count Change from Baseline Detected | ISD Status | 1 bit | ISD device count has changed from the baseline count, verify the chain device count matches machine configuration.<br>See " Request Device List and Clear Count Change Flag in an ISD Chain via ISD " on page 54. |
| ISD Chain output signal switching device (OSSD) status | ISD Status | 1 bit | |

## ISD Individual Device-Specific Data

**NOTE:** The ISD data is not immediately available upon power up. The ISD data can be delayed up to 10 seconds after the system power has been turned on.

| Information | Data size | Applies to Banner Device (Y/N/ Reserved) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | SI-RF | E-Stop | ISD Connect |
| Safety Input Fault | 1 bit | Y | Y | Y |

Continued on page 56


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 55

| Information | Data size | Applies to Banner Device (Y/N/ Reserved) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | SI-RF | E-Stop | ISD Connect |
| *reserved* | 1 bit | *reserved* | *reserved* | *reserved* |
| Sensor Not Paired | 1-bit | Y | N | N |
| ISD Data Error | 1-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Wrong Actuator/Button Status/Input Status | 1-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Marginal Range/Button Status/Input Status | 1-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Actuator Detected | 1-bit | Y | N | N |
| Output Error | 1-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Input 2 | 1-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Input 1 | 1-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Local Reset Expected | 1-bit | Y | Y | N |
| Operating Voltage Warning | 1-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Operating Voltage Error | 1-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Output 2 | 1-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Output 1 | 1-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Power Cycle Required | 1-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Fault Tolerant Outputs | 1-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Local Reset Unit | 1-bit | Y | Y | N |
| Cascadable | 1-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| High Coding Level | 1-bit | Y | N | N |
| Teach-ins Remaining | 4-bit | Y | N | N |
| Device ID | 5-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Range Warning Count | 6-bit | Y | N | N |
| Output Switch-off Time | 5-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Number of Voltage Errors | 8-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Internal Temperature [9] | 8-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Actuator Distance[9] | 8-bit | Y | N | N |
| Supply Voltage[9] | 8-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Expected Company Name | 4-bit | Y | N (always "6") | N (always "6") |
| Received Company Name | 4-bit | Y | N | N |
| Expected Code | 16-bit | Y | N | N |
| Received Code | 16-bit | Y | N | N |
| Internal Error A | 16-bit | Y | Y | Y |
| Internal Error B | 16-bit | Y | Y | Y |

[9] For conversion to Internal Temperature, Actuator Distance, and Supply Voltage, see "ISD: Temperature, Voltage, and Distance Conversion Information " on page 329.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### SI-RF Device

In the case of the ISD-enabled gate switch (SI-RF), the ISD Individual Device-Specific Data coming back from the SI-RF device has the following format:

| Information | Data size |
|---|---|
| Safety Input Fault | 1 bit |
| *reserved* | 1 bit |
| Sensor Not Paired | 1-bit |
| ISD Data Error | 1-bit |
| Wrong Actuator | 1-bit |
| Marginal Range | 1-bit |
| Actuator Detected | 1-bit |
| Output Error | 1-bit |
| Input 2 | 1-bit |
| Input 1 | 1-bit |
| Local Reset Expected | 1-bit |
| Operating Voltage Warning | 1-bit |
| Operating Voltage Error | 1-bit |
| Output 2 | 1-bit |
| Output 1 | 1-bit |
| Power Cycle Required | 1-bit |
| Fault Tolerant Outputs | 1-bit |
| Local Reset Unit | 1-bit |
| Cascadable | 1-bit |
| High Level Coding | 1-bit |
| Teach-ins Remaining | 4-bit |
| Device ID | 5-bit |
| Range Warning Count | 6-bit |
| Output Switch-off Time | 5-bit<br>(value of 31 means Timer is OFF) |
| Number of Voltage Errors | 8-bit |
| Internal Temperature[10] | 8-bit |
| Actuator Distance[10] | 8-bit |
| Supply Voltage[10] | 8-bit |
| Expected Company Name | 4-bit |
| Received Company Name | 4-bit |
| Expected Code | 16-bit |
| Received Code | 16-bit |
| Internal Error A | 16-bit |
| Internal Error B | 16-bit |

[10] For conversion to Internal Temperature, Actuator Distance, and Supply Voltage, see "ISD: Temperature, Voltage, and Distance Conversion Information " on page 329.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### E-Stop Device and ISD Connect

In the case of the ISD-enabled E-stop or ISD Connect, the ISD Individual Device-Specific Data coming back from the device has the following format:

| Information | Data Size |
|---|---|
| Safety Input Fault | 1-bit |
| *reserved* | 2-bit |
| ISD Data Error | 1-bit |
| *reserved* | 3-bit |
| Output Error | 1-bit |
| Input 2 | 1-bit |
| Input 1 | 1-bit |
| Local Reset Expected | 1-bit<br>(always false for ISD Connect) |
| Operating Voltage Warning | 1-bit |
| Operating Voltage Error | 1-bit |
| Output 2 | 1-bit |
| Output 1 | 1-bit |
| Power Cycle Required | 1-bit |
| Fault Tolerant Outputs | 1-bit<br>(always true for ISD E-Stop and Connect) |
| Local Reset Unit | 1-bit<br>(always false for ISD Connect) |
| Cascadable | 1-bit<br>(always true for ISD E-Stop and Connect) |
| *reserved* | 5-bit |
| Device ID | 5-bit<br>(always value of 7 for ISD E-Stop)<br><br>(always value of 9 for ISD Connect) |
| *reserved* | 6-bit |
| Output Switch-off Time | 5-bit<br>(value of 31 means Timer is OFF) |
| Number of Voltage Errors | 8-bit |
| Internal Temperature[(11)] | 8-bit |
| *reserved* | 8-bit |
| Supply Voltage[(11)] | 8-bit |
| Expected Company Name | 4-bit<br>(always value of 6 for ISD E-Stop and Connect) |
| *reserved* | 36-bit |
| Internal Error A | 16-bit |
| Internal Error B | 16-bit |

[(11)] For conversion to Internal Temperature, Actuator Distance, and Supply Voltage, see "ISD: Temperature, Voltage, and Distance Conversion Information " on page 329.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## 7.5.14 Cycle Initiation for Press Control Function Block

This feature is available on XS/SC26 FID 4 and later.

A single, momentary actuator may be used as an initiation device for small hydraulic/pneumatic presses when used with the Press Control Function Block when configured for Single Actuator Control. This is an initiation input to start the press cycle. When Single Actuator Control is selected, the operator can start the cycle with this input, and then release and perform other tasks.

**CAUTION:** Other means must be provided to ensure that operators are protected from the hazards because their hands do not have to engage the button during the entire movement of the press.

Access to the hazard must be protected using means other than a hold-to-run button, for example, light curtains, gates, etc. These safety devices must also be connected to inputs on the Press Control function block.

The Cycle Initiation input can be connected to the GO node of the Press Control Function Block or the IN node of a Bypass block that is connected to the GO node of the Press Control Function Block.

The Cycle Initiation device must be mounted at a location that complies with the following warning.

**WARNING:**

- **Install cycle initiation devices properly**
- Failure to properly install cycle initiation devices could result in serious injury or death.
- Install cycle initiation devices so that they are accessible only from outside, and in full view of, the safeguarded space. Cycle initiation devices cannot be accessible from within the safeguarded space. Protect cycle initiation devices against unauthorized or inadvertent operation (for example, through the use of rings or guards). If there are any hazardous areas that are not visible from the cycle initiation devices, provide additional safeguarding.

## 7.5.15 Press Control Sequential Stop (SQS) Function

This feature is available on XS/SC26 FID 4 and later.

The Press Control Sequential Stop (SQS) input provides a signal to the press control system that the press ram has reached a position such that there is no longer a crushing hazard (less than a 6 mm (0.25 in) gap). The downward motion of the press ram stops at this point. The operator can remove their hands from the two-hand control to ensure the work piece is in the correct position (the Mutable Safety input is muted at this time). After the operator ensures the work piece is in the correct position, they engage the Foot Switch input to finish the down stroke.

**NOTE:** The above is one method of controlling the Press Control process. There are three allowable processes:

1. Two-Hand Control input (TC1) turns on the GO input to drive the ram to the SQS point. Release TC1 and engage the FS1 to turn on the Ft Switch input to drive the ram to the Bottom of Stroke (BOS), release Foot Switch input (FS1) and engage TC1 to raise the ram.
2. FS1 turns on the GO input to drive the ram to the SQS point, Release FS1. Re-engaging FS1 drives the ram to the BOS point, and then back up to the Top of Stroke (TOS) point. (The Ft Switch input will disappear when FS1 is connected to the GO node).
3. TC1 turns on the GO input to drive the ram to the SQS point, release TC1. Re-engaging TC1 drives the ram to the BOS point, and then back up to the TOS point. (To set the system up for this method, do NOT select the Ft Switch node in the Press Control Inputs function block.)

**NOTE:** The Sequential Stop input is typically used with Dual Pressure selected. The Dual Pressure feature requires four safety outputs (up, down, low pressure, and high pressure). Because of this, the Sequential Stop input is not available on non-expandable models.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

The Sequential Stop input can directly mute the Mutable Safety input or it can work in unison with the Press Control Mute Sensor input to mute the Mutable Safety input of the press control system (for Press Control Mute Sensor input, see " Press Control Mute Sensor" on page 60).

The Sequential Stop input can be a single-channel or dual-channel input depending on the requirements of the system. The input devices must be positioned to ensure that the press ram stops in a position that does not have a gap large enough that a finger can enter (must be a finger-safe gap of less than 6 mm/0.25 in).

**NOTE:** If a single-channel configuration is selected for the Sequential Stop input, it must work in unison with the Press Control Mute Sensor input to mute the Press Control Mutable Safety Stop input. If a dual-channel configuration is selected for the Sequential Stop input, it can directly mute the Press Control Mutable Safety Stop input by itself.

US and International standards require the user to arrange, install, and operate the safety system so that personnel are protected and the possibility of defeating the safeguard is minimized.

**WARNING:**

- Avoid Hazardous Installations
- A single-channel SQS device is not permitted unless it is used in conjunction with a Press Control Mute Sensor (PCMS) input device. When a two-channel SQS input is used without a PCMS, each SQS channel must be an independent position switch and must be properly adjusted or positioned so that they close only after the hazard no longer exists, and open again when the cycle is complete or the hazard is again present. If the switches are improperly adjusted or positioned, injury or death may result.
- The user is responsible to satisfy all local, state, and national laws, rules, codes, and regulations relating to the use of safety equipment in any particular application. Make sure that all appropriate agency requirements have been met and that all installation and maintenance instructions contained in the appropriate manuals are followed.

SQS Devices must, at a minimum, comply with the following requirements. If the SQS device is being used as a mute input with the Press Control Mute Sensor then the pair must comply with the following requirements.

1. There must be a minimum of two independent hard-wired devices.
2. The devices must have one of the following: normally open contacts, PNP outputs (both of which must fulfill the input requirements listed in "Specifications and Requirements " on page 24), or a complementary switching action. At least one of these contacts must close when the switch is actuated, and must open (or not conduct) when the switch is not actuated or is in a power-off state.
3. The activation of the inputs of this mute function must come from separate sources. These sources must be mounted separately to prevent an unsafe condition resulting from misadjustment, misalignment, or a single common mode failure, such as physical damage to the mounting surface. Only one of these sources may pass through, or be affected by, a PLC or similar device.
4. The devices must be installed so that they cannot be easily defeated or bypassed.
5. The devices must be mounted so that their physical position and alignment cannot be easily changed.
6. It must not be possible for environmental conditions, such as extreme airborne contamination, to initiate the mute condition.
7. The devices must not use any delay or other timing functions unless such functions are accomplished so that no single component failure prevents the removal of the hazard, subsequent machine cycles are prevented until the failure is corrected, and no hazard is created by extending the muted period.

### 7.5.16  Press Control Mute Sensor

This feature is available on XS/SC26 FID 4 and later.

Safety device muting is an automatically controlled suspension of the Mutable Safety Stop input of the Press Control function block during a portion of the press cycle when no immediate hazard is present or when access to the hazard is safeguarded by other means. Map the Press Control Mute Sensors to the M Sensor input of the Press Control Input Function Block to work with the Sequential Stop (SQS) input to mute one or more of the following safety input devices:

- Safety Gate (interlocking) switches
- Optical sensors
- Safety Mats


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- Protective stops

US and International standards require the user to arrange, install, and operate the safety system so that personnel are protected and the possibility of defeating the safeguards is minimized.

**WARNING:**

- Avoid Hazardous Installations
- Two (1 SQS and 1 Press Control Mute Sensor) or four (2 SQS and 2 Press Control Mute Sensors) independent position switches must be properly adjusted or positioned so that they close only after the hazard no longer exists, and open again when the cycle is complete or the hazard is again present. If the switches are improperly adjusted or positioned, injury or death may result.
- The user is responsible to satisfy all local, state, and national laws, rules, codes, and regulations relating to the use of safety equipment in any particular application. Make sure that all appropriate agency requirements have been met and that all installation and maintenance instructions contained in the appropriate manuals are followed.

The Press Control Mute Sensor (with the SQS Device) must, at a minimum, comply with the following requirements:

1. There must be a minimum of two independent hard-wired devices.
2. The devices must have one of the following: normally open contacts, PNP outputs (both of which must fulfill the input requirements listed in "Specifications and Requirements " on page 24), or a complementary switching action. At least one of these contacts must close when the switch is actuated, and must open (or not conduct) when the switch is not actuated or is in a power-off state.
3. The activation of the inputs of this mute function must come from separate sources. These sources must be mounted separately to prevent an unsafe condition resulting from misadjustment, misalignment, or a single common mode failure, such as physical damage to the mounting surface. Only one of these sources may pass through, or be affected by, a PLC or similar device.
4. The devices must be installed so that they cannot be easily defeated or bypassed.
5. The devices must be mounted so that their physical position and alignment cannot be easily changed.
6. It must not be possible for environmental conditions, such as extreme airborne contamination, to initiate the mute condition.
7. The devices must not use any delay or other timing functions unless such functions are accomplished so that no single component failure prevents the removal of the hazard, subsequent machine cycles are prevented until the failure is corrected, and no hazard is created by extending the muted period.

### 7.5.17  Foot Switch

This feature is available on XS/SC26 FID 4 and later.

The Foot Switch input (FS1) can be used with the Press Control function blocks in a number of ways:

- It can be connected to the GO node of the Press Control function block as a cycle initiation device when the block is set for Single Actuator Control.
- It can be connected to the GO node of the Press Control function block when configured for the Manual Upstroke Setting and the SQS input is enabled. (Engaging the FS1 input drives the RAM to the SQS point. At this time, the FS1 is released. Because the Mutable Safety Stop input is now muted, the operator can adjust the workpiece. Engaging the FS1 again drives the ram to the BOS point then back up to the TOS point.)
- It can be used as described in the following paragraph.

The Foot Switch input can be added to the Press Control Input function block and configured when the SQS input is configured. The press stops at the SQS input, allowing the operator to remove their hands from the Two-Hand Control input. The operator can ensure that the work piece is positioned properly and sometimes needs to hold the work piece in position. The operator can then engage the input device connected to the Foot Switch input to re-engage the press to finish the process.

The Foot Switch input can also be configured to the Press GO node. In that case, the Foot Switch can be used with and without SQS being configured. This allows for more flexibility in use cases.

A physical on/off input or a Foot Switch input can be connected to the Ft Switch input of the Press Control Input function block. The device can be a foot switch but can also be other initiation devices.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Access to the hazard must be prevented using other means than the Mutable Safety Stop input device (for example, the internal opening must be finger-safe, less than 6 mm/0.25 in). Protection can also be provided by safety devices connected to the non-mutable Safety Stop input.

**CAUTION:** Other means must be provided to ensure that operators are protected from the hazards because their hands do not have to engage the button during this final movement of the press. The input can be single- or dual-channel (2 NO or 1 NO/1 NC).

## 7.6 Non-Safety Input Devices

The non-safety input devices include manual reset devices, ON/OFF switches, mute enable devices, and cancel delay inputs.

### Manual Reset Devices

Used to create a reset signal for an output or function block configured for a manual reset, requiring an operator action for the output of that block to turn on. Resets can also be created using virtual reset input; see "Virtual Non-Safety Input Devices" on page 65.

**WARNING:**

- **Non-monitored resets**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- If a non-monitored reset (either latch or system reset) is configured and if all other conditions for a reset are in place, a short from the reset terminal to +24 V will turn on the safety output(s) immediately.

### ON/OFF Switch

Provides an ON or OFF command to the machine. When all controlling safety inputs are in the Run state, this function permits the safety output to turn ON and OFF. This is a single-channel signal; the Run state is 24 V DC and the Stop state is 0 V DC. An ON/OFF input can be added without mapping to a safety output, which allows this input to control only a status output. An ON/OFF switch can also be created using a virtual input; see "Virtual Non-Safety Input Devices" on page 65.

XS/SC26 FID 4 or later: The ON/OFF inputs are used to select the mode of the Press Control Mode function block. Three separate inputs are required to satisfy this block. The block does accept Virtual ON/OFF inputs.

### Mute Enable Switch

Signals the Safety Controller when the mute sensors are permitted to perform a mute function. When the mute enable function is configured, the mute sensors are not enabled to perform a mute function until the mute enable signal is in the Run state. This is a single-channel signal; the enable (Run) state is 24 V DC and the disable (Stop) state is 0 V DC. A mute enable switch can also be created using a virtual input; see "Virtual Non-Safety Input Devices" on page 65.

### Cancel OFF-Delay Devices

Provide the option to cancel a configured OFF-delay time of a safety output or a delay block output, or to cancel a configured One Shot time of a one shot block output. It functions in one of the following ways:

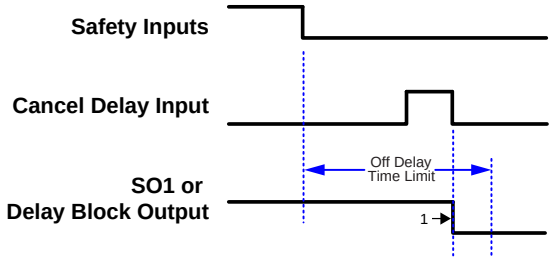
- Keeps the safety output or delay block output ON
- Turns the safety output, delay block output, or one shot block output OFF immediately after the Safety Controller receives a Cancel OFF-Delay signal
- When **Cancel Type** is set to **Control Input**, the safety output or delay block output stays on if the input turns ON again before the end of the delay (does not apply to a One Shot block output)

A status output function (Output Delay in Progress) indicates when a Cancel Delay Input can be activated to keep the OFF-delayed safety output ON. A cancel OFF-delay device can also be created using a virtual input; see "Virtual Non-Safety Input Devices" on page 65.

### Cancel OFF-Delay Timing


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 26. Safety Input remains in Stop mode*




Note 1 - If “turn output off” function is selected

*Figure 27. Turn Output OFF function*

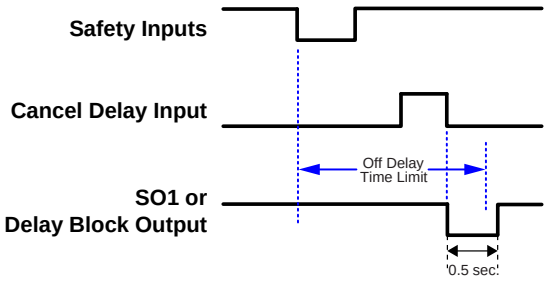



*Figure 28. Keep Output ON function for Safety Inputs with the Latch Reset*

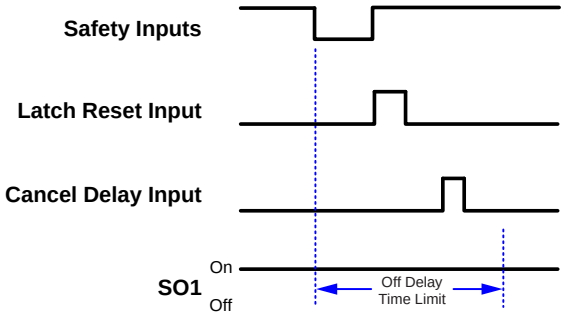
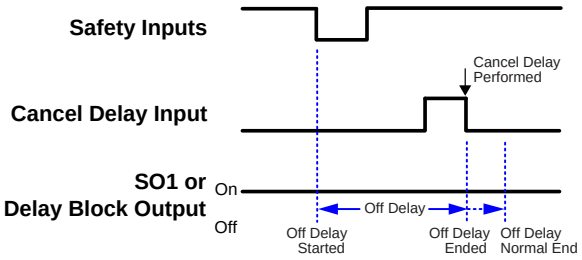



*Figure 29. Keep Output ON function for Safety Inputs without the Latch Reset*




## 7.6.1 Manual Reset Input

The Manual Reset input may be configured to perform any combination of the following (see "Adding Inputs and Status Outputs " on page 88):

**Reset of Safety Inputs**

Sets the output of the Latch Reset Block(s) to a Run state from a Latched state when the IN node is in a Run state

**Reset of Safety Outputs**

Sets the Output to ON if the Output Block configured for Latch Reset is ON.
*Exceptions:*
A Safety Output cannot be configured to use a Manual Reset when associated with a Two-Hand Control input or an Enabling Device function block.

**System Reset**

Sets the System to a Run state from a Lockout state due to a system fault if the cause of the fault has been removed.
Possible scenarios when System Reset is needed include:

- Signals are detected on unused terminal pins
- Configuration Mode timeout
- Exiting Configuration Mode
- Internal faults
- Press Control faults

**NOTE:** A manual reset selected as a system reset can be used to finish the confirmation of a new configuration so that the power does not have to be cycled to the device.

**NOTE:** If the Banner Safety Controller Software is connected to the Controller via an Ethernet connection, select **Restart** from the System Restart window.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**Output Fault Reset**

Clears the fault and allows the output to turn back ON if the cause of the fault has been removed. Possible scenarios when an Output Fault Reset is needed include:

- Output faults
- EDM or AVM faults

**Manual Reset on Power-Up**

Allows various Latch Reset Blocks and/or Output Blocks to be controlled by a single reset input after the power up.

**Enable Mode Exit**

A reset is required to exit the Enable Mode.

**Track Input Group Reset**

Resets the Status Output function **Track Input Group** and the Virtual Status Output function **Track Input Group**.

**The reset switch must be mounted at a location that complies with the following warning.** A key-actuated reset switch provides some operator or supervisory control, as the key can be removed from the switch and taken into the guarded area. However, this does not prevent from any unauthorized or inadvertent resets due to spare keys being in the possession of others, or additional personnel entering the guarded area unnoticed (a pass-through hazard).



**WARNING:**

- **Install reset switches properly**
- Failure to properly install reset switches could result in serious injury or death.
- Install reset switches so that they are accessible only from outside, and in full view of, the safeguarded space. Reset switches cannot be accessible from within the safeguarded space. Protect reset switches against unauthorized or inadvertent operation (for example, through the use of rings or guards). If there are any hazardous areas that are not visible from the reset switches, provide additional safeguarding.

**IMPORTANT:** Resetting a safeguard must not initiate hazardous motion. Safe work procedures require a start-up procedure to be followed and the individual performing the reset to verify that the entire hazardous area is clear of all personnel **before each reset of the safeguard is performed**. If any area cannot be observed from the reset switch location, additional supplemental safeguarding must be used: at a minimum, visual and audible warnings of the machine start-up.

**NOTE:** automatic reset sets an output to return to an ON state without action by an individual once the input device(s) changes to the Run state and all other logic blocks are in their Run state. Also known as "Trip mode," automatic reset is typically used in applications in which the individual is continually being sensed by the safety input device.



**WARNING:**

- **Automatic Power Up**
- On power-up, the Safety Outputs and Latch Reset Blocks configured for automatic power-up will turn their outputs ON if all associated inputs are in the Run state.
- If manual reset is required, configure the outputs for a manual power mode.

## Automatic and Manual Reset Inputs Mapped to the Same Safety Output

By default, Safety Outputs are configured for automatic reset (trip mode). They can be configured as a Latch Reset using the Solid-State Output Properties attribute of the Safety Output (see "Function Blocks " on page 126).

Safety Input Devices operate as automatic reset unless a Latch Reset Block is added. If a Latch Reset Block is added in line with an output configured for Latch Reset mode, the same or different Manual Reset Input Device(s) may be used to reset the Latch Reset Block and the Safety Output latch. If the same Manual Reset Input Device is used for both, and all inputs are in their Run state, a single reset action will unlatch the function block and the output block. If different Manual Reset Input Devices are used, the reset associated with the Safety Output must be the last one activated. This can be used to force a sequenced reset routine, which can be used to reduce or eliminate pass-through hazards in perimeter guarding applications (see "Safety Input Device Properties" on page 38).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

If the controlling inputs to a Latch Reset Block or a Safety Output Block are not in the Run state, the reset for that block will be ignored.

### Reset Signal Requirements

Reset Input devices can be configured for monitored or non-monitored operation, as follows:

**Monitored Reset**

Requires the reset signal to transition from low (0 V DC) to high (24 V DC) and then back to low. The high state duration must be 0.5 seconds to 2 seconds. This is called a trailing edge event.

**Non-Monitored Reset**

Requires only that the reset signal transitions from low (0 V DC) to high (24 V DC) and stays high for at least 0.5 seconds. After the reset, the reset signal can be either high or low. This is called a leading-edge event.

## 7.7 Virtual Non-Safety Input Devices

This feature available on XS/SC26 FID 2 and later and SC10-2. The virtual non-safety input devices include manual reset, ON/OFF, mute enable, and cancel OFF-Delay.



**WARNING:** Virtual Non-Safety Inputs must never be used to control any safety-critical applications. If a Virtual Non-Safety Input is used to control a safety-critical application, a failure to danger is possible and may lead to serious injury or death.

**IMPORTANT:** Resetting a safeguard must not initiate hazardous motion. Safe work procedures require a start-up procedure to be followed and the individual performing the reset to verify that the entire hazardous area is clear of all personnel before each reset of the safeguard is performed. If any area cannot be observed from the reset switch location, additional supplemental safeguarding must be used: at a minimum, visual and audible warnings of the machine start-up.

### 7.7.1 Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence

According to section 5.2.2 of EN ISO 13849-1:2015, a deliberate action by the operator is required to reset a safety function. Traditionally, this requirement is met by using a mechanical switch and associated wires connected to specified terminals on the Safety Controller. For a monitored reset, the contacts must be open initially, then closed, and then open again within the proper timing. If the timing is not too short or too long, it is determined to be deliberate and the reset is performed.

Banner Engineering Corp. has created a virtual reset solution that requires deliberate action. For example, in place of the mechanical switch, an HMI may be used. In place of the wires, a unique Actuation Code is used for each Safety Controller on a network. Also, each virtual reset within a Safety Controller is associated with a specific bit in a register. This bit, along with the Actuation Code, must be written and cleared in a coordinated way. If the steps are completed with the proper sequence and timing, it is determined to be deliberate and the reset is performed.

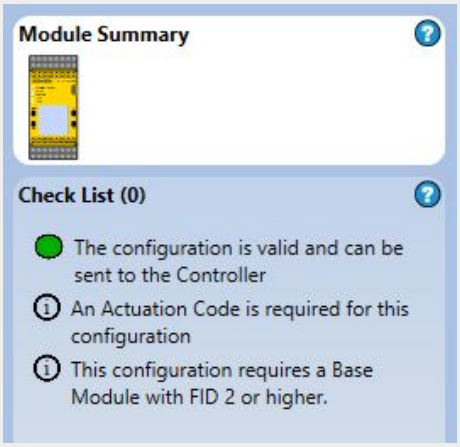
While the standards do not require a deliberate action to perform a virtual cancel delay, to avoid additional complexity, Banner Engineering Corp. has implemented this function in the same way as the virtual manual reset.

The user must set matching Actuation Codes in both the Safety Controller and the controlling network device (PLC, HMI, etc.). The Actuation Code is part of the Network Settings and is not included in the configuration Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC). There is no default Actuation Code. The user must set one up on the **Network Settings** screen. Or, on Controllers with an onboard interface, when the **Use onboard interface to set the last octet and actuation code** checkbox selected, the actuation code can be set using the onboard interface. See "ClickSet IP Process " on page 193. The Actuation Code can be active for up to 2 seconds for it to be effective. Different Safety Controllers on the same network should have different Actuation Codes.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**NOTE:** When a virtual manual reset or cancel delay is added in on the **Functional View** tab, the checklist adds a note that an actuation code must be entered under **Network Settings**.

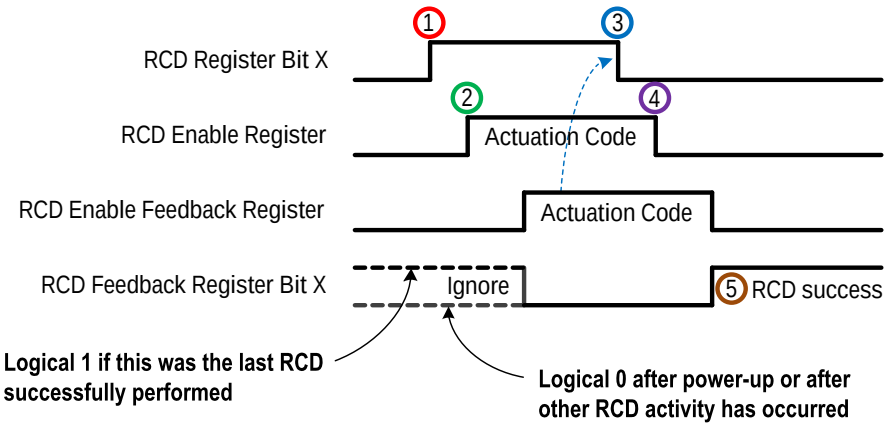
*Figure 30. Example Checklist Warning*




The HMI/PLC programmer can choose from two different methods, depending on their preferences; a feedback-based sequence or a timed sequence. These methods are described in the following figures. The actual register location depends upon which protocol is being used.

### Virtual Reset or Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence—Feedback Method

*Figure 31. Virtual Reset or Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence—Feedback Method*




1. Write a logical 1 to the RCD Register Bit(s) corresponding to the desired Virtual Reset or Cancel Delay.
2. At the same time, or any time later, write the Actuation Code to the RCD Enable Register.
3. Monitor the RCD Enable Feedback Register for the Actuation Code to appear (125 ms typical). Then write a logical 0 to the RCD Register Bit.
4. At the same time, or any time later, clear the Actuation Code (write a logical 0 to the RCD Enable Register). This step must be completed within 2 seconds of when the code was first written (step 2).
5. If desired, monitor the RCD Feedback Register to know if the desired Reset or Cancel Delay was accepted (175 ms typical).

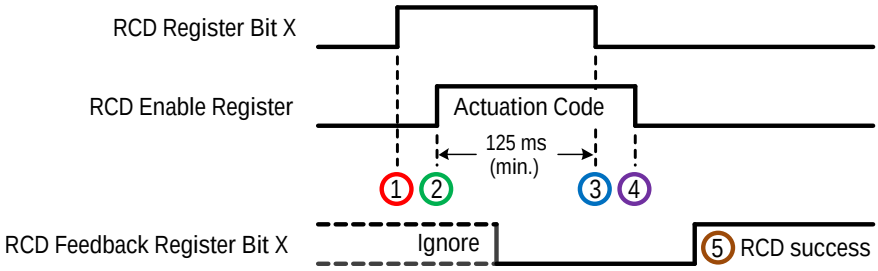
**NOTE:** The various needed register Bits can be found on the **Industrial Ethernet** tab of the Software by changing the Virtual Status Output selection to Virtual Non-Safety Inputs. The Actuation Code is created by the user under the Network Settings icon on the Tool bar.

**NOTE:** An AOI and PLC function block are available at www.bannerengineering.com on the Safety Controller product page. The AOI folder includes a Banner SC10 SC26 XS26 Reset and Cancel Delay Activation AOI readable file that can also help explain the process.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### Virtual Reset or Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence—Timed Method

*Figure 32. Virtual Reset or Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence—Timed Method*




1. Write a logical 1 to the RCD Register Bit(s) corresponding to the desired Virtual Reset or Cancel Delay.
2. At the same time, or any time later, write the Actuation Code to the RCD Enable Register.
3. At least 125 ms after step 2, write a logical 0 to the RCD Register Bit.
4. At the same time, or any time later, clear the Actuation Code (write a logical 0 to the RCD Enable Register). This step must be completed within 2 seconds from when the code was first written (step 2).
5. If desired, monitor the RCD Feedback Register to know if the desired Reset or Cancel Delay was accepted (175 ms typical).

**Virtual Manual Reset Devices** are used to create a reset signal for an output or function block configured for a manual reset, requiring an operator action for the output of that block to turn on. Resets can also be created using physical reset input; see "Non-Safety Input Devices" on page 62.

**WARNING: Virtual Manual Reset**—Any Virtual Manual Reset configured to perform a Manual Power Up function in conjunction with equipment in several locations on the same network should be avoided unless all hazardous areas can be verified safe.

**Virtual Cancel OFF-Delay Devices:** provide the option to cancel a configured OFF-delay or One Shot time. It functions in one of the following ways:

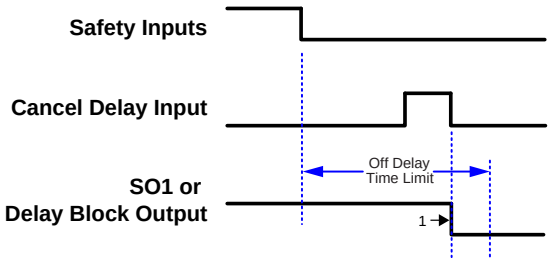
- Keeps the safety output or delay block output ON
- Turns the safety output, delay block output, or one shot block output OFF immediately after the Safety Controller receives a Cancel OFF-Delay signal
- When **Cancel Type** is set to "Control Input", the safety output or delay block output stays on if the input turns ON again before the end of the delay

A status output function (Output Delay in Progress) indicates when a Cancel Delay Input can be activated to keep the OFF-delayed safety output ON. A cancel OFF-delay device can also be created using a physical input; see "Non-Safety Input Devices" on page 62.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### 7.7.2 Virtual Cancel OFF-Delay Timing

*Figure 33. Safety Input remains in Stop mode*




Note 1 - If “turn output off” function is selected

*Figure 34. Turn Output OFF function*

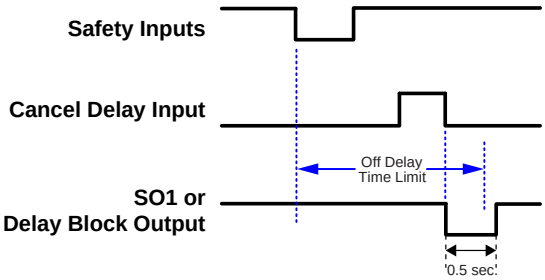



*Figure 35. Keep Output ON function for Safety Inputs with the Latch Reset*

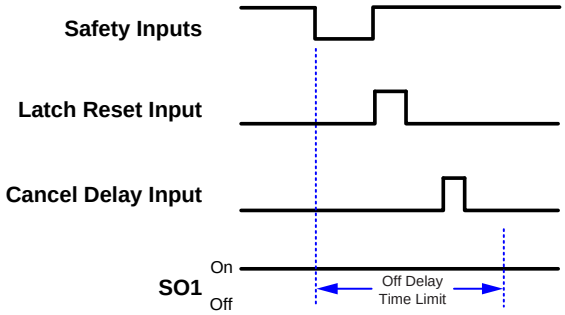
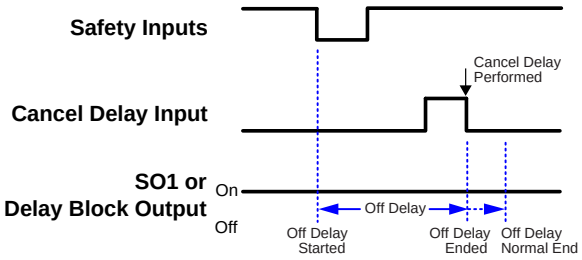



*Figure 36. Keep Output ON function for Safety Inputs without the Latch Reset*




## 7.7.3 Virtual ON/OFF and Mute Enable

**Virtual ON/OFF**

Provides an ON or OFF command to the machine. When all of the controlling safety inputs are in the Run state, this function permits the safety output to turn ON and OFF. The Run state is a logical 1 and the Stop state is a logical 0. A virtual ON/OFF input can be added without mapping to a safety output, allowing it to control a non-safety status output. An ON/OFF switch can also be created using a physical input; see "Non-Safety Input Devices" on page 62.

XS/SC26 FID 4 or later: The virtual ON/OFF inputs are used to select the mode of the Press Control Mode Function Block. Three separate inputs are required to satisfy this block. The block does accept ON/OFF inputs.

**Virtual Mute Enable**

Signals the Safety Controller when the mute sensors are permitted to perform a mute function. When the mute enable function is configured, the mute sensors are not enabled to perform a mute function until the mute enable signal is in the Run state. The enable (Run) state is a logical 1 and the disable (Stop) state is a logical 0. A mute enable switch can also be created using a physical input; see "Non-Safety Input Devices" on page 62.

# 7.8 Safety Outputs

### 7.9 XS/SC26

The Base Controller has two pairs of solid-state safety outputs (terminals SO1a and b, and SO2a and b). These outputs provide up to 500 mA each at 24 V DC. Each redundant Solid-State Safety Output can be configured to function individually or in pairs, for example, split SO1a independent of SO1b, or SO1 as a dual-channel output.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Additional safety outputs can be added to expandable models of the Base Controller by incorporating I/O modules. These additional safety outputs can be isolated relay outputs that can be used to control/switch a wide range of power characteristics (see "XS/SC26 Specifications" on page 24).

## 7.10 SC10-2

The SC10-2 has two isolated redundant relay outputs. Each relay output has three independent sets of contacts. See "SC10-2 Specifications" on page 27 for rating and derating considerations.

## 7.11 XS/SC26 and SC10-2

**WARNING:**

- **Connect the safety outputs properly**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- Safety outputs must be connected to the machine control so that the machine's safety-related control system interrupts the circuit to the machine primary control element(s), resulting in a non-hazardous condition.
- Do not wire an intermediate device(s), such as a PLC, PES, or PC, that can fail in such a manner that there is the loss of the safety stop command, or that the safety function can be suspended, overridden, or defeated, unless accomplished with the same or greater degree of safety.

The following list describes additional nodes and attributes that can be configured from the Safety Output function block **Properties** window (see "Adding Inputs and Status Outputs " on page 88):

**EDM (External Device Monitoring)**

Enables the Safety Controller to monitor devices under control (FSDs and MPCEs) for proper response to the stopping command of the safety outputs. **It is strongly recommended to incorporate EDM (or AVM)** in the machine design and the Safety Controller configuration to ensure the proper level of safety circuit integrity (see "EDM and FSD Wiring" on page 76).

**AVM (Adjustable Valve Monitoring)**

Enables the Safety Controller to monitor valves or other devices that may become slow, stick, or fail in an energized state or position and whose operation needs to be verified after a Stop signal occurs. Up to three AVM inputs can be selected if EDM is not used**. It is strongly recommended to incorporate AVM (or EDM)** in the machine design and the Safety Controller configuration to ensure the proper level of safety circuit integrity (see " Adjustable Valve Monitoring (AVM) Function" on page 52).

**LR (Latch Reset)**

Keeps the SO or RO output OFF until the input changes to the Run state and a manual reset operation is performed. See "Manual Reset Input" on page 63 for more information.

**RE (Reset Enable)**

This option appears only if **LR (Latch Reset)** is enabled. The **Latch Reset** can be controlled by selecting **Reset Enable** to restrict when the safety output can be reset to a Run condition.

**FR (Fault Reset)**

Provides a manual reset function when input faults occur. The FR node needs to be connected to a Manual Reset button or signal. This function is used to keep the SO or RO output OFF until the Input device fault is cleared, the faulted device is in the Run state, and a manual reset operation is performed. This replaces power down/up cycle reset operation. See "Manual Reset Input" on page 63 for more information.

**Power-up mode**

The safety output can be configured for three power-up scenarios (operational characteristics when power is applied):

- Normal Power-Up Mode (default)
- Manual Power-up Mode: Requires a Manual Reset Input configured for Manual Power Up; this selection requires a reset at power up to turn the outputs on, even if configured for automatic reset
- Automatic Power-Up Mode: Allows the outputs to turn on at power up if the logic is in the ON state, even if a latch reset function (block or output node) is configured

See "Manual Reset Input" on page 63 for more information.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

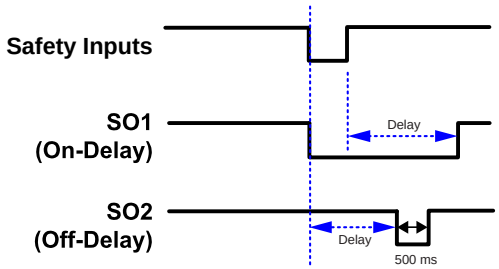
### Split (Safety Outputs)—XS/SC26 only

This option is only available for solid-state safety outputs. Each redundant solid-state safety output can be configured to function individually or in pairs (default). Splitting a solid-state safety output creates two independent single-channel outputs (control of SO1a is independent of SO1b). To combine a split safety output, open the Mx:SOxA **Properties** window and click **Join.**

### ON-Delays and OFF-Delays

Each safety output can be configured to function with either an ON-delay or an OFF-delay (see "Figure: Timing Diagram—General Safety Output ON-Delay and OFF-Delay" on page 70), where the output turns ON or OFF only after the time limit has elapsed. An output cannot have both ON- and OFF-delays. The ON- and OFF-delay time limit options range from 100 milliseconds to 5 minutes, in 1 millisecond increments.

*Figure 37. Timing Diagram—General Safety Output ON-Delay and OFF-Delay*




**WARNING:**

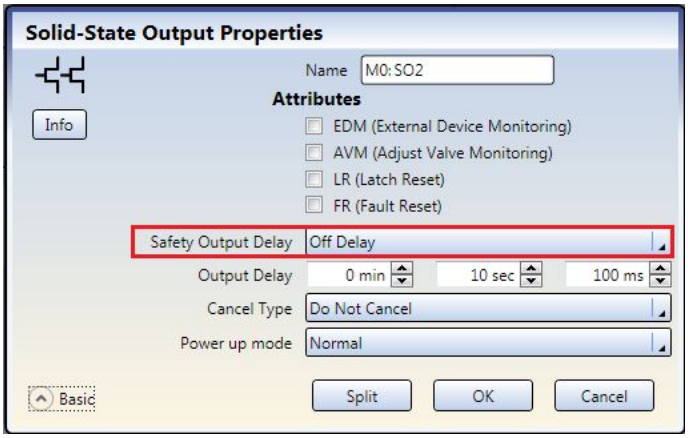
- **With a power interruption or loss, an OFF-delay time can end immediately.**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- The safety output OFF-delay time is honored even if the safety input that caused the OFF-delay timer to start switches back to the Run state before the delay time expires. If such an immediate machine stop condition could cause a potential danger, taken additional safeguarding measures to prevent injuries.

## 7.12 Linking Outputs

Two safety outputs can be linked together when one of the safety outputs is configured for an OFF-delay, and the other does not have a delay. After it is linked, the non-delayed output does not immediately turn back on if the controlling input turns on during the OFF-delay as shown in "Figure: Timing Diagram—Linked Safety Outputs" on page 71. To link two safety outputs:

1. Open the **Properties** window of the safety output that needs to have an OFF-delay.
2. Select **OFF-Delay** from the *Safety Output Delay* drop-down list.

*Figure 38. Example Safety Output Delay Selection: OFF-Delay*

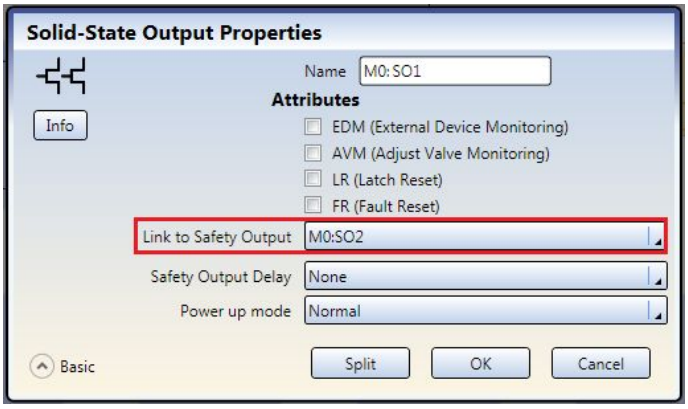



3. Set the desired Output Delay time.
4. Click **OK**.
5. Open the **Properties** window of the safety output that will link to the safety output with an OFF-Delay.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

6. From *Link to Safety Output* drop-down list, select the safety output with an OFF-Delay to which you wish to link this safety output.

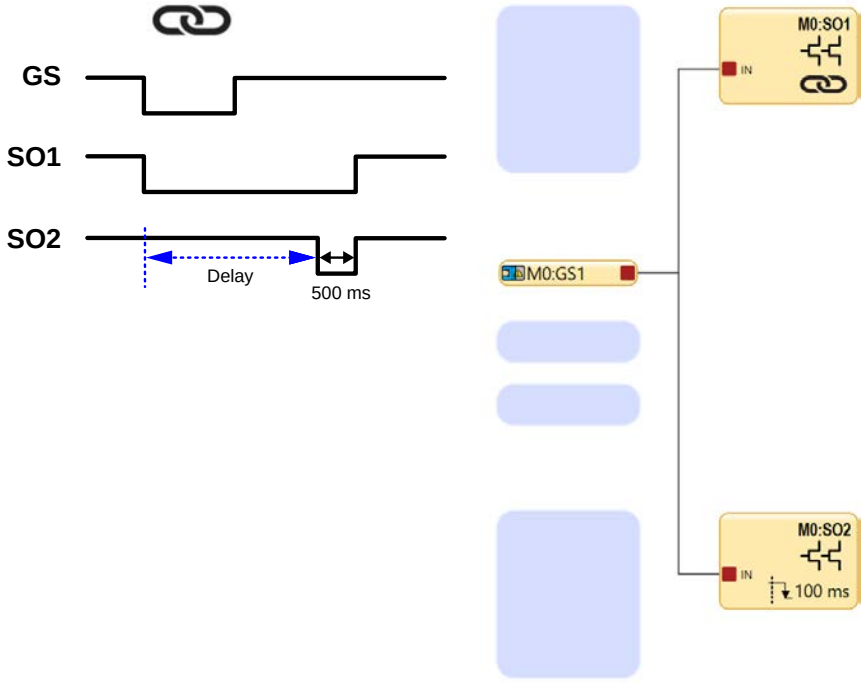
*Figure 39. Example Link to Safety Output Selection*




**NOTE:** The same input(s) need to be connected to both safety outputs for outputs to show up as available for linking.

7. Click **OK**. The linked safety output will have a link icon indicator.

*Figure 40. Timing Diagram—Linked Safety Outputs*




## 7.12.1 Solid-State Safety Outputs

This feature is available on XS/SC26.

The solid-state Safety Outputs, for example, SO1a and b, and SO2a and b, are actively monitored to detect short circuits to the supply voltage, to each other, and to other voltage sources and are designed for Category 4 safety applications. If a failure is detected on one channel of a safety output pair, both outputs attempt to turn Off and will enter a lockout state. The output without the fault is able to turn off the hazardous motion.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Similarly, a Safety Output that is used individually (split), is also actively monitored to detect short circuits to other power sources, but is unable to perform any actions. Take extreme care in the wiring of the terminals and in the routing of the wires to avoid the possibility of shorts to other voltage sources, including other Safety Outputs. Each split Safety Output is sufficient for Category 3 applications due to an internal series connection of two switching devices, but an external short must be prevented.

**IMPORTANT:** When Solid-State Safety Output modules (XS2so or XS4so) are used, the power to those modules must be applied either prior to or within 5 seconds after applying the power to the Base Controller, if using separate power supplies.

**NOTE:** Each Solid-State Safety Output module (XS2so or XS4so) has two 24 V terminals and two 0 V terminals. Only one of each is needed to power the individual module. The second set can be used to jumper power to the next module.

**WARNING:**
- **Single-Channel (Split) Outputs use in Safety Critical Applications**
- Failure to incorporate proper fault exclusion methods when using single-channel outputs in safety critical applications may cause a loss of safety control and result in a serious injury or death.
- If a single-channel output is used in a safety critical application then fault exclusion principles must be incorporated to ensure Category 3 safety operation. Routing and managing single-channel output wires so shorts to other outputs or other voltage sources are not possible is an example of a proper fault exclusion method.

Whenever possible, incorporating external device monitoring (EDM) and/or Adjustable Valve Monitoring (AVM) is highly recommended to monitor devices under control (FSDs and MPCEs) for unsafe failures. See "External Device Monitoring (EDM)" on page 76 for more information.

### Output Connections

The Safety Outputs must be connected to the machine control such that the machine's safety-related control system interrupts the circuit or power to the machine primary control element(s) (MPCE), resulting in a non-hazardous condition.

When used, final switching device (FSDs) typically accomplish this when the safety outputs go to the Off state. Refer to the "XS/SC26 Specifications" on page 24 before making connections and interfacing the Safety Controller to the machine.

The level of the safety circuit integrity must be determined by risk assessment; this level is dependent on the configuration, proper installation of external circuitry, and the type and installation of the devices under control (FSDs and MPCEs). The solid-state safety outputs are suitable for Category 4 PL e / SIL 3 applications when controlled in pairs (not split) and for applications up to Category 3 PL d / SIL 2 when acting independently (split) when appropriate fault exclusion has been employed. See "Figure: Common Wire Installation" on page 73 for hookup examples.

**WARNING:**
- **Safety Output Lead Resistance**
- A resistance higher than 10 ohms could mask a short between the dual-channel safety outputs and could create an unsafe condition that could result in serious injury or death.
- Do not exceed 10 ohms resistance in the safety output wires.

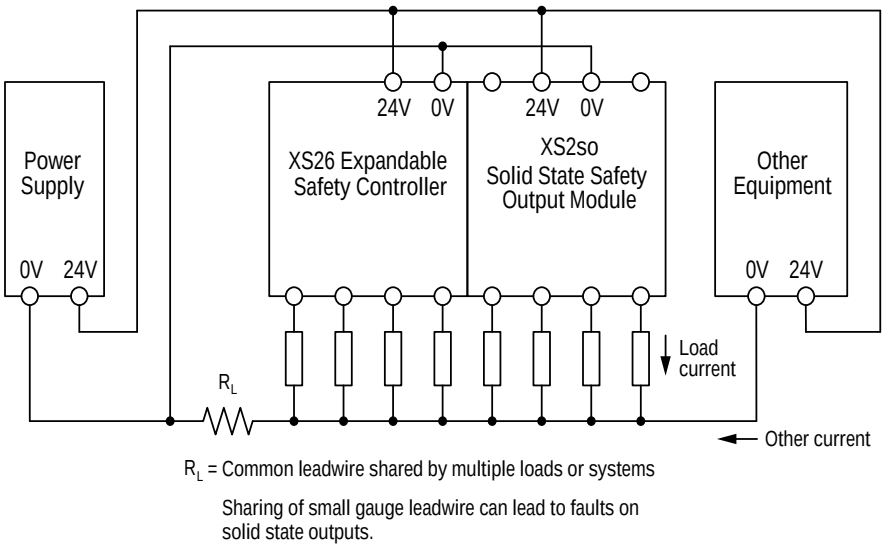
## Common Wire Installation

Consider the wire resistance of the 0 V common wire and the currents flowing in that wire to avoid nuisance lockouts. Notice the location of the resistance symbol in the diagram below, representing 0 V common wire resistance (RL).

Methods to prevent this situation include:
- Using larger gauge or shorter wires to reduce the resistance ($R_L$) of the 0 V common wire
- Separate the 0 V common wire from the loads connected to the Safety Controller and the 0 V common wire from other equipment powered by the common 24 V supply


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 41. Common Wire Installation*

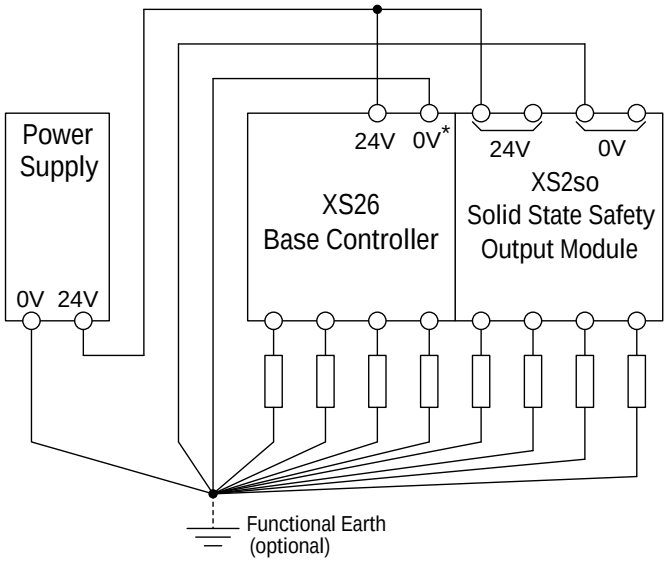



**NOTE:** When the Safety Output turns Off, the voltage at that output terminal must drop below 1.7 V with respect to the 0 V terminal on that module. If the voltage is higher than 1.7 V, the Safety Controller will decide that the output is still on, resulting in a lockout. Consider using larger gauge wires, shorter wires, or using a single point grounding scheme similar to what is shown in the following diagrams.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

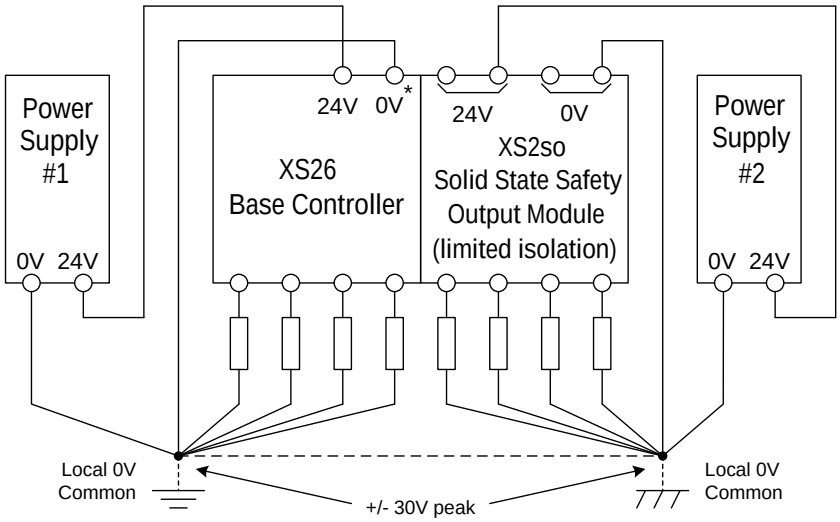
*Figure 42. Wiring Diagram—Recommended Grounding*

Preferred 0V routing plan when a single power supply is used




* The voltage for all safety input devices (including all Input Expansion Modules) should be measured in reference to the 0V terminal of the Base Controller

Preferred 0V routing plan when separate power supplies are used




**NOTE:** The second set (the unused 24 V and 0 V terminals above) can be used to jumper power from one module to the next module.

## 7.12.2 Safety Relay Outputs

XS/SC26 Expansion Safety Relay modules and the SC10-2 have isolated redundant relay outputs that can be used to control/switch a wide range of power characteristics (see "XS/SC26 Specifications" on page 24 and "SC10-2 Specifications" on page 27). Unlike a solid-state Safety Output, within an output module an individual safety relay output (Mx:ROx) functions as a group and cannot be split.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**NOTE:** Each RO of an XS1ro or XS2ro module has two normally open output switching channels for connection to control-reliable power interrupt circuits and one normally closed auxiliary output channel. Each RO of the SC10-2 has three normally open output switching channels for connection to control-reliable power interrupt circuits.

The Safety Relay Outputs are controlled and monitored by the XS/SC26 Base Controller or the SC10-2 without requiring additional wiring.

For circuits requiring the highest levels of safety and reliability, when used in pairs (two normally open), either Safety Output must be capable of stopping the motion of the guarded machine in an emergency. When used individually (a single normally open output), fault exclusion must ensure that failures cannot occur that would result in the loss of the safety function, for example, a short-circuit to another safety output or a secondary source of energy or voltage. For more information, see *Single-channel Control* in "Safety (Protective) Stop Circuits" on page 78 and "Fault Exclusion" on page 37.

Whenever possible, incorporating External Device Monitoring (EDM) and/or Adjustable Valve Monitoring (AVM) is highly recommended to monitor devices under control (FSDs and MPCEs) for unsafe failures. See "External Device Monitoring (EDM)" on page 76 for more information.

**Output Connections**—The Safety Relay Outputs must be connected to the machine control such that the machine's safety-related control system interrupts the circuit or power to the machine primary control element(s) (MPCE), resulting in a non-hazardous condition. When used, Final Switching Devices (FSDs) typically accomplish this when the safety outputs go to the OFF state.

The Safety Relay Outputs can be used as the final switching device (FSD) and can be interfaced in either a dual-channel or single-channel safety (protective) stop circuit (see "FSD Interfacing Connections " on page 78). Refer to "XS/SC26 Specifications" on page 24 and "SC10-2 Specifications" on page 27 before making connections and interfacing the Safety Controller to the machine.

The level of the safety circuit integrity must be determined by risk assessment; this level is dependent on the configuration, proper installation of external circuitry, and the type and installation of the devices under control (FSDs and MPCEs). The safety relay outputs are suitable for Category 4 PL e / SIL 3. See "Figure: Common Wire Installation" on page 73 for wiring examples.

**IMPORTANT:** The user is responsible for supplying overcurrent protection for all relay outputs.

## Overvoltage Category II and III Installations (EN 50178 and IEC 60664-1)

The XS/SC26 and SC10-2 are rated for Overvoltage Category III when voltages of 1 V to 150 V AC/DC are applied to the output relay contacts. They are rated for Overvoltage Category II when voltages of 151 V to 250 V AC/DC are applied to the output relay contacts and no additional precautions are taken to attenuate possible overvoltage situations in the supply voltage. The XS/SC26 or SC10-2 can be used in an Overvoltage Category III environment (with voltages of 151 V to 250 V AC/DC) if care is taken either to reduce the level of electrical disturbances seen by the XS/SC26 or SC10-2 to Overvoltage Category II levels by installing surge suppressor devices (for example, arc suppressors), or to install extra external insulation in order to isolate both the XS/SC26 or SC10-2 and the user from the higher voltage levels of a Category III environment.

**For Overvoltage Category III installations with applied voltages from 151 V to 250 V AC/DC applied to the output contact(s):** the XS/SC26 or SC10-2 may be used under the conditions of a higher overvoltage category where appropriate overvoltage reduction is provided. Appropriate methods include:

- An overvoltage protective device
- A transformer with isolated windings
- A distribution system with multiple branch circuits (capable of diverting energy of surges)
- A capacitance capable of absorbing energy of surges
- A resistance or similar damping device capable of dissipating the energy of surges

When switching inductive AC loads, it is good practice to protect the XS/SC26 or SC10-2 outputs by installing appropriately-sized arc suppressors. However, if arc suppressors are used, they must be installed across the load being switched (for example, across the coils of external safety relays), and never across the XS/SC26 or SC10-2 output contacts (see the warning on arc suppressors in "Generic XS/SC26 Hookup: Safety Output with EDM" on page 80 and "Generic SC10-2 Hookup: Safety Output with EDM" on page 83).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## 7.12.3 EDM and FSD Wiring

### External Device Monitoring (EDM)

The Safety Controller's safety outputs can control external relays, contactors, or other devices that have a set of normally closed (NC), force-guided (mechanically linked) contacts that can be used for monitoring the state of the machine power contacts. The monitoring contacts are normally closed (NC) when the device is turned OFF. This capability allows the Safety Controller to detect if the devices under load are responding to the safety output, or if the normally open (NO) contacts are possibly welded closed or stuck ON.

**NOTE:** The relays internal to the XS1ro, XS2ro and the SC10-2 are always monitored by the modules. EDM is only needed for devices that are external to the controllers.

The external device monitoring (EDM) function provides a method to monitor these types of faults and to ensure the functional integrity of a dual-channel system, including the MPCEs and the FSDs.

A single EDM input can be mapped to one or multiple Safety Outputs. This is accomplished by opening the Safety Output **Properties** window and checking **EDM**, then adding **External Device Monitoring** from the **Safety Input** tab in the **Add Equipment** window (accessed from the **Equipment** tab or **Functional View** tab), and connecting the **External Device Monitoring** input to the **EDM** node of the Safety Output.

The EDM inputs can be configured as one-channel or two-channel monitoring. One-channel EDM inputs are used when the output signal switching device (OSSD) outputs directly control the de-energizing of the MPCEs or external devices.

**One-Channel Monitoring**

A series connection of closed monitor contacts that are forced-guided (mechanically linked) from each device controlled by the Safety Controller. The monitor contacts must be closed before the Safety Controller outputs can be reset (either manual or automatic). After a reset is executed and the safety outputs turn ON, the status of the monitor contacts are no longer monitored and may change state. However, the monitor contacts must be closed within 250 milliseconds of the safety outputs changing from ON to OFF. See "Figure: Timing logic: One-channel EDM status, with respect to Safety Output" on page 77.

**Two-Channel Monitoring**

An independent connection of closed monitor contacts that are forced-guided (mechanically linked) from each device controlled by the Safety Controller. Both EDM inputs must be closed before the Safety Controller can be reset and the OSSDs can turn ON. While the OSSDs are ON, the inputs may change state (either both open, or both closed). A lockout occurs if the inputs remain in opposite states for more than 250 milliseconds. See "Figure: Timing logic: Two-channel EDM status, with respect to Safety Output " on page 78.

**No Monitoring (default)**

If no monitoring is desired, do not enable the Safety Output EDM node. If the Safety Controller does not use the EDM function in Category 3 or Category 4 applications, the user must make sure that any single failure or accumulation of failures of the external devices does not result in a hazardous condition and that a successive machine cycle is prevented.

**WARNING:**

- **External Device Monitoring (EDM)**
- Creating a hazardous situation could result in serious injury or death.
- If the system is configured for "no monitoring," it is the user's responsibility to ensure this does not create a hazardous situation.

**CAUTION:**

- **Use Machine Primary Control Element (MPCE) monitoring contacts to maintain control reliability.**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- Wire at least one normally closed, forced-guided monitoring contact of each MPCE or external device to monitor the state of the MPCEs (as shown). If this is done, proper operation of the MPCEs will be verified.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 43. One-channel EDM Wiring*

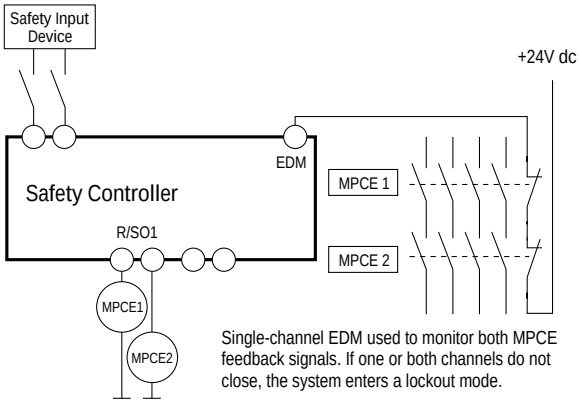



*Figure 44. Two-channel EDM Wiring*

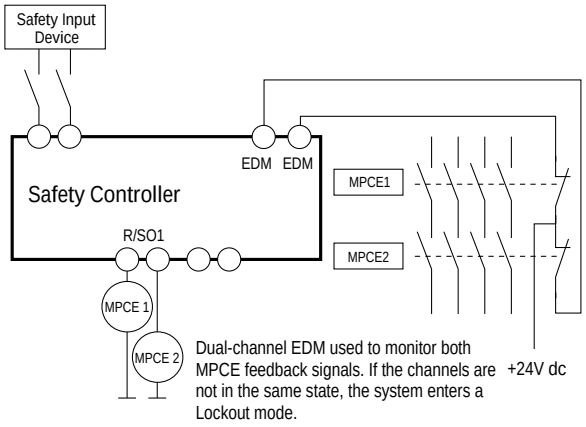
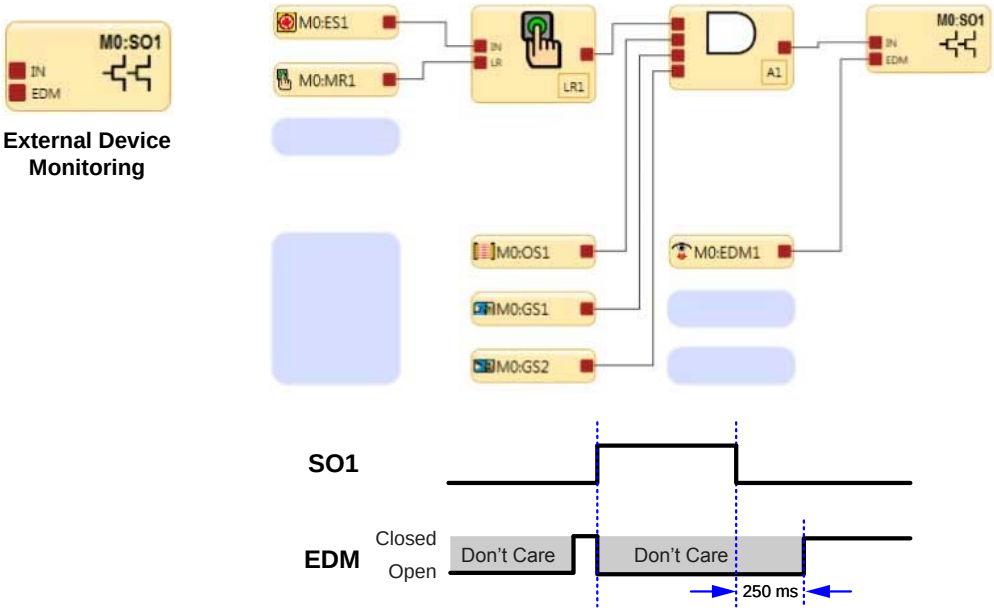


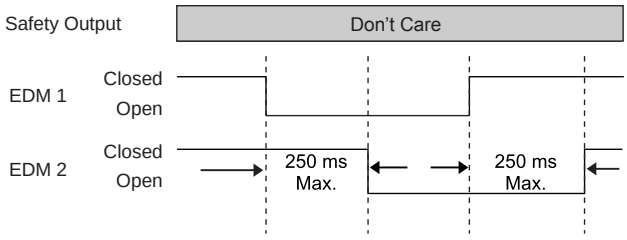

*Figure 45. Timing logic: One-channel EDM status, with respect to Safety Output*




External Device Monitoring EDM is a way to check the operation of dual-channel final switching devices or machine primary control elements. The force guided NC monitoring contacts of the FSD or MPCE are used as an input to detect a "stuck on" fault condition and will prevent the safety controller outputs from turning ON.

For two-channel EDM, as shown below, both channels must be closed before the Safety Output(s) turn ON.

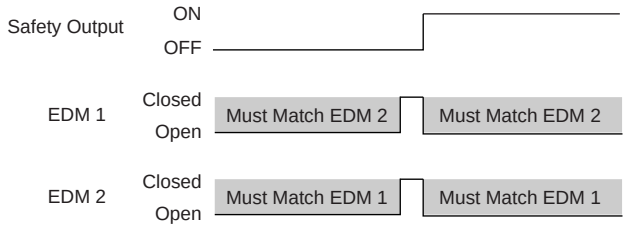
*Figure 46. Timing logic: Two-channel EDM, timing between channels*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 47. Timing logic: Two-channel EDM status, with respect to Safety Output*




## FSD Interfacing Connections

A final switching device (FSDs) interrupts the power in the circuit to the machine primary control element (MPCE) when the Safety Outputs go to the Off-state. FSDs can take many forms, though the most common are forced-guided (mechanically linked) relays or Interfacing Modules. The mechanical linkage between the contacts allows the device to be monitored by the external device monitoring circuit for certain failures.

Depending on the application, the use of FSDs can facilitate controlling voltage and current that differs from the Safety Outputs of the Safety Controller. FSDs may also be used to control an additional number of hazards by creating multiple safety stop circuits.

### Safety (Protective) Stop Circuits

A safety stop allows for an orderly cessation of motion or hazardous situation for safeguarding purposes, which results in a stop of motion and removal of power from the MPCEs (assuming this does not create additional hazards).

A safety stop circuit typically comprises a minimum of two normally open (NO) contacts from forced-guided (mechanically linked) relays, which are monitored (via a mechanically linked normally closed (NC) contact) to detect certain failures so that the loss of the safety function does not occur. Such a circuit can be described as a “safe switching point.”

Typically, safety stop circuits are a series connection of at least two NO contacts coming from two separate, positive-guided relays, each controlled by one separate safety output of the Safety Controller. The safety function relies on the use of redundant contacts to control a single hazard, so that if one contact fails ON, the second contact stops the hazard and prevents the next cycle from occurring.

Interfacing safety stop circuits must be wired so that the safety function cannot be suspended, overridden, or defeated, unless accomplished in a manner at the same or greater degree of safety as the machine’s safety-related control system that includes the Safety Controller.

The NO outputs from an interfacing module are a series connection of redundant contacts that form safety stop circuits and can be used in either single-channel or dual-channel control methods.

**Dual-Channel Control**—dual-channel (or two-channel) control has the ability to electrically extend the safe switching point beyond the FSD contacts. With proper monitoring, such as EDM, this method of interfacing is capable of detecting certain failures in the control wiring between the safety stop circuit and the MPCEs. These failures include a short-circuit of one channel to a secondary source of energy or voltage, or the loss of the switching action of one of the FSD outputs, which may lead to the loss of redundancy or a complete loss of safety if not detected and corrected.

The possibility of a wiring failure increases:

- As the physical distance between the FSD safety stop circuits and the MPCEs increase
- As the length or the routing of the interconnecting wires increases
- If the FSD safety stop circuits and the MPCEs are located in different enclosures

Thus, dual-channel control with EDM monitoring should be used in any installation where the FSDs are located remotely from the MPCEs.

**Single-Channel Control**—single-channel (or one-channel) control uses a series connection of FSD contacts to form a safe switching point. After this point in the machine’s safety-related control system, failures that would result in the loss of the safety function can occur, for example, a short-circuit to a secondary source of energy or voltage.

Thus, this method of interfacing should be used only in installations where FSD safety stop circuits and the MPCEs are physically located within the same control panel, adjacent to each other, and are directly connected to each other; or where the possibility of such a failure can be excluded. If this cannot be achieved, then two-channel control should be used.

Methods to exclude the possibility of these failures include, but are not limited to:

- Physically separating interconnecting control wires from each other and from secondary sources of power


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- Routing interconnecting control wires in separate conduit, runs, or channels
- Routing interconnecting control wires with low voltage or neutral that cannot result in energizing the hazard
- Locating all elements (modules, switches, devices under control, etc.) within the same control panel, adjacent to each other, and directly connected with short wires
- Properly installing multi-conductor cabling and multiple wires that pass through strain-relief fittings. Over-tightening of a strain-relief can cause short circuits at that point
- Using positive-opening or direct-drive components installed and mounted in a positive mode

**WARNING:**

- **Properly install arc or transient suppressors**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- Install any suppressors as shown across the coils of the FSDs or MPCEs. Do not install suppressors directly across the contacts of the FSDs or MPCEs. In such a configuration, it is possible for suppressors to fail as a short circuit.

**WARNING:**

- **Safety Output Interfacing** — To ensure proper operation, the Banner Engineering Corp. product output parameters and machine input parameters must be considered when interfacing the solid-state safety outputs to the machine inputs.
- **Failure to properly interface the safety outputs to the guarded machine may result in serious bodily injury or death.**
- Machine control circuitry must be designed so that:

  The maximum cable resistance value between the Safety Controller solid-state safety outputs and the machine inputs is not exceeded.
  The solid-state safety output maximum OFF state voltage of the Safety Controller does not result in an ON condition.
  The solid-state safety output maximum leakage current of the Safety Controller, due to the loss of 0 V, does not result in an ON condition.

**WARNING:**

- **Risk of electric shock**
- Use extreme caution to avoid electrical shock. Serious injury or death could result.
- Always disconnect power from the safety system (for example, device, module, interfacing, etc.), guarded machine, and/or the machine being controlled before making any connections or replacing any component. Lockout/tagout procedures might be required. Refer to OSHA 29CFR1910.147, ANSI Z244-1, or the applicable standard for controlling hazardous energy.
- Make no more connections to the device or system than are described in this manual. Electrical installation and wiring must be made by a Qualified Person[12] and must comply with the applicable electrical standards and wiring codes, such as the NEC (National Electrical Code), NFPA 79, or IEC 60204-1, and all applicable local standards and codes.

**WARNING:**

- **Properly Wire the Device**
- Failure to properly wire the Safety Controller to any particular machine could result in a dangerous condition that could result in serious injury or death.
- The user is responsible for properly wiring the Safety Controller. The generalized wiring configurations are provided only to illustrate the importance of proper installation.

[12] A person who, by possession of a recognized degree or certificate of professional training, or who, by extensive knowledge, training and experience, has successfully demonstrated the ability to solve problems relating to the subject matter and work.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

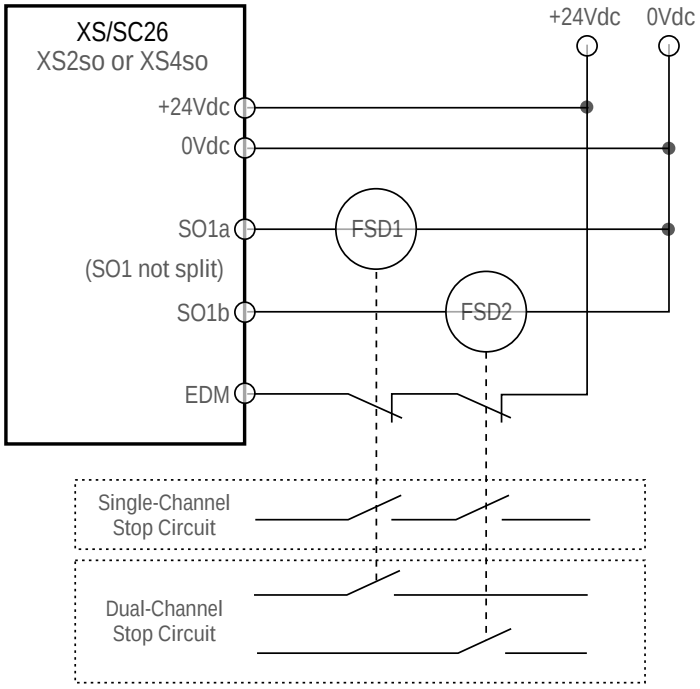
## Generic XS/SC26 Hookup: Safety Output with EDM

*Figure 48. Generic XS/SC26 Hookup: Solid-State Safety Output with EDM*

Solid-State Safety Outputs SO2, SO3, and SO4 can be wired similarly.

When a Solid-State Safety Output has been split into two individual outputs, each output requires an individual EDM or AVM input for monitoring.

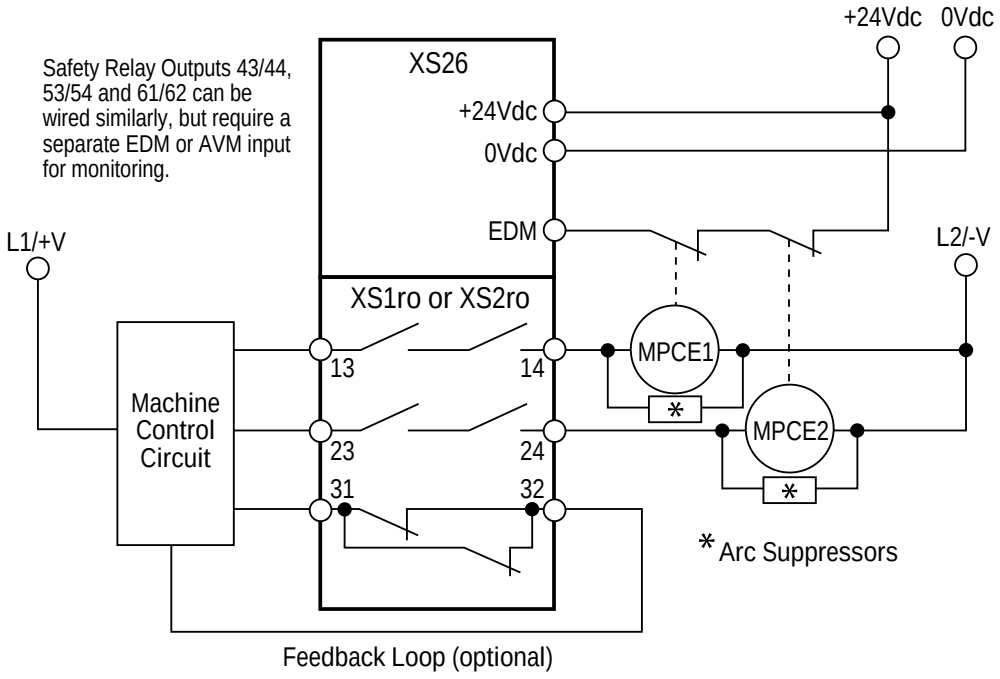
DC common (0Vdc) must be common between the module's 0Vdc terminal and the common of the load (e.g. FSD).





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 49. Generic XS/SC26 Hookup: Safety Relay Output (Dual-Channel) with EDM*

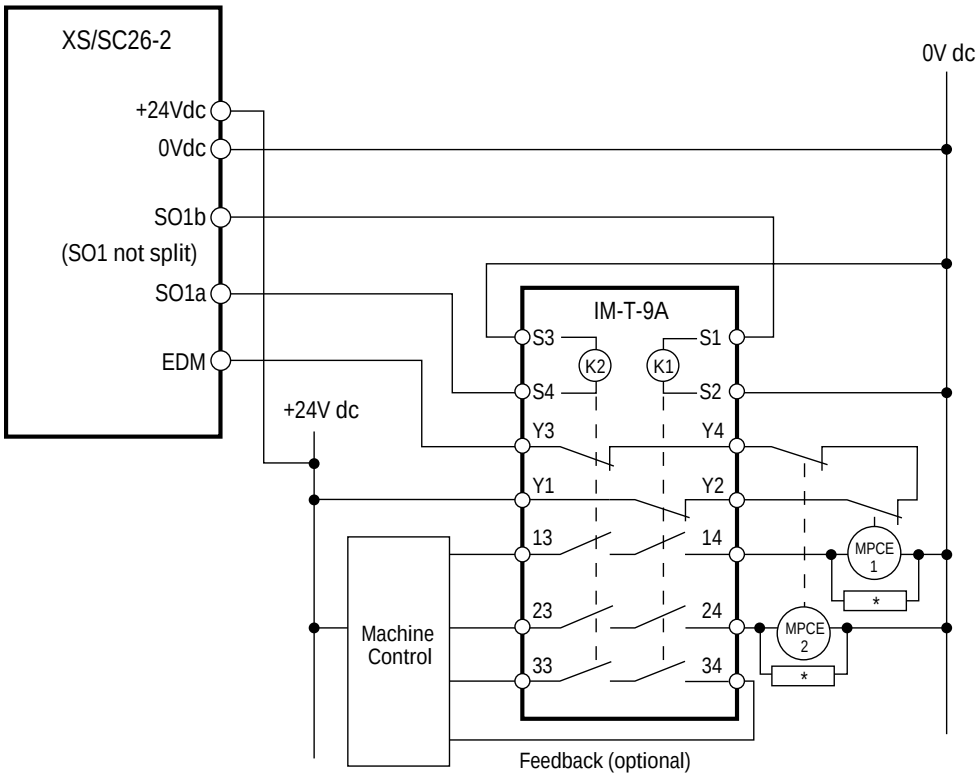



**WARNING:**

- **Properly install arc or transient suppressors**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- Install any suppressors as shown across the coils of the machine primary control elements. Do not install suppressors directly across the output contacts of the safety or interface module. In such a configuration, it is possible for suppressors to fail as a short circuit.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 50. Generic XS/SC26 Hookup: Solid-State Safety Output to IM-T-9A*




* Installation of transient (arc) suppressors across the coils of MPCE1 and MPCE2 is recommended (see Warning)

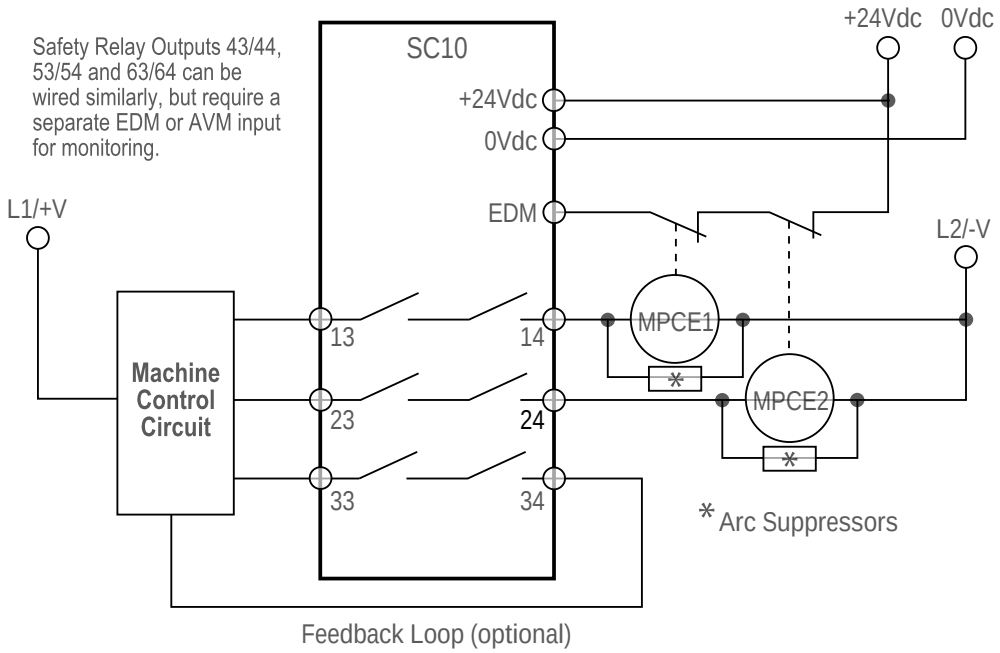
**WARNING:**

- **Properly install arc or transient suppressors**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- Install any suppressors as shown across the coils of the machine primary control elements. Do not install suppressors directly across the output contacts of the safety or interface module. In such a configuration, it is possible for suppressors to fail as a short circuit.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### Generic SC10-2 Hookup: Safety Output with EDM

*Figure 51. Generic SC10-2 Hookup: Safety Relay Output (Dual-Channel) with EDM*




**WARNING:**

- **Properly install arc or transient suppressors**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- Install any suppressors as shown across the coils of the machine primary control elements. Do not install suppressors directly across the output contacts of the safety or interface module. In such a configuration, it is possible for suppressors to fail as a short circuit.

# 7.13 Status Outputs

For instructions on how to add a status output, see "Adding Status Outputs" on page 92.

A status output can be used to send a non-safety signal to devices such as lights or programmable logic controllers (PLCs) to signify the state of an input, safety output, or logic block or function block. For example, a Track Input status output is used to signify the state (ON or OFF) of the selected input (to the light or the PLC).

## 7.13.1 Status Output Signal Conventions

**NOTE:** You cannot use the safety outputs as status outputs in the SC10-2.

There are two signal conventions selectable for each status output:

- PNP ON" (sourcing 24 V DC), follows the state of the items being tracked
- "PNP OFF" (non-conducting), opposite state of the item being tracked

The default convention is Active = PNP ON.

For XS/SC26 FID 4 and later, a flashing rate can also be configured for a status output in the ON state. The three options are:

- None (for ON solid)
- Normal (cycling 500 ms ON and 500 ms OFF)
- Fast (cycling 150 ms ON and 150 ms OFF)


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

The default flashing rate is none. Configuring a flash rate is not possible for a Mute status output (see Mute in "Status Output Functionality" on page 84).

*Table 6. Status Output Signal Conventions*

| Function | Signal Conventions | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Active = PNP ON | | Active = PNP OFF | |
| | Status Output State | | Status Output State | |
| | +24 V DC | OFF | OFF | 24 V DC |
| **Bypass** | Bypassed | Not Bypassed | Bypassed | Not Bypassed |
| **Mute** | Muted | Not Muted | Muted | Not Muted |
| **Output Delay In Progress** | Delay | No Delay | Delay | No Delay |
| **Track Input** | Run | Stop | Run | Stop |
| **Track Input Fault** | Fault | Ok | Fault | Ok |
| **Track Any Input Fault** | Fault | Ok | Fault | Ok |
| **Track Input Group** | Initiated Stop | Other Input Caused Stop | Initiated Stop | Other Input Caused Stop |
| **Track Output** | SO ON | SO OFF | SO ON | SO OFF |
| **Track Output Fault** | Fault | Ok | Fault | Ok |
| **Track Output Fault All** | Fault | Ok | Fault | Ok |
| **Track Output Logical State** | Logically ON | Logically OFF | Logically ON | Logically OFF |
| **Track Function Block State (XS/SC26 FID 2 or later and SC10-2)** | Run | Stop | Run | Stop |
| **Track Press Function Block (XS/SC26 FID 4 or later)** | See "Press Control Status Output Functionality" on page 85 for details. | | | |
| **Waiting for Manual Reset** | Reset Needed | Not Satisfied | Reset Needed | Not Satisfied |
| **System Lockout** | Lockout | Run Mode | Lockout | Run Mode |

## 7.13.2 Status Output Functionality

**SC10-2:** Up to four convertible inputs may be used as Status Outputs.

**XS/SC26:** Up to 32 convertible inputs or safety outputs may be used as status outputs. Solid-state safety outputs may be split and used as status outputs. Relay safety outputs cannot be used as status outputs and cannot be split.

Status outputs can be configured to perform the following functions:

**Bypass**

Indicates when the input to the Bypass function block is bypassed.

**Mute**

Indicates a muting active status for the input to the particular Muting function block:

- ON when a mutable input is muted
- OFF when a mutable input is not muted
- Flashing when the conditions to start a mute-dependent override exist (an inactive muting cycle, the Mutable Safety input is in the stop state, and at least one muting sensor is in the stop (blocked) state); not available for Virtual Status Output
- ON during an active mute-dependent override function (not a bypass function) of a Mutable Safety input

**Output Delay In Progress**

Indicates when either an ON- or OFF-Delay is active.

**Track Input**

Indicates the state of a particular safety input.

**Track Input Fault**

Indicates when a particular safety input has a fault.

**Track Any Input Fault**

Indicates when any safety input has a fault.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**Track Input Group**

Indicates the state of a group of safety inputs, for example, which safety input turned off first. Once this function has been indicated, the function may be re-enabled by a configured Reset input. Up to three Input Groups can be tracked.

**Track Output**

Indicates the physical state of a particular safety output (ON or OFF).

**Track Output Fault**

Indicates when a particular safety output has a fault.

**Track Output Fault All**

Indicates a fault from any safety output.

**Track Output Logical State**

Indicates the logical state of a particular safety output. For example, the logical state is OFF but the safety output is in an OFF-Delay and not physically off yet.

**Track Function Block State (XS/SC26 FID 2 or later and SC10-2)**

Indicates the state of a particular function block.

**Track Press Function Block (XS/SC26 FID 4 or later)**

Indicates the state of a number of Press Function events; see "Press Control Status Output Functionality" on page 85 for details.

**Waiting for Manual Reset**

Indicates a particular configured reset is needed.

**NOTE:** If the manual reset input is connected to a Reset OR block, this status output cannot be used.

**System Lockout**

Indicates a non-operating lockout condition, for example unmapped input connected to 24 V.

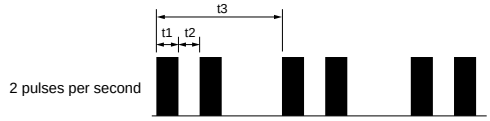
## 7.13.3 Press Control Status Output Functionality

This feature is available on XS/SC26 FID 4 and later.

The Press Control function block has multiple inputs and outputs. This results in a status output function that is not a simple on/off for an individual item. The status output of the Press Control block has seven different events that can be signaled via the status output. The status output of the Press Control block can be configured to provide one, two, or three signals. Each signal from the status output of the Press Control block can be as follows:

- Solid On
- 2 pulses per second

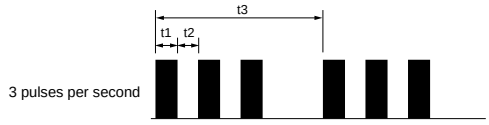
*Figure 52. 2 Pulses Per Second*




t1 = 100 ms, t2 = 100 ms, and t3 = 1 second

- 3 pulses per second

*Figure 53. 3 Pulses Per Second*



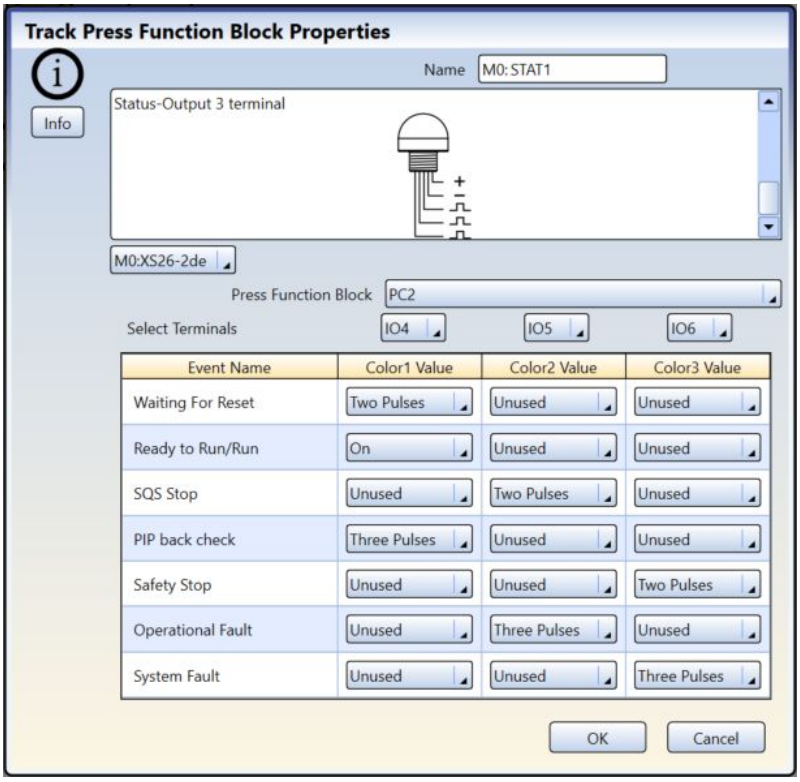

t1 = 100 ms, t2 = 100 ms, and t3 = 1 second

The Press Control block status output is only available as physical status outputs. Each physical status output can be used to signify three different events.

The following figure shows the default settings of the status output of the Press Control function block:


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 54. Track Press Function Block Properties*




The default setting of the function block configures three of the IO pins as status outputs. If all seven events are not required to be displayed for a given application, use the slide bar on the right of the figure to select fewer pins. Moving the bar up one position reduces the number of terminals to two, moving the bar up two positions reduces the number of terminals to one.

The functionality of each event is as follows:

- **Waiting for Reset**—Turns on when a reset input is needed, after the non-mutable and mutable (if configured) safety stop inputs return to the ON state
- **Ready to Run/Run**—Is on any time the press is ready to run (mutable and non-mutable safety stop inputs are on and reset) or the press is running in the up or down stroke
- **SQS Stop**—Turns on when the press ram reaches the Sequence Stop point
- **PIP back check alert**—Turns on when the press is ready to run and an attempt is made to start a press cycle and the PIP (Part in Place) input, if configured, is off or has not turned off then back on (part not removed and replaced)
- **Safety Stop**—Turns on when either the mutable or non-mutable safety stop input turns off, the GO input node goes low (when configured for Manual Upstroke Setting) before SQS, BOS, or TOS is reached (depending on settings and portion of the process)
- **Operational Fault**—Turns on when mutually exclusive operational inputs are on (for example, TOS and BOS, TOS and SQS, TOS and PCMS, SQS and BOS, etc.; if more than 3 seconds elapse between the SQS and PCMS signals both turn on, if configured)
- **System Fault**—Turns on when a system fault exists

# 7.14 Virtual Status Outputs

Up to 64 Virtual Status Outputs can be added for any configuration using Modbus TCP, EtherNet/IP Input Assemblies, EtherNet/IP Explicit Messages, and PCCC protocols on FID 1 XS/SC26 Safety Controllers and up to 256 Virtual Status Outputs can be added on FID 2 or later XS/SC26 Safety Controllers and SC10-2 Safety Controllers. FID 2 or later XS/SC26 Safety Controllers and SC10-2 Safety Controllers can also use PROFINET. FID 6 or later expandable, Ethernet-enabled XS26 Safety Controllers can also use EtherCAT when the XSeCAT Communication Gateway module is added. These outputs can communicate the same information as the Status Outputs over the network. See "Status Output Functionality" on page 84 for more information. The **Auto Configure** function, located on the **Industrial Ethernet** tab of the Software, automatically configures the Virtual Status Outputs to a set of commonly used functions, based on the current configuration. This function is best used after the configuration has been determined. Virtual Status Output configuration can be manually revised after the **Auto Configure** function has been used. The information available over the network is consistent with the logical state of the inputs and outputs within 100 ms for the Virtual Status Output tables (viewable via the Software) and


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

within 1 second for the other tables. The logical state of inputs and outputs is determined after all internal debounce and testing is complete. See "Industrial Ethernet Tab" on page 132 for details on configuring Virtual Status Outputs.

ISD chains and individual device performance and status can be obtained from FID 2 or later SC10-2 Safety Controllers and FID 5 or later XS26-ISD Safety Controllers. Sixteen (16 bit) words can be obtained about the status of each chain. Three (16 bit) administrative words and 18 bytes (8 bits each) of specific data on an individual device of a chain can be obtained. See "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54 for more details.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

8.1 Creating a Configuration ..... 88
8.2 Adding Inputs and Status Outputs ..... 88
8.3 Designing the Control Logic ..... 93
8.4 Saving and Confirming a Configuration ..... 94
8.5 Sample Configurations ..... 97

# Chapter 8 Getting Started

Power up the Safety Controller, and verify that the power LED is ON green.

## 8.1 Creating a Configuration

The following steps are required to complete and confirm (write to controller) the configuration:

1. Define the safeguarding application (risk assessment).
    - Determine the required devices
    - Determine the required level of safety
2. Install the Banner Safety Controller software. See "Installing the Software" on page 32.
3. Become familiar with the Software options. See "Software Overview" on page 117.
4. Start the Software and select the desired device.
5. Start a new project by clicking **New Project/Recent Files**.
6. Define the **Project Settings**. See " Project Settings" on page 120.
7. XS/SC26: Customize the Base Controller and add Expansion Modules and/or a Communication Gateway (if used). See "Equipment Tab" on page 121.
8. Add Safety Input devices, Non-Safety Input devices, and Status Outputs. See "Adding Inputs and Status Outputs " on page 88.
9. Design the control logic. See "Designing the Control Logic" on page 93.
10. Set optional Safety Output On- or Off-time delays.
11. If used, configure the network settings. See:
    - " Network Settings: Modbus TCP, Ethernet/IP, PCCC " on page 136
    - " Network Settings: PROFINET" on page 137
    - " Network Settings: EtherCAT " on page 138
12. Save and confirm the configuration. See "Saving and Confirming a Configuration " on page 94.

The following steps are optional and may be used to aid with the system installation:

- Modify the configuration access rights. See" XS/SC26 Password Manager" on page 142 or "SC10-2 Password Manager" on page 143.
- View the **Configuration Summary** tab for the detailed device information and response times. See "Configuration Summary Tab" on page 140.
- Print the configuration views, including the **Configuration Summary** and **Network Settings**. See " Print Options" on page 141.
- Test the configuration using Simulation Mode. See " Simulation Mode" on page 150.

## 8.2 Adding Inputs and Status Outputs

Safety and Non-Safety Inputs can be added from either the **Equipment** tab or the **Functional View** tab. Status Outputs can be added from the **Equipment** tab only. Virtual Non-Safety inputs can be added from the **Functional View** tab only. When inputs are added on the **Equipment** tab, they are automatically placed in the **Functional View** tab. All inputs and **Logic** and **Function Blocks** can be moved around on the **Functional View** tab. The **Safety Outputs** are statically positioned on the right side.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## 8.2.1 Adding Safety and Non-Safety Inputs

1. On the **Equipment** tab, click ✚ below the module which will have the input device connected (the module and terminals can be changed from the input device **Properties** window) or any of the placeholders on the **Functional View** tab.

   **NOTE:** Virtual Non-Safety Inputs are available only from the **Functional View** tab.

2. Click **Safety Input** or **Non-Safety Input** to add input devices:

   *Figure 55. XS/SC26: Adding inputs from the Functional View (Virtual Non-Safety Inputs can only be added from this view)*

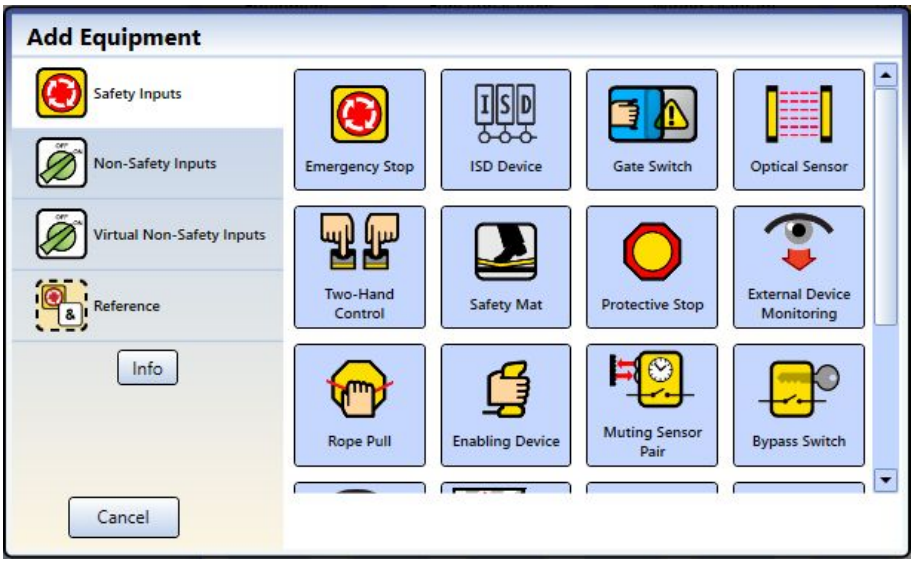


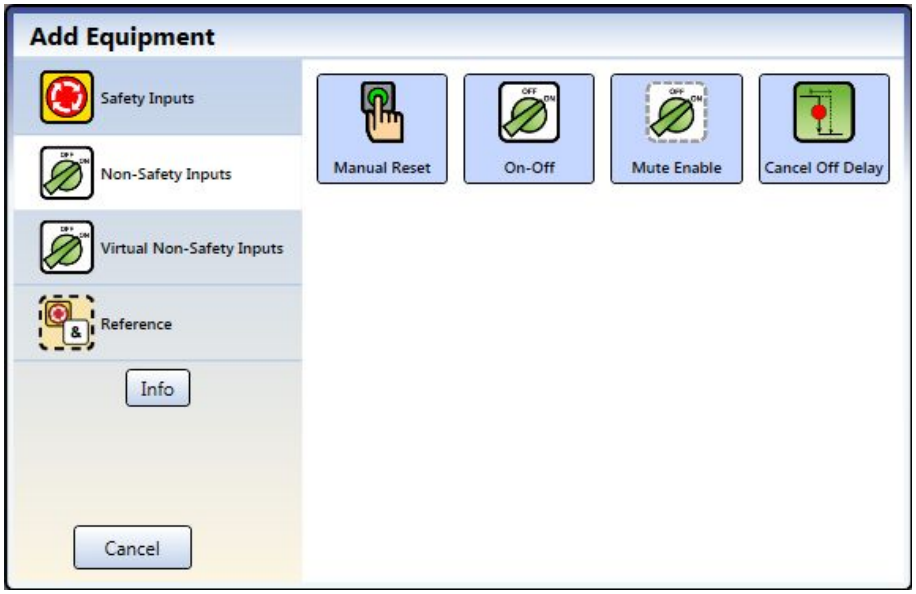

   *Figure 56. SC10-2: Adding inputs from Equipment View (physical status output can only be added from this view)*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

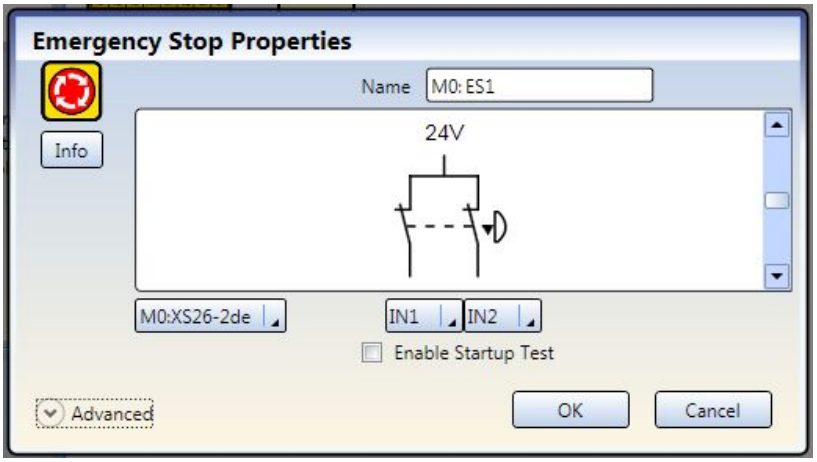
*Figure 57. Non-Safety Inputs (Virtual Non-Safety Inputs available only from the **Functional View** Tab)*




3. Select appropriate device settings:

***Basic settings:***

*Figure 58. Basic Safety Input Settings*

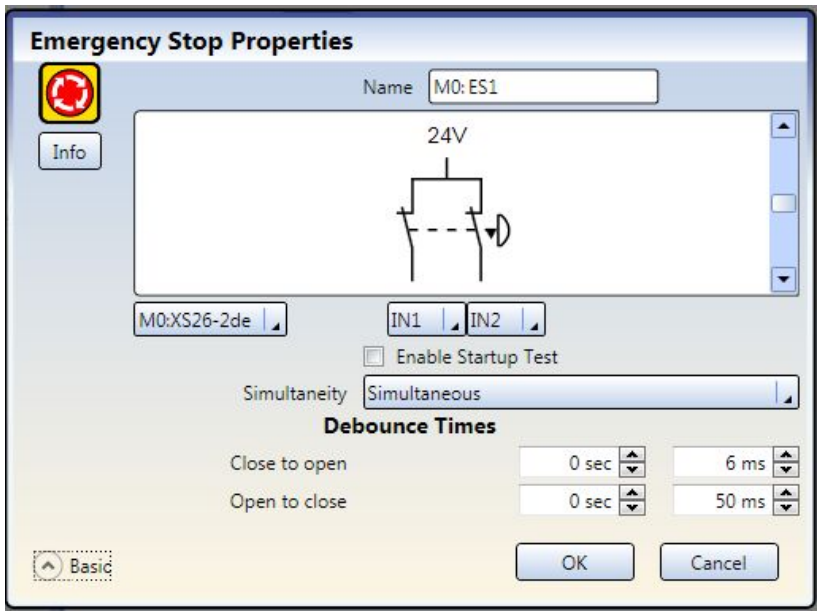



- *Name*—input device name; generated automatically and can be changed by the user. Names can be a maximum of 10 characters. When shown on the display of display models, a maximum of 8 characters are shown (due to size constraints)
- *Circuit Type*—the circuit and signal convention options appropriate for the selected input device; scroll to see and select the desired option
- *Module*— the module to which the input device is connected (for example, M0:XS26-2e)
- *I/O Terminals*—the assignment of input terminals for the selected device on the selected module
- *Enable Startup Test* (where applicable)—an optional precautionary safety input device test required after each power-up
- *Reset Options* (where applicable)—various reset options such as Manual Power Up, System Reset, and Reset Track Input Group


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

***Advanced settings (where applicable):***

*Figure 59. Advanced Safety Input Settings*

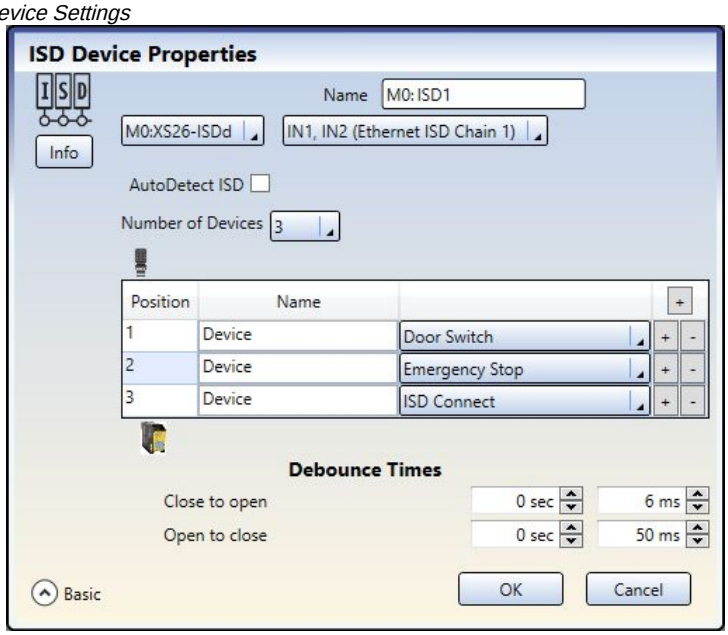



- *Simultaneity* (where applicable)—Simultaneous or Concurrent (see Glossary for definitions)
- *Debounce Times*—the signal state transition time
- *Monitored/Non-Monitored* (where applicable)—see "Reset Signal Requirements" on page 65


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

***ISD Device Properties (where applicable):***

*Figure 60. Advanced ISD Device Settings*




- *Name*—input device name; generated automatically and can be changed by the user. Names can be a maximum of 10 characters. When shown on the display of display models, a maximum of 8 characters are shown (due to size constraints)
- *I/O Terminals*—the assignment of input terminals for the selected device on the selected module
- *Number of Devices* (required)—the number of ISD sensors used in the application
- *AutoDetect ISD* (where applicable)—option where, when selected, the controller actively determines the number of devices and their types during operation. For more information, see "AutoDetect ISD Option " on page 346.
- *Manual Baseline at Power Up* (where applicable)—option where, when selected, the controller will set the 'Re-baseline' bit to the software and/or connected PLC. The 'Accept this Baseline' bit must be returned to the controller to accept and set the current configuration as the startup baseline. The **Manual Baseline at Power Up** checkbox is available when the **AutoDetect ISD** checkbox is selected.
- *Position, Name, and Type*—the position, name, and type (Door Switch, E-Stop, ISD-Connect) of ISD sensors used in the application. The **Name** is generated automatically and can be changed by the user. The **Type** is a user-selectable menu
- *Debounce Times*—the signal state transition time

**NOTE:** The Banner Safety Controller Software applies the gate switch rules to the ISD Inputs.

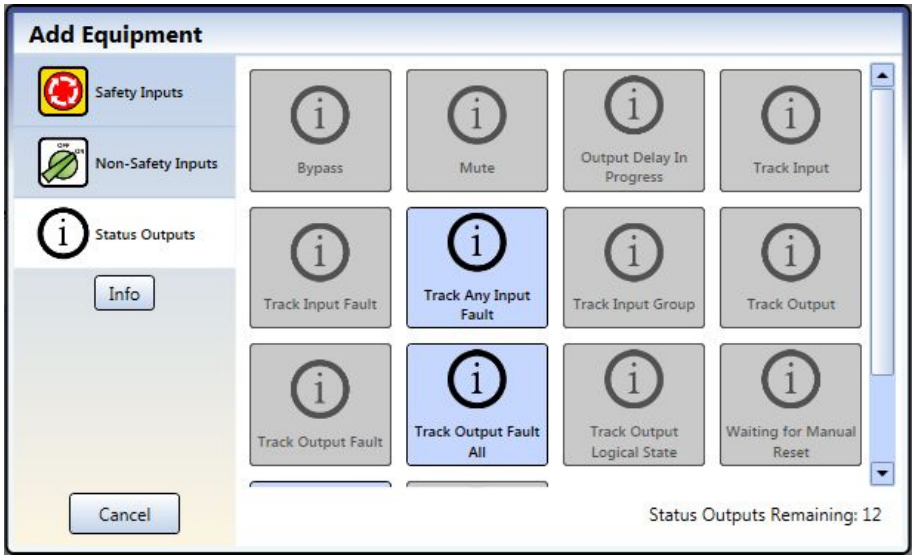
## 8.2.2 Adding Status Outputs

1. On the **Equipment** tab, click ✚ below the module which will have the status monitoring.
2. Click **Status Outputs** to add status monitoring[13].

[13] Status outputs can be configured when the state of an input device or an output needs to be communicated. The IOx terminals are used for these status signals.

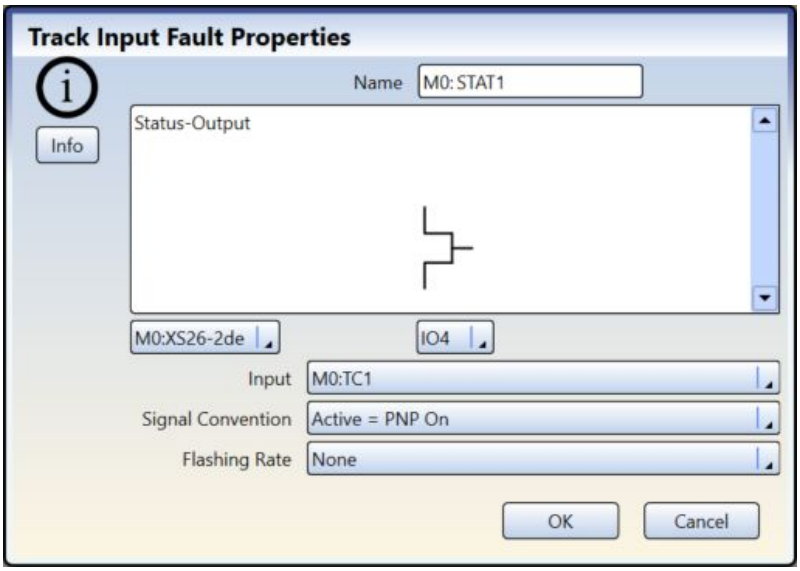

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 61. Status Outputs*




3. Select appropriate Status Output settings:

*Figure 62. Status Output Properties*




- *Name*—Names can be a maximum of 10 characters. When shown on the display of display models, a maximum of 8 characters are shown (due to size constraints)
- *Module*
- *I/O (where applicable)*
- *Terminal*
- *Input or Output (where applicable)*
- *Signal Convention*
- *Flashing Rate*

# 8.3 Designing the Control Logic

To **design the control logic**:

1. Add the desired **Safety** and **Non-Safety Inputs**:
   - On the **Equipment** tab: click ✚ under the module to which the input will be connected (the module can be changed in the input **Properties** window)
   - On the **Functional View** tab: click any of the empty placeholders in the left column

See "Adding Inputs and Status Outputs " on page 88 for more information and device properties.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

2. Add **Logic** and/or **Function Blocks** (see "Logic Blocks" on page 123 and "Function Blocks " on page 126) by clicking any of the empty placeholders in the middle area.

> **NOTE:** The response time of the Safety Outputs can increase if a large number of blocks are added to the configuration. Use the function and logic blocks efficiently to achieve the optimum response time.

3. Create the appropriate connections between added inputs, **Function** and **Logic Blocks**, and Safety Outputs.

> **WARNING:**
> - **Configuration Conforms to Applicable Standards**
> - Failure to verify the application may result in serious injury or death.
> - The Banner Safety Controller Software primarily checks the logic configuration for connection errors. The user is responsible for verifying the application meets the risk assessment requirements and that it conforms to all applicable standards.

> **NOTE:** The checklist on the left displays connections that are required for a valid configuration and all items must be completed. The Safety Controller will not accept an invalid configuration.

> **NOTE:** The output node of any item can be connected to multiple input nodes. An input node can only have one item connected to it.

> **TIP:** To aid with creating a valid configuration, the program displays helpful tooltips if you attempt to make an invalid connection.

## 8.4 Saving and Confirming a Configuration

Confirmation is a verification process where the Safety Controller analyzes the configuration generated by the Software for logical integrity and completeness. The user must review and approve the results before the configuration can be saved and used by the Safety Controller. Once confirmed, the configuration can be sent to a Safety Controller or saved on a PC or an SC-XM2/3 drive.

> **WARNING:**
> - **Complete the Commissioning Checkout Procedure**
> - Failure to follow the commissioning process may lead to serious injury or death.
> - After confirming the configuration, the Safety Controller operation must be fully tested (commissioned) before it can be used to control any hazards.

### 8.4.1 Saving a Configuration

1. Click **Save Project**.
2. Select **Save As**.
3. Navigate to the folder where you wish to save the configuration.
4. Name the file (may be the same or different from the configuration name).
5. Click **Save**.

> **NOTE:** If the configuration has not been configured, this process saves the configuration as an unconfirmed configuration (a *.xsc file).

### 8.4.2 Confirming a Configuration

The Safety Controller must be powered up and connected to the PC via the SC-USB2 cable or via an Ethernet connection (for XS/SC26 FID 7 or later Ethernet-enabled models only). See the "Connect to a Safety Controller via Ethernet " on page 112 for establishing connections between the Software and a Safety Controller over a network connection. Before writing the


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

configuration to a controller on an active EtherCAT network, see the second note in " EtherCAT® and the Safety Controllers" on page 319.

1. Click .
2. Click **Write Configuration to Controller**.

   If the configuration has not been saved, the software will ask if you want to save the project (configuration). This saves the unconfirmed configuration. Selecting **Save** saves the file with the current name. Selecting **Don't Save** continues the writing process.

   *Figure 63. "Do you want to save?" Message*

   If the configuration being sent to the controller contains item(s) that are not supported by the attached controller (for example, expansion modules, virtual inputs, ISD inputs, etc.), the following notice displays:

   *Figure 64. Incompatible Controller Warning*

   This notice is a reminder that the configuration can be loaded into the attached controller, but it will not function (controller will lockout). The configuration is allowed to be loaded because during this process the configuration can also be confirmed. It will not run on this controller, but this now confirmed configuration can be loaded onto an SC-XM2/3 or e-mailed to a remote location, and then can be loaded onto a compatible controller. If the configuration is already confirmed, it is still allowed to be loaded onto the attached controller. However, after it is loaded, the controller will lock out because the configuration contains unsupported features.
3. If prompted, enter the:
   - PIN if via a USB connection (the default PIN is 1901)
   - Password if via an Ethernet connection (XS/SC26 FID 7 or later Ethernet-enabled models only)

   The **Entering config-mode** screen opens.
4. Click **Continue** to enter the configuration mode.

   After the **Reading Configuration from the Controller** process is completed, the **Confirm Configuration** screen opens.
5. Verify that the configuration is correct.
6. **Scroll to the end of the configuration and click Confirm.**
7. After the **Writing Configuration To Controller** process is completed, click **Close**.

**NOTE:**
- Network settings are sent separately from the configuration settings. Click **Send** from the **Network Settings** window to write the network settings to the Safety Controller.
- SC10-2 and XS/SC26 FID 3 or later: Network settings are automatically sent only if the Safety Controller is a factory default Safety Controller. Otherwise, use the **Network Settings** window.
- SC10-2 and XS/SC26 FID 3 or later: PINs/passwords are automatically written only if the Safety Controller is a factory default Safety Controller or the configuration is confirmed. In any other case, use the **Password Manager** window to write PINs/passwords to the Safety Controller.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

If you are configuring an SC10-2 or XS/SC26 FID 3 or later, the **Do you want to change the passwords of the controller?** screen may display.

8. SC10-2 and XS/SC26 FID 3 or later: If prompted and if desired, change the PINs/passwords.

   XS/SC26 FID 7 or later Ethernet-enabled models require that the default password is changed if the user desires to access the controller via an Ethernet connection. For details, see " XS/SC26 Password Manager" on page 142.
9. For the changes to take effect in the Safety Controller, cycle power, perform a System Reset, or, if loading the configuration via an Ethernet connection, select **Restart** from the **System Restart** window.
10. Save the confirmed configuration on the PC.

> **NOTE:** Saving the now confirmed configuration is recommended. Confirmed configurations are a different file format (.xcc) than an unconfirmed file (.xsc). Confirmed configurations are required for loading into an SC-XM2/3 drive. Click **Save As** to save.

### 8.4.3 Write a Confirmed Configuration to an SC-XM2/3 using the Programming Tool

1. Insert the SC-XM2/3 into the SC-XMP2 programming tool.
2. With the Banner Safety Controller software running, insert the programming tool into a USB port of the PC.

   The SC-XM2/3 icon should go live (become a bit darker than grayed out).
3. Click and select **Write XM**.

> **NOTE:** If **Write XM** is grayed out, the configuration is not a .xcc (confirmed version).

4. Verify the desired PINs.
5. Click **Send to XM**.

   The **Writing Configuration to SC-XM drive** window opens.

> **NOTE:** This process copies all data (configuration, network settings, and PINs/passwords) to the SC-XM2/3 drive.

6. After it is finished, click **Save Confirmed Configuration** and then **Close**, or click **Close** if the file has already been saved to the PC.

### 8.4.4 Notes on Confirming or Writing a Configuration to a Configured SC10-2 or XS/SC26 FID 3 or later

User settings and PINs/passwords affect how the system responds when confirming a configuration or writing a confirmed configuration to a configured SC10-2 or XS/SC26 FID 3 or later Safety Controller.

#### 8.4.5 User1

1. Click **Write configuration to Controller** to confirm a configuration (or write a confirmed configuration) to a configured Safety Controller.
2. Enter the User1 PIN or password.
   - PIN if via a USB connection
   - Password if via an Ethernet connection (XS/SC26 FID 7 or later Ethernet-enabled models only)
3. The confirmation (or writing) process begins.

At the end of the confirmation (or writing) process, the Safety Controller will have received:

- New passwords and PINs
- New configuration

Network settings are not changed.

#### 8.4.6 User2 or User3—Successful Configuration Confirmation or Writing

This scenario assumes the following settings for User2 or User3:

- **Allowed to change the configuration** = enabled


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- **Allowed to change the network settings** = enabled OR disabled

1. Click **Write configuration to Controller** to confirm a configuration (or write a confirmed configuration) to a configured Safety Controller.
2. Enter the User2 or User3 PIN or password.
    - PIN if via a USB connection
    - Password if via an Ethernet connection (XS/SC26 FID 7 or later Ethernet-enabled models only)
3. The confirmation (or writing) process begins.

At the end of the confirmation (or writing) process, the Safety Controller will have received:

- New configuration

PINs/passwords and Network settings are not changed.

### 8.4.7 User2 or User3—Unsuccessful Configuration Confirmation or Writing

This scenario assumes the following settings for User2 or User3:

- **Allowed to change the configuration** = disabled
- **Allowed to change the network settings** = enabled OR disabled

1. Click **Write configuration to Controller** to confirm a configuration (or write a confirmed configuration) to a configured Safety Controller.
2. Enter the User2 or User3 PIN or password.
    - PIN if via a USB connection
    - Password if via an Ethernet connection (XS/SC26 FID 7 or later Ethernet-enabled models only)
3. The confirmation (or writing) process is aborted.

## 8.5 Sample Configurations

The Software provides several sample configurations that demonstrate various features or applications of the Safety Controller. To access these configurations, go to **Open Project › Sample Projects** and select the desired project.

The XS/SC26 has three groupings of sample configurations:

- **Applications**—Includes samples of simple potential applications of the controller. Two of the samples are obsolete module replacement.
- **Documentation**—Includes samples. Most of the samples included here are described in the following sections, and one is described in the Quick Start Guide (available online).
- **Examples**—Includes three divisions: **Function Blocks**, **Logic Blocks**, and **Safety Outputs**. These examples show the functionality of the various blocks. For example, to see how a bypass block operates, select **Function Blocks › Bypass Block (All Features Enabled)** and run it in Simulation Mode.

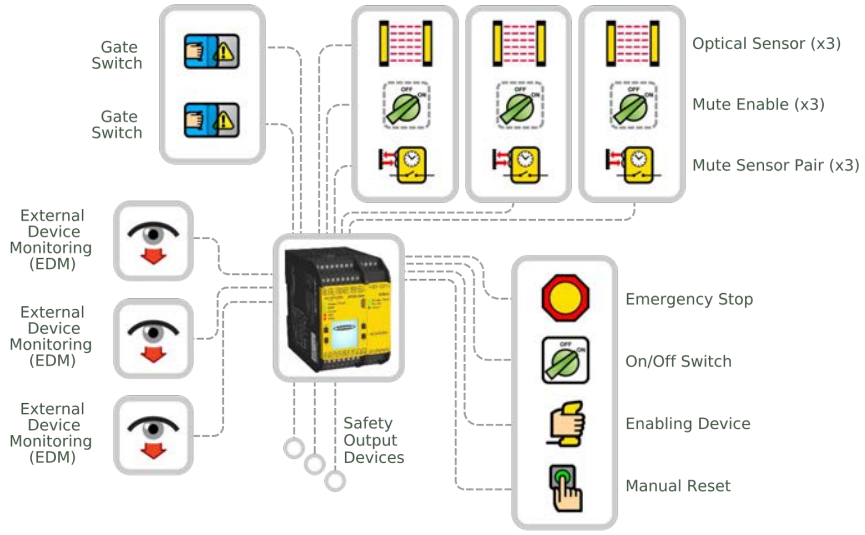
The SC10-2 has several sample configurations. These samples include typical applications of the SC10-2 model. Use the samples as a starting point and modify them for your specific needs.

### 8.5.1 XS/SC26 Sample Configuration

This section describes designing the sample configuration "3 Zone Muting Instruction Manual", which is located under the **Documentation** section of the XS/SC26 sample programs. This sample configuration is for a robotic palletizer application that utilizes an XS26 Safety Controller, XS8si Safety Input Module, three optical sensors (muting is added via the software), two interlock switches, a manual reset, and an Emergency Stop button.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 65. Sample Configuration Schematic*




To design the configuration for this application:

1. Click **New Project**.
2. Define project settings. See " Project Settings" on page 120.
3. Select Base Controller model. See "Equipment Tab" on page 121 (for this configuration, only the **Is Expandable** box is required to be checked).
4. Add the expansion module **XS8si** by clicking on ✚ to the right of the Base Controller.
   a. Click **Input Modules**.
   b. Select **XS8si**.
5. Add the following inputs, changing only the circuit type:

| Input | Quantity | Type | Module | Terminals | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Emergency Stop** | 1 | Safety Input | XS8si | IO1, IN1, IN2 | Dual-Channel 3 terminal |
| **Enabling Device** | 1 | Safety Input | XS8si | IO1, IN3, IN4 | Dual-Channel 3 terminal |
| **External Device Monitoring** | 3 | Safety Input | Base | 1. IO3<br>2. IO4<br>3. IO5 | Single-Channel 1 terminal |
| **Gate Switch** | 2 | Safety Input | Base | 1. IO1, IN15, IN16<br>2. IO2, IN17, IN18 | Dual-Channel 3 terminal |
| **Manual Reset** | 1 | Non-Safety Input | XS8si | IN6 | Single-Channel 1 terminal |
| **Muting Sensor Pair** | 3 | Safety Input | Base | 1. IN9, IN10<br>2. IN11, IN12<br>3. IN13, IN14 | Dual-Channel 2 terminal |
| **Mute Enable** | 3 | Non-Safety Input | Base | 1. IN1<br>2. IN2<br>3. IO8 | Single-Channel 1 terminal |
| **On-Off** | 1 | Non-Safety Input | XS8si | IN5 | Single-Channel 1 terminal |
| **Optical Sensor** | 3 | Safety Input | Base | 1. IN3, IN4<br>2. IN5, IN6<br>3. IN7, IN8 | Dual-Channel PNP |

6. Go to the **Functional View** tab.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

> **TIP:** You may notice that not all inputs are placed on Page 1. There are two solutions to keep the configuration on one page. Perform one of the following steps:
>
> 1. Add a **Reference** to the block located on a different page—click any of the empty placeholders in the middle area, select **Reference** and select the block that is on the next page. Only blocks from other pages can be added as a **Reference.**
> 2. Re-assign page—by default all inputs added on the **Equipment** tab are placed on the **Functional View** tab to the first available placeholder in the left column. However, inputs can be moved to any location in the middle area. Move one of the blocks to any of the placeholders in the middle area. Go to the page which contains the block that needs to be moved. Select the block and change the page assignment below the **Properties** table.

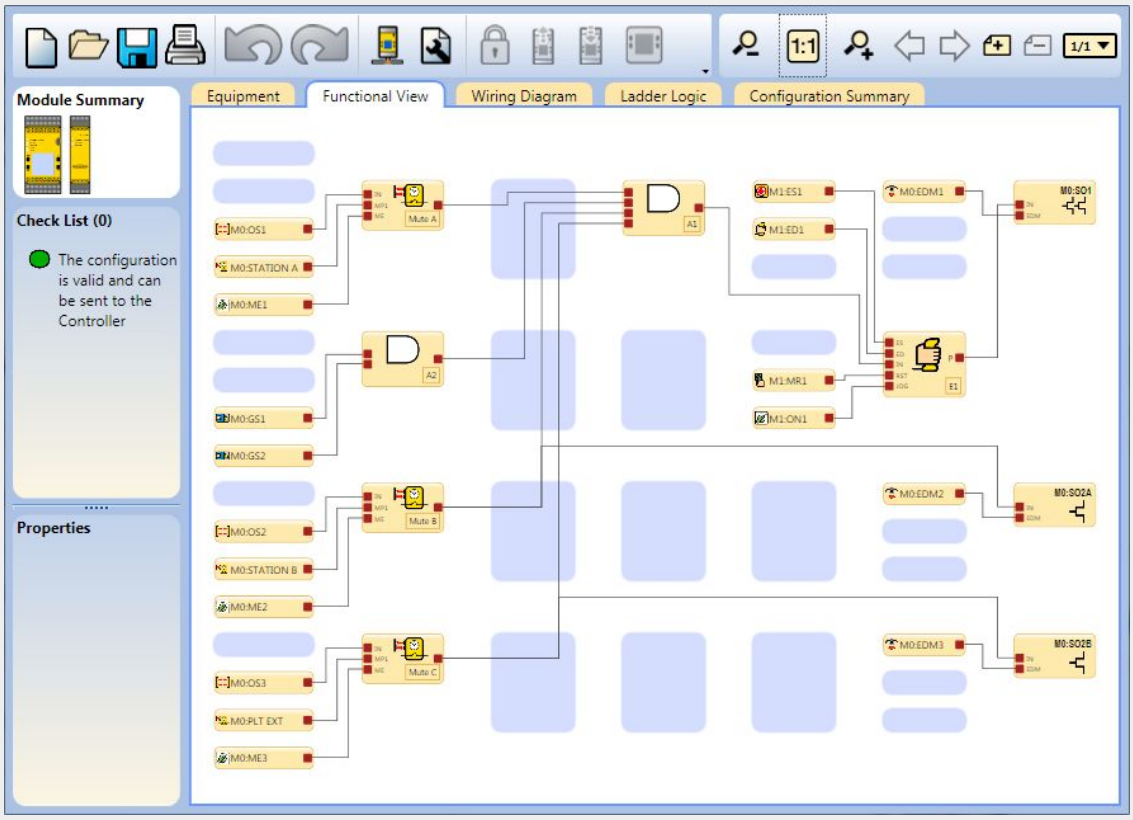
7. Split **M0:SO2**:
   a. Double-click **M0:SO2** or select it and click **Edit** under the **Properties** table.
   b. Click **Split.**
8. Add the following **Function Blocks** by clicking on any of the empty placeholders in the middle area of the **Functional View** tab (see "Function Blocks " on page 126 for more information):
   - **Muting Block** x **3** (**Muting Mode**: One Pair, **ME (Mute Enable)**: Checked)
   - **Enabling Device Block** (**ES**: Checked, **JOG (Jog)**: Checked)
9. Add the following **Logic Blocks** by clicking on any of the empty placeholders in the middle area of the **Functional View** tab (see "Logic Blocks" on page 123 for more information):
   - **AND** with 2 input nodes
   - **AND** with 4 input nodes
10. Connect the following to each **Muting Block**:
    - 1 x **Optical Sensor** (**IN** node)
    - 1 x **Mute Sensor Pair** (**MP1** node)
    - 1 x **Mute Enable** (**ME** node)
11. Connect **Gate Switch** x 2 to the **AND** block with 2 nodes.
12. Connect **Muting Block** x 3, and **AND** block with 2 nodes to the **AND** block with 4 nodes.
13. Connect one of the **Muting Blocks** to one of the split safety outputs (**M0:SO2A** or **M0:SO2B**) and one to the other split safety output.
14. Connect the following to the **Enabling Device Block**:
    - **Emergency Stop** (**ES** node)
    - **Enabling Device** (**ED** node)
    - **AND** block with four input nodes (**IN** node)
    - **Manual Reset** (**RST** node)
    - **On-Off** (**JOG** node)
15. Connect **Enabling Device Block** to the remaining Safety Output (**M0:SO1**).
16. Enable *EDM (External Device Monitoring)* in each of the Safety Output **Properties** windows.
17. Connect 1x **External Device Monitoring** input to each of the Safety Outputs.

The Sample Configuration is complete.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**NOTE:** At this point you may want to reposition the blocks in the **Functional View** tab for a better configuration flow, as shown in the following figure:

*Figure 66. Sample Configuration—**Functional View** Tab*

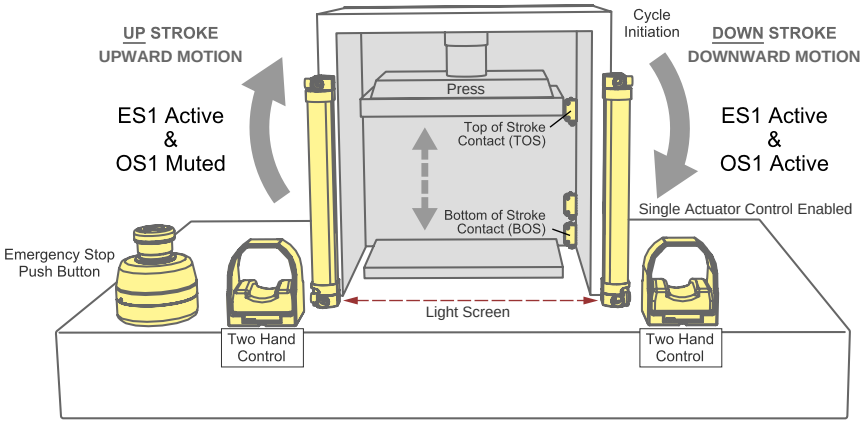



## 8.5.2 XS/SC26: Simple Press Control with Mutable Safety Input Sample Configuration

This section describes designing a simple press control system, which is located under the Documentation section of the XS/SC26 sample programs.

This sample configuration is for a simple hydraulic/pneumatic press application that utilizes a XS26 Safety Controller, Press Status inputs, a Cycle Initiation, a manual reset, an optical safety sensor, and an emergency stop.

*Figure 67. Simple Sample Press Control Configuration*




To design the configuration for this application:

1. Click **New Project**.

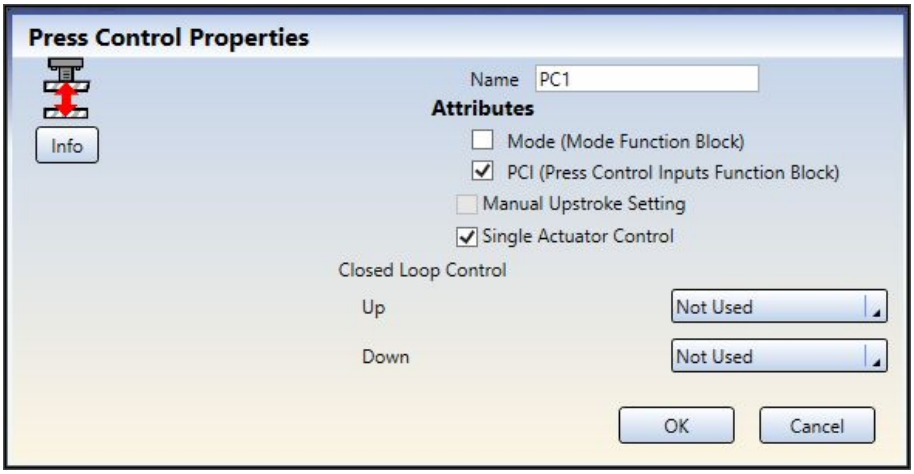

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

2. Define the project settings.
   See " Project Settings" on page 120.
3. Select the desired Base Controller model.
   See "Equipment Tab" on page 121.
4. Add the following inputs, changing name and circuit type as needed.

| Input | Quantity | Type | Terminals | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Cycle Initiation | 1 | Safety Input | IN1, IN2 | Dual-Channel 2 Terminal |
| TOS (on/off) | 1 | Non-Safety | IN5 | Single-Channel 1 Terminal |
| BOS (on/off) | 1 | Non-Safety | IN6 | Single-Channel 1 Terminal |
| Manual Reset | 1 | Non-Safety | IN7 | Single-Channel 1 Terminal |
| Emergency Stop | 1 | Safety Input | IN10, IN11 | Dual-Channel 2 Terminal |
| Optical Sensor | 1 | Safety Input | IN8, IN9 | Dual-Channel PNP |

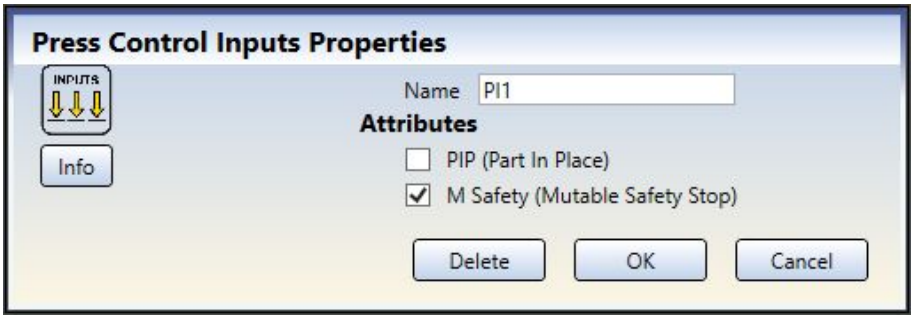
5. Go to the **Functional View** tab.
6. Add and configure the Press Control function block.
   a. Click on any of the empty placeholders in the middle area of the **Functional View** tab. For more information, see "Function Blocks " on page 126.
   b. Select **Function Blocks** and select **Press Control**.
   c. In the **Press Control Properties** window, select **PCI (Press Control Input Function Block)** and **Single Actuator Control**.

*Figure 68. **Press Control Properties***




   The check in the **Manual Upstroke Setting** box disappears.
   d. Click **OK**.
   The **Press Control Inputs Properties** window opens.

*Figure 69. **Press Control Inputs Properties***




   e. Select **M Safety (Mutable Safety Stop)**.
   f. Click **OK**.
7. Connect the following:


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

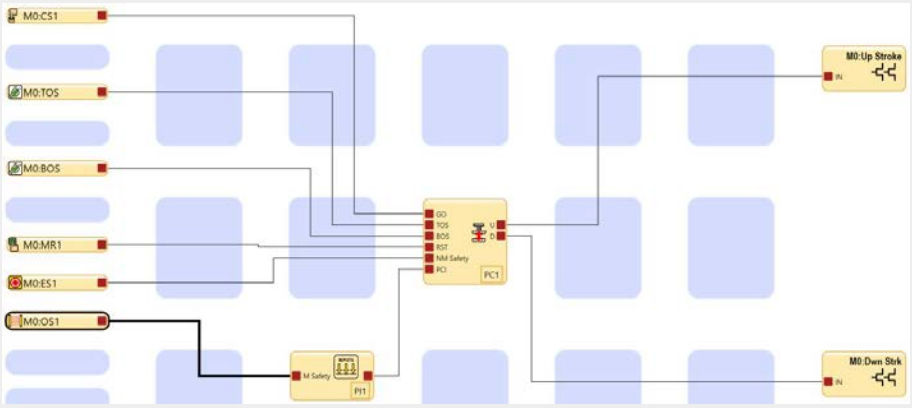
- Cycle Initiation input to the GO node of the Press Control function block
- TOS to the TOS node of the Press Control function block
- BOS to the BOS node of the Press Control function block
- Manual Reset to the RST node of the Press Control function block
- Emergency Stop to the NM Safety node of the Press Control function block
- Optical Sensor to the M Safety node of the Press Control Input Function Block

8. Connect the U output node of the Press Control function block to SO1 (change the name of SO1 to "Up Stroke").
9. Connect the D output node of the Press Control function block to SO2 (change the name of SO2 to "Dwn Strk").

The sample configuration is complete.

**NOTE:** At this point, it can be helpful to reposition the blocks in the Functional View for better configuration flow, as shown in the following figure:

*Figure 70.* ***Function Block Position***




## XS/SC26: Simulate the Functionality of the Simple Press Control Configuration

The following is how to simulate the functionality of the simple press control configuration:

1. Click  to enter Simulation Mode.
2. Click **Play** to turn on the simulation timer (similar to powering on the machine).
3. Click the emergency stop, optical sensor, and TOS inputs to the ON state (green).
4. Click the MR1 reset input.
   The Press Control Function block should turn ON (green).
5. Click the CS1 input to the ON state (green).
   The Dwn Strk output turns ON (green).
6. Click the TOS input to the OFF state (red).
7. Click the BOS input to the ON state (green).
   The Dwn Strk output turns OFF (red) and the Up Stroke Output turn ON (green).
8. Click the BOS input OFF (red).
9. Click the TOS input to the ON state (green).
   The Up Stroke Output turns OFF (red).
10. Click the CS1 input to the OFF state (red). This can be done any time after the Dwn Strk output turns ON (green).
11. Click the Optical Sensor input to the OFF state (red), then back to the ON state (green).

The system is ready to start the next cycle by turning the CS1 input on again.

If the Optical sensor or E-stop are turned OFF during the up or down stroke, the MR1 input must be cycled, then the CS1 engaging will turn the Up Stroke output ON.

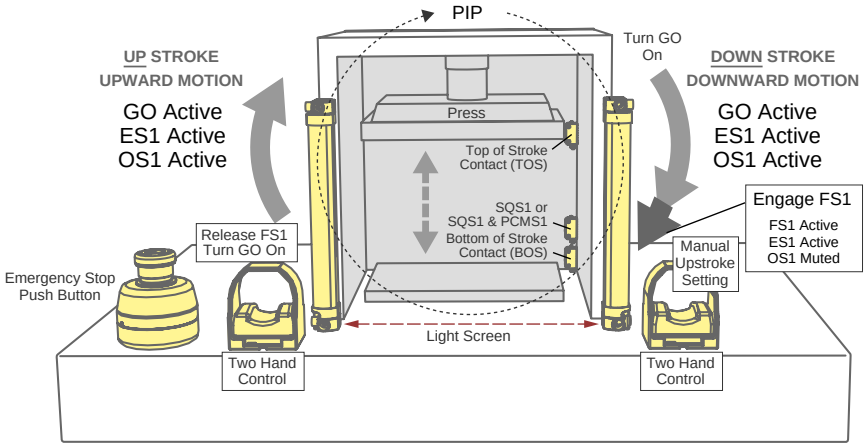

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## 8.5.3 XS/SC26: Full Feature Press Control Sample Configuration

This section describes designing a press control system that uses all of the possible features (except AVM). The sample configuration is located under the Documentation section of the XS/SC26 sample programs.

This sample configuration is for a more complex hydraulic/pneumatic press application that uses a XS26 Safety Controller, XS2so Safety Output Module, Press Status inputs, cycle start, a manual reset, an optical safety sensor, sequential stop, mute sensor, Foot Switch input, and an Emergency Stop button.

*Figure 71. Full Feature Sample Press Control Configuration*




To design the configuration for this application:

1. Click **New Project**.
2. Define the project settings.

   See " Project Settings" on page 120.
3. Select the desired Base Controller model.

   See "Equipment Tab" on page 121 (for this configuration, only **Is Expandable** is required to be selected).
4. Add expansion module XS2so.

   a. Click ✚ to the right of the Base Controller.
   b. Click **Output Modules**.
   c. Select XS2so.
5. Add the following inputs, changing name and circuit type as needed.

| Input | Qty. | Type | Terminals | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Two-Hand Control | 1 | Safety Input | IN9, IN10 | Dual-Channel PNP |
| TOS (ON/OFF) | 1 | Non-Safety | IN1 | Single-Channel 1 Terminal |
| BOS (ON/OFF) | 1 | Non-Safety | IN2 | Single-Channel 1 Terminal |
| Manual Reset | 1 | Non-Safety | IN11 | Single-Channel 1 Terminal |
| Emergency Stop | 1 | Safety Input | IO1, IN3, IN4 | Dual-Channel 3 Terminal |
| Run (ON/OFF) | 1 | Non-Safety | IN12 | Single-Channel 1 Terminal |
| Up (ON/OFF) | 1 | Non-Safety | IN13 | Single-Channel 1 Terminal |
| Down (ON/OFF) | 1 | Non-Safety | IN14 | Single-Channel 1 Terminal |
| PIP (ON/OFF) | 1 | Non-Safety | IN5 | Single-Channel 1 Terminal |
| Press Control SQS | 1 | Safety Input | IN6 | Single-Channel 1 Terminal |
| Foot Switch | 1 | Safety Input | IO2 | Single-Channel 1 Terminal |
| Press Control Mute Sensor | 1 | Safety Input | IO3 | Single-Channel 1 Terminal |

Continued on page 104

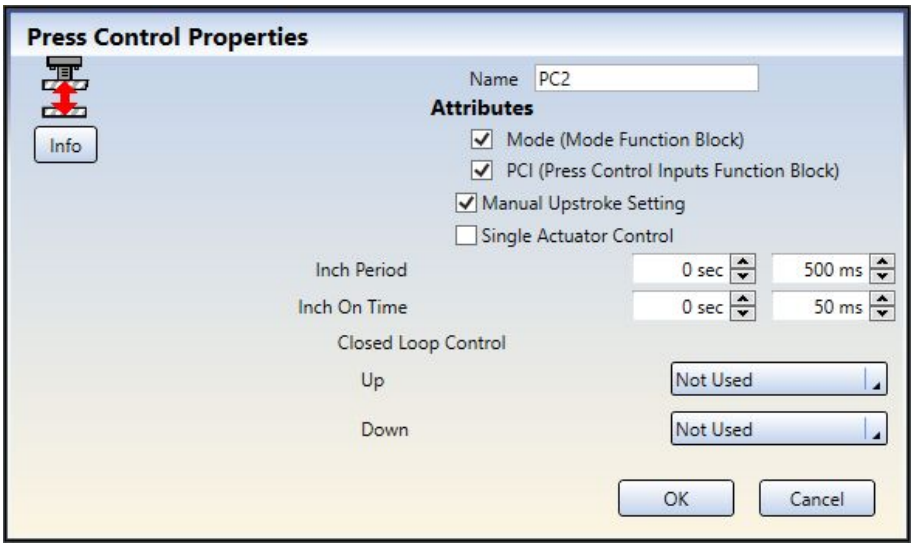

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 103

| Input | Qty. | Type | Terminals | Circuit |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Optical Sensor | 1 | Safety Input | IN7, IN8 | Dual-Channel PNP |

6. Go to the **Functional View** tab.
7. Add and configure the Press Control function block.
    a. Click on any of the empty placeholders in the middle area of the **Functional View** tab. For more information, see "Function Blocks " on page 126.
    b. Select **Function Blocks** and select **Press Control**.
    c. In the **Press Control Properties** window, select **Mode (Mode Function Block)** and **PCI (Press Control Input Function Block)**. Leave the **Manual Upstroke Setting** box checked.

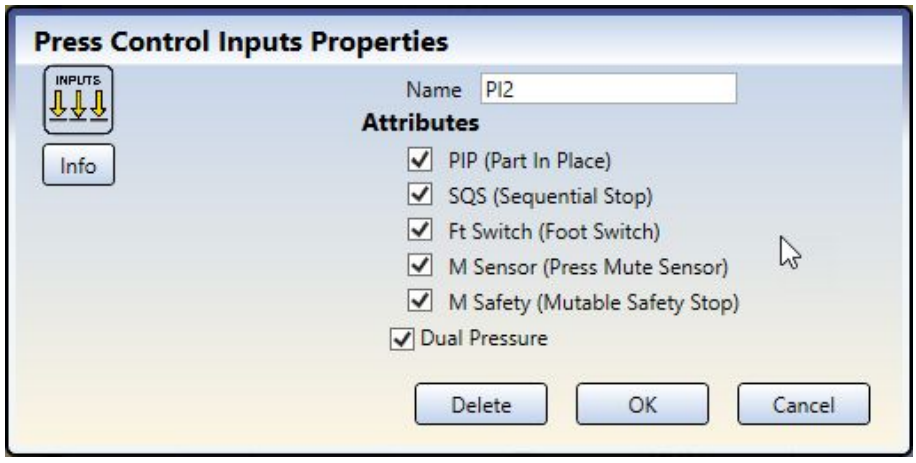
*Figure 72. **Press Control Properties***




    d. Click **OK**.

    The **Press Control Inputs Properties** window opens.

*Figure 73. **Press Control Inputs Properties***




    e. Select all of the check boxes. Note that when **SQS** is selected, three more options display; select them also (all six boxes should be checked).
    f. Click **OK**.

    The **Mode Properties** window displays.

    g. Click **OK**.
8. Connect the following to the Mode Selection Block:
    - Run input to the Run Input node
    - Up input to the Inch Up input node


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

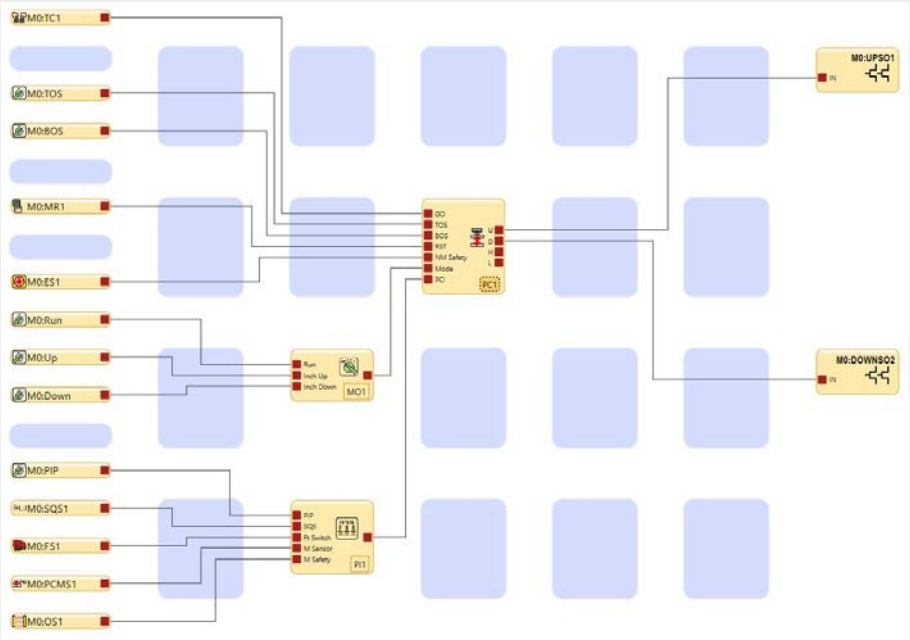
- Down input to the Inch Down input node

9. Connect the following to the Press Control Inputs Block:
   - Part-In-Place (PIP) input to the PIP input node
   - Sequential Stop (SQS) input to the SQS input node
   - Foot Switch input to the Ft Switch input node
   - Press Control Mute Sensor (PCMS) to the M Sensor input node
   - Optical Sensor to the M Safety input node
10. Connect the following to the Press Control Block:
    - Two-Hand Control input to the GO input node
    - TOS to the TOS input node
    - BOS to the BOS input node
    - Manual Reset to the RST input node
    - Emergency Stop to the NM Safety input node
11. Connect the U output node of the Press Control function block to SO1 (change the name of SO1 to "UPSO1").
12. Connect the D output node of the Press Control function block to SO2 (change the name of SO2 to "DOWNSO2").
13. Go to page 2 of the Functional View tab (use the arrow in the upper right-hand corner).
14. Create a reference node for PCx-H and another for PCx-L.
15. Connect the PCx-H to SO1 (change the name of SO1 to "HIGHSO1").
16. Connect the PCx-L to SO2 (change the name of SO2 to "LOWSO2").

The sample configuration is complete.

**NOTE:** At this point, it can be helpful to reposition the blocks in the **Functional View** for better configuration flow, as shown in the following figure.

*Figure 74. **Function Block Position***




## XS/SC26: Simulate the Functionality of the Full Feature Press Control Configuration

The following is how to simulate the functionality of this press control configuration:

1. Click  to enter Simulation Mode.
2. Click **Play** to turn on the simulation timer (similar to powering on the machine).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

3. Click the E-stop, optical sensor, TOS, and Run inputs to the On state (green).
4. Click the MR1 reset input.

   The Press Control Function block and LOWSO2 output should turn to the On state (green). This is on page 2; click the arrow in the upper right to change pages.
5. Click the PIP input to the On state (green).
6. Click the TC1 input to the On state (green).

   The DOWNSO2 output turns On (green).
7. Click the TOS input to the Off state (red).
8. Click the SQS1 and PCMS1 inputs to the On state (green).

   The DOWNSO2 output turns Off (red), LOWSO2 output turns Off (red), and the HIGHSO1 (page 2) output turns On (green).
9. Click the TC1 input to the Off state (red).
10. Click the FS1 input to the On state (green).

    The DOWNSO2 output turns On (green).
11. Click the BOS input to the On state (green).

    The DOWNSO2 and the HIGHSO1 (page 2) output turn Off (red) and the LOWSO2 (page 2) output turns On (green).
12. Click the FS1 input to the Off state (red).
13. Click the TC1 input to the On state (green).

    The UPSO1 output turns On (green).
14. Click the BOS, PCMS1, and SQS1 inputs to the Off state (red).
15. Click the TOS input to the On state (green).

    The UPSO1 output turns Off (red).
16. Click the TC1 input to the Off state (red).
17. Click the Optical Sensor input to the Off state (red), click the PIP input to the Off state (red) then back to the On state (green), then click the Optical Sensor input back to the On state (green).

The system is ready to start the next cycle by turning the TC1 input to the On state (green) again.

If the TC1 input is turned Off (red) during the down stroke, turning it back On does not change the down stroke; the press continues with the down stroke. To make the press go up (instead of down) after the TC1 input is turned Off, click the MR1 input, then turn the TC1 input back On. If the Optical sensor or E-stop are turned Off during the up or down stroke, the TC1 input should be turned Off, then the MR1 input should be cycled, and then engaging TC1 will turn the UPSO1 output On.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.

Chapter Contents

9.1 Connect to the Safety Controller ..... 107
9.2 Allow the Software Through the Windows Firewall ..... 108
9.3 Find Safety Controllers on the Network ..... 110
9.4 Connect to a Safety Controller via Ethernet ..... 112
9.5 System Reset via Ethernet Connection ..... 113
9.6 Shortcuts ..... 114

# Chapter 9 Connect to the Safety Controller on the Network

Banner Safety Controller Software release 5.0 (or later) used with an XS/SC26 FID 7 or later Ethernet-enabled model Safety Controller can communicate via the Ethernet port.

With version 5.0 or later Software, a Safety Controller can be configured via Ethernet (Configuration via Network) or Live Mode can be monitored via Ethernet (Live Monitor via Network). Once connected, the Software functions the same as when the Safety Controller is connected via the USB port.

For information to help improve the cyber security of systems that include XS/SC26 Safety Controllers, see p/n 235668 XS/SC26-2 Safety Controllers Secure Deployment Guide, available at www.bannerengineering.com.

> **IMPORTANT: If the default Ethernet password is not changed, the ability to connect to a controller with the Banner Safety Controller Software via Ethernet will be disabled.** This is an automatic feature. Change the password via USB or via Ethernet.

## 9.1 Connect to the Safety Controller

Use the following instructions to configure the network adaptor and to confirm the network connections.

These instructions use Windows operating system 7, 10, or 11.

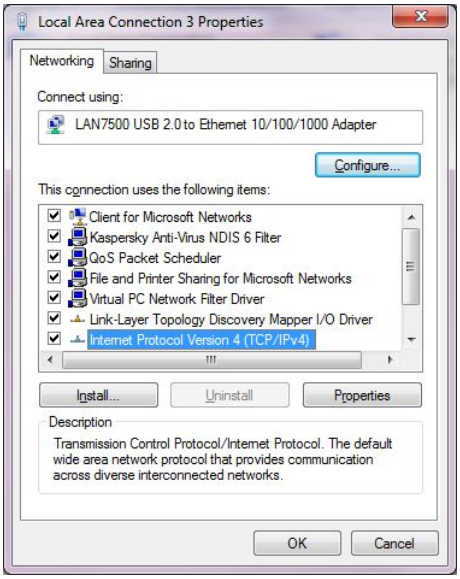
1. Open **Windows Settings**.
2. On the **Settings** screen, select **Network & Internet**, then **Network and Sharing Center**, and then **Change adapter settings**.
3. If more than one adapter is present, disconnect and reconnect the Ethernet cable to determine which one is connected to the Safety Controller.
4. Right-click on the connection to be changed and select **Properties**.

   > **NOTE:** If prompted for an administrator password or confirmation, enter the password or provide confirmation.

5. In **Properties**, double-click on **Internet Protocol Version 4 (TCP/IPv4)**.

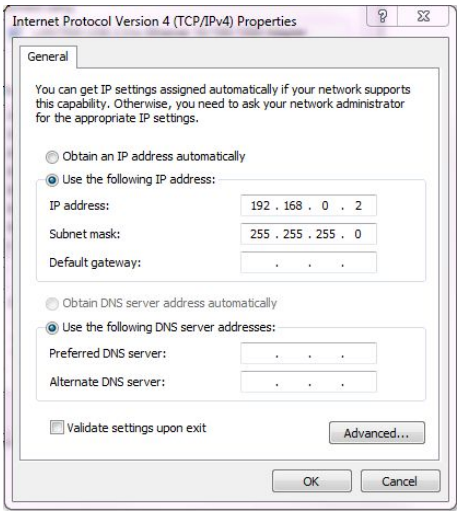

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 75. Ethernet Properties Networking Tab*




6. Select **Use the following IP Address**.
7. Enter IP address `192.168.0.1` and a subnet of `255.255.255.0`.

*Figure 76. Internet Protocol Properties*




If more than one adapter is being used, assign the next available addresses to the other adapters.

8. Click **OK** and then click **OK** a second time.

> **NOTE:** This step is required for the PC Ethernet adapter to be on the same network as a Safety Controller with factory default settings.

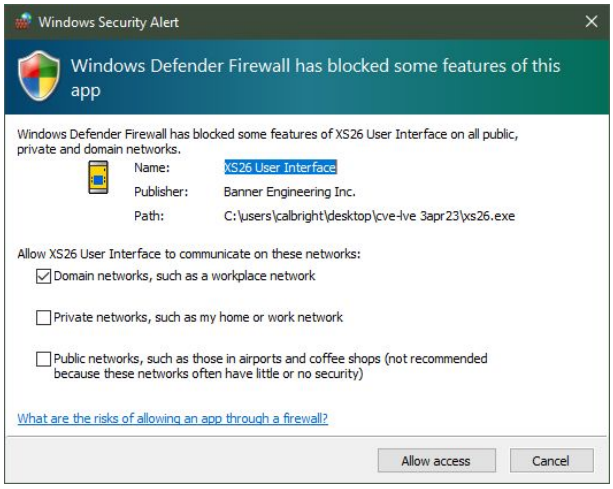
## 9.2 Allow the Software Through the Windows Firewall

The first time **Discover Controllers on network** is selected, the **Windows Firewall** prompt should display.

1. In the **Windows Security Alert** window, select all three checkboxes and click **Allow Access**.
   - **Domain networks** checkbox
   - **Private networks** checkbox
   - **Public networks** checkbox

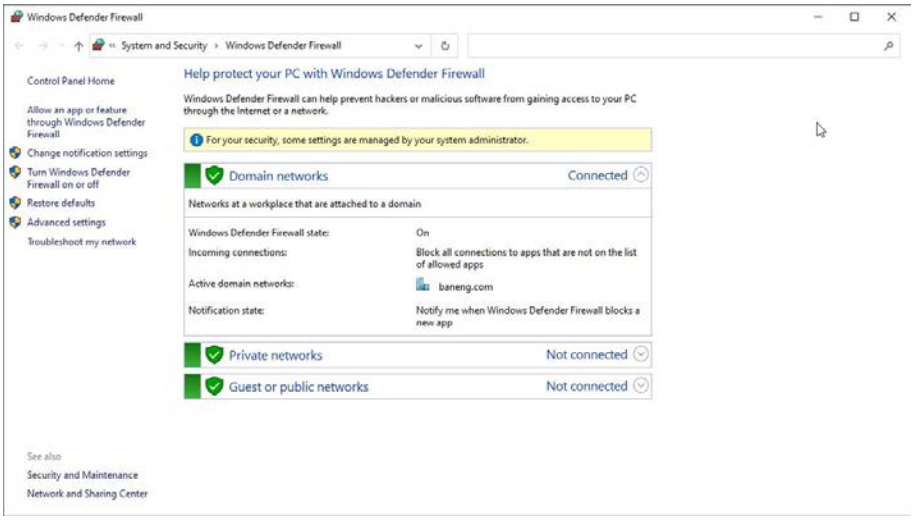

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 77. Windows Security Alert*




2. If the prompt does not appear, or it was canceled when it first displayed, update the firewall using the following steps:
   a. In the search box near the Windows symbol enter `Windows Firewall`.
   b. Select **Windows Defender Firewall** from the list.
   c. From the new window, select **Allow an app or feature through Windows Defender Firewall** (located on the upper left).

      *Figure 78. Windows Defender Firewall*

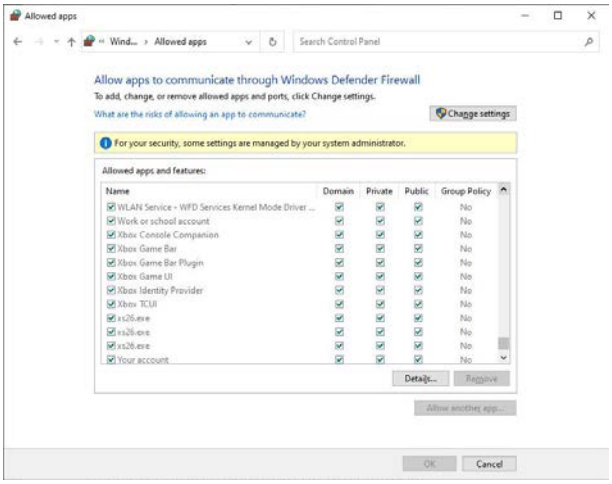



   d. Find **xs26.exe**, which is at the end of the list.
   e. Make sure the four checkboxes for xs26.exe are selected.

      If you cannot select the checkbox, click **Change Settings** (in the upper right).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 79. Allow an app or feature through Windows Defender Firewall*




- **xs26.exe** checkbox (to the left of the **Name**)
- **Domain** checkbox
- **Private** checkbox
- **Public** checkbox

3. Click **OK** and close the windows.

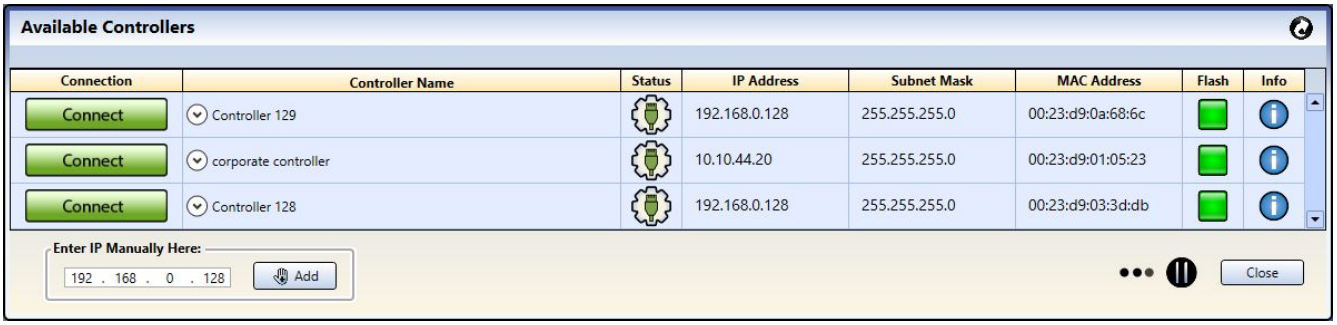
## 9.3 Find Safety Controllers on the Network

The following processes are used to find controllers on the computers network, once the computer is all set up to allow the software to explore the network for controllers.

> **NOTE:** Some devices on the network (such as routers, firewalls, or VLANs used for network segregation) will block the Discover Controller message. See "Manually Finding Controllers on the Network" on page 112.

From either the start page of the Banner Safety Controller Software or from the Navigation Toolbar if already in the Software, click . Available Controllers displays.

*Figure 80. Available Controllers*




The **Available Controllers** window includes information such as:

- Name of the Safety Controller
- Status
- IP Address
- Subnet Mask
- MAC Address

In "Figure: Available Controllers" on page 110, notice that these two Safety Controllers are still at the factory default IP address (they have the same address). The Ethernet network cannot distinguish between items with the same IP addresses. Change the IP addresses of these two controllers to unique addresses. To do this:


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

1. Disconnect one of the controllers by physically removing the Ethernet cable from the Ethernet port.
2. Set the IP address of the connected controller by connecting to it (see "Connect to a Safety Controller via Ethernet " on page 112) or by connecting a USB cable to the removed unit to access the **Network Settings** icon.
3. Then reconnect the disconnected controller.

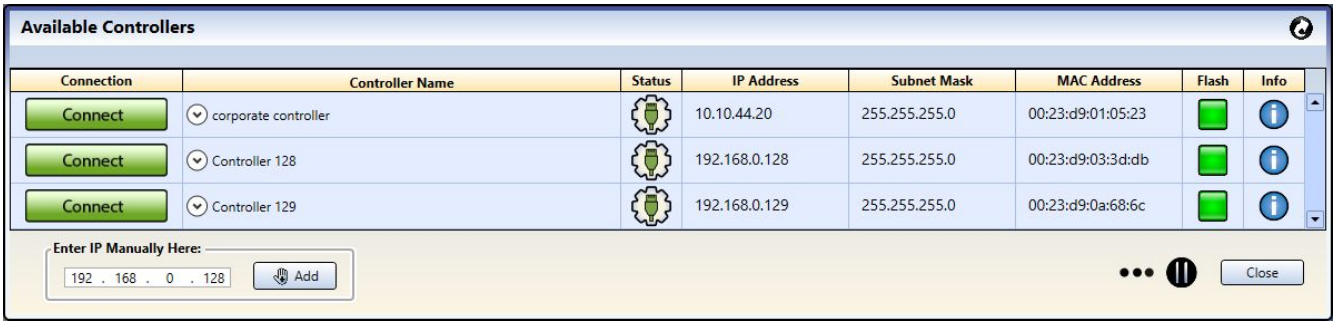
The Safety Controllers can be identified visually by clicking . Clicking causes the lights on the Safety Controller associated with that line to flash for approximately 5 seconds. This allows you to verify that the MAC address on the Safety Controller matches the MAC address displayed for the unit.

The following table describes the status symbols:

| Status | Symbol | Description |
|---|---|---|
| Configuration via Network/Live Monitor via Network Available | | Configuration and Live Mode over Ethernet are enabled, network connection allowed |
| Configuration via Network/Live Monitor via Network Disabled | | Configuration and Live Mode over Ethernet are disabled, no connection over the network is possible |
| Device not Found | | A Safety Controller that was on the network can no longer be found, no network connection allowed |
| USB Connected | | The Safety Controller is already connected to the Banner Safety Controller Software via a USB connection, no network connection allowed |
| Network Connected | | The Safety Controller is already connected via a network connection, no new network connection allowed |
| System Restarting | | The Safety Controller is currently restarting, no network connection allowed |
| Manually Connected | | The Safety Controller was added manually (not via network discovery), network connection allowed |

The Safety Controllers display in the order in which they are found. Change the order by clicking on the header of a column (for example, click on IP address to order the controllers from the lowest IP address to the highest IP address).

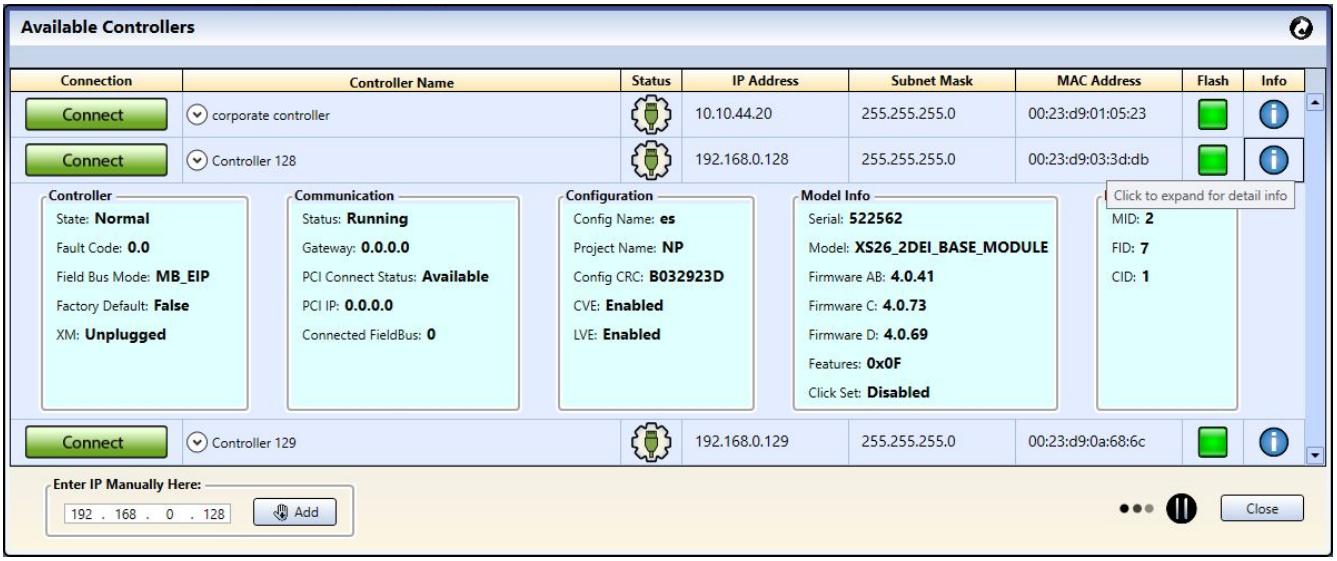
*Figure 81. Safety Controller Order*




Detailed information can be obtained about an individual Safety Controller by clicking for that controller.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 82. Safety Controller Information*




This provides information on the operating status of the Safety Controller and its communication. It provides information on the configuration currently loaded in the controller. It provides information on the microprocessors in the Safety Controller as well as its protocols.

### 9.3.1 Manually Finding Controllers on the Network

When **Discover Controllers on network** is clicked, Banner Safety Controller Software sends out a UDP message across the network. Some devices on the network might block these messages (for example, managed switches).

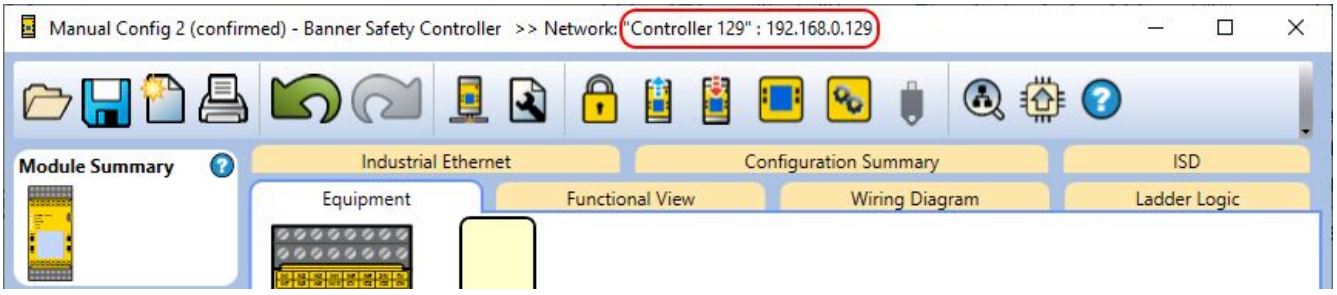
If the IP address is known, enter it in the **Enter IP Manually Here** field. When **Add** is clicked, a direct message to connect is sent to the Safety Controller at that address. Because this is a direct message, not a broadcast message, it should reach the Controller and add it to the **Available Controller** list.

## 9.4 Connect to a Safety Controller via Ethernet

To connect to a Safety Controller via the Ethernet connection, click **Connect** next to the desired Safety Controller.

The Banner Safety Controller Software connects to the Safety Controller in the same way as if it was connected via the USB port. The USB light on the Controller flashes rapidly to signify that it is connected to the Software via the Ethernet port. The IP address displays at the top of the Software screen.

*Figure 83. Safety Controller Connected to the Software via Ethernet*




Click to return to the **Available Controllers** window.

To disconnect the currently connected Safety Controller, click **Disconnect**. Only one Safety Controller can be connected at a time.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 9.5 System Reset via Ethernet Connection

The Banner Safety Controller Software allows a system reset to be performed via the Ethernet connection.

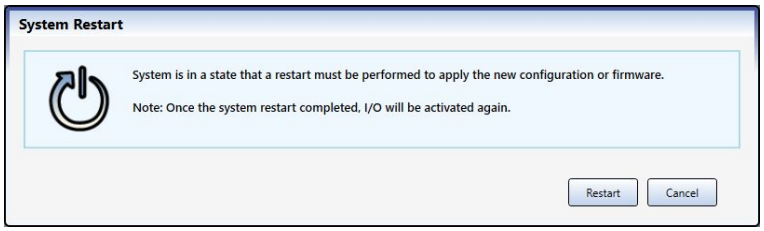
Use this system reset, called System Restart, to return the controller into a functioning state after the IP address has been changed or a new configuration has been sent to the controller.

## 9.5.1 IP Address Change

When changing an IP address, the System Restart, does not display until the **Network Settings** window is closed.

After the window is closed, the following window displays:

*Figure 84. System Restart Window*




If **Restart** is selected, the Safety Controller performs the startup testing. During this time, the following notice displays:

*Figure 85. System Restart Notice*




Click **OK**. The **Connect** button for the controller in the Banner Safety Controller Software returns to a live state after the Safety Controller startup testing is finished. Click **Connect** to reconnect the software with the controller.

If **Cancel** is selected in the **System Restart** window, the Banner Safety Controller Software still allows the Restart function to be performed. (System Restart) displays on the tool bar until the Safety Controller has completed the restart/reset function. (This can be performed locally at the controller.)

## 9.5.2 Configuration Change

When a new configuration has been loaded, the **System Restart** window displays after the last window of the loading a configuration (Save or Close window).

Return the Safety Controller to a functioning state by selecting **Restart**. Select **Cancel** if the System Reset will be performed locally (at the controller).

Use the same process as "IP Address Change " on page 113.

**WARNING:** When the configuration is modified or loaded remotely, ISO 13849-1 and other standards require the performance of a local validation. This validation ensures that the safety system performs as required to meet the safety needs of the system.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## 9.6 Shortcuts

includes shortcuts to assist with the setup process.

If no Safety Controllers are shown on the **Available Controller** page, the network connections, Windows firewall, or command prompt (to ping a controller) can be accessed quickly. Click and select the appropriate link. The desired window opens.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.

Chapter Contents

10.1 Abbreviations ..... 116
10.2 Software Overview ..... 117
10.3  New Project ..... 119
10.4 XS/SC26 ..... 119
10.5 SC10-2 ..... 119
10.6  Project Settings ..... 120
10.7 **Equipment** Tab ..... 121
10.8 **Functional View** Tab ..... 122
10.9 **Wiring Diagram** Tab ..... 126
10.10 **Ladder Logic** Tab ..... 128
10.11 **ISD** Tab ..... 128
10.12 **Industrial Ethernet** Tab ..... 132
10.13 **Configuration Summary** Tab ..... 140
10.14  Print Options ..... 141
10.15  Password Manager ..... 142
10.16  Viewing and Importing Controller Data ..... 144
10.17 **Viewing System and Network Settings Snapshot** ..... 144
10.18  Live Mode ..... 147
10.19  Simulation Mode ..... 150
10.20  Settings ..... 155
10.21  Help ..... 156
10.22 Reference Signals ..... 156

# Chapter 10 Software

The Banner Safety Controller Software is an application with real-time display and diagnostic tools that are used to:

- Design and edit configurations
- Test a configuration in Simulation Mode
- Write a configuration to the Safety Controller
- Read the current configuration from the Safety Controller
- Display real-time information, such as device statuses
- Display fault information

The Software uses icons and circuit symbols to assist in making appropriate input device and property selections. As the various device properties and I/O control relationships are established on the **Functional View** tab, the program automatically builds the corresponding wiring and ladder logic diagrams.

See "Creating a Configuration " on page 88 for the configuration design process. See "XS/SC26 Sample Configuration" on page 97 for a sample configuration design process.

See "Wiring Diagram Tab" on page 126 to connect the devices, and "Ladder Logic Tab" on page 128 for the ladder logic rendering of the configuration.

See " Live Mode" on page 147 for the Safety Controller Run-time information.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 10.1 Abbreviations

| Abbreviation[14] | Description |
|---|---|
| **AVM** | Adjustable Valve Monitoring input node of the Safety Outputs |
| **AVMx** | Adjustable Valve Monitoring input |
| **BP** | Bypass input node of the Bypass Blocks and Muting Blocks |
| **BPx** | Bypass Switch input |
| **BOS** | Bottom of Stroke input node of the Press Control blocks (XS/SC26 only) |
| **CD** | Cancel Delay input node of the Safety Outputs, Delay Blocks, and One Shot Blocks |
| **CDx** | Cancel Delay input |
| **CSx** | Cycle Initiation input |
| **ED** | Enabling Device input node of the Enabling Device Blocks |
| **EDx** | Enabling Device input |
| **EDM** | External Device Monitoring input node of the Safety Outputs |
| **EDMx** | External Device Monitoring input |
| **ES** | Emergency Stop input node of the Enabling Device Blocks |
| **ESx** | Emergency Stop input |
| **ETB** | External Terminal Block (SC10-2 only) |
| **FID** | Feature identification |
| **FSx** | Foot Switch input |
| **FR** | Fault Reset input node of the Safety Outputs |
| **Ft Switch** | Foot Switch input node of the Press Control Blocks (XS/SC26 only) |
| **GO** | Cycle Start input node of the Press Control Blocks (XS/SC26 only) |
| **GSx** | Gate Switch input |
| **JOG** | Jog Input node of the Enabling Device Blocks |
| **IN** | Normal Input node of function blocks and Safety Output blocks |
| **ISD** | In-Series Diagnostic |
| **LR** | Latch Reset input node of the Latch Reset Block and the Safety Outputs |
| **ME** | Mute Enable input node of the Muting Blocks and Two-Hand Control Blocks |
| **MEx** | Mute Enable input |
| **MP1** | First Muting Sensor Pair input node in Muting Blocks and Two-Hand Control Blocks |
| **MP2** | Second Muting Sensor Pair input node (Muting Blocks only) |
| **M Safety** | Mutable Safety Input node of the Press Control blocks (XS/SC26 only) |
| **M Sensor** | Press Control Mute Sensor input node of the Press Control blocks (XS/SC26 only) |
| **Mx** | Base Controller and Expansion modules (in the order displayed on the **Equipment** tab) |
| **MRx** | Manual Reset input |
| **MSPx** | Muting Sensor Pair input |
| **NM Safety** | Non-Mutable Safety input node of the Press Control blocks (XS/SC26 only) |
| **ONx** | On-Off input |
| **OSx** | Optical Sensor input |
| **PCMSx** | Press Control Mute Sensor input |
| **PIP** | Part in Place input node of the Press Control blocks (XS/SC26 only) |
| **PSx** | Protective Stop input |
| **RE** | Reset Enable input node of the Latch Reset Blocks and the Safety Outputs |
| **ROx** | Relay Output |
| **RPI** | Requested Packet Interval |
| **RPx** | Rope Pull input |
| **RST** | Reset node of the SR-Flip-Flop, RS-Flip-Flop, Latch Reset Blocks, Press Control blocks, and Enabling Device Blocks |
| **RUN** | Standard operation (RUN) mode input node of the Press Control Mode Blocks (XS/SC26 only) |

Continued on page 116

[14] The "x" suffix denotes the automatically assigned number.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

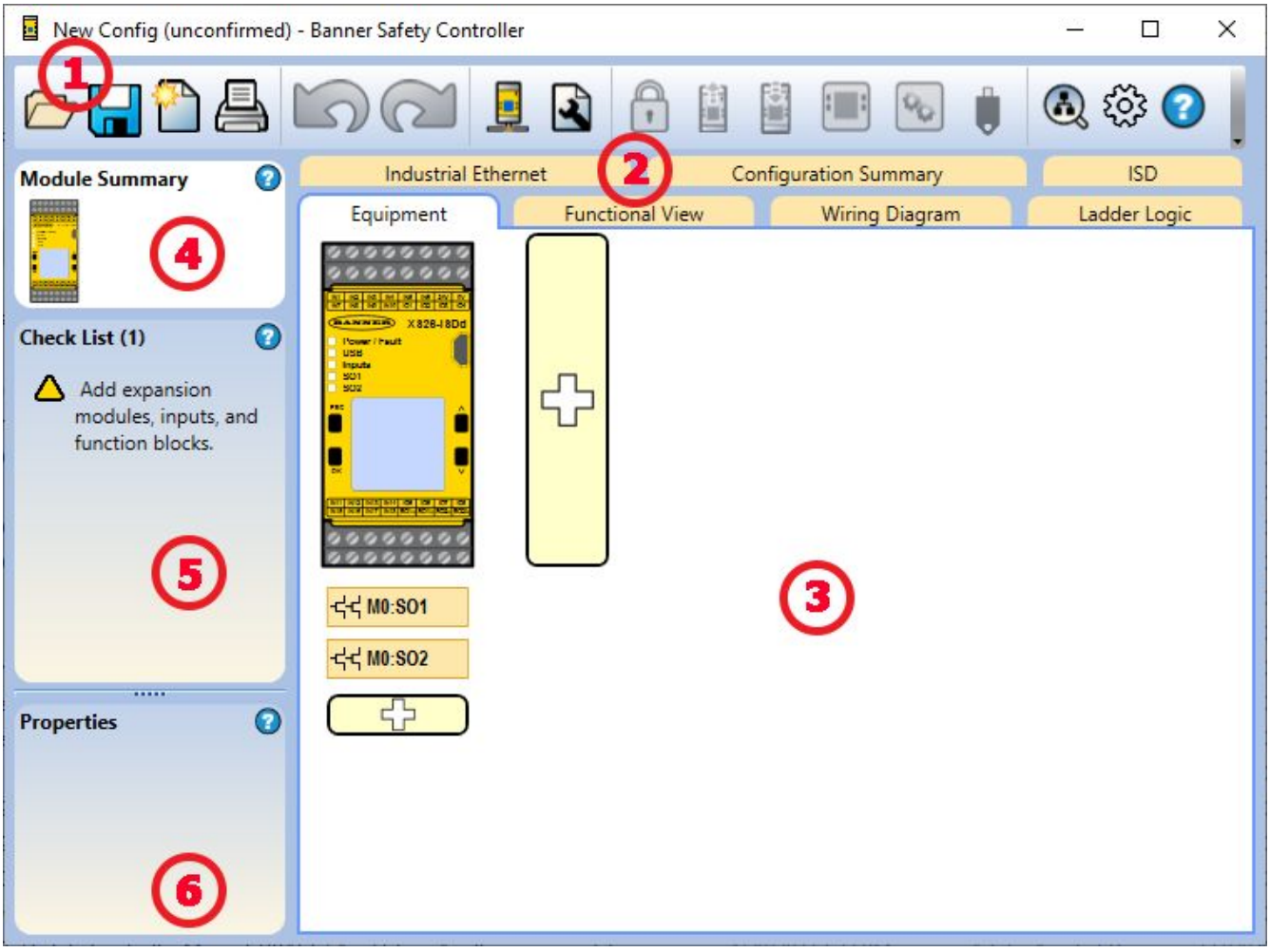
Continued from page 116

| Abbreviation | Description |
|---|---|
| **SET** | Set node of the SR- and RS-Flip-Flop Blocks |
| **SMx** | Safety Mat input |
| **SOx** | Safety Output |
| **SQS** | Sequential Stop input node of the Press Control blocks (XS/SC26 only) |
| **SQSx** | Press Control SQS (Sequential Stop) input |
| **STATx** | Status Output |
| **TC** | Two-Hand Control input node of the Two-Hand Control Blocks |
| **TCx** | Two-Hand Control input |
| **TOS** | Top of Stroke input node of the Press Control blocks (XS/SC26 only) |

## 10.2 Software Overview

**NOTE:** The following sections use the XS/SC26 as an example. The SC10-2 interface is similar.

*Figure 86. Banner Safety Controller Software—XS/SC26 Shown*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### (1) Navigation Toolbar

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
|  | Opens an existing project, opens a **Recent** project, or opens **Sample Projects** |  | Writes the data, such as Configuration Settings to the Safety Controller |
|  | Saves (or Save As) the project to the user-defined location |  | Makes the Live Mode view available |
|  | Starts a **New project** |  | Makes the Simulation Mode view available |
|  | Prints a customizable Configuration Summary |  | Indicates SC-XM2 or SC-XM3 drive connection |
|  | Reverts up to ten previous actions |  | Opens the **Available Controllers** window |
|  | Re-applies up to ten previously reverted actions |  | Opens the **Settings** options<br>• **Icons**—Switches between US- and European-style icons<br>• **Language**—Selects the Software language options<br>• **Software Updates**—Shows whether the software is up to date<br>• **Preferences**—Sets the default settings in the software to the user's typical needs |
|  | Displays Network Settings and writes the Network Settings to the Safety Controller | | |
|  | Displays Project Settings | | |
|  | Opens Password Manager |  | Opens the **Help** options<br>• **Help**—Opens Help topics<br>• **About**—Displays Software version number and user responsibilities warning<br>• **Release Notes**—Displays the release notes for each version of the software<br>• **Support Information**—Describes how to request help from the Banner Engineering Corp. Advanced Technical Support Group |
|  | Reads the data, such as Fault Log, Configuration, Network Settings, and Device Information from the Safety Controller | | |
|  | Displays when a firmware update is available. |  | Resets the system. Displays when a system reset is needed until the Safety Controller has completed the restart/reset function. |

### (2) Tabs for Worksheets and Diagrams

**Equipment**—Displays an editable view of all connected equipment
**Functional View**—Provides editable iconic representation of the control logic
**Wiring Diagram**—Displays the I/O device wiring detail for the use by the installer
**Ladder Logic**—Displays a symbolic representation of the Safety Controller's safeguarding logic for the use by the machine designer or controls engineer
**Industrial Ethernet** (when enabled)—Displays editable network configuration options
**Configuration Summary**—Displays a detailed configuration summary
**Live Mode** (when enabled)—Displays the live mode data, including current faults
**Simulation Mode** (when enabled)—Displays the simulation mode data
**ISD** (SC10-2 FID 2 or later and XS26-ISD models)—Displays the ISD chain

### (3) Selected View

Displays the view corresponding to the selected tab (**Equipment** view shown)

### (4) Module Summary

Displays the Base Controller and any connected modules or displays the SC10-2

### (5) Check List

Provides action items to configure the system and correct any errors to successfully complete the configuration

### (6) Properties

Displays the properties of the selected device, function block, or connection (properties cannot be edited in this view; click **Edit** below to make changes)
**Delete**—Deletes the selected item
**Edit**—Displays the configuration options for the selected device or function block

See "Software: Troubleshooting" on page 364 for issues related to the Software functionality.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 10.3 New Project

Click **New Project** to select the desired controller and open the **Start a New Project** screen. This screen includes project information that is only available upon initial creation of a project and is not available from the **Project Settings** screen.

## 10.4 XS/SC26

All checkboxes are selected by default. The following options are available:

**Has Display**

Select this checkbox if your controller has a display. When checked, a "d" displays after the "-2" in the model number shown in the software.

**Has Industrial Ethernet**

Select this checkbox if your controller has Industrial Ethernet. When checked, an "e" displays after the "-2" in the model number shown in the software.

**Is Expandable**

Select this checkbox if your controller is a XS26. Clear this checkbox if your controller is a SC26-2.

**Has ISD**

Select this checkbox if your controller is an XS26-ISDd. Clear this checkbox if your controller is any other model. When checked, the "-2xx" is replaced by "-ISDd" in the model number shown in the software.

## 10.5 SC10-2

**Disable Automatic Terminal Optimization Feature (SC10-2 only)**

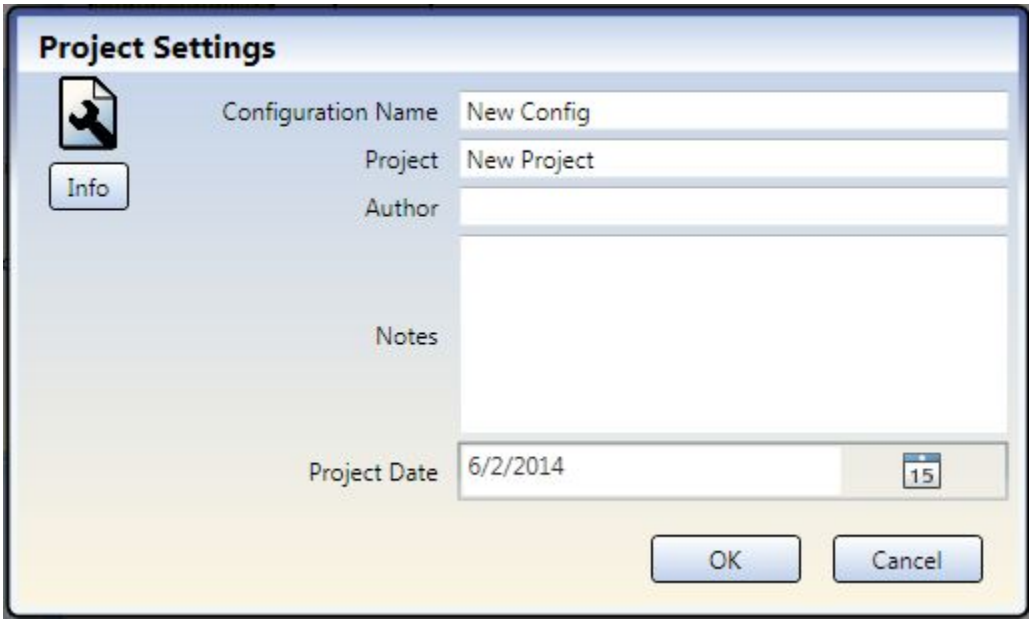
Enable or disable Automatic Terminal Optimization, which allows for the expansion of the number of inputs using an external terminal block (ETB).

**NOTE:** The project information listed above is not available from **Project Settings**, however it is editable from the **Edit** function of the **Module Properties**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 10.6 Project Settings

*Figure 87. Project Settings*




Each configuration has an option to include additional project information for easier differentiation between multiple configurations. To enter this information click **Project Settings**.

**Configuration Name**

Name of the configuration; displayed on the Safety Controller (models with display); different from the file name. The Configuration Name must be between 1 and 16 characters in length.

**Project**

Project name; useful for distinguishing between various application areas.

**Author**

Person designing the configuration.

**Notes**

Supplemental information for this configuration or project.

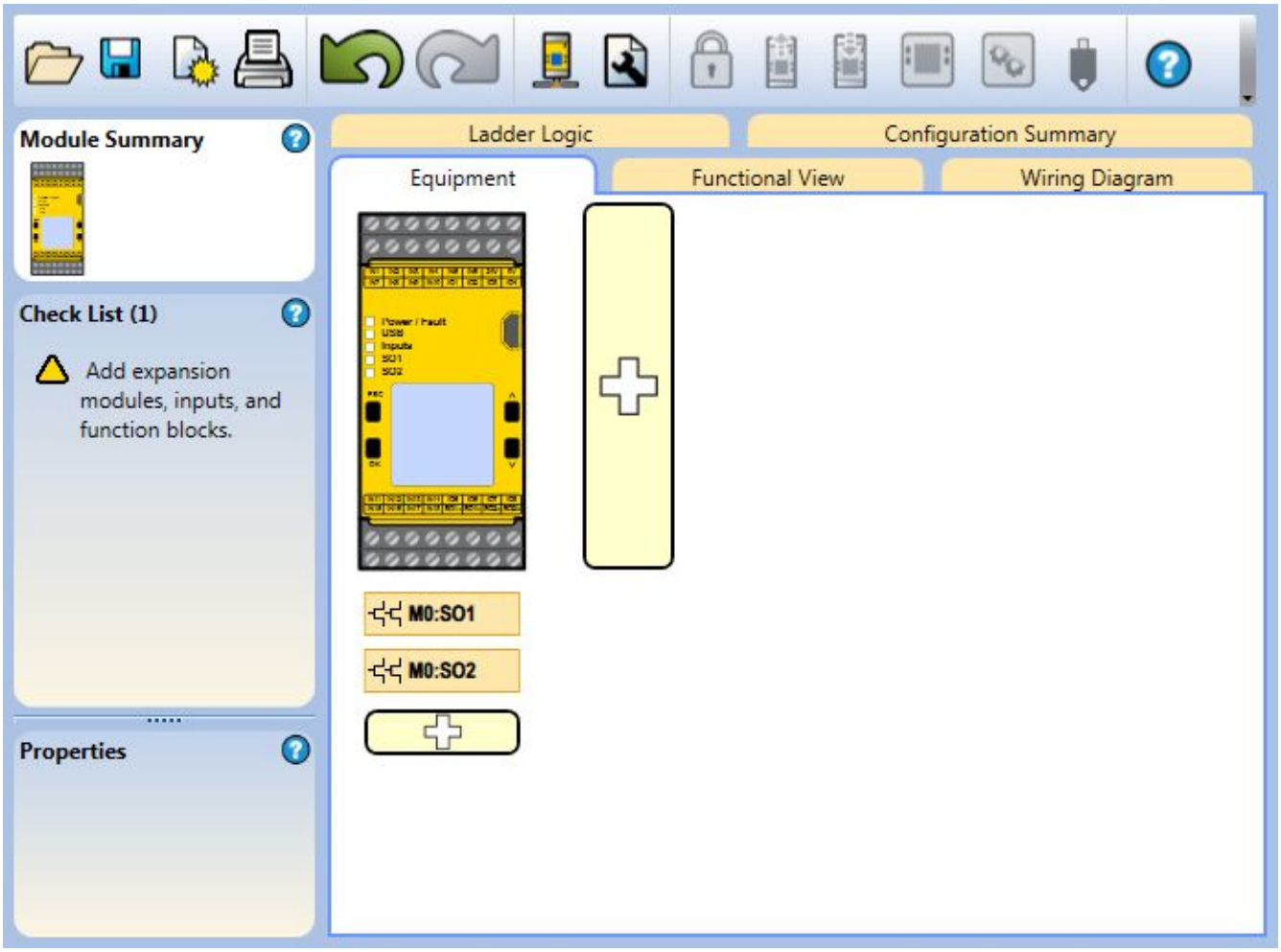
**Project Date**

Date pertaining to the project.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 10.7 Equipment Tab

*Figure 88. Example XS/SC26 **Equipment** Tab*




**XS/SC26:** The **Equipment** tab is used to select the base model, add the expansion modules (input, output, and communication gateway), and add input devices and status outputs. Add the expansion modules by clicking ✚ to the right of the Base Controller module.

**NOTE:** If using an EtherCAT module, it must be the first module in the chain, next to the Base Controller.

**SC10-2:** The **Equipment** tab is used to add input devices and status outputs.

Customize the Base Controller module or SC10-2 by either double-clicking the module or selecting it and clicking **Edit** under the **Properties** table on the left and selecting the appropriate Safety Controller features (display, Ethernet, expandability, ISD, Automatic Terminal Optimization). The properties of Safety and Non-Safety inputs, Status Outputs, Logic Blocks, and Function Blocks are also configured by either double-clicking the block or selecting it and clicking **Edit** under the **Properties** table. Clicking the block the second time de-selects it.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 89. XS/SC26 Module Properties*

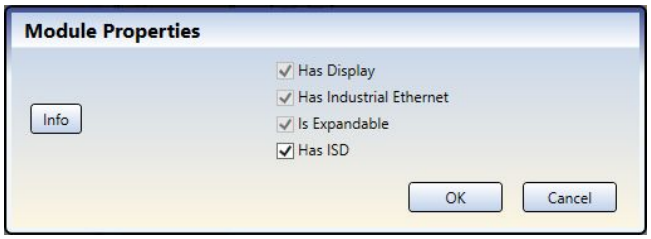
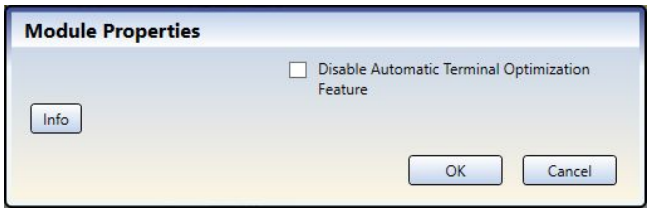
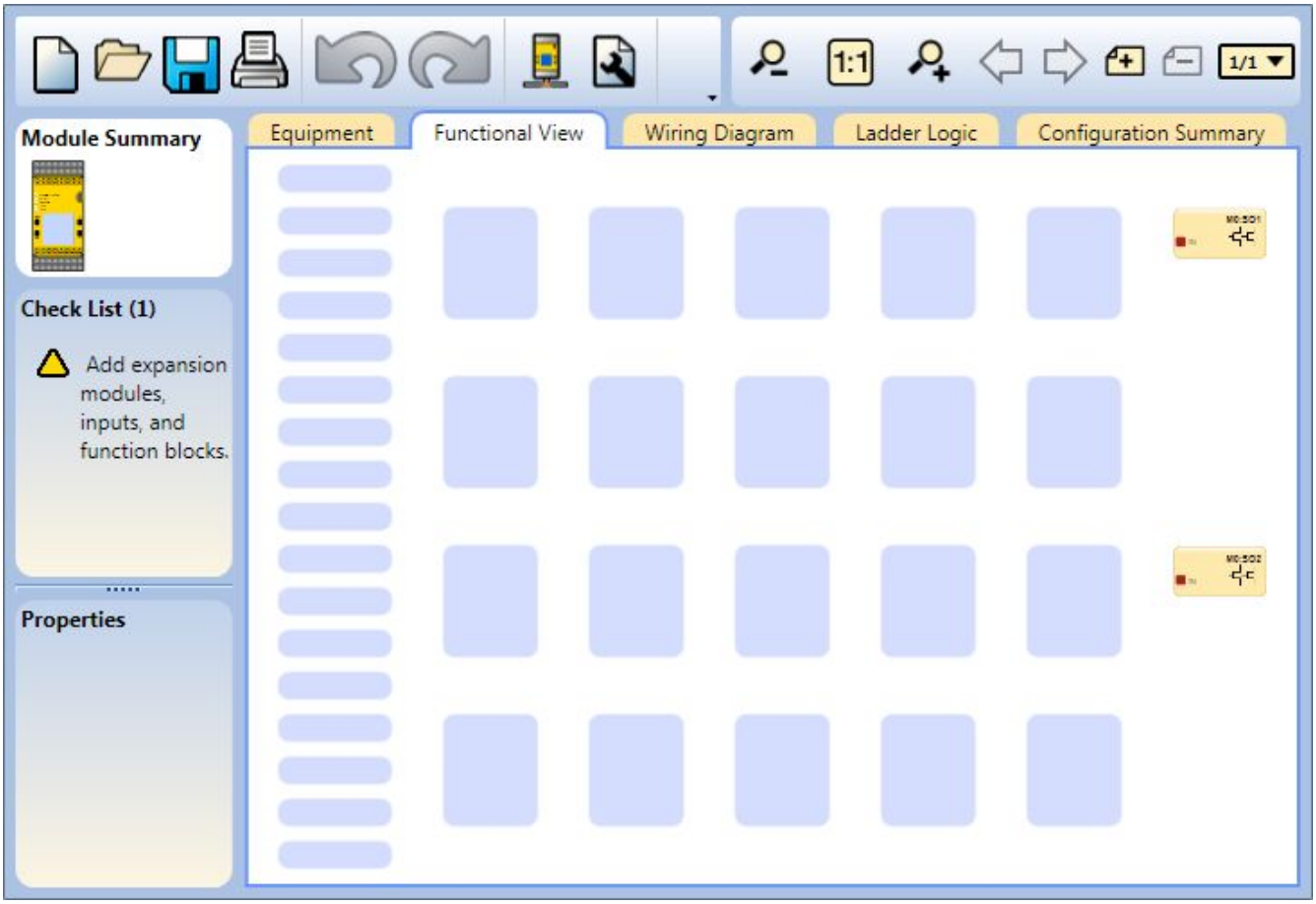



*Figure 90. SC10-2 Module Properties*




## 10.8 Functional View Tab

*Figure 91. **Functional View** Tab*




The **Functional View** tab is used to create the control logic. The left column of the **Functional View** tab is used for Safety and Non-Safety Inputs; the middle area is used for Logic and Function Blocks and the right column is reserved for Safety Outputs. Safety and Non-Safety Inputs can be moved between the left and middle areas. Function and Logic Blocks can only be moved within the middle area. Outputs are placed statically by the program and cannot be moved. Reference blocks of any type can be placed anywhere within the left and middle areas.

> **IMPORTANT:** The Banner Safety Controller Software is designed to assist in creating a valid configuration, however, the user is responsible for verifying the integrity, safety, and functionality of the configuration by following the "Commissioning Checkout Procedure" on page 333.

On the **Functional View** tab you can:

- Customize the look of the diagram by repositioning inputs, Function blocks, and Logic blocks
- **Undo** and **Redo** up to 10 most recent actions


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- Add additional pages for larger configurations using the page navigation toolbar (see "Figure: Page Navigation and Diagram Size toolbar" on page 123)
- Zoom in and out of the diagram view, or automatically adjust it to the best ratio for the current window size (see "Figure: Page Navigation and Diagram Size toolbar" on page 123)

*Figure 92. Page Navigation and Diagram Size toolbar*



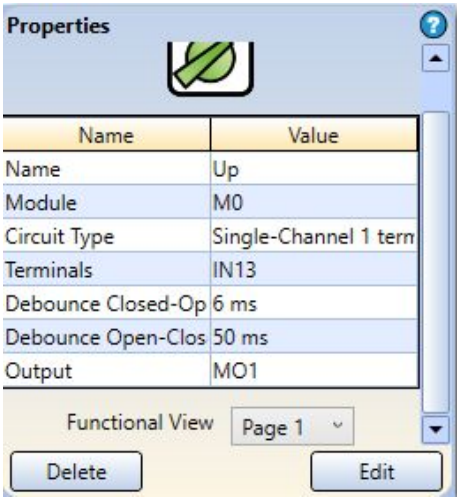

- Navigate between pages by clicking the left and right arrows within the page navigation area in the top right corner of the Software
- Modify properties of all blocks by either double-clicking a block or by selecting a block and clicking **Edit** under the **Properties** table
- Delete any block or connection by selecting the item and then either pressing the **Delete** key on your keyboard or clicking **Delete** under the **Properties** table

> **NOTE:** There is no confirmation of the object deletion. You may undo the deletion by clicking **Undo**.

By default all inputs added on the **Equipment** tab are placed on the **Functional View** tab to the first available placeholder in the left column. There are two ways to move signals from one page to another. To do so, perform one of the following steps:

1. Add a **Reference** to the block located on a different page—click any of the empty placeholders in the middle area, select **Reference** and select the block that is on the next page. Only blocks from other pages can be added as a **Reference**.
2. Re-assign the page—on the page where you want to keep the configuration, move one of the blocks to any of the placeholders in the middle area. Go to the page which contains the block that needs to be moved. Select the block and change the page assignment below the **Properties** table.

*Figure 93. **Properties** Table*




## 10.8.1 Logic Blocks

Logic Blocks are used to create Boolean (True or False) functional relationships between inputs, outputs, and other logic and function blocks.

Logic Blocks accept appropriate safety inputs, non-safety inputs, or safety outputs as an input. The state of the output reflects the Boolean logic result of the combination of the states of its inputs (**1** = On, **0** = Off, **x** = do not care).

> **CAUTION: Inverted Logic**
> It is not recommended to use Inverted Logic configurations in safety applications where a hazardous situation can occur.

Signal states can be inverted by the use of NOT, NAND, and NOR logic blocks, or by selecting "Invert Output" or "Invert Input Source" check boxes (where available). On a Logic Block input, inverted logic treats a Stop state (0 or Off) as a "1" (True or


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

On) and causes an output to turn On, assuming all inputs are satisfied. Similarly, the inverted logic causes the inverse function of an output when the block becomes "True" (output turns from On to Off). Because of certain failure modes that would result in loss of signal, such as broken wiring, short to GND/0 V, loss of safeguarding device supply power, etc., inverted logic is not typically used in safety applications. A hazardous situation can occur by the loss of a stop signal on a safety input, resulting in a safety output turning On.

## AND

| | Input 1 | Input 2 | Output |
|---|---|---|---|
| (US) & (EU) | 0 | x | 0 |
| | x | 0 | 0 |
| The output value is based on the logical AND of **2** to **5** inputs.<br><br>Output is On when all inputs are On. | 1 | 1 | 1 |

## OR

| | Input 1 | Input 2 | Output |
|---|---|---|---|
| (US) ≥1 (EU) | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | 1 | x | 1 |
| The output value is based on the logical OR of **2** to **5** inputs.<br><br>Output is On when at least one input is On. | x | 1 | 1 |

There are two types of OR logic blocks: Regular and Reset (XS/SC26 FID 4 or later models only).

**Reset Type OR Block**

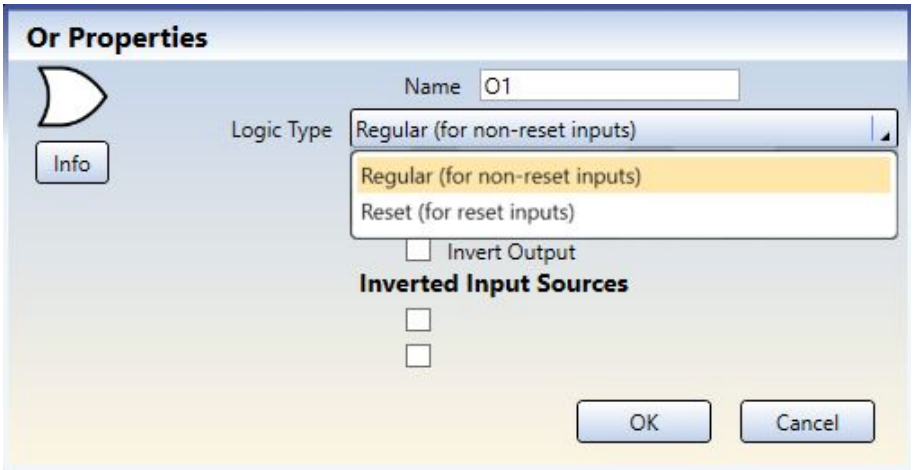
Use so that more than one reset can perform the same reset function (like a hard-wired manual reset and a virtual manual reset) a Reset OR block function has been created. This special type of OR block only accepts reset inputs and can only be connected like a manual reset input in the logic.

**Regular Type OR Block**

Use to perform OR logic on any function that can be connected to an OR block (besides resets) the Regular Logic Type should be selected. Regular is the default setting for the OR logic block.

To select the desired Logic Type (regular or reset), use the **Logic Type** menu in the **Or Properties**.

*Figure 94.* ***Or Properties***



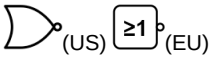


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

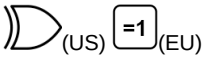
## NAND

| | Input 1 | Input 2 | Output |
|---|---|---|---|
|  (US) (EU)<br>The output value is based on inverting the logical AND of 2 to 5 inputs.<br>Output is Off when all inputs are On. | 0 | x | 1 |
| | x | 0 | 1 |
| | 1 | 1 | 0 |

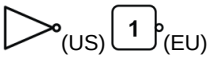
## NOR

| | Input 1 | Input 2 | Output |
|---|---|---|---|
|  (US) (EU)<br>The output value is based on inverting the logical OR of 2 to 5 inputs.<br>Output is On when all inputs are Off. | 0 | 0 | 1 |
| | 1 | x | 0 |
| | x | 1 | 0 |

## XOR

| | Input 1 | Input 2 | Output |
|---|---|---|---|
|  (US) (EU)<br>The output value is an exclusive OR of 2 to 5 inputs.<br>Output is On when only one (exclusive) input is On. | 0 | 0 | 0 |
| | 0 | 1 | 1 |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 |
| | 1 | 1 | 0 |

## NOT

| | Input | Output |
|---|---|---|
|  (US) (EU)<br>Output is the opposite of the input. | 0 | 1 |
| | 1 | 0 |

## RS Flip-Flop

| | Input 1 (Set) | Input 2 (Reset) | Output |
|---|---|---|---|
| <br>This block is Reset Dominant (Reset has priority if both inputs are On). | 0 | 0 | Value remains the same |
| | 0 | 1 | 0 (Reset) |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 (Set) |
| | 1 | 1 | 0 (Reset has priority) |

## SR Flip-Flop

| | Input 1 (Set) | Input 2 (Reset) | Output |
|---|---|---|---|
| <br>This block is Set Dominant (Set has priority if both inputs are On). | 0 | 0 | Value remains the same |
| | 0 | 1 | 0 (Reset) |
| | 1 | 0 | 1 (Set) |
| | 1 | 1 | 1 (Set has priority) |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### 10.8.2 Function Blocks

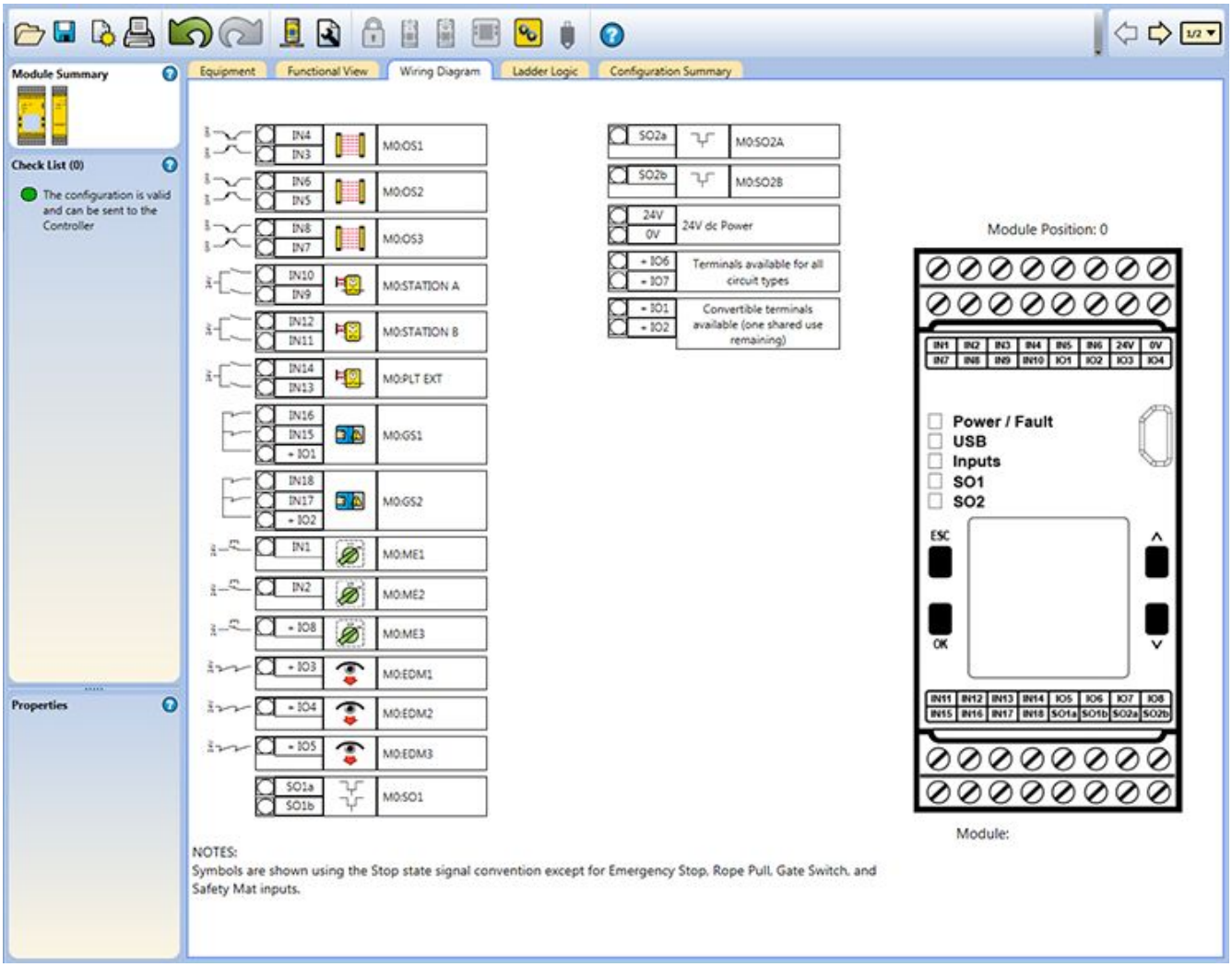
Function blocks provide built-in functionality for most common applications in one block. Although it is possible to design a configuration without any function blocks, using the function blocks offers substantial efficiency, ease of use, and improved functionality.

Most function blocks expect the corresponding safety input device to be connected to it. The checklist on the left creates a notification if any required connections are missing. Depending on the application, some function blocks may be connected to other function blocks and/or logic blocks.

Dual-channel safety input devices have two separate signal lines. Dual-channel signals for some devices are both positive (+24 V DC) when the device is in the Run state. Other devices may have a complementary circuit structure where one channel is at 24 V DC and the other is at 0 V DC when the device is in the Run state. This manual uses the Run state/Stop state convention instead of referring to a safety input device as being ON (24 V DC) or OFF (0 V DC).

## 10.9 **Wiring Diagram** Tab

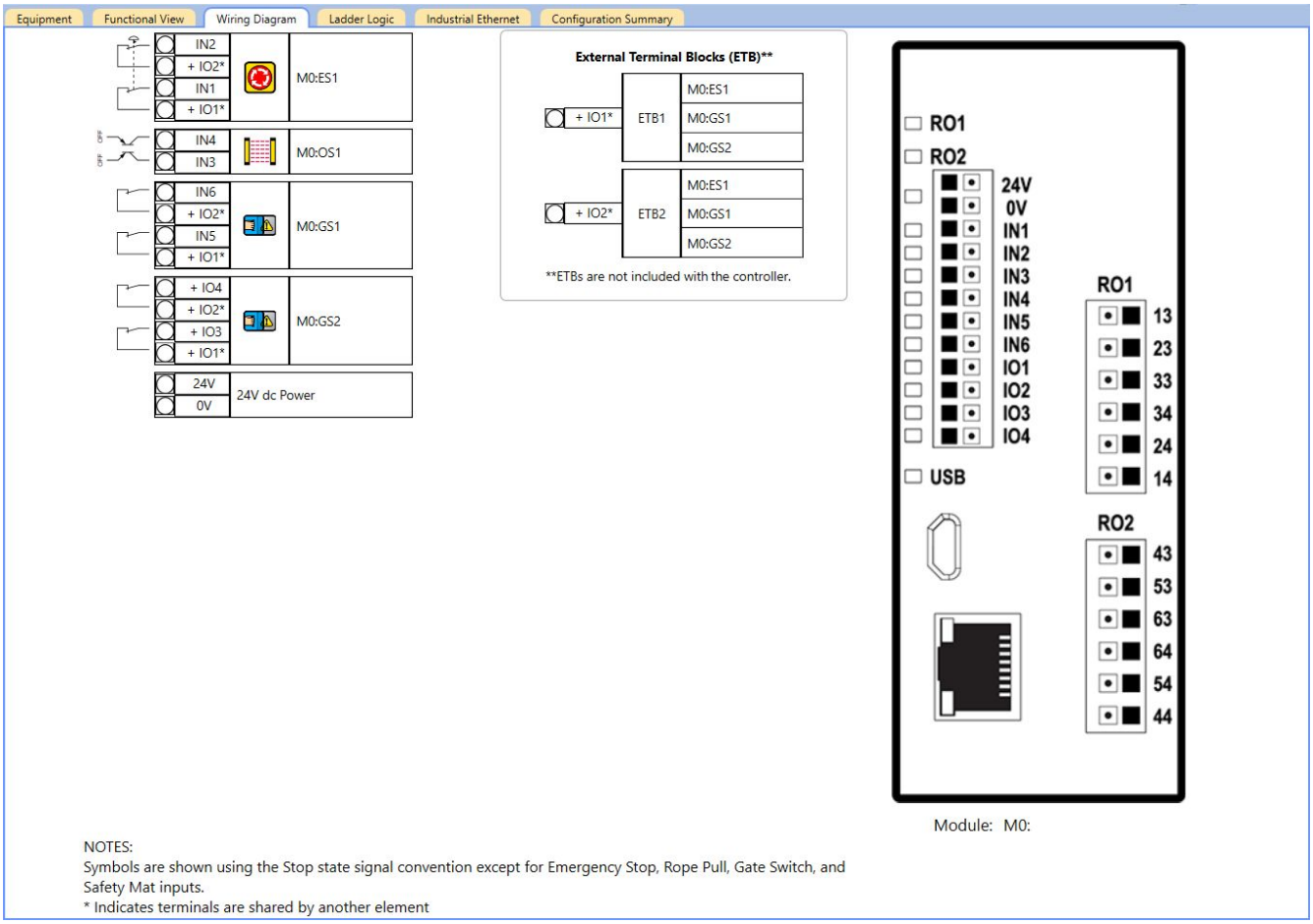
*Figure 95. **Wiring Diagram** Tab—XS26*




The **Wiring Diagram** tab shows the terminal assignments and the electrical circuits for the safety and non-safety inputs, Safety Outputs, and status outputs, and any terminals that are still available for the selected module. Use the wiring diagram as a guide to physically connect the devices. Navigate between modules using the Page Navigation toolbar at the top right corner of the Software.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 96. **Wiring Diagram** Tab—SC10-2 with External Terminal Blocks*

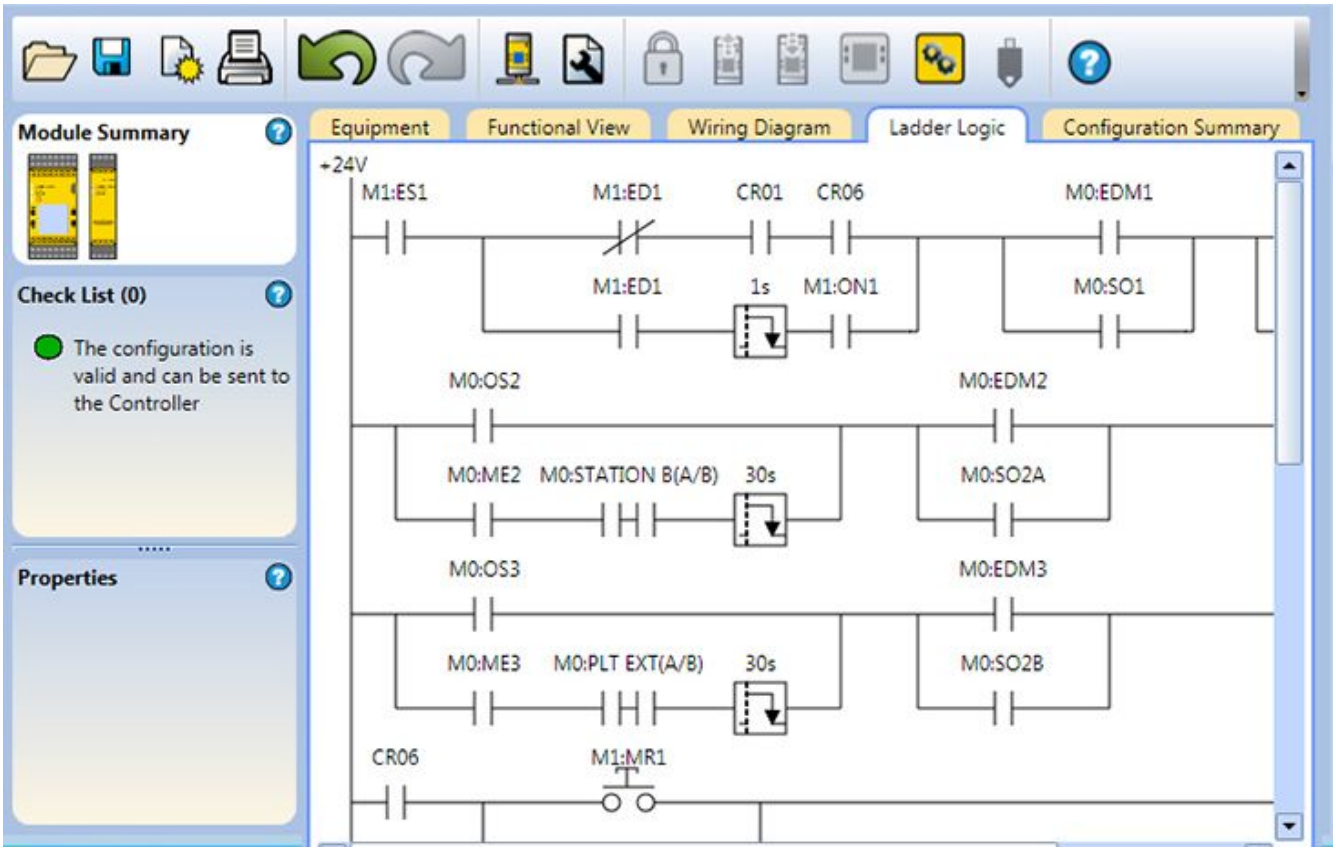




© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 10.10 **Ladder Logic** Tab

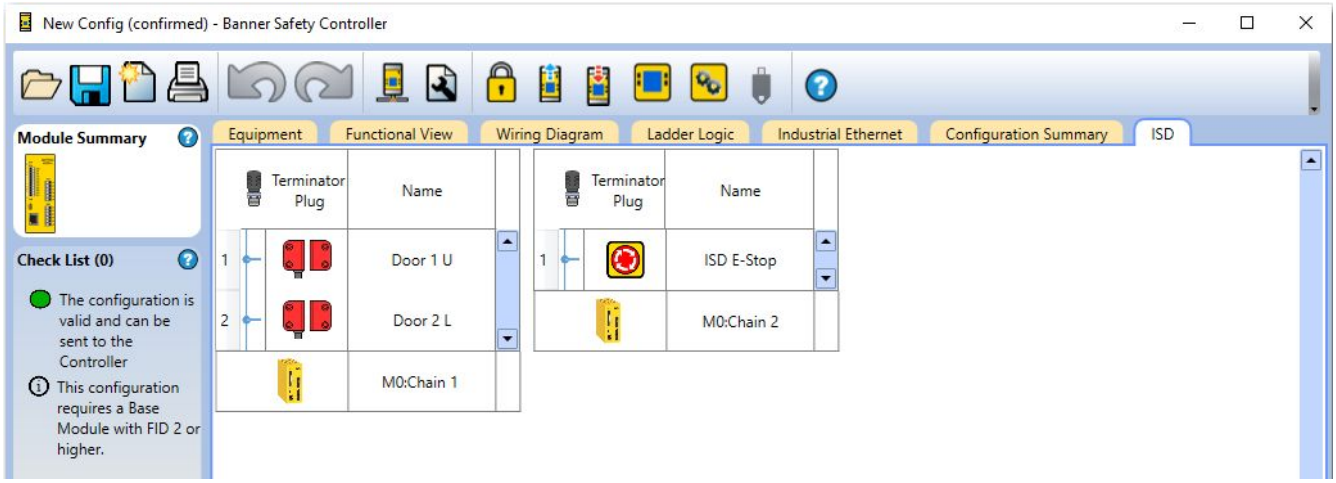
*Figure 97. **Ladder Logic** Tab*




The **Ladder Logic** tab displays a simplified relay logic rendering of the configuration.

# 10.11 **ISD** Tab

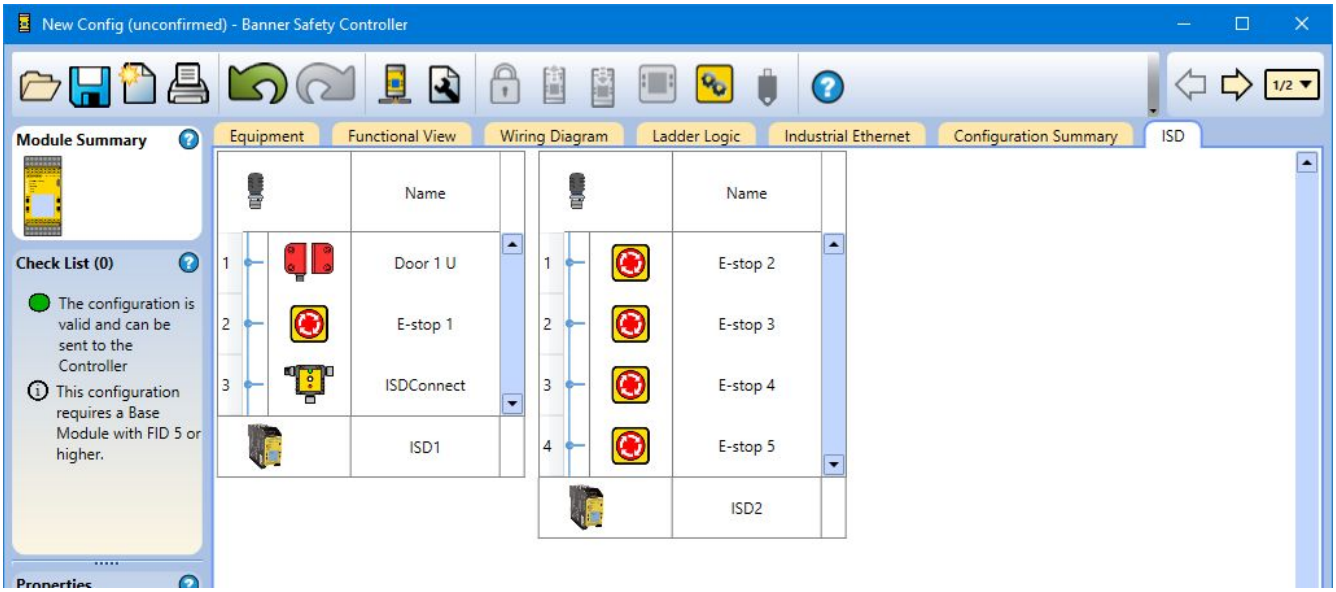
*Figure 98. SC10-2 **ISD** Tab*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 99. XS26-ISD **ISD** Tab*




The **ISD** tab shows the order and device names of the connected ISD devices in each ISD chain.

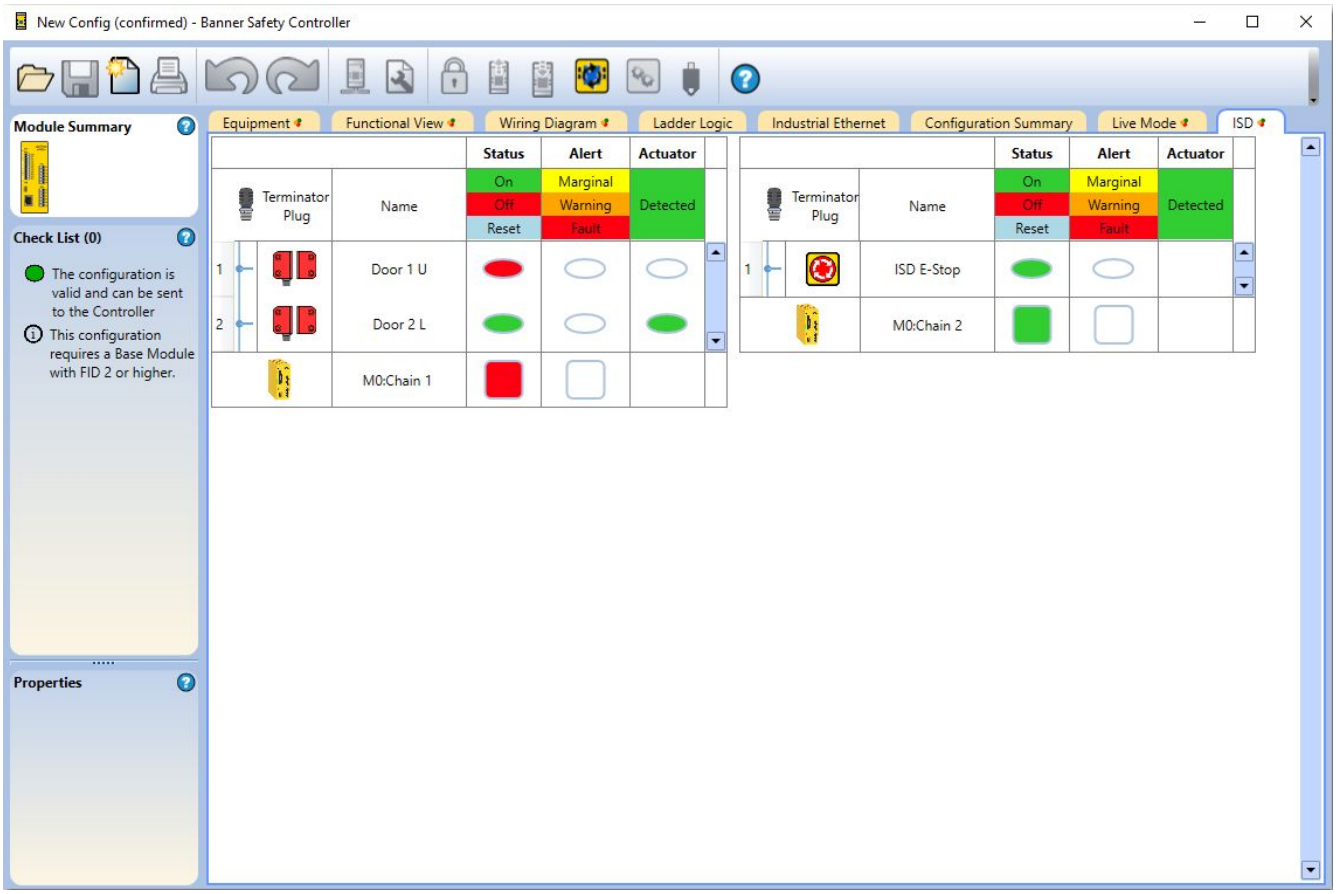
For XS26-ISD models with more than two chains, use the arrows in the upper right to see the additional chains.

In Live Mode, the **ISD** tab displays real-time information (updated in approximately one to three seconds) about the connected devices. In the following example, a gate switch is open, as shown by the red indicator, or Off status, and the blank indicator under Actuator.

**NOTE:** There is a data startup delay of approximately 10 seconds.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 100. **ISD** Tab in Live Mode with a Switch Open*



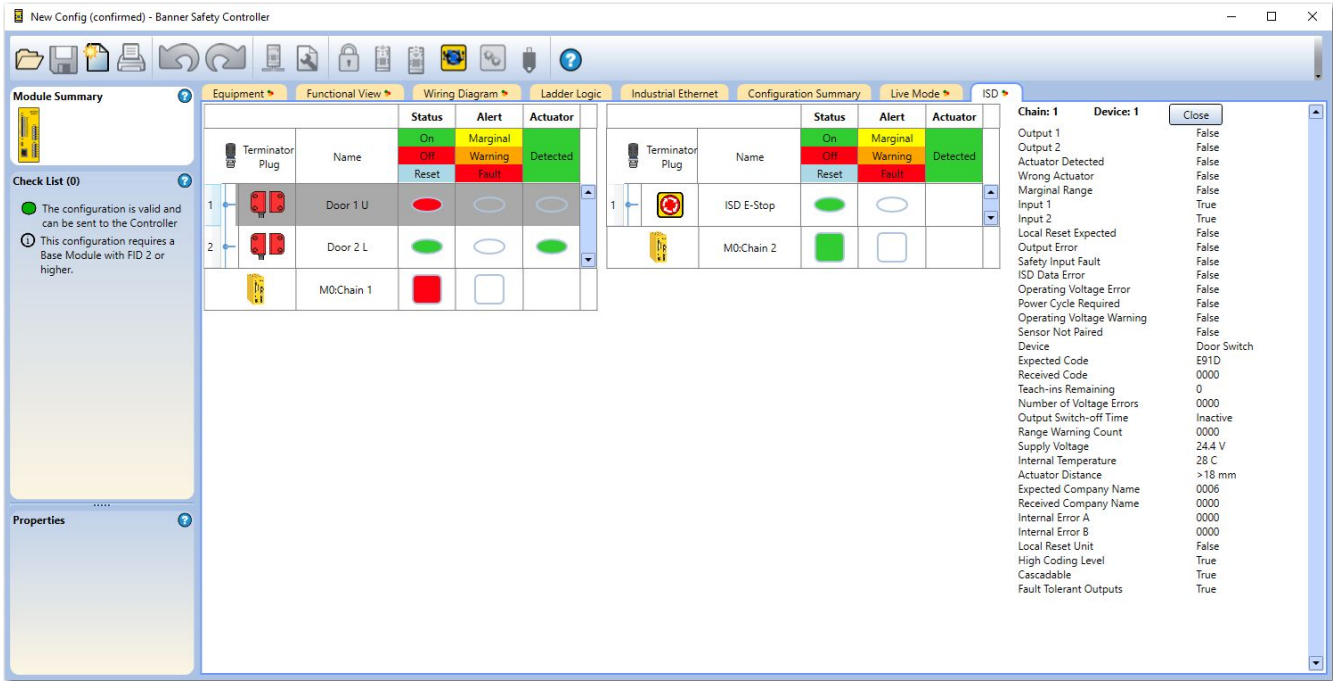

When the ISD devices are manually entered, device #1 is positioned closest to the terminating plug on the **ISD** tab. The device numbers increase the closer they are to the controller.

When **AutoDetect ISD** is selected, device #1 is positioned closest to the controller on the **ISD** tab. The numbers increase the further they are away from the controller, toward the terminating plug. This is based on the assumption that most changes in chain length will occur at the terminating plug end of the chain.

In Live Mode, click on a device to view diagnostic data about that device. The data includes output, input, and whether the actuator is detected.

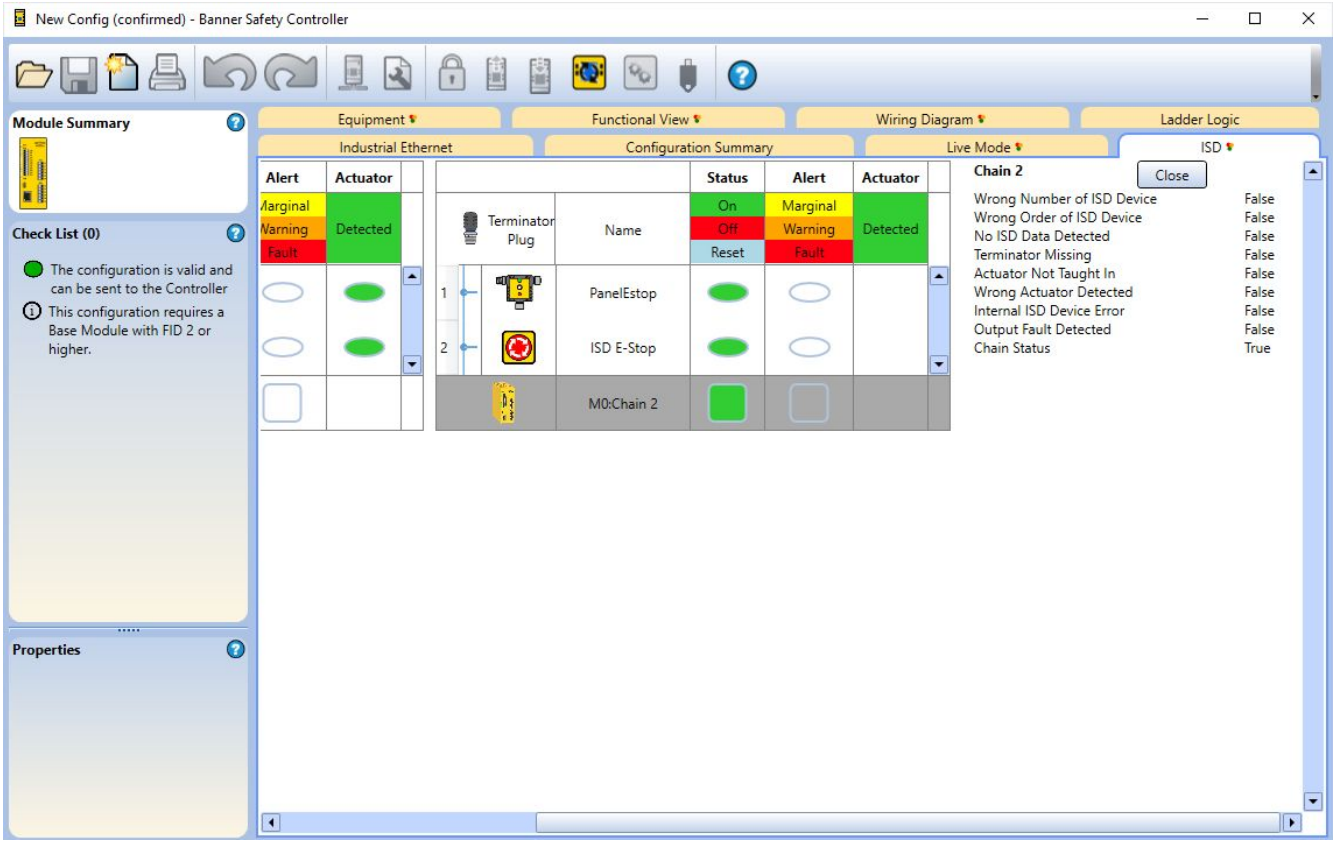

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 101. **ISD** Tab in Live Mode with Diagnostic Data*




In Live Mode, click on a chain name to view diagnostic data about the chain.

*Figure 102. **ISD** Tab in Live Mode with Chain Data*

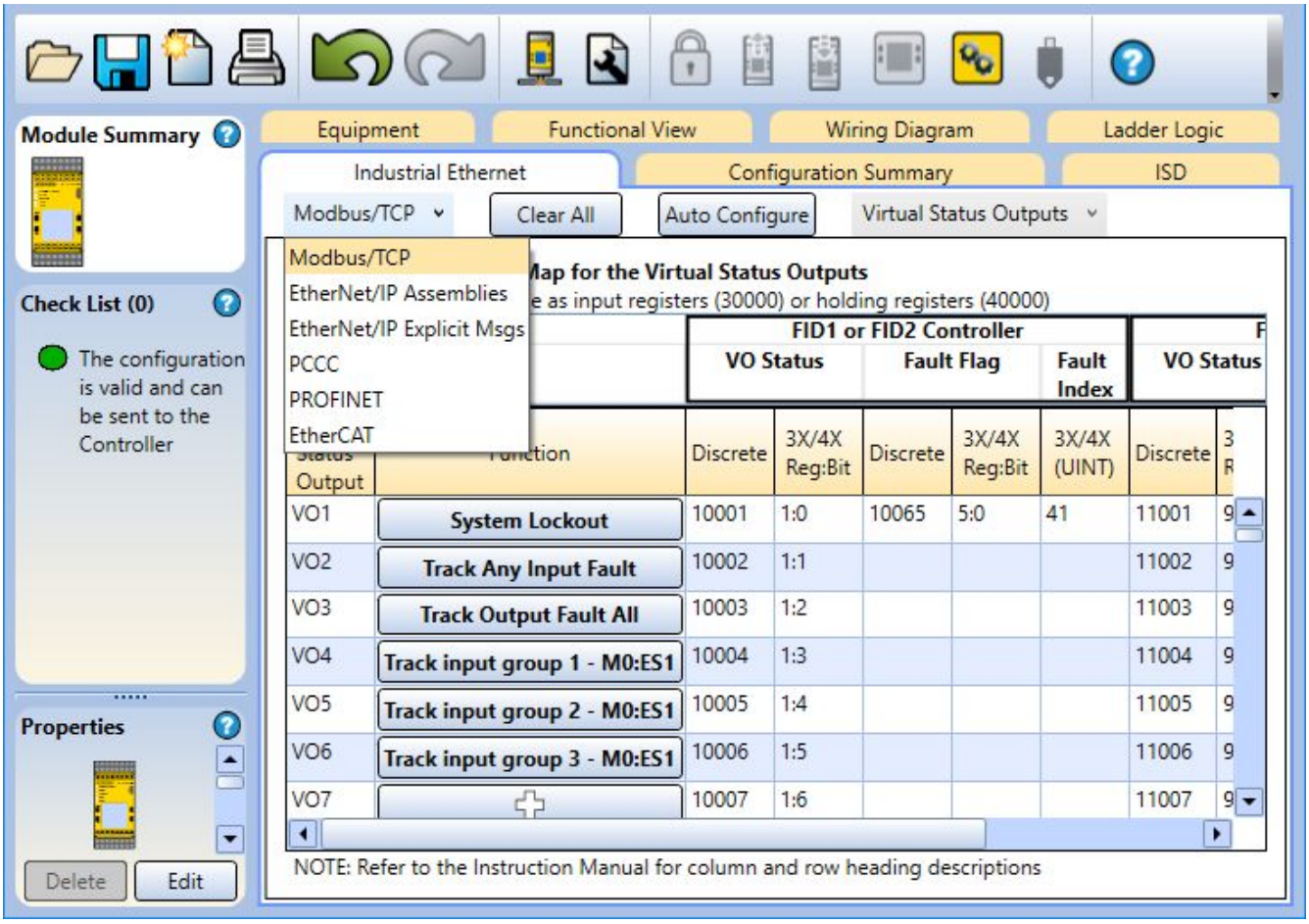




© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 10.12 Industrial Ethernet Tab

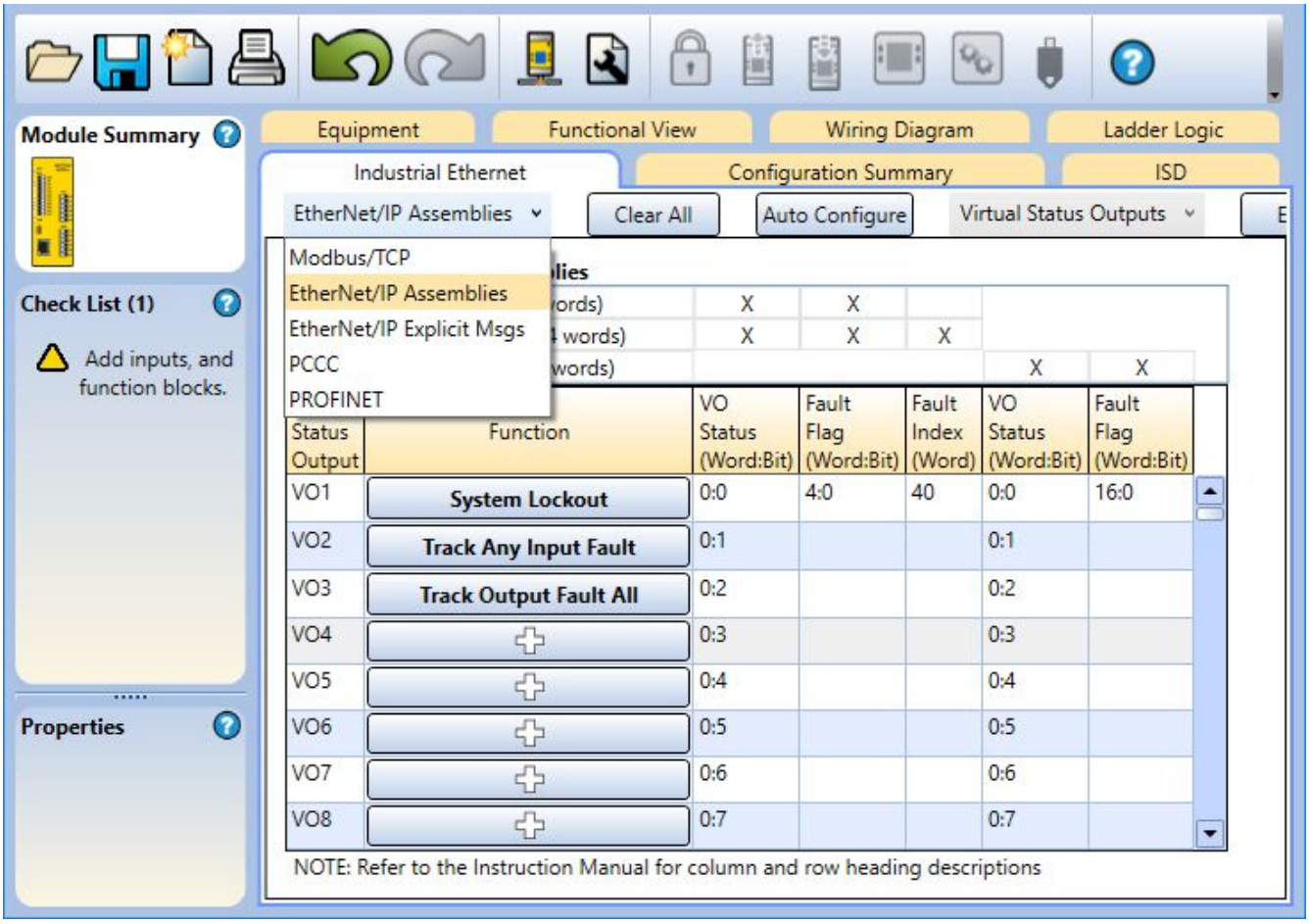
*Figure 103. XS/SC26 **Industrial Ethernet** Tab—Virtual Status Outputs*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 104. SC10-2 **Industrial Ethernet** Tab—Virtual Status Outputs*




The **Industrial Ethernet** tab allows configuration of the Virtual Status Outputs, which offer the same functionality as **Status Outputs** (added on the **Equipment** tab) over the network (see "Status Output Signal Conventions " on page 83 and "Status Output Functionality" on page 84 for detailed information). Up to 64 Virtual Status Outputs can be added for any configuration using Modbus TCP, EtherNet/IP Input Assemblies, EtherNet/IP Explicit Messages, and PCCC protocols on FID 1 XS/SC26 Safety Controllers and up to 256 Virtual Status Outputs can be added on FID 2 or later XS/SC26 Safety Controllers and SC10-2 Safety Controllers. FID 2 or later Base Controllers and SC10-2 Safety Controllers can also use PROFINET. FID 6 or later expandable, Ethernet-enabled XS26 Base Controllers can also use EtherCAT when the XSeCAT Communications Gateway is added.

To access the **Industrial Ethernet** tab:

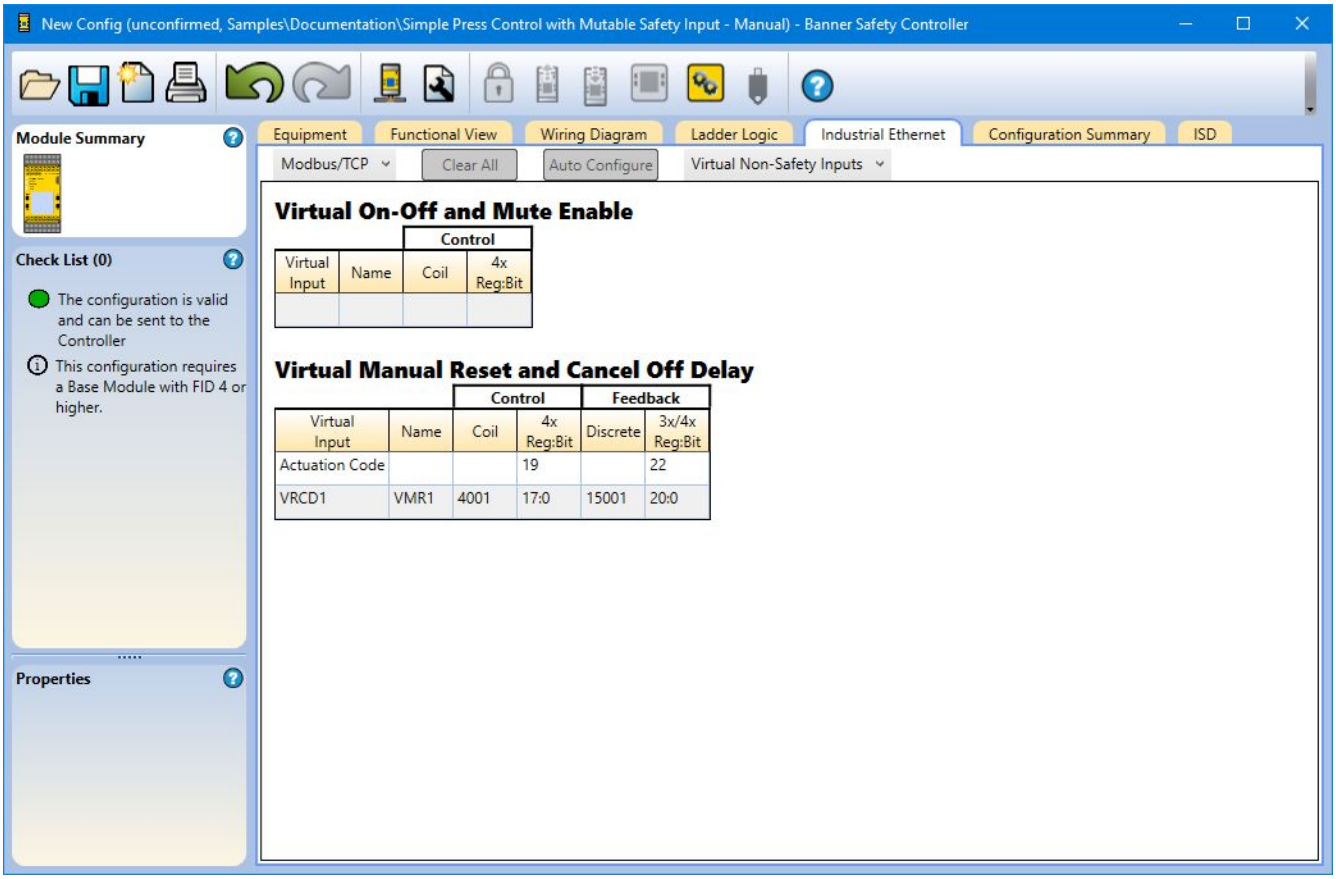
1. Click **Network Settings**.
2. Select **Enable Network Interface**.
3. On the **Industrial Ethernet** tab, use the dropdown list to select the desired protocol.
4. Adjust any settings, if necessary. See:
   - " Network Settings: Modbus TCP, Ethernet/IP, PCCC " on page 136
   - " Network Settings: PROFINET" on page 137
   - " Network Settings: EtherCAT " on page 138
5. Click **OK**.

Use the **Auto Configure** function, located on the **Industrial Ethernet** tab, to automatically configure the Virtual Status Outputs to a set of commonly used functions, based on the current configuration. Click ✚ in the **Function** column next to any of the **VOx** cells to add a Virtual Status Output manually. Functions of all Virtual Status Outputs can be modified by clicking on the button that contains the name of the function of the Virtual Status Output or by clicking **Edit** under the **Properties** table when VOx is selected.

To view information about virtual non-safety inputs, select **Virtual Non-Safety Inputs** from the dropdown menu in the upper right.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

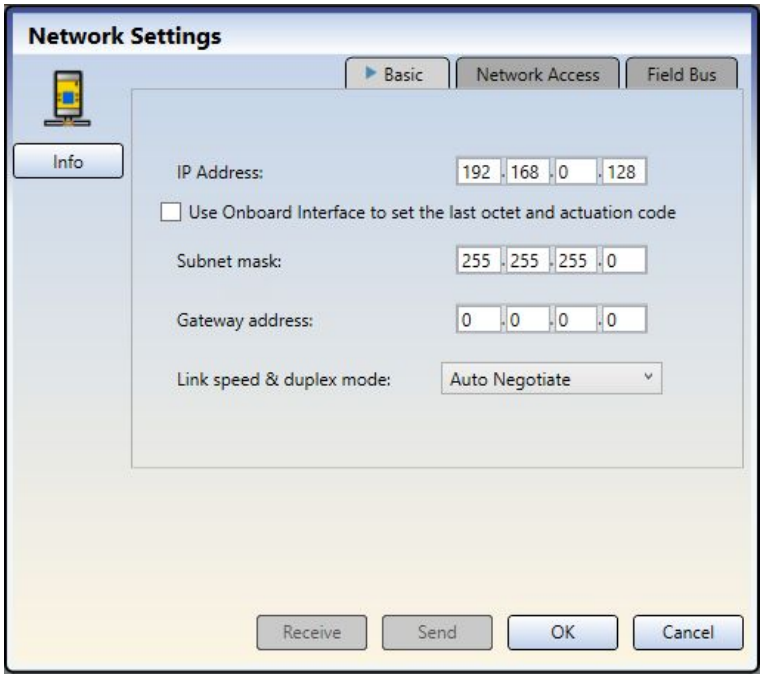
*Figure 105. Industrial Ethernet Tab—Virtual Non-Safety Inputs*




## 10.12.1 Network Settings: **Basic** Tab

Click **Network Settings** to open the **Network Settings** window. The **Basic** tab displays.

*Figure 106. Network Settings: **Basic** Tab*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Set the IP Address directly via the Network Settings window by entering the desired information as noted in "Default Network Settings" on page 135. The **Use onboard interface to set the last octet and actuation code** checkbox allows you to set the basic IP address information but finalize the last octet (and actuation code if required) when the unit is installed. See "ClickSet IP Process " on page 193.

> **NOTE:** Use **Password Manager** to enable or disable the ability for User2 and User3 to change the network settings.

Click **Send** to write the network settings to the Safety Controller. Network settings are sent separately from the configuration settings. For SC26-2 and XS/SC26 FID 3 and later units, the network settings are automatically sent only if the Safety Controller is a factory default Safety Controller.

*Table 7. Default Network Settings*

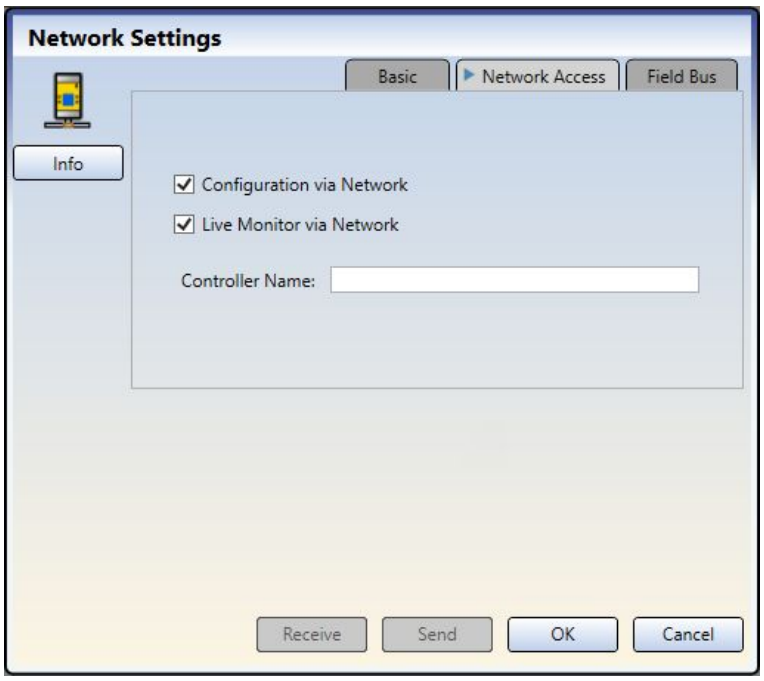
| Setting Name | Factory Default Value |
|---|---|
| **IP Address** | 192.168.0.128 |
| **Subnet Mask** | 255.255.255.0 |
| **Gateway Address** | 0.0.0.0 |
| **Link Speed and Duplex Mode** | Auto Negotiate |

Note that the Network Settings **Basic** tab is blank for PROFINET because the addressing is done via the PLC.

## 10.12.2 Network Settings: **Network Access** Tab

Use the **Network Access** tab to select whether the Configuration via Network and Live Monitor via Network options are available.

*Figure 107. Network Settings: **Network Access** Tab*




XS26 FID 7 or later Ethernet-enabled models can be configured via the Ethernet port (Configuration via Network) and can be monitored in live mode via the Ethernet port (Live Monitor via Network). Select or clear the Configuration via Network and Live Monitor via Network checkboxes on the **Network Access** tab to enable or disable these features.

Use the **Controller Name** field to give the Safety Controller a name that is displayed in the **Available Controllers** window. The name has a 31 character limit.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

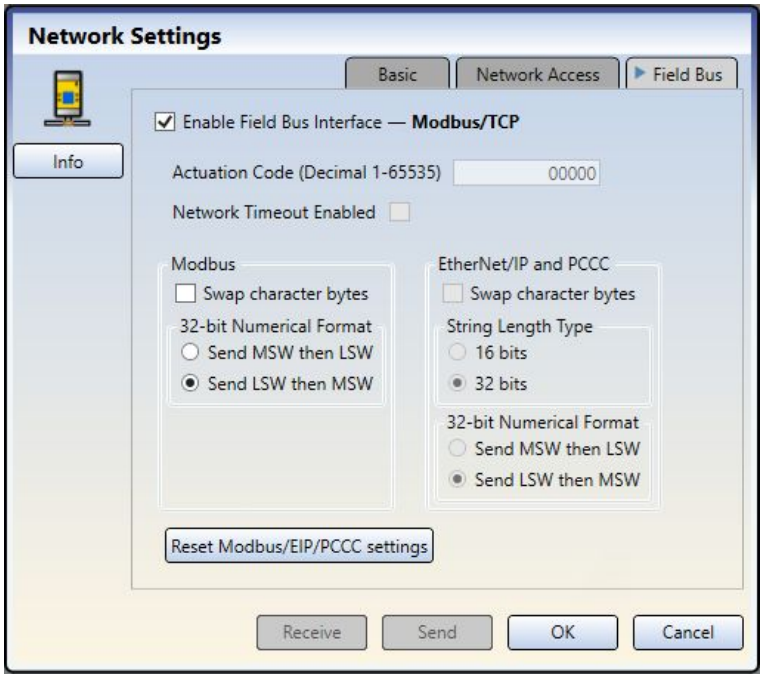
## 10.12.3 Network Settings: **Field Bus** Tab

Use the **Field Bus** tab to create an actuation code and/or set further configuration information for Modbus TCP and Ethernet/IP.

### Network Settings: Modbus TCP, Ethernet/IP, PCCC

In the case of a Modbus TCP connection, the default TCP port used is 502, by specification. This value is not shown in the **Network Settings** window.

*Figure 108. **Network Settings**—**Field Bus** Tab*




Select or clear the **Enable Field Bus Interface** checkbox to enable or disable the Field Bus interface.

An **Actuation Code** is required for configurations containing a virtual manual reset or cancel delay input. The virtual manual reset or cancel delay input must be added to enable the **Actuation Code** field.

The **Field Bus** tab allows further configuration of Modbus TCP and EtherNet/IP settings, such as Swap character bytes, MSW and LSW sending precedence, and String Length Type (EtherNet/IP and PCCC).

Click **Network Timeout Enabled** to have any configured Virtual On/Off or Virtual Mute Enable become inactive in the event of a network timeout condition. The network timeout time is fixed at 5 seconds.

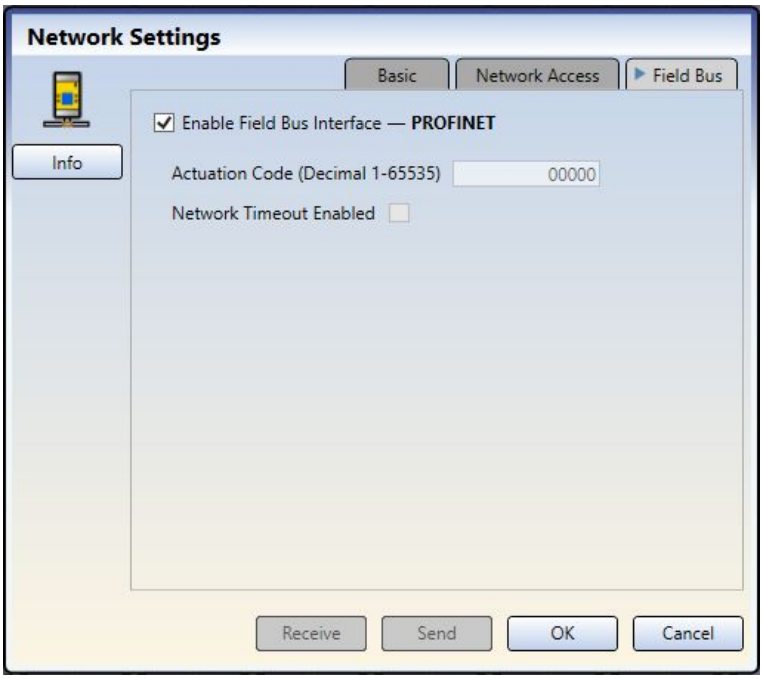
Click **Send** to write the network settings to the Safety Controller. Network settings are sent separately from the configuration settings. For SC26-2 and XS/SC26 FID 3 and later units, the network settings are automatically sent only if the Safety Controller is a factory default Safety Controller.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## Network Settings: PROFINET

After selecting the PROFINET protocol on the **Industrial Ethernet** tab, click **Network Settings** to open the **Network Settings** window. PROFINET is available on XS/SC26 FID 2 or later and SC10-2.

*Figure 109. **Network Settings**—PROFINET*




Click **Network Timeout Enabled** to have all configured Virtual On/Off or Virtual Mute Enable become inactive in the event of a network timeout condition. The network timeout time is fixed at 5 seconds.

Click **Send** to write the network settings to the Safety Controller. Network settings are sent separately from the configuration settings. For SC10-2 and XS/SC26 FID 3 and later units, the network settings are automatically sent only if the Safety Controller is a factory default Safety Controller. Note that the Network Settings **Basic** tab is blank for PROFINET because the addressing is done via the PLC.

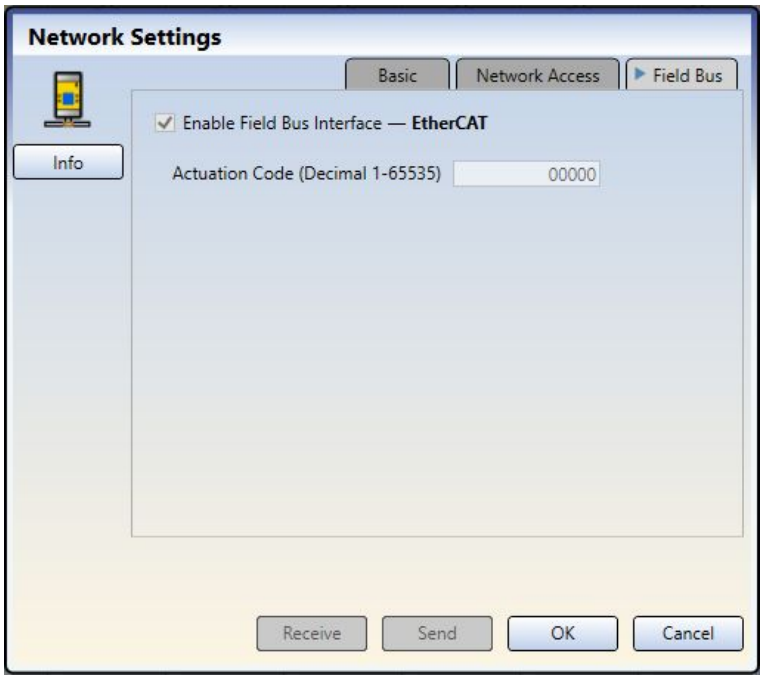
> **NOTE:** Use **Password Manager** to enable or disable the ability for User2 and User3 to change the network settings.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### Network Settings: EtherCAT

After adding the XSeCAT Communication Gateway, the EtherCAT protocol on the **Industrial Ethernet** tab is the protocol under **Network Settings**. Click **Network Settings** to open the **Network Settings** window. EtherCAT is available on XS26 FID 6 or later base controllers with an XSeCAT communication gateway added.

*Figure 110. Network Settings—EtherCAT*




Click **Send** to write the network settings to the Safety Controller. Network settings are sent separately from the configuration settings. The network settings are automatically sent only if the Safety Controller is a factory default Safety Controller. The **Basic** tab is blank for EtherCAT because the addressing is done via the PLC.

**NOTE:** Click **Receive** to download the settings from the connected Safety Controller.

**NOTE:** Use **Password Manager** to enable or disable the ability for User2 and User3 to change the network settings.

## 10.12.4 PLC Tags/Labels File Creation

Use the Banner Safety Controller Software to generate a .L5X, .csv, or .xml file that contains the names of all the virtual status outputs and inputs.

To use the names created in the Banner Safety Controller software as the PLC Tags/Labels, import the .L5X, .csv, or .xml file into the PLC software for PLCs using Ethernet/IP Assemblies, PROFINET, or EtherCAT.

First, create all of the status outputs and inputs that are desired in the Banner Safety Controller Software. Assign an actuation code under **Network Settings**, if needed. Then, make sure that the desired protocol is selected (either Ethernet/IP Assemblies, PROFINET, or EtherCAT).

#### L5X File

The .L5X file is an XML (eXtensilble Markup Language) file that stores both EtherNet/IP connection details and tag descriptions. Exporting this file from the Safety Controller software and importing it into the RS Studio 5000 PLC software is a convenient way to make an EtherNet/IP connection between the PLC and the Safety Controller with labeled tag descriptions, all in one step.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

#### CSV File

To use the exported CSV file to label the tag descriptions in the PLC program, first use the EDS file to create the EtherNet/IP connection between the PLC and the Safety Controller. Select the same connection for the EDS file connection (for example, Eight ISD Chains) and in the **Export to CSV & L5X** window. This ensures that the labels from the exported CSV will match the tags created by the EDS file.

See:

- "Create L5X Files For Ethernet/IP Assemblies" on page 196
- "Banner Safety Controller EDS File Installation in ControlLogix Software" on page 201
- "Create a XML File For PROFINET" on page 290
- "Create a PLCopenXML for EtherCAT® for TwinCAT® 3.0" on page 319

## 10.12.5 EtherNet/IP Assembly Objects

**NOTE:** The EDS file is available for download at www.bannerengineering.com. For additional information, see "Industrial Ethernet (Field Bus) Overview" on page 192.

#### Input (T>O) Assembly Objects

| Instance ID | Data Length (16-bit words) | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **100 (0×64)** | 8 | Used to access the basic information about the Virtual Status Outputs 1–64. |
| **101 (0×65)** | 104 | Used to access the advanced information (including the basic information) about the Virtual Status Outputs. |
| **102 (0×66)** | 150 | Used to access the fault log information and provides no Virtual Status Output information. |
| **103 (0×67)** | 35 | Used to access the basic information about Virtual Status Outputs 1–256 and feedback information about Virtual Reset and Virtual Cancel Delay inputs. Available on FID 2 or later Base Controllers and SC10-2. |
| **104 (0×68)** | 112 | Used to access the basic information about Virtual Status Outputs 1–256, feedback information about Virtual Reset and Virtual Cancel Delay inputs, and to support communications with ISD-enabled devices with one or two chains. |
| **105 (0×69)** | 240 | Used to access the basic information about Virtual Status Outputs 1–256, feedback information about Virtual Reset and Virtual Cancel Delay inputs, and to support communication with ISD-enabled devices with more than two chains. |

#### Output (O>T) Assembly Object

| Instance ID | Data Length (16-bit words) | Description |
|---|---|---|
| **112 (0×70)** | 2 | *Reserved* |
| **113 (0×71)** | 11 | Used to control Virtual Inputs (On/Off, Mute Enable, Reset, Cancel Delay). Available on FID 2 or later Base Controllers and SC10-2. |
| **114 (0×72)** | 14 | Used to control Virtual Inputs (On/Off, Mute Enable, Reset, Cancel Delay) and to support communications with ISD-enabled devices. |

#### Configuration Assembly Object

The Configuration Assembly Object is not implemented. However, some EtherNet/IP clients require one. If this is the case, use Instance ID 128 (0×80) with a data length of 0.

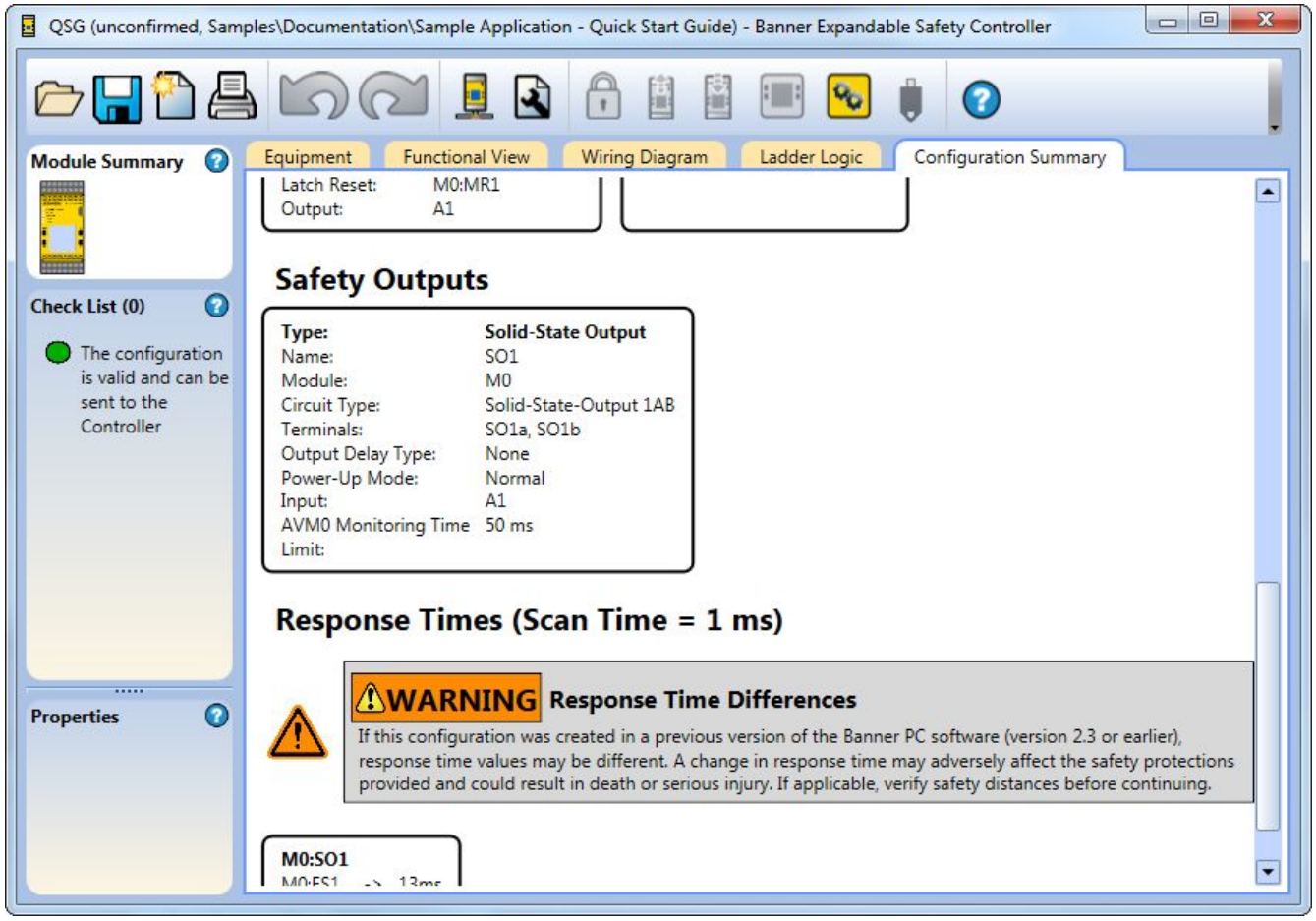
Set the Data Type of the communication format to INT.

Set the RPI (requested packet interval) to a minimum of 150.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 10.13 Configuration Summary Tab

*Figure 111. **Configuration Summary** Tab*

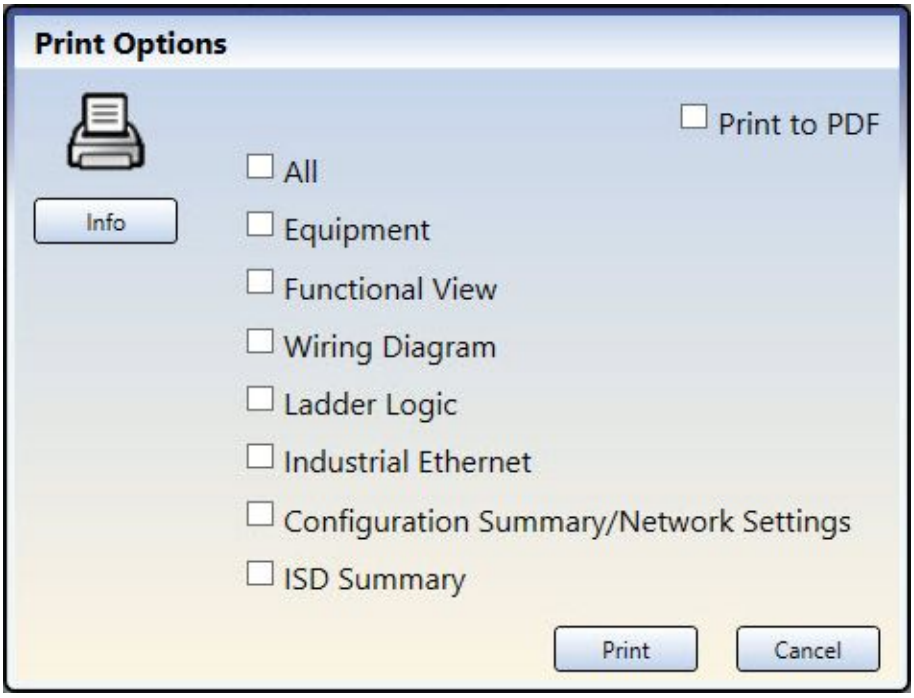



The **Configuration Summary** tab displays the detailed information about all configured inputs, Function and Logic Blocks, Safety Outputs, Status Outputs, and the related Response Times in a text format.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 10.14 Print Options

*Figure 112. Print Options*




The Software provides several options to print the configuration. Click **Print** on the toolbar to access the **Print Options** window.

The following print choices are available:

- **All**—Prints all views, including **Network Settings** (in Ethernet-enabled versions)
- **Equipment**—Prints the **Equipment** tab
- **Functional View**—Prints the **Functional View** tab
- **Wiring Diagram**—Prints the **Wiring Diagram** tab
- **Ladder Logic**—Prints the **Ladder Logic** tab
- **Industrial Ethernet**—Prints the **Industrial Ethernet** tab
- **Configuration Summary/Network Settings**—Prints the **Configuration Summary** and **Network Settings** (when available)
- **ISD Summary**—Prints the **ISD** tab (available on SC10-2 FID 2 or later devices and XS26-ISD FID 5 or later devices)

Printing Options:

- **Print to PDF**—Prints the selection to a PDF file stored in a user-defined location
- **Print**—Opens the default Windows Print dialog and sends the selection to the user-defined printer


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 10.15 Password Manager

## 10.15.1 XS/SC26 Password Manager

**Password Manager** is available when a Safety Controller is connected to the PC via USB or Ethernet (for FID7 or later XS/SC26 Ethernet models). The information shown in **Password Manager** comes from the Safety Controller.

*Figure 113. XS/SC26 **Password Manager—Network** Tab (Software v5.0 or later with a FID 7 or later controller)*

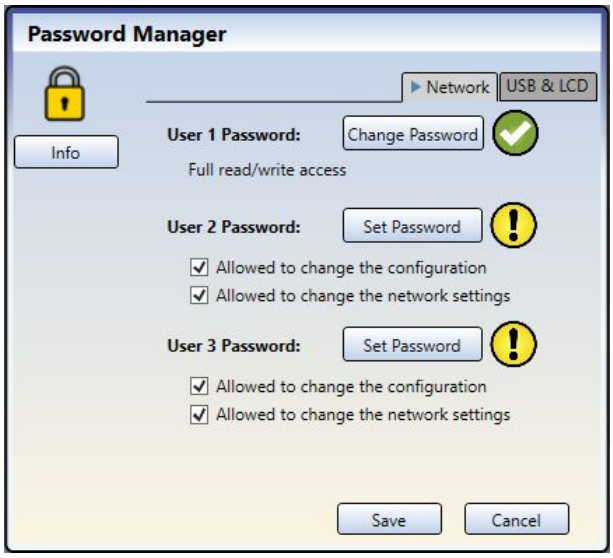



*Figure 114. XS/SC26 **Password Manager—USB/LCD** Tab*




Click **Password Manager** on the Software toolbar to edit the configuration access rights. The Safety Controller stores up to three user PINs (for USB) and three user passwords (for Ethernet) to manage different levels of access to the configuration settings. The password for User1 provides full read/write access and the ability to set access levels for User2 and User3 (user names cannot be changed). Basic information, such as network settings, wiring diagrams, and diagnostic information, is accessible without a PIN/password. A configuration stored on a PC or an SC-XM2/3 drive is not password-protected.

User2 or User3 can write the configuration to the Safety Controller when **Allowed to change the configuration** is enabled. They can change the network settings when **Allowed to change the network settings** is enabled. For Software version 4.1 or earlier, the **Allowed to view the configuration** option for User2 and User3 is available and can be enabled when **Require password to view configuration** for User1 is checked. Their respective PIN/passwords will be required.

Click **Save** to write the password information to the Safety Controller.

Only User1 can reset the XS/SC26 back to the factory defaults.

> **NOTE:** The default PINs for User1, User2, and User3, are 1901, 1902, and 1903, respectively.
> The default Ethernet password for User1 is 1901@Banner.
>
> It is highly recommended to change the default PINs/passwords to new values.
>
> **If the default Ethernet password is not changed, the ability to connect to a controller with the Banner Safety Controller Software via Ethernet will be disabled.** This is an automatic feature. Change the password via USB or via Ethernet.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## 10.15.2 SC10-2 Password Manager

**Password Manager** is available when a Safety Controller is connected to the PC via USB. The information shown in **Password Manager** comes from the Safety Controller.

*Figure 115. SC10-2 **Password Manager***




Click **Password Manager** on the Software toolbar to edit the configuration access rights. The Safety Controller stores up to three user PINs to manage different levels of access to the configuration settings. The PIN for User1 provides full read/write access and the ability to set access levels for User2 and User3 (user names cannot be changed). The configuration, network settings, wiring diagrams, and diagnostic information are accessible without a PIN. A configuration stored on a PC or an SC-XM2/3 drive is not protected by a PIN.

User2 or User3 can write the configuration to the Safety Controller when **Allowed to change the configuration** is enabled. They can change the network settings when **Allowed to change the network settings** is enabled. Their respective PINs will be required.

Click **Save** to apply the PIN information to the current configuration in the Software and to write the PIN information to the Safety Controller.

> **NOTE:** The default PINs for User1, User2, and User3, are 1901, 1902, and 1903, respectively. It is highly recommended to change the default PINs to new values.

Only User1 can reset the SC10-2 back to the factory defaults.

## 10.15.3 Recover the PIN or Password

If the password for the Safety Controller has been forgotten or misplaced, use the following instructions to request access to the Safety Controller.

The Safety Controller must be connected using a USB connection.

1. Connect to the Controller via USB.
2. Click .

   The **Enter Safety Controller Password** screen displays.
3. Click .

   The **Password Recovery** screen displays.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 116.* ***Password Recovery*** *Screen*




4. Click **Get Request Code**.

   Text displays in the field.
5. Click **Copy** to copy the request code to the computer's clipboard.

   The message "Copy to clipboard complete" displays.
6. Provide the Request Code and verification information to Banner Engineering Corp..
   - For the fastest response, contact Banner Engineering Technical support at +1-888-373-6767 or contact your in-country Banner office. Because of the length of the Recovery Request, the Request Code must be e-mailed the person on the phone.
   - For after hours support, email the Request Code to ATSGroup@bannerengineering.com.

   In addition to the Request Code, include the following information:
   - Company name
   - Your name and position
   - Contact information
   - Why you need the password

   After Banner validates the password recovery request, a password recovery key will be provided.
7. Copy and paste the password recovery key into the **Recovery Key** field on the **Password Recovery** screen.
8. Click **Apply**.

   The key is validated and confirmed and the **Password Manager** screen opens.
9. Change the password (XS/SC26 FID 7 or later Ethernet-enabled models only) or the PIN, and apply the changes to the Safety Controller.
10. Perform a system reset or a power cycle.

    The new password or PIN is implemented.

# 10.16 Viewing and Importing Controller Data

The Banner Safety Controller Software allows viewing or copying current Safety Controller data, such as model number and firmware version, configuration and network settings, and the wiring diagram.

**Read from Controller** is available when a Safety Controller is connected to the PC via USB or via Ethernet (for FID 7 or later XS/SC26 Ethernet models).

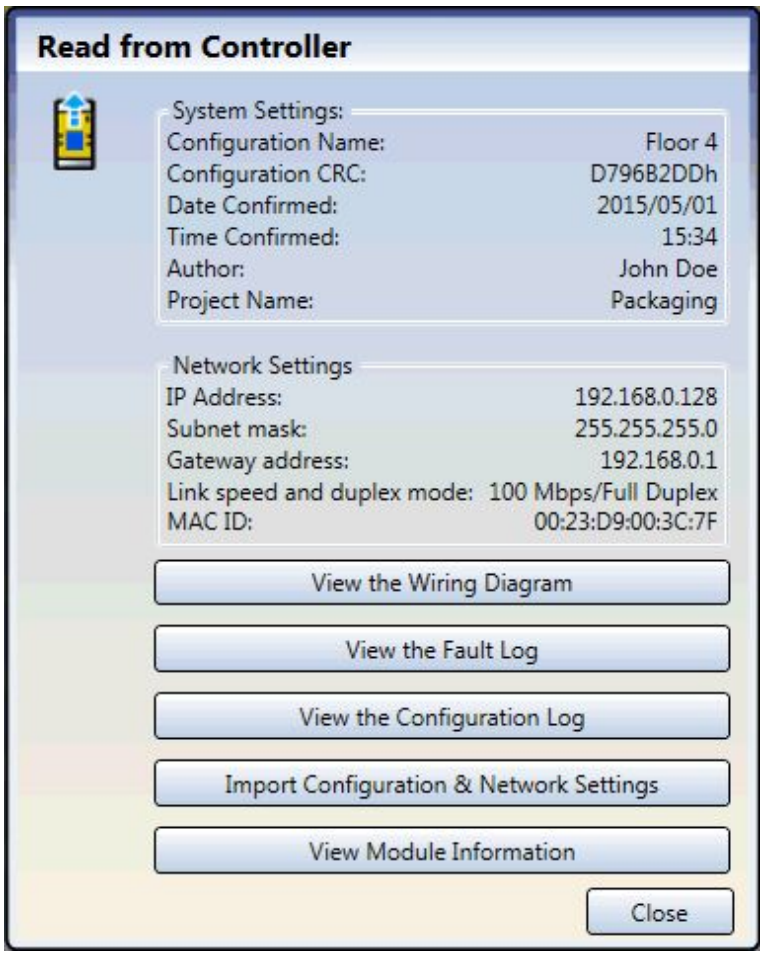
## 10.17 Viewing System and Network Settings Snapshot

Click **Read from Controller** on the Software toolbar. The current Safety Controller settings display:

- Configuration Name
- Configuration CRC
- Date Confirmed
- Time confirmed
- Author
- Project Name
- IP Address
- Subnet mask
- Gateway address
- Link speed and duplex mode
- MAC ID


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 117. Viewing System and Network Settings Snapshot*




**View the Wiring Diagram**—Removes all other tabs and worksheets from the Software and displays only **Wiring Diagram** and **Equipment** tabs.

**View the Fault Log**—History of the last 10 faults. See "View the Fault Log " on page 146.

**View the Configuration Log**—History of up to 10 most recent configurations (only the current configuration can be viewed or imported). See "View the Configuration Log " on page 146.

**Import Configuration & Network Settings**—Access the current Safety Controller configuration and network settings (depends on user access rights, see " XS/SC26 Password Manager" on page 142 or "SC10-2 Password Manager" on page 143).

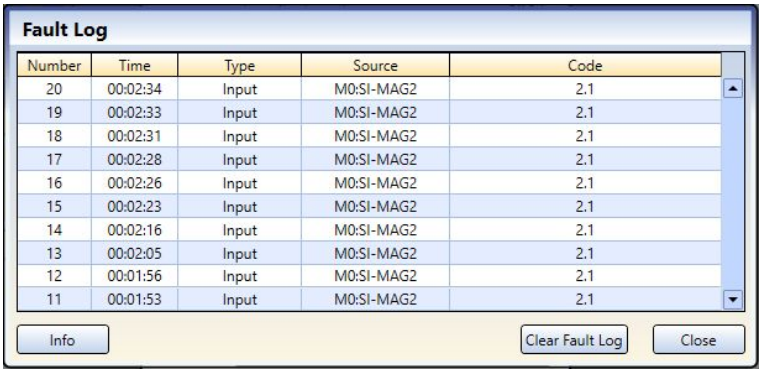
**View Module Information**—See "View Module Information" on page 147.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## 10.17.1 View the **Fault Log**

The **Fault Log** lists the last 10 faults in reverse order. Cycling power clears the fault log.

*Figure 118. Fault Log*




**Time**—the elapsed time from when the Safety Controller was last powered on.

**Type**—the category of fault, for example output, input, EDM, Press, system, etc.

**Source**—the input, output, or function that has experienced a fault.

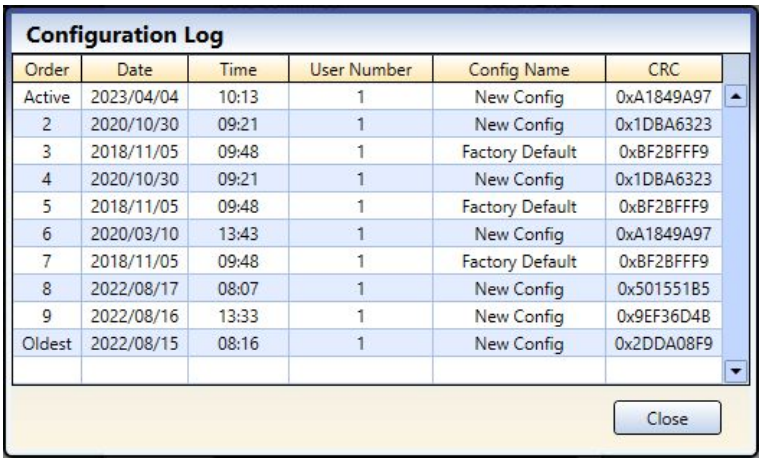
**Code**—the code for the fault. See "XS/SC26 Fault Code Table" on page 370 and "SC10-2 Fault Code Table " on page 375 for the descriptions of the fault codes.

> **NOTE:** Fault Log numbering increases up to 4,294,967,295 unless the Safety Controller power cycle is performed, in which case the numbering is reset to start at 1. Clearing the Fault Log (either via the Software or the onboard interface) removes the log history but retains the numbering.

## 10.17.2 View the **Configuration Log**

The **Configuration Log** lists the last 10 configurations that have been loaded into the controller in order. The configuration log is maintained even during power cycles. The order is newest to the oldest. Only the current configuration can be viewed or imported.

*Figure 119. Configuration Log*




**Date** and **Time**—the date and time that the configuration was confirmed. Configurations 2 and 4 are the same configuration (based on the CRC); see "Figure: Configuration Log" on page 146. Thus the same configuration has been loaded into this controller multiple times.

**User Number**—the PIN or password that was used to load the configuration.

**Config Name**—the name of the configuration from the loaded file. (The default name is **New Config**.)

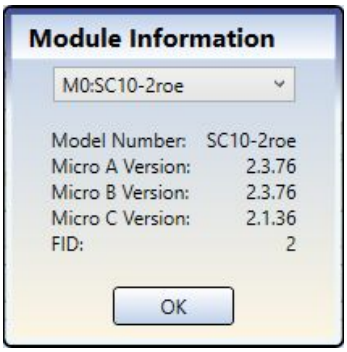

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**CRC** (Cyclic Redundancy Check)—this is a unique number generated when a configuration is confirmed. This number can be read from the Safety Controller to verify that the configuration has not been changed.

### 10.17.3 View Module Information

The **Module Information** screen lists several pieces of information for each module.

*Figure 120. Module Information*




The information includes:

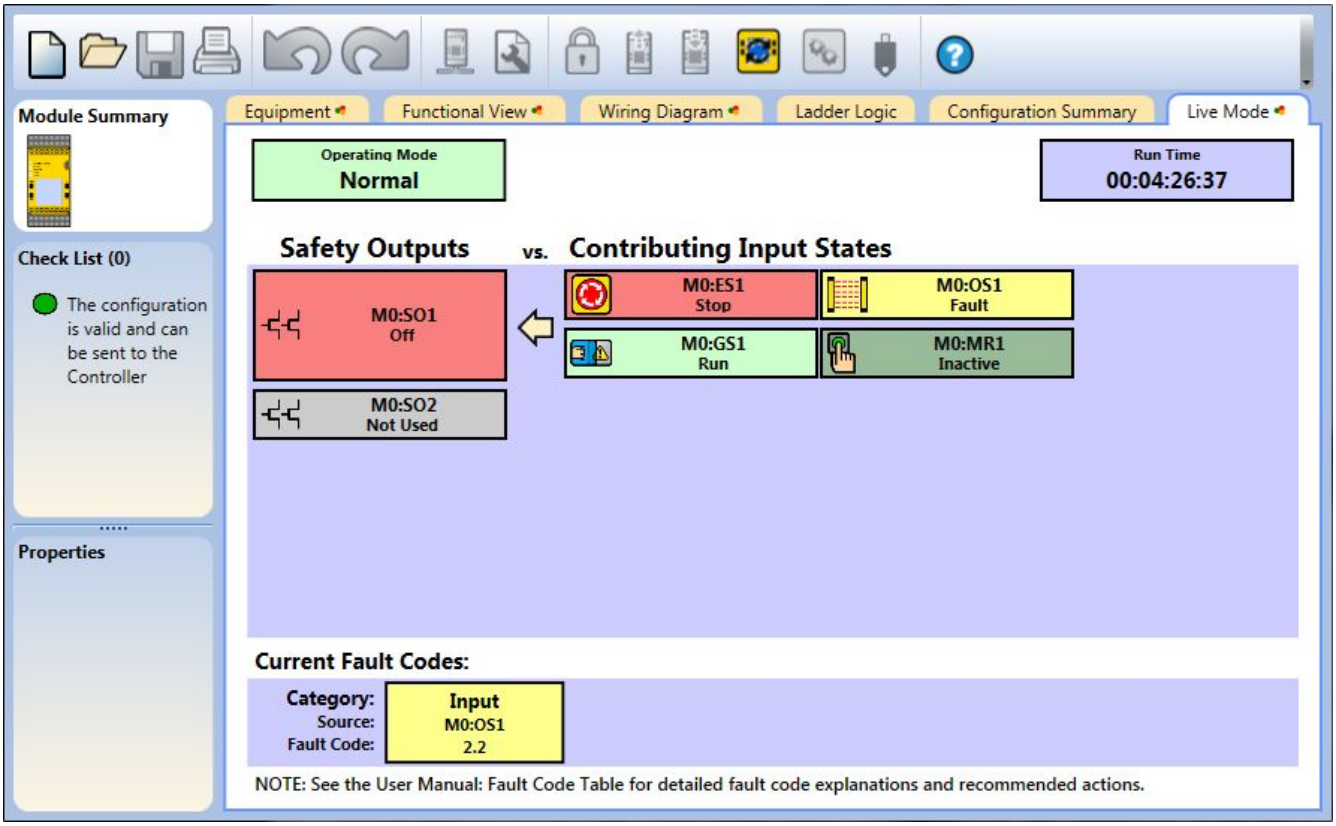
- Model number of each module (for XS26 units, each expansion module has its own information listed under the pull down menu)
- Version level of each microcontroller
- Functional ID (FID) of each module

This information can be critical to Banner support if an issue is experienced in the field.

## 10.18 Live Mode

**Live Mode** is available when a Safety Controller is connected to the PC via USB.

*Figure 121. Run Time—XS/SC26 **Live Mode** Tab*

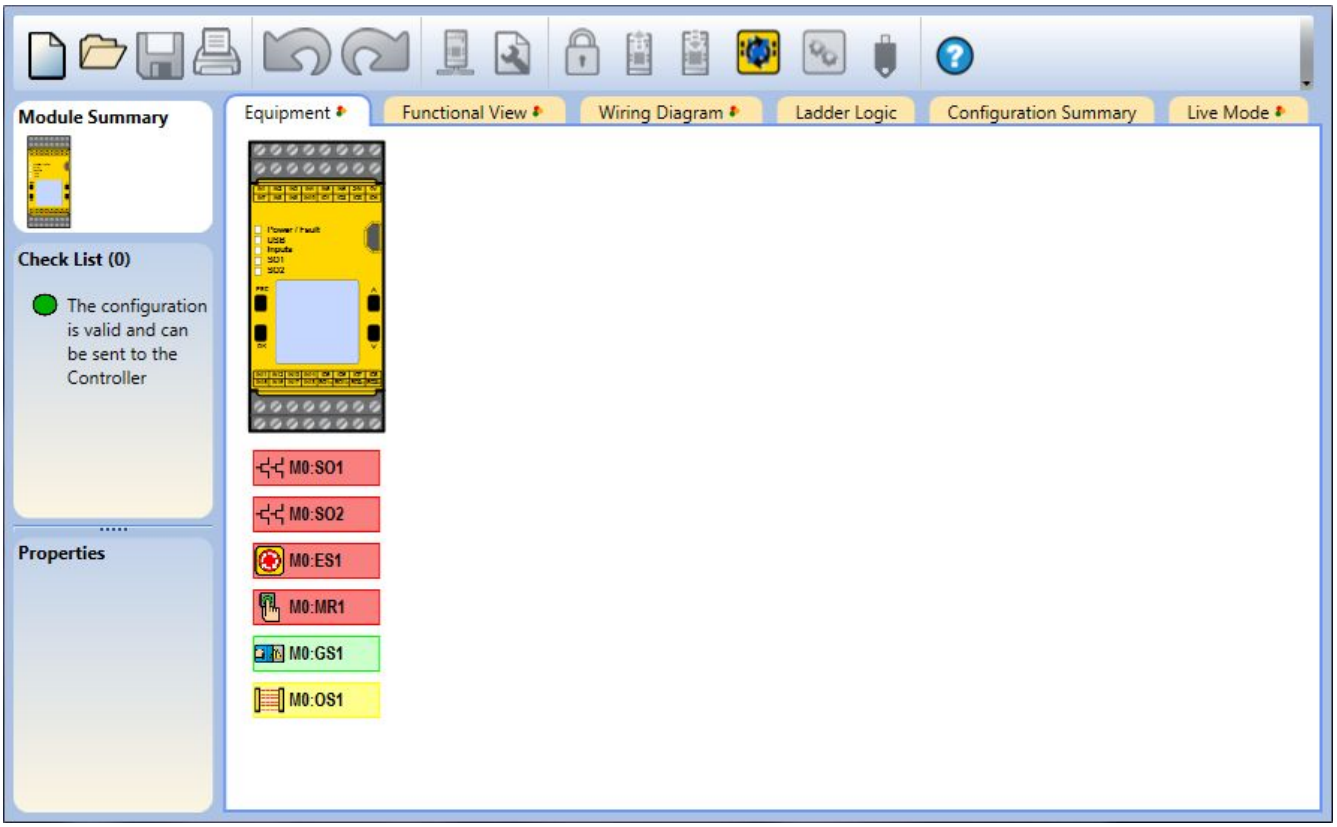




© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

The **Live Mode** tab becomes accessible when **Live Mode** is clicked on the toolbar. Enabling **Live Mode** disables configuration modification on all other tabs. The **Live Mode** tab provides additional device and fault information, including a fault code (see "XS/SC26 Fault Code Table" on page 370 and "SC10-2 Fault Code Table " on page 375 for the description and possible remedies). The Run-time data is also updated on the **Functional View**, **Equipment**, and **Wiring Diagram** tabs providing the visual representation of the device states.

*Figure 122. Run Time—**Equipment** Tab*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 123. Run Time—**Functional View** Tab*

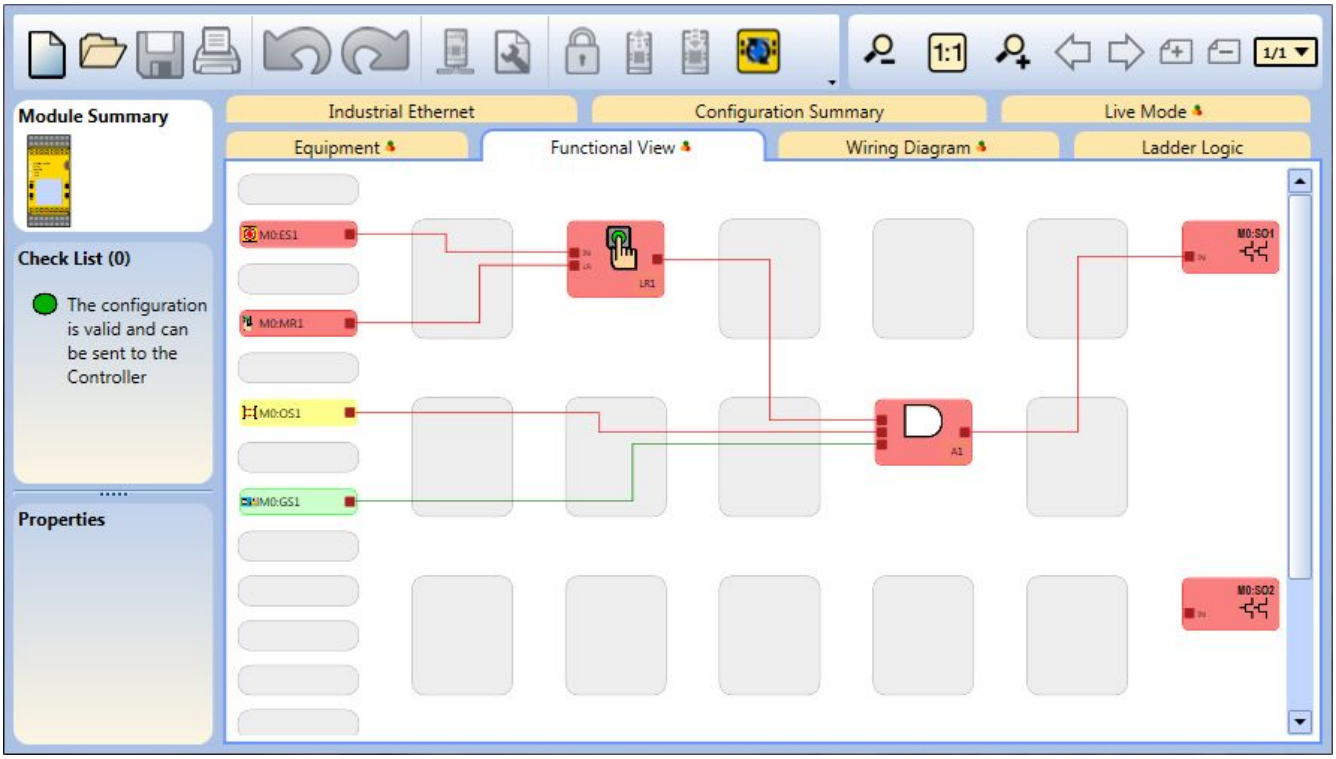
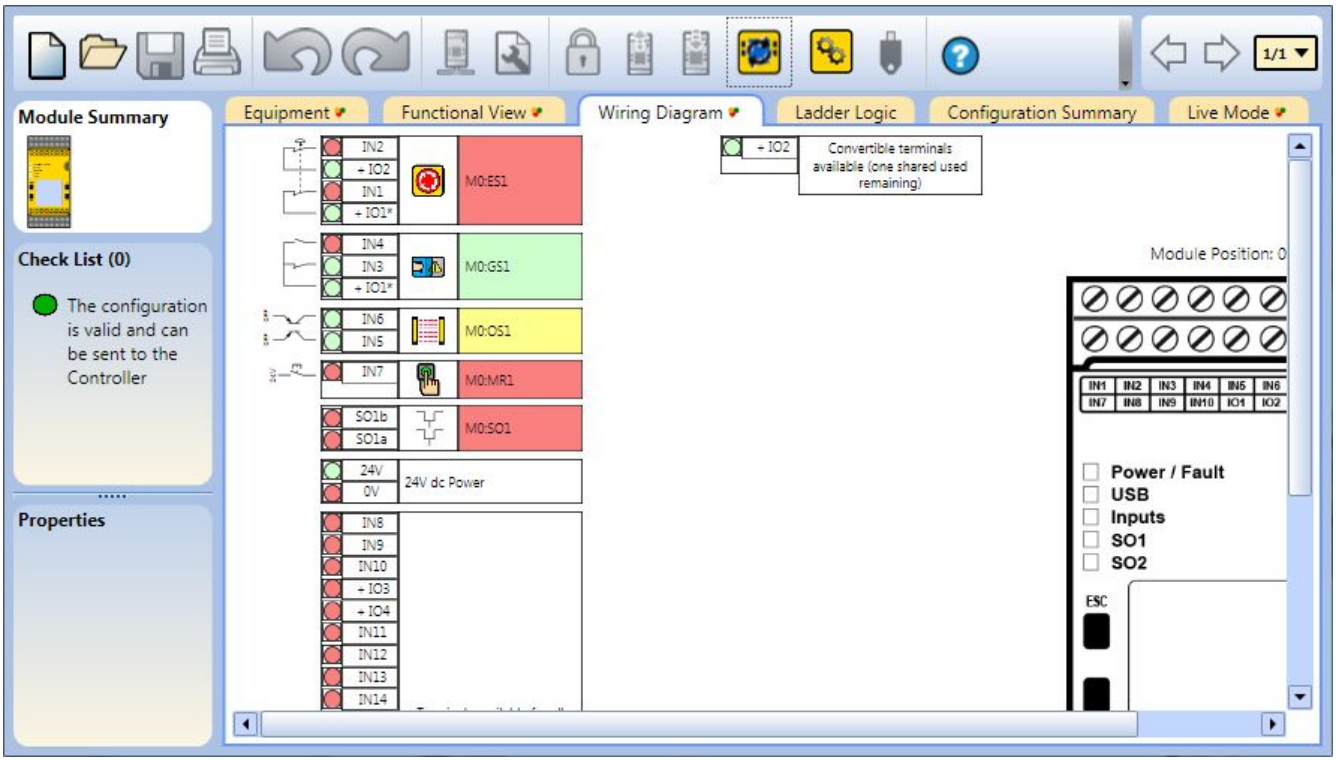


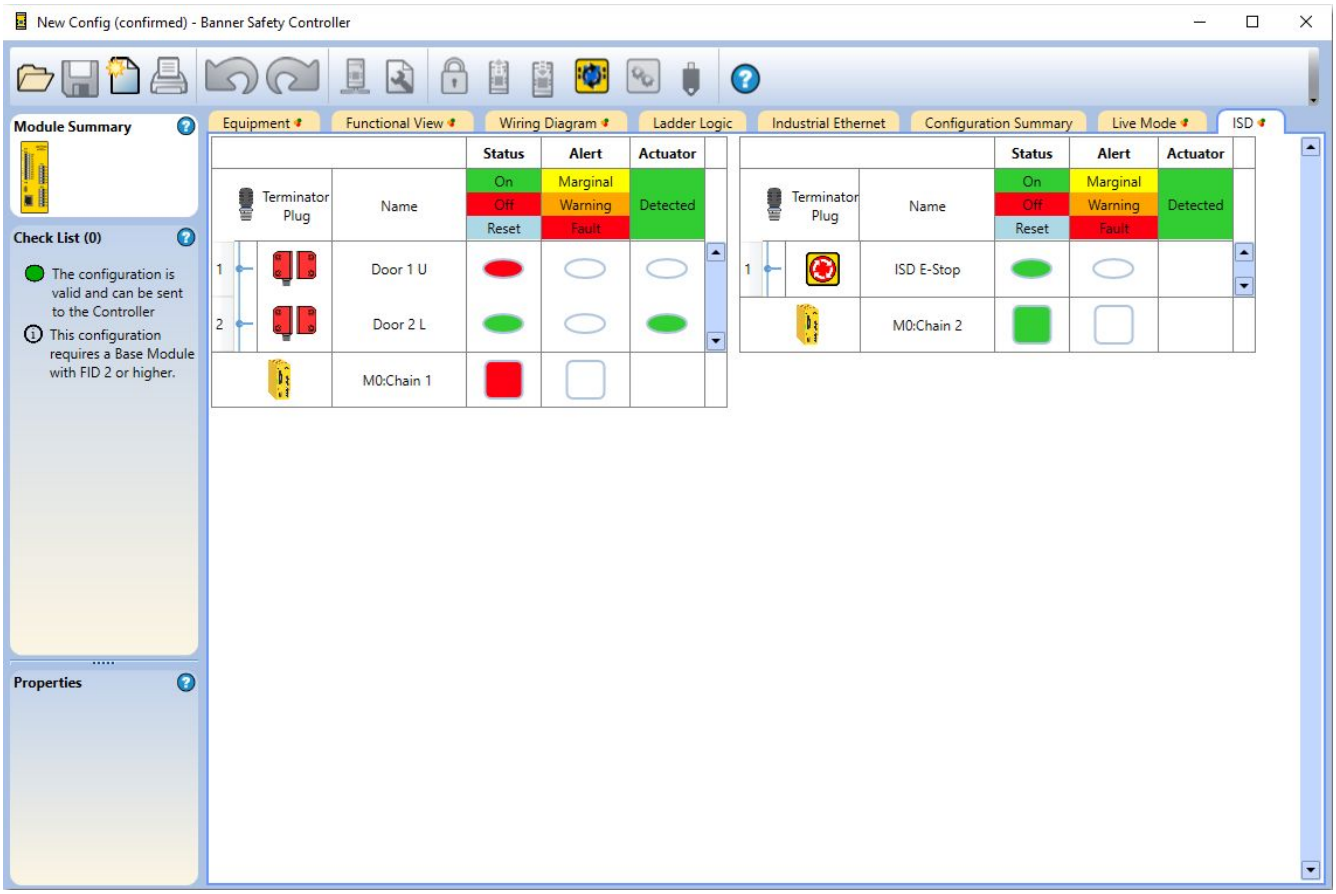

*Figure 124. Run Time—**Wiring Diagram** Tab*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 125. Run Time—**ISD** Tab*

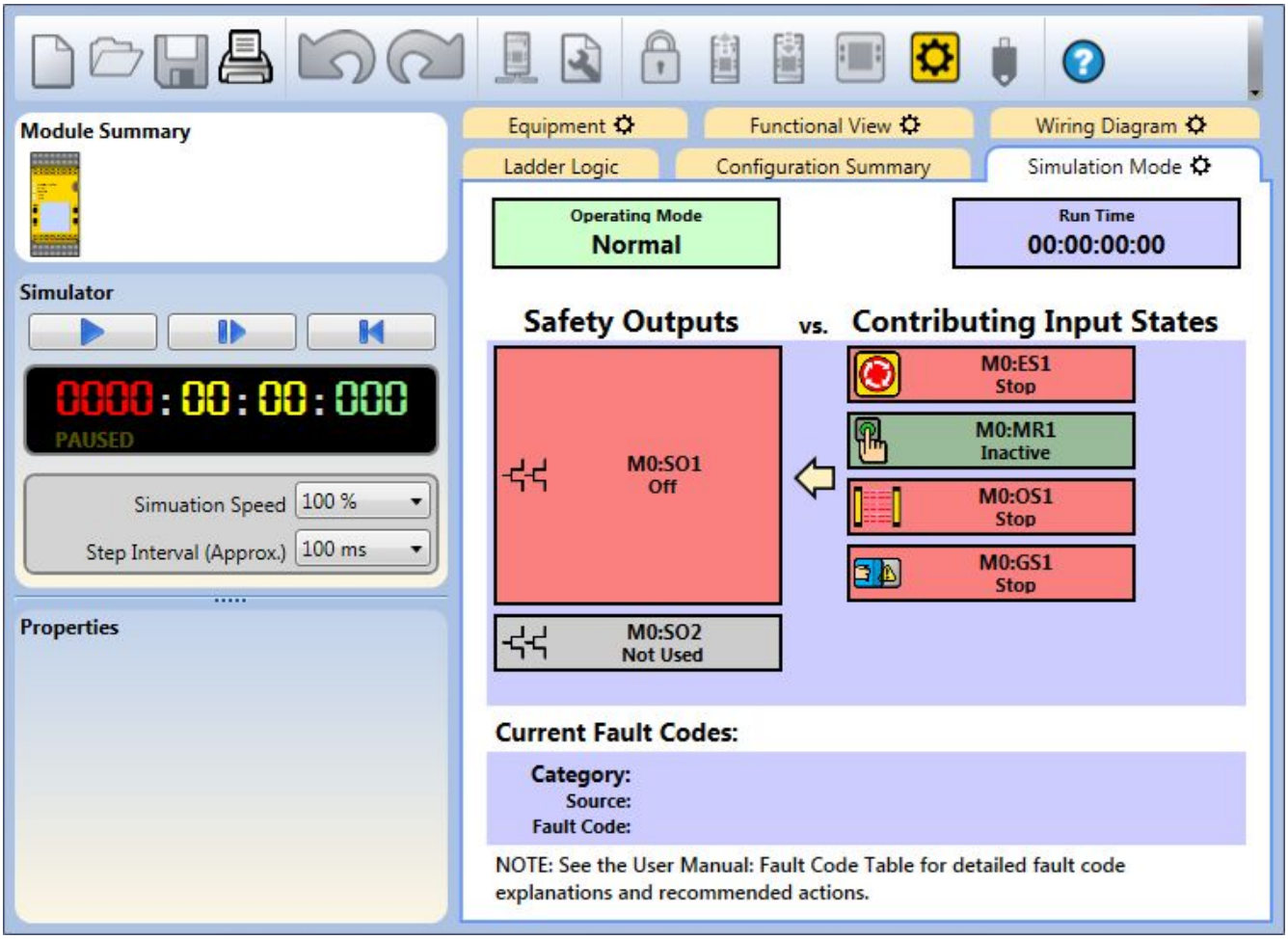



# 10.19 Simulation Mode

**IMPORTANT:** Using Simulation Mode is not a substitute for performing the commissioning checkout procedure on the installed system. The Banner Safety Controller Simulation Software is designed to assist in creating a valid configuration, however, the user is responsible for verifying the integrity, safety, and functionality of the configuration by following the "Commissioning Checkout Procedure" on page 333.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 126. Simulation Mode*




The **Simulation Mode** tab becomes accessible when **Simulation Mode** is clicked on the toolbar. Simulation Mode options become available on the left side of the screen. The **Simulation Mode** tab contains view only information; you cannot click on the output or input items in this view.

> **NOTE:** For ISD inputs, individual devices are not simulated, only the final output that is connected to the ISD input terminals is simulated (on or off).



[Play/Pause] Starts the simulation time running at the specified simulation speed or temporarily stops the simulation time.



[Single Step] Advances the simulation time at the specified step interval.



[Reset] Resets the timer to zero and the equipment to the initial stop state.




[Timer] Displays elapsed time in hours, minutes, seconds, and thousandths of a second.

**Simulation Speed**—Sets the speed of the simulation.

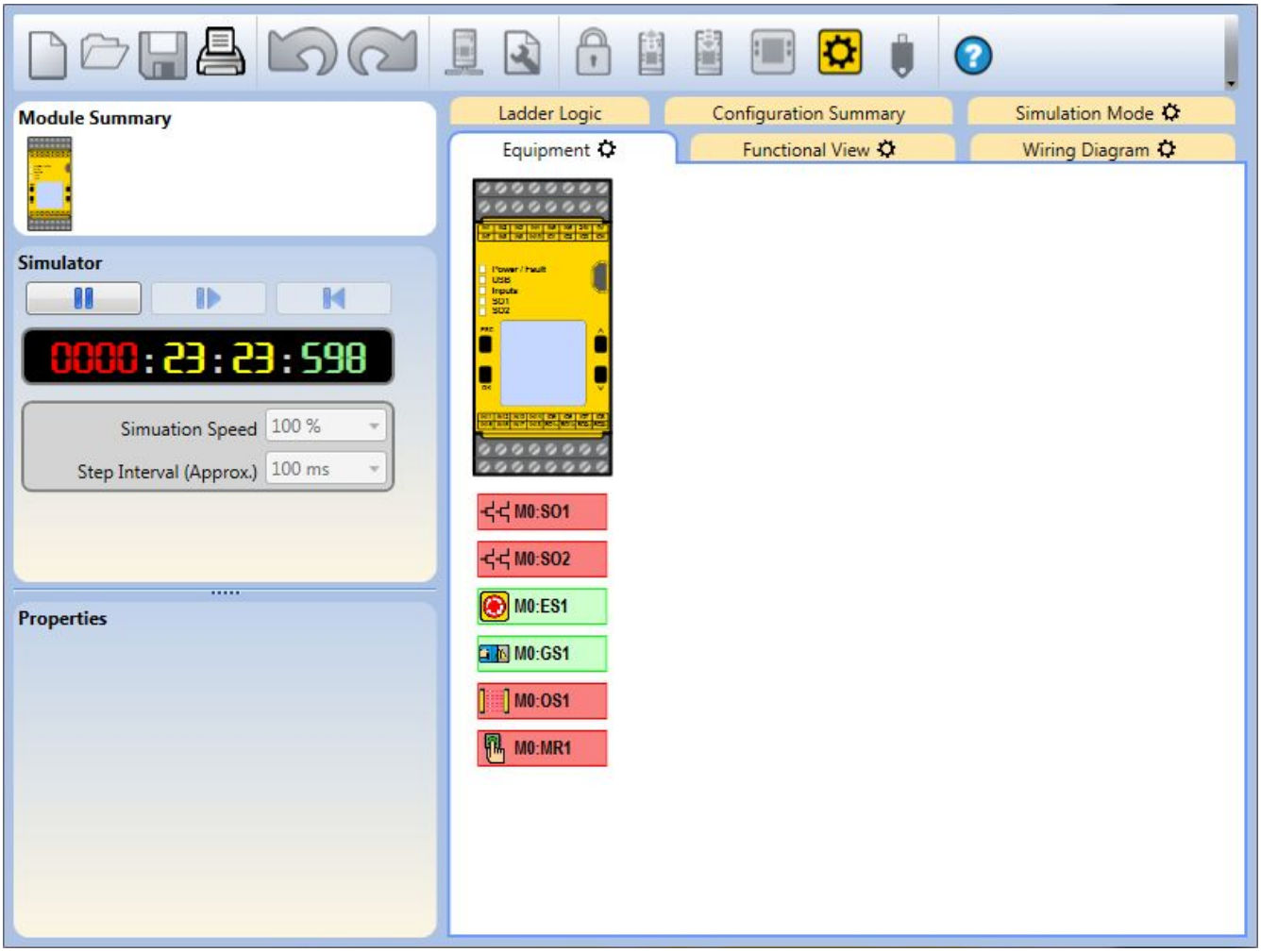
- 1%
- 10%
- 100% (default speed)
- 500%
- 2,000%


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**Step Interval**—Sets the amount of time that the Single Step button advances when pressed. The amount of time is based on the size of the configuration.

Press **Play** to begin the simulation. The timer runs and gears spin to indicate that the simulation is running. The **Functional View**, **Equipment**, and **Wiring Diagram** tabs update, providing visual representation of the simulated device states as well as allowing testing of the configuration. Click on the items to be tested; their color and state change accordingly. Red indicates the Stop or off state. Green indicates the Run or on state. Yellow indicates a Fault state. Orange indicates that the input was turned on before the initial start of the simulation. Due to a start-up off test requirement, the input must be seen as off before it can be recognized as on.

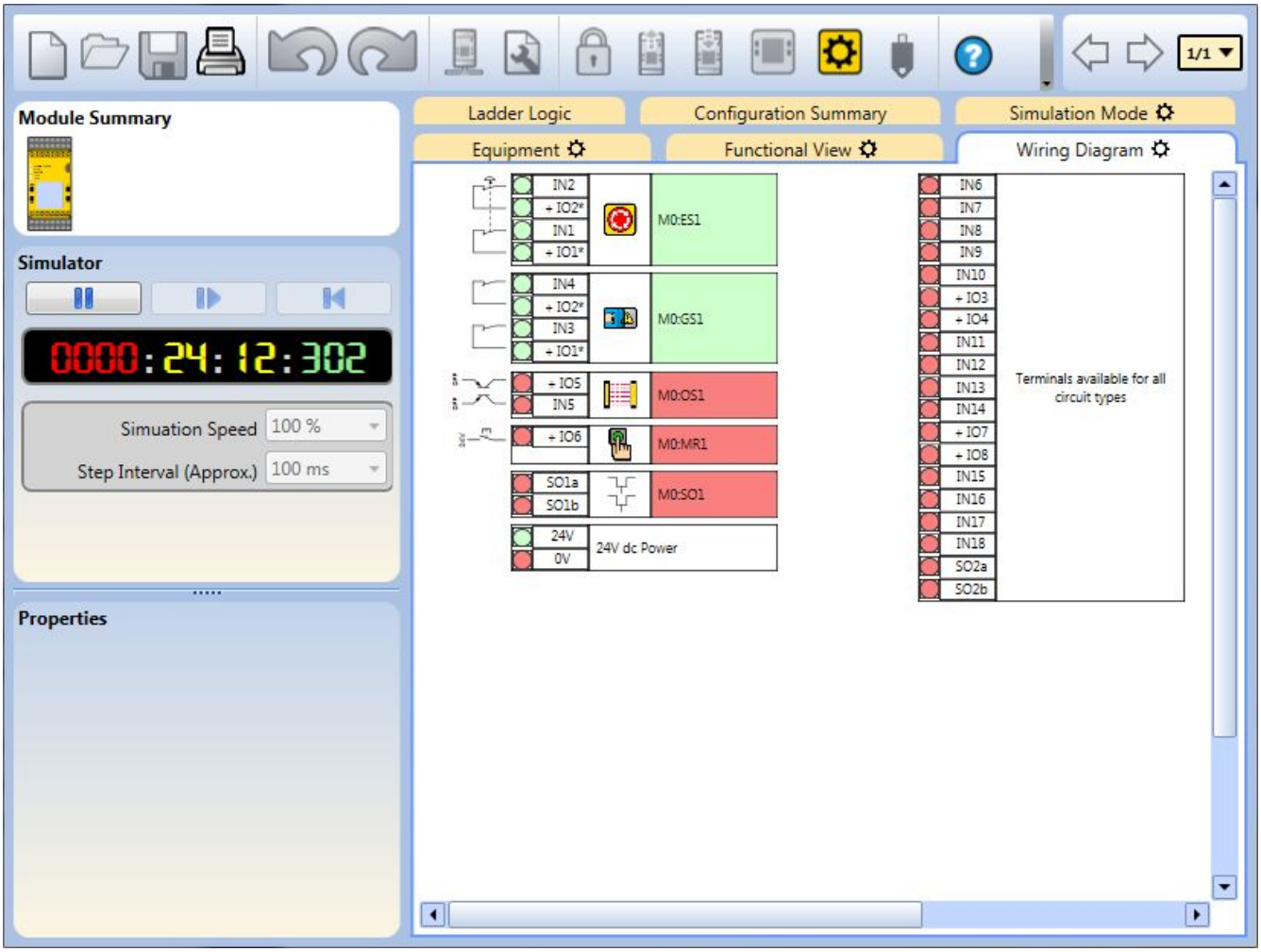
*Figure 127. Simulation Mode—**Equipment** Tab*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

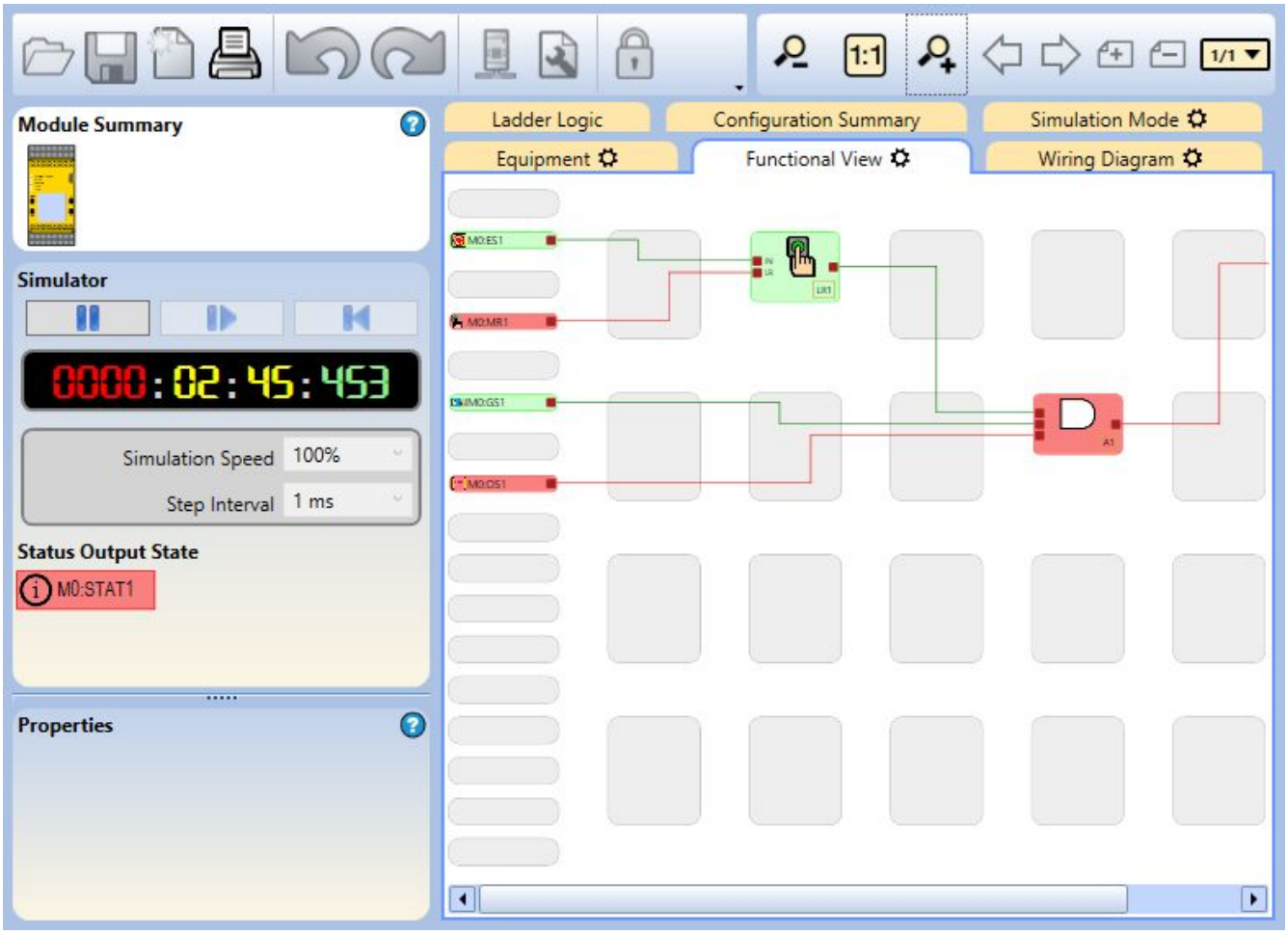
*Figure 128. Simulation Mode—**Wiring Diagram** Tab*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 129. Simulation Mode—**Functional View** Tab*




## 10.19.1 Timed Action Mode

While in Simulation Mode and on the **Functional View** tab, certain elements which are in delay action modes are indicated in purple. The progress bar shows the countdown of the associated timer for that element.

The following figures show the different element states:

*Figure 130. Safety output in Delay Off Timing mode*

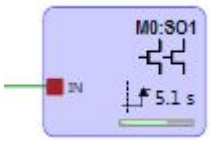
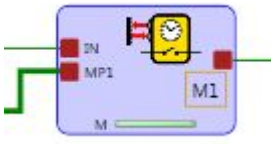
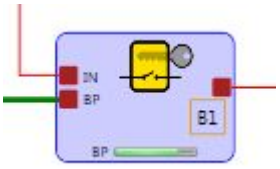



*Figure 131. Muting Block in Timed Muting mode*




**NOTE:** The M next to the progress bar indicates Timer Muting.

*Figure 132. Bypass Block in Timed Bypass mode*




Continued on page 155


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 154

*Figure 133. Delay Block—XS/SC26 FID 2 or later Base Controllers only and SC10-2*

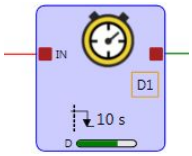



*Figure 134. One Shot Block—XS/SC26 FID 4 or later Base Controllers only*




# 10.20 Settings

The following items are found under the **Settings** menu.

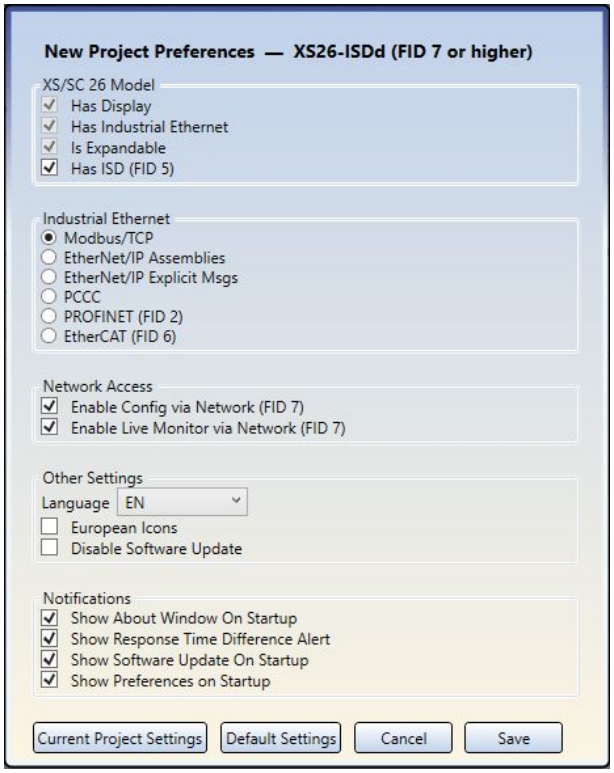
**Icons**—Allows the user to select between the US (ANSI) or European (IEC) style of icons.

**Language**—Sets the Software language options.

**Software Updates**—Shows whether the software is up to date (assuming the computer is connected to the internet). Also allows the users to turn off (disable) the automatic check for software updates (if the software has a long delay before opening, disabling the automatic update check can shorten the startup time).

**Preferences**—Allows tailoring the operation of the software to match the user's typical configuration settings.

*Figure 135. New Project Preferences—XS/SC26 shown*




- Set the module model to match the typical model used in configurations (start by unchecking the ISD box if ISD is not going to be used, then the other boxes can be deselected)
- Select the typical industrial ethernet protocol used in configurations by clicking the box in front of it
- Allows XS/SC26 Ethernet-enabled models to be configured via the Ethernet port (Configuration via Network) or to be monitored in live mode via the Ethernet port (Live Monitor via Network)
- The Other Settings box allows the selection of the language to be used by default. It also allows the selection of the European (IEC) icons and the disabling of the automatic check for software updates
- The Notifications section allows enabling or disabling the automatic windows:
    - About window (software revision and customer warnings) at startup


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- Response time difference alert notice on the configuration summary
- Software update notice at startup

## 10.21 Help

The following items are found under the **Help** menu.

**Help**—Opens the Help topics. This is a direct link to the digtal version of the Safety Controller Instruction Manual.

**About**—Displays the software version release number and user responsibilities warning.

**Release Notes**—Displays the release notes table showing the changes (new features) made with each release of the software. Also included is the FID change that supports the noted software update.

**Support Information**—Aids in the creation of diagnostic files that can be forwarded to Banner technical support (e-mail address listed) to provide vital information to Banner to assist in solving fault issues.

*Figure 136. Support Information*




The diagnostic files need to be obtained from the controller before power is cycled since cycling power will clear the fault information from the controller's memory.

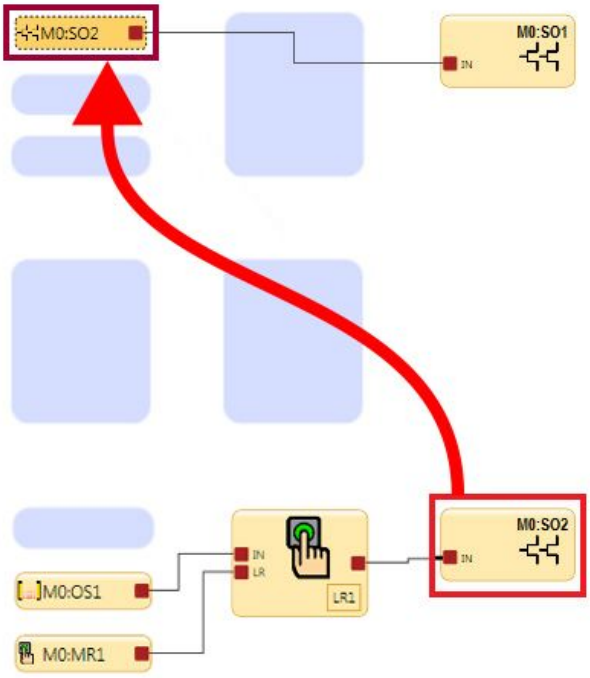
## 10.22 Reference Signals

**IMPORTANT:** The configuration software incorporates Reference Signals that represent the state of Safety Controller outputs, input devices and both Function and Logic Blocks. A Safety Output reference signal can be used to control another Safety Output. In this type of configuration, the physical On state of the controlling Safety Output is not known. If the Safety Output On state is critical for the application safety, an external feedback mechanism is required. Note that the safe state of this Safety Controller is when the outputs are turned Off. If it is critical that Safety Output 1 is On before Safety Output 2 turns On, then the device that is being controlled by the Safety Output 1 needs to be monitored to create an input signal that can be used to control Safety Output 2. The Safety Output 1 reference signal may not be adequate in this case.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.

"Figure: Safety Output controlled by another Safety Output" on page 157 shows how one Safety Output can control another Safety Output. When Manual Reset **M0:MR1** is pressed, it turns On Safety Output **M0:SO2**, which, in turn, turns On Safety Output **M0:SO1**.

*Figure 137. Safety Output controlled by another Safety Output*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

11.1 Bypass Block ..... 158
11.2 Delay Block ..... 159
11.3 Enabling Device Block ..... 161
11.4 Latch Reset Block ..... 162
11.5 Muting Block ..... 165
11.6 One Shot Block ..... 174
11.7 One Shot Mode ..... 175
11.8 Press Control ..... 176
11.9 Two-Hand Control Block (For XS/SC26 FID 3 and older and SC10-2 FID 1) ..... 183
11.10 Two-Hand Control Block (XS/SC26 FID 4 and later and SC10-2 FID 2 and later ) ..... 186

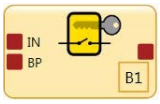
# Chapter 11 Function Block Descriptions

The following sections describe the available Function Blocks in detail.

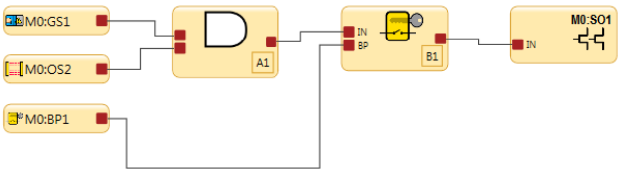
## 11.1 Bypass Block

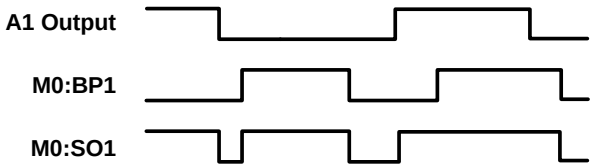
| Default Nodes | Additional Nodes | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| IN<br>BP | - | When the BP node is inactive, the safety signal simply passes through the Bypass Block. When the BP node is active, the output of the block is On regardless of the state of the IN node (if the **Output turns Off when both inputs (IN&BP) are On** checkbox is clear). The Bypass Block output turns Off when the bypass timer expires. |

*Figure 138. Timing Diagram—Bypass Block*




**Bypass Function Block**





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**Bypass Time Limit**

A bypass function time limit must be established to limit how long the safety input device bypass is active. The time limit can be adjusted from 1 second (default) to 12 hours and cannot be disabled. Only one time limit can be set, and this limit will apply to all safety devices that are bypassed. At the end of the time limit, the safety output control authority is transferred back to the bypassed safety input devices.

**Two-Hand Control Bypassing**

The Safety Controller issues a Stop signal if a Two-Hand Control input is actuated while the input is being bypassed. This ensures that the operator does not mistakenly assume that the Two-Hand Control is functional; unaware that the Two-Hand Control is bypassed and no longer providing the safeguarding function.

### 11.1.1 Lockout/Tagout

Hazardous energy must be controlled (lockout/tagout) in machine maintenance and servicing situations in which the unexpected energization, start up, or release of stored energy could cause injury.

Refer to OSHA 29CFR 1910.147, ANSI 2244.1, ISO 14118, ISO 12100 or other relevant standards to ensure that bypassing a safeguarding device does not conflict with the requirements that are contained within the standards.

**WARNING:**

- **Limit the use of the bypass and/or override function**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- The bypass and/or override function is not intended for production purposes; use it only for temporary or intermittent actions, such as to clear the defined area of a safety light curtain if material becomes stuck. When bypass and/or override is used, the user must install and use it according to applicable standards (such as NFPA 79 or IEC/EN60204-1).

#### Safe Working Procedures and Training

Safe work procedures provide the means for individuals to control exposure to hazards through the use of written procedures for specific tasks and the associated hazards. The user must also address the possibility that an individual could bypass the safeguarding device and then either fail to reinstate the safeguarding or fail to notify other personnel of the bypassed condition of the safeguarding device; both cases could result in an unsafe condition. One possible method to prevent this is to develop a safe work procedure and ensure personnel are trained and correctly follow the procedure.

## 11.2 Delay Block

The Delay Block allows a user-configurable ON- or OFF-Delay of a maximum of 5 minutes, in 1 ms increments. This feature is available on XS/SC26 FID 2 and later and SC10-2.

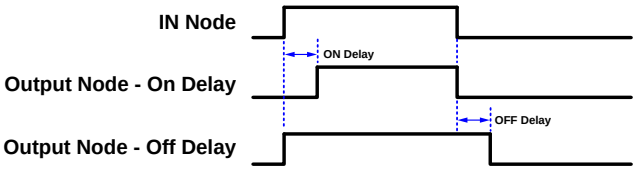
| Default Nodes | Additional Nodes | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| IN | CD | Depending on the selection, a signal/state transition on the input node will be delayed by the output delay time by either holding the output OFF (ON-Delay) or holding the output ON (OFF-Delay) after a signal transition. |

**NOTE:** The actual delay time of a delay function block or a safety output with a delay can be up to 1 scan time longer than the delay setting. Multiple delay blocks or delay outputs in series will increase the final delay time by up to 1 scan for each delay function. For example, three 100 ms off delay function blocks in series and a scan time of 15 ms may result in an actual delay time of up to 345 ms (300 ms + 45 ms).

The Cancel Delay Node is a configurable node if OFF-Delay is selected.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

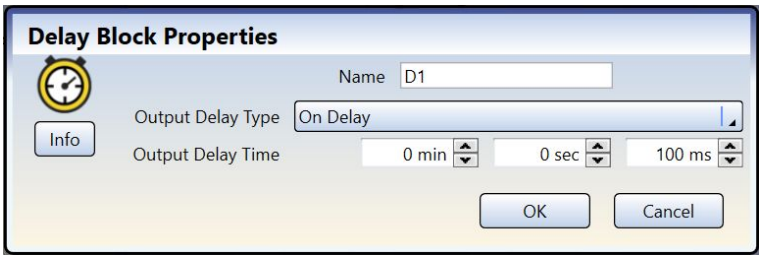
*Figure 139. Delay Block Timing Diagram*




**CAUTION: Delay time effect on response time**
The OFF-Delay time may significantly increase the safety control response time. This will affect the positioning of safeguards whose installation is determined by the safety (minimum) distance formulas or are otherwise influenced by the amount of time to reach a non-hazardous state. The installation of safeguards must account for the increase in response time.

**NOTE:** The response time provided on the **Configuration Summary** tab is a maximum time that can change depending on the use of delay blocks and other logic blocks (such as OR functions). It is the user's responsibility to determine, verify, and incorporate the appropriate response time.

*Figure 140. Delay Block Properties*




The **Delay Block Properties** window allows the user to configure the following:

**Name**

Create a name of up to 10 characters for the function block.

**Output Delay Type**

This is the Output Delay Type

- None
- OFF-Delay
- ON-Delay

**Output Delay Time**

Available when the Safety Output Delay is set to either OFF-Delay or ON-Delay
Delay time: 1 ms to 5 minutes, in 1 ms increments. The default setting is 100 ms.

**Cancel Type**

Available when the Safety Output Delay is set to OFF-Delay.

- Do Not Cancel
- Control Input (The delay block output stays on if the input turns ON again before the end of the delay.)
- Cancel Delay Node

**End Logic**

Available when the Cancel Type is set to Cancel Delay Node.

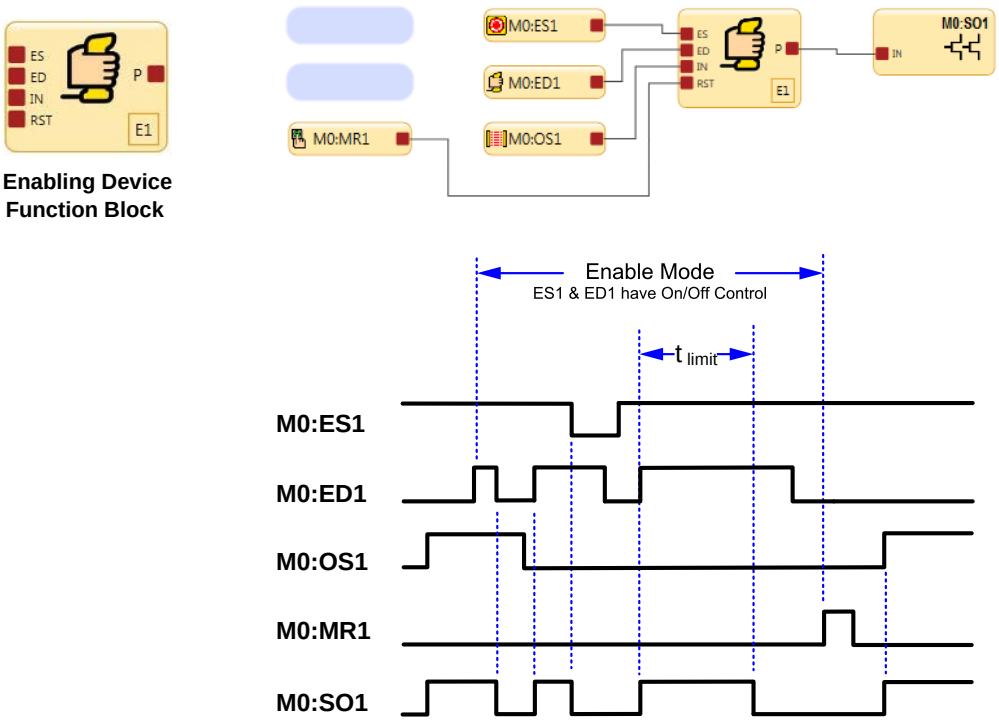
- Keep Output ON
- Turn Output OFF


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 11.3 Enabling Device Block

| Default Nodes | Additional Nodes | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| ED<br>IN<br>RST | ES<br>JOG | An Enabling Device Block must be connected directly to an Output Block. This method assures that the final control of the outputs is given to the operator holding the Enabling Device (ED). Use the ES node for safety signals that should not be bypassed by the ED node. If no other inputs of the function block are configured, using an Enabling Device function block is not required. |

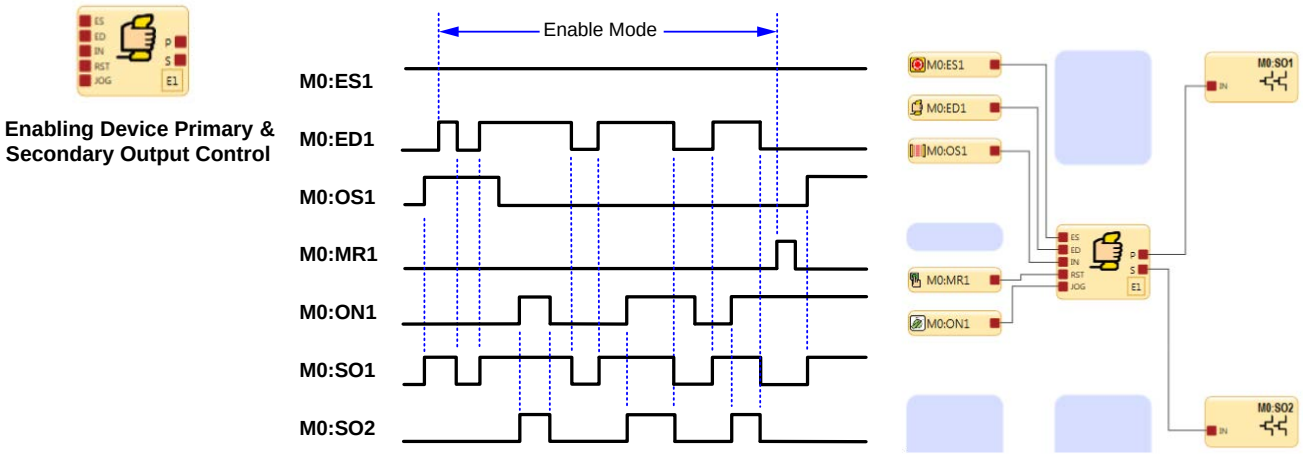
*Figure 141. Timing Diagram—Enabling Device, Simple Configuration*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 142. Timing Diagram—Enabling Device*




E1 enabling mode starts when the Enabling Device ED1 is switched to the Run state.
ED1 and ES input devices have On/Off control authority while in Enable mode.
When MR1 is used to perform a reset, the normal Run mode is re-established and OS1 and ES1 have the On/Off control authority.

**To exit the Enable mode,** the enabling device must be in the OFF state, and an Enabling Device Block reset must be performed.

**The enabling device time limit** may be adjusted between 1 second (default) and 30 minutes and cannot be disabled. When the time limit expires, the associated safety outputs turn OFF. To start a new Enable mode cycle, with the time limit reset to its original value, the enabling device must switch from ON to OFF, and then back to ON.

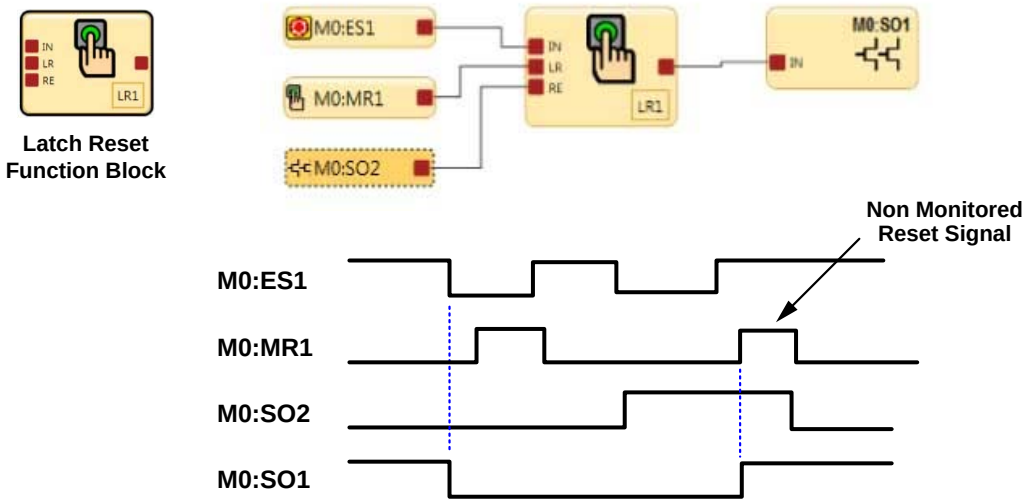
All ON- and OFF-delay time limits associated with the safety outputs that are controlled by the enabling device function are followed during the Enable mode.

## 11.4 Latch Reset Block

| Default Nodes | Additional Nodes | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| IN<br>LR | RE | The RE (Reset Enable) node can be used to enable or disable the Latch Reset function. If the input devices connected to the IN node are all in the Run state and the RE input signal is high, the LR function block can be manually reset to have its output turn ON. See "Figure: Timing Diagram—Latch Reset Block " on page 163 with Reference Signal SO2 connected to the RE node. |

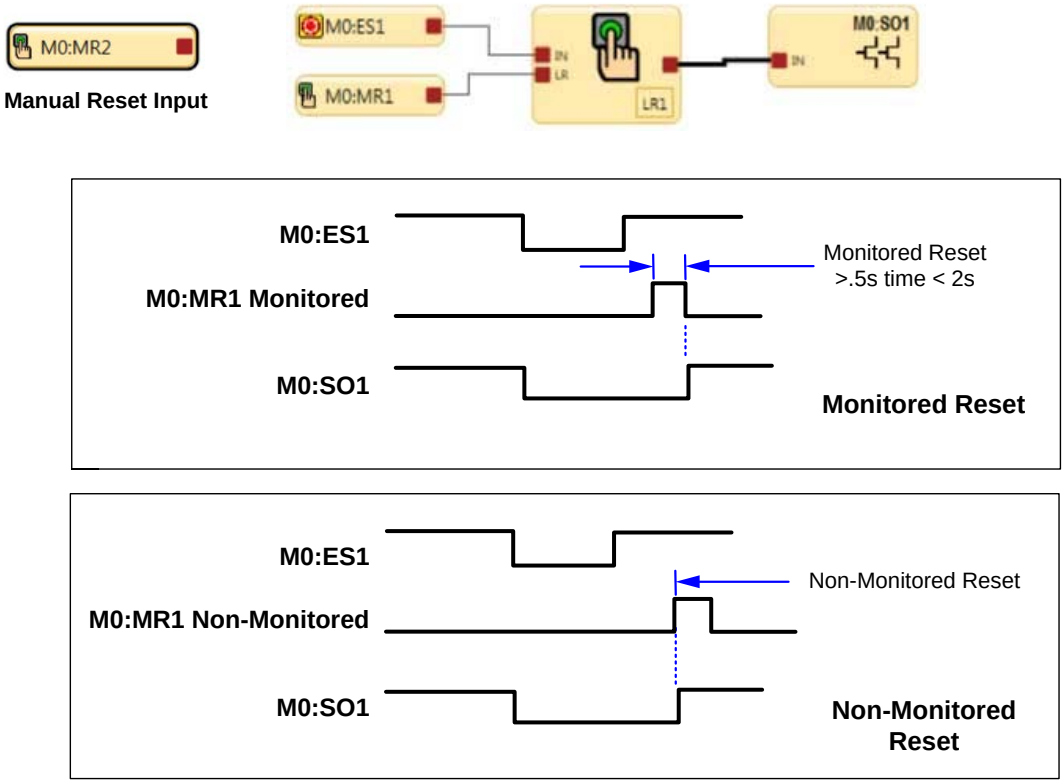

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 143. Timing Diagram—Latch Reset Block*




The Latch Reset function block LR1 will turn its output and the safety output SO1 Off when the E-Stop button changes to the Stop state.
The latch off condition can be reset when the Reset Enable RE of LR1 detects that the SO2 reference signal is in the Run state & MR1 is used to perform a reset.

*Figure 144. Timing Diagram—Latch Reset Block, Monitored/Non-Monitored Reset*




The Manual Reset input device can be configured for one of two types of reset signals: Monitored & Non-Monitored

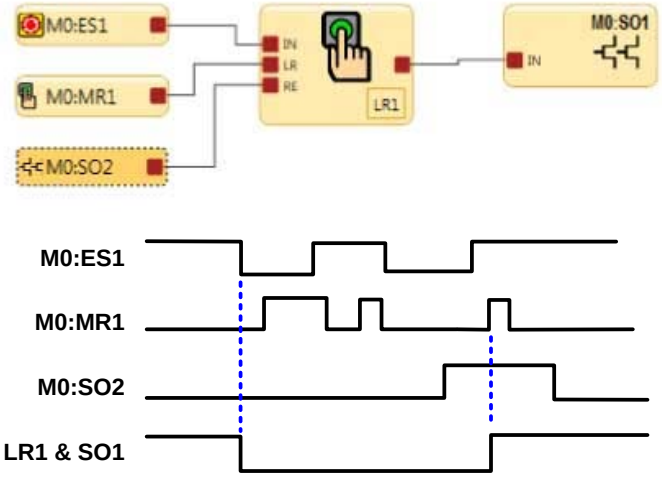

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 145. Timing Diagram—Latch Reset Block and Referenced Safety Output*




**Reference Signals**

A Reference Signal is used to:
- Control an output based on the state of another output
- Represent the state of an output, input, safety function or logic block on another page.




When output SO2 is On, the SO2 reference signal state is On or High. The function block above shows reference signal SO2 connected to the Reset Enable node RE of Latch Reset Block LR1.

LR1 can only be reset (turned On) when ES1 is in the Run state and SO2 is On.

See "Reference Signals" on page 156 for use of referenced Safety Outputs.

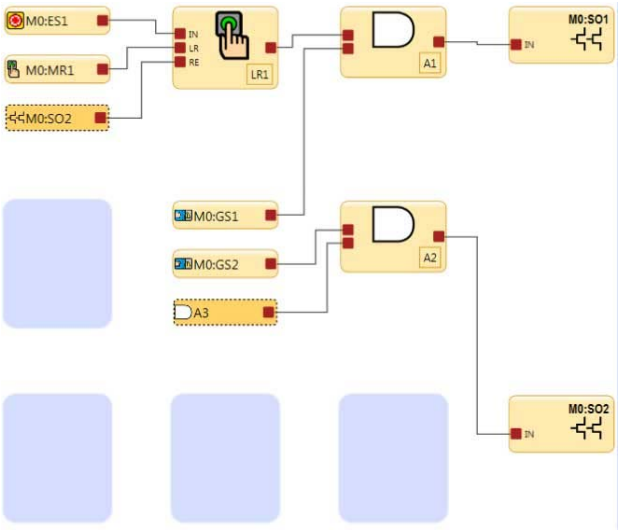
*Figure 146. Latch Reset and Referenced Safety Output and AND block*



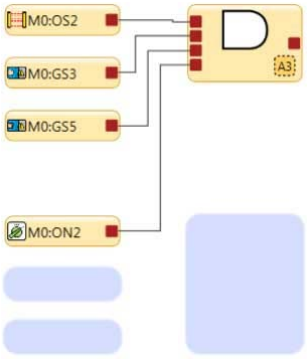

**Reference Signals**

In the figure below, reference signal A3 is on page 1 of the function block diagram and the A3 AND block is on page 2. The output node on the A3 AND block can also be used on page 2 for other safety control logic.

**Reference signal A3 on page 1**



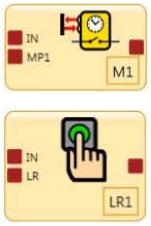

**AND logic block A3 on page 2**



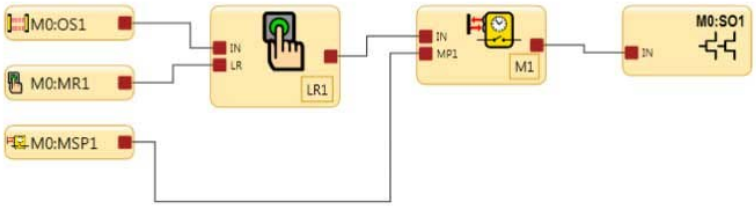


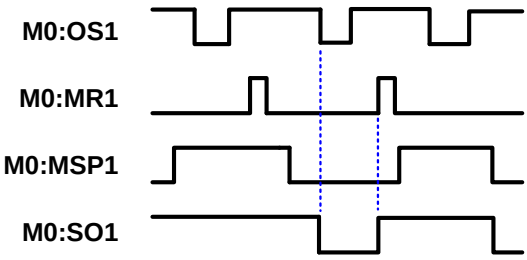
© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 147. Timing Diagram—Latch Reset Block and Muting Block*




**Latch Reset Mute Function**



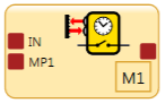

When a safeguarding device OS1 transitions to a Stop state in a valid muting cycle, the latch reset function block will latch and require a reset signal to keep SO1 on after muting ends.
If OS1 switches to the Stop state in a valid muting cycle and no reset signal is seen, SO1 turns off after muting ends.

## 11.5 Muting Block

| Default Nodes | Additional Nodes | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| IN<br>MP1 | ME<br>BP<br>MP2 | Muting Sensor Pair input blocks must be connected directly to the Muting function block. |

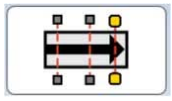

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 148. Muting Block—Function Types*

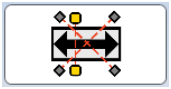



**Mute Function Block**

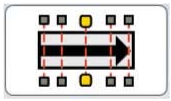
There are five Mute Function types listed below. The following timing diagrams show the function detail and sensor/safeguarding state change order for each mute function type.



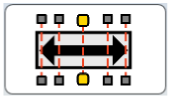
**One Way - 1 Mute Sensor Pair**



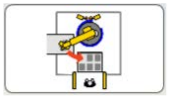
**Two Way - 1 Mute Sensor Pair**



**One Way - 2 Mute Sensor Pair**

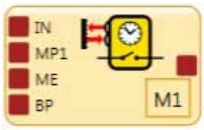


**Two Way - 2 Mute Sensor Pair**



**Two Way - 1 Mute Sensor Pair**

*Figure 149. Muting Block—Bypass/Override Mode Options*

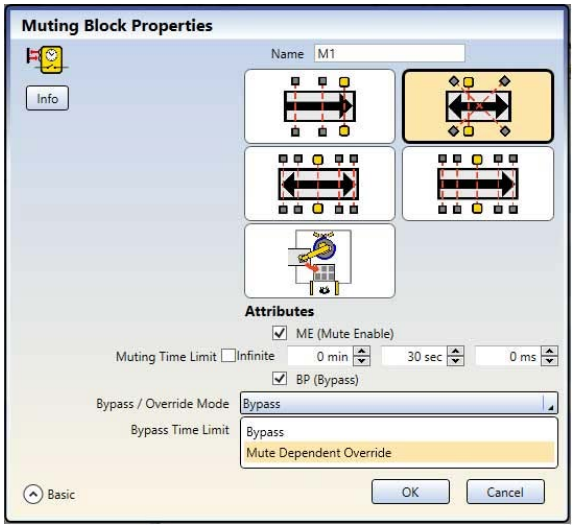



There are 2 types of Mute Bypass:
- Mute Dependent Override
- Bypass (normal)

In the Mute Block Properties menu in the Advanced settings, if the Bypass check box is checked, the option to select a Bypass or a Mute Dependent Override is possible.

The Mute Dependent Override is used to temporarily restart an incomplete mute cycle (for example after the mute time limit expires). In this case, one or more mute sensors must be activated while the safeguard is in the Stop state.

The normal Bypass is used to temporarily bypass the safeguarding device to keep on or turn on the output of the function block.





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 150. Mute-Dependent Override*

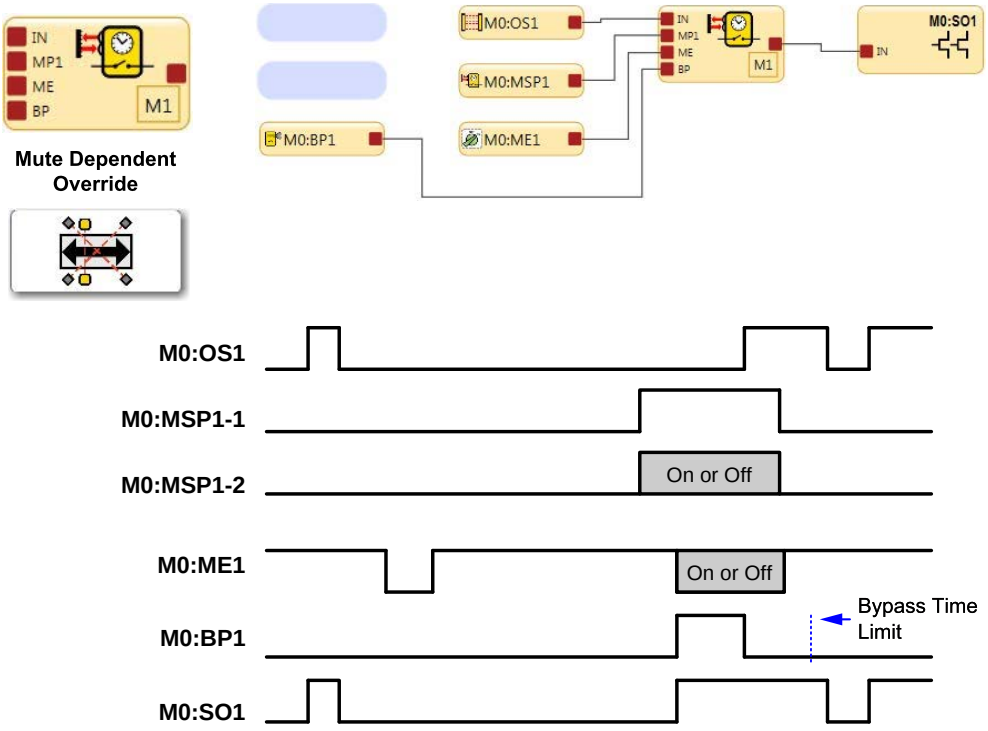
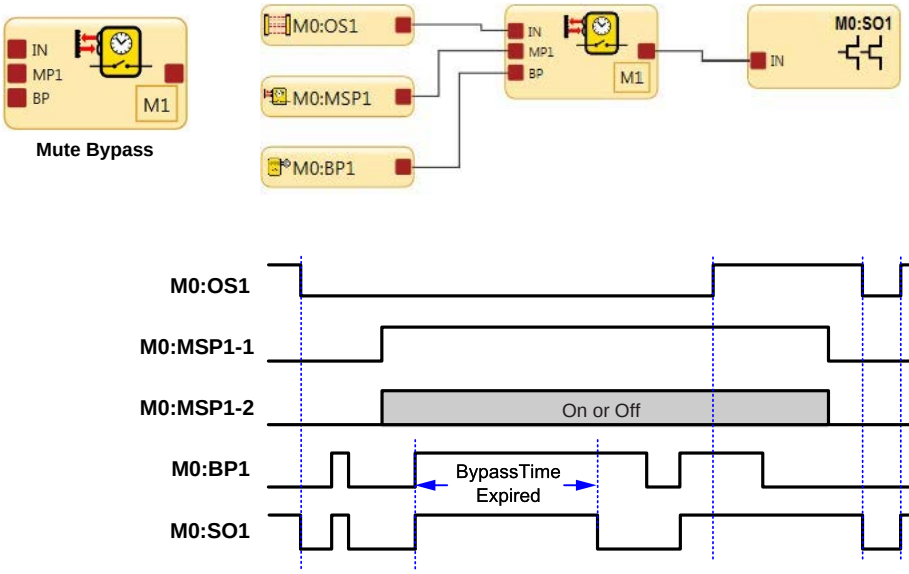


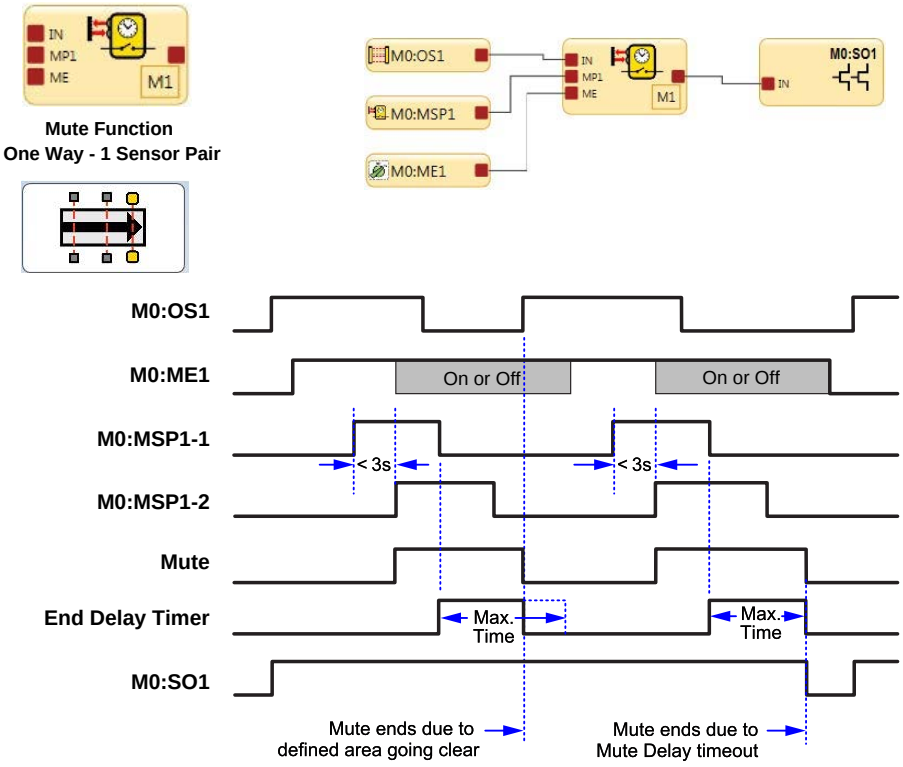

*Figure 151. Mute Bypass*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 152. Timing Diagram—One-Way Muting Block, One Muting Sensor Pair*




**Note:** MO:OS1 must be blocked before either MSP1-1 or MSP1-2 clears.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 153. Timing Diagram—One-Way Muting Block, Two Muting Sensor Pairs*

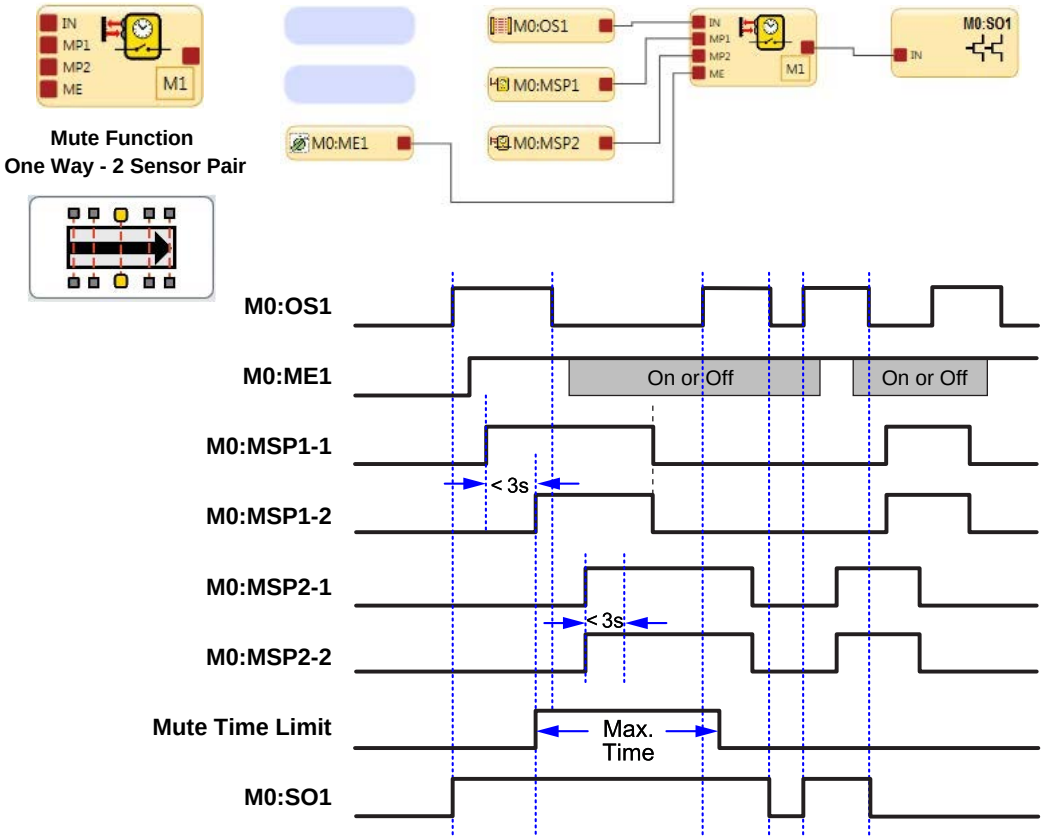
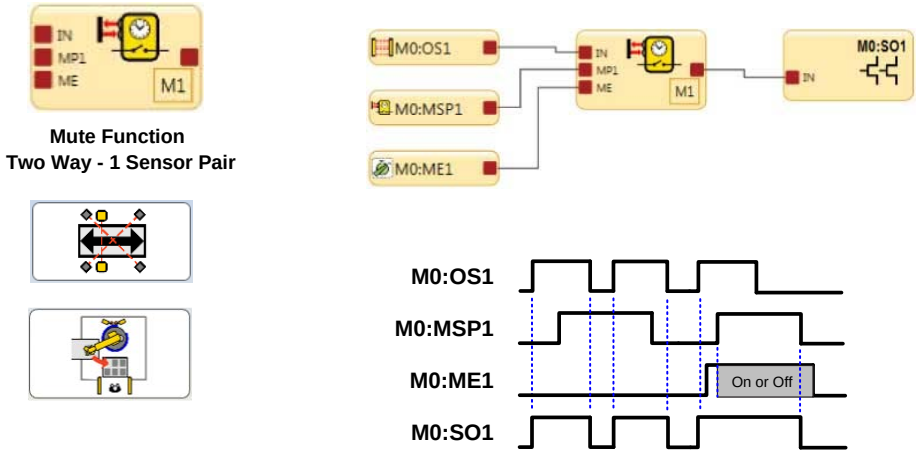


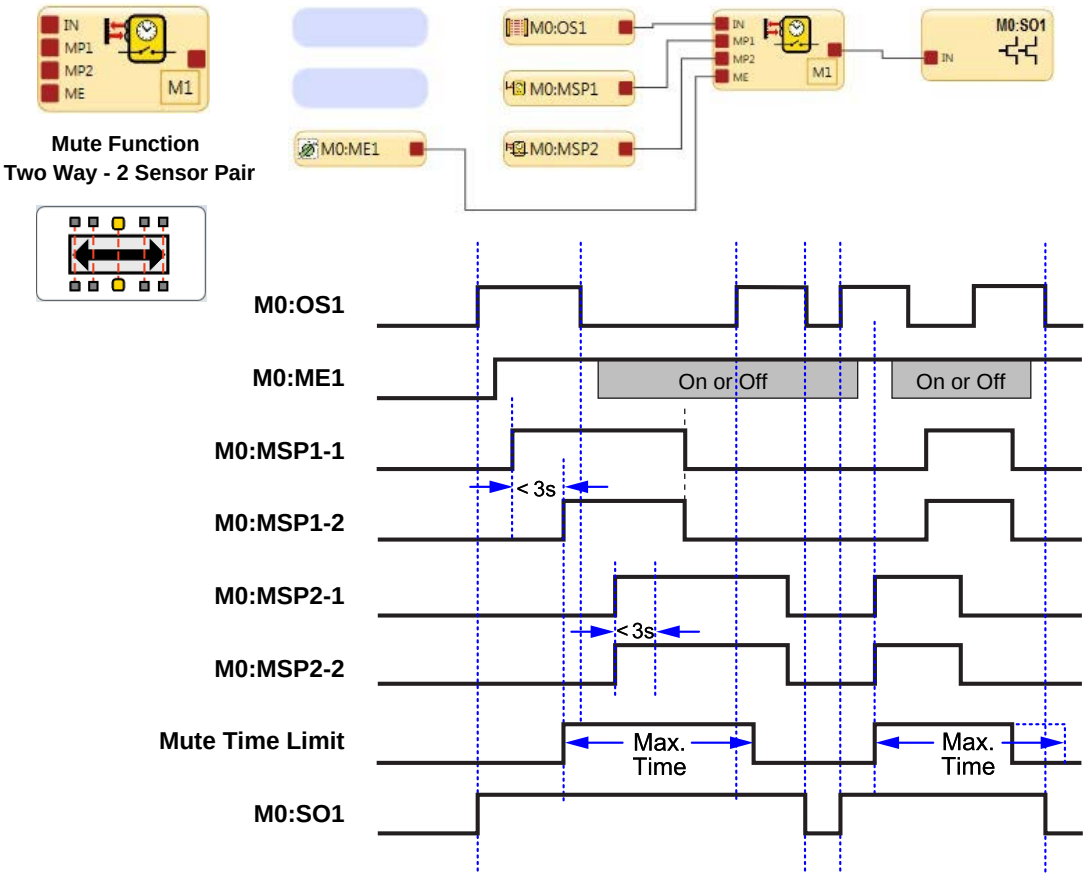

*Figure 154. Timing Diagram—Two-Way Muting Block, One Muting Sensor Pair*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 155. Timing Diagram—Two-Way Muting Block, Two Muting Sensor Pairs*





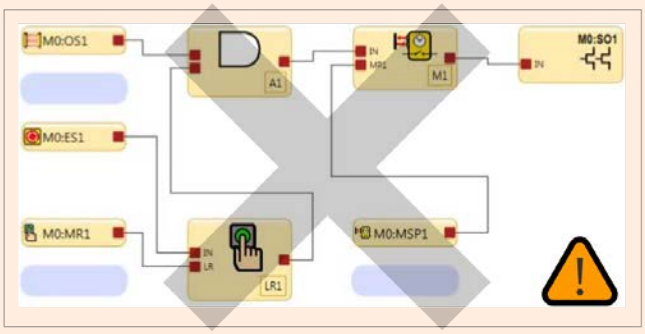
© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**WARNING:**

**E-Stop Button control authority when using the Mute function**

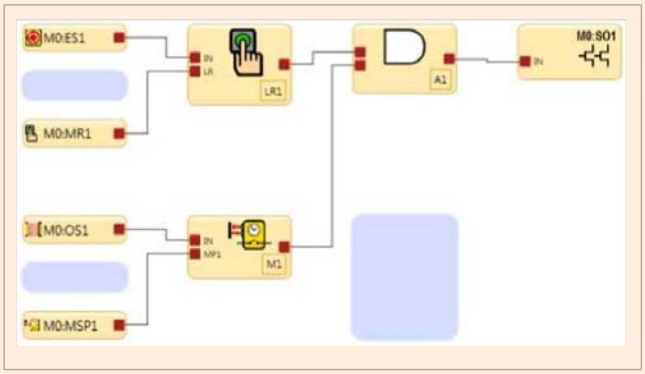
**Improper E-Stop Control**
**NOT RECOMMENDED**
The configuration top right shows OS1 and E-Stop button ES1 with a Latch Reset LR1 connected to a mute function via the AND function. In this case both ES1 and OS1 will be muted.

If there is an active mute cycle in progress and the E-Stop button is pressed (switched to the Stop state), SO1 will not turn Off. This will result in a loss of safety control and may lead to a potential hazardous condition.




**Proper E-Stop Control**
The configuration to the right shows OS1 connected directly to the Mute block M1. M1 and ES1 are both inputs to AND A1. In this case both M1 and ES1 control SO1.

If there is a an active mute cycle in progress and the E-Stop button is pressed (switched to the Stop state), SO1 will turn Off.




E-stop buttons, rope pulls, enabling devices, external device monitoring, and bypass switches are non-mutable devices or functions.

To mute the primary safeguard appropriately, the design of a muting system must:

1. Identify the non-hazardous portion of the machine cycle.
2. Involve the selection of the proper muting devices.
3. Include proper mounting and installation of those devices.

**WARNING:**

- **Use Mute and Bypass operations in a way that minimizes personnel risk.**
- Failure to follow these rules could cause an unsafe condition that could result in serious injury or death.
- Guard against unintended stop signal suspension by using one or more diverse-redundant mute sensor pairs or a dual-channel key-secured bypass switch.
- Set reasonable time limits for the mute and bypass functions.

The Safety Controller can monitor and respond to redundant signals that initiate the mute. The mute then suspends the safeguarding function by ignoring the state of the input device to which the muting function has been assigned. This allows an object or person to pass through the defined area of a safety light curtain without generating a stop command. This should not be confused with blanking, which disables one or more beams in a safety light curtain, resulting in larger resolution.

The mute function may be triggered by a variety of external devices. This feature provides a variety of options to design the system to meet the requirements of a specific application.

A pair of muting devices must be triggered simultaneously (within 3 seconds of one another). This reduces the chance of common mode failures or defeat. Directional muting, in which sensor pair 1 is required to be blocked first, also may reduce the possibility of defeat.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

At least two mute sensors are required for each muting operation. The muting typically occurs 100 ms after the second mute sensor input has been satisfied. One or two pairs of mute sensors can be mapped to one or more safety input devices so that their assigned safety outputs can remain On to complete the operation.

**WARNING:**
- **Muting is allowed only during the non-hazardous portion of the machine cycle**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- Design the muting application so that no single component failure can prevent the stop command or allow subsequent machine cycles until the failure is corrected (per ISO 13849-1 and ANSI B11.19).

**WARNING:**
- **Muting inputs must be redundant**
- A single device, with multiple outputs, can fail so that the system is muted at an inappropriate time, causing a hazardous situation.
- Do not use a single switch, device, or relay with two normally open contacts for the mute inputs.

## 11.5.1 Optional Muting Attributes

The Muting Sensor Pair Input and the Muting Block have several optional functions that can be used to minimize an unauthorized manipulation and the possibility of an unintended mute cycle.

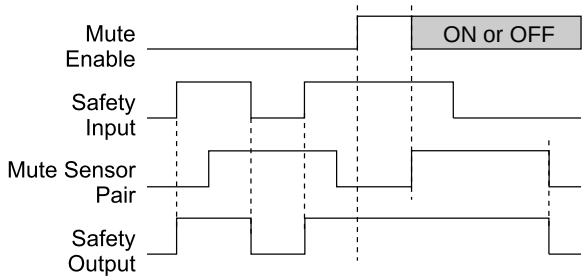
### Mute Enable (ME)

The Mute Enable input is a non-safety-rated input. When the input is closed, or active for virtual input, the Safety Controller allows a mute condition to occur; opening this input while the System is muted will have no effect.

Typical uses for Mute Enable include:
- Allowing the machine control logic to create a period of time for muting to begin
- Inhibiting muting from occurring
- Reducing the chance of unauthorized or unintended bypass or defeat of the safety system

The optional Mute Enable function may be configured to ensure that a mute function is permitted only at the appropriate time. If a Mute Enable input device has been mapped to a Muting Block, the safety input device can be muted only if the mute enable switch is in the enable (24 V DC) state, or active state for virtual input, at the time the mute cycle is started. A mute enable input device can be mapped to one or more Muting Blocks.

*Figure 156. Timing logic—One mute sensor pair with mute enable*




#### Simultaneity Timer Reset Function

The Mute Enable input can also be used to reset the simultaneity timer of the mute sensor inputs. If one input is active for longer than 3 seconds before the second input becomes active, the simultaneity timer prevents a mute cycle from occurring. This could be due to a normal stoppage of an assembly line that may result in blocking one mute device and the simultaneity time running out.

If the ME input is cycled (closed-open-closed or active-inactive-active for virtual input) while one mute input is active, the simultaneity timer is reset, and if the second mute input becomes active within 3 seconds, a normal mute cycle begins. The function can reset the timer only once per mute cycle (all mute inputs M1–M4 must open before another reset can occur).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## Bypass

An optional **Bypass/Override Mode** may be enabled by checking the **BP (Bypass)** box in the **Muting Block** properties window. There are two available Bypass/Override Modes—**Bypass** and **Mute Dependent Override**. The **Bypass** mode is used to temporarily bypass the safeguarding device to keep On or turn On the output of the function block. The **Mute Dependent Override** mode is used to manually override an incomplete mute cycle (for example after the mute time limit expires). In this case, one or more mute sensors must be activated while the safeguard is in the Stop state to initiate the override.

## Mute Lamp Output (ML)

Depending on a risk assessment and relevant standards, some applications require that a lamp (or other means) be used to indicate when the safety device, such as a light curtain, is muted. The Safety Controller provides a signal that the protective function is suspended through the Mute status output.

**IMPORTANT: Mute Status Indication**
Indication that the safety device is muted must be provided and be readily observable from the location of the muted safety device. Operation of the indicator may need to be verified by the operator at suitable intervals.

## Muting Time Limit

The muting time limit allows the user to select a maximum period of time that muting is allowed to occur. This feature hinders the intentional defeat of the muting devices to initiate an inappropriate mute. It is also useful for detecting a common mode failure that would affect all mute devices in the application. The time limit can be adjusted from 1 second to 30 minutes, in increments of 100 milliseconds (the default is 30 s). The mute time limit may also be set to **Infinite** (disabled).

The timer begins when the second muting device meets the simultaneity requirement (within 3 seconds of the first device). After the timer expires, the mute ends despite what the signals from the mute devices indicate. If the input device being muted is in an Off state, the corresponding Muting Block output turns off.

**WARNING: Muting Time Limit**. Select an infinite time for the Muting Time Limit only if the possibility of an inappropriate or unintended mute cycle is minimized, as determined, and allowed by the machine's risk assessment. The user is responsible to make sure that this does not create a hazardous situation.

## Mute OFF-Delay Time

A delay time may be established to extend the Mute state up to the selected time (1, 2, 3, 4, or 5 seconds) after the Mute Sensor Pair is no longer signaling a muted condition. OFF-delay is typically used for Safety Light Curtain/Grid workcell "Exit Only" applications with mute sensors located only on one side of the defined area. The Muting Block output will remain ON for up to 5 seconds after the first mute device is cleared, or until the muted Safety Input device (Mute Block In) returns to a Run state, whichever comes first.

## Mute on Power-Up

This function initiates a mute cycle after power is applied to the Safety Controller. If selected, the Mute on Power-Up function initiates a mute when:

- The Mute Enable input is On (if configured)
- The safety device inputs are active (in Run mode)
- Mute sensors M1-M2 (or M3-M4, if used, but not all four) are closed

If **Auto Power-Up** is configured, the Safety Controller allows approximately 2 seconds for the input devices to become active to accommodate systems that may not be immediately active at power-up.

If **Manual Power-Up** is configured and all other conditions are satisfied, the first valid Power-Up Reset after the muted safety inputs are active (Run state or closed) will result in a mute cycle. The Mute On Power-up function should be used only if safety can be assured when the mute cycle is expected, and the use of this function is the result of a risk assessment and is required by that particular machine operation.

**WARNING:** The Mute on Power-Up should be used only in applications where:

- Muting the System (MP1 and MP2 closed) when power is applied is required
- Using it does not, in any situation, expose personnel to hazard


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### Mute Sensor Pair Debounce Times

The input debounce times, accessible under the **Advanced** settings in the **Mute Sensor Pair** properties window, may be used to extend a mute cycle after a mute sensor signal is removed. By configuring the close-to-open debounce time, the mute cycle may be extended up to 1.5 seconds (1500 ms) to allow the Safety Input Device to turn On. The start of the mute cycle can also be delayed by configuring the open-to-close debounce time.

#### Muting Function Requirements

The beginning and the end of a mute cycle is triggered by signals from a pair of muting devices. The muting device circuit options are configurable and shown in the Mute Sensor Pair **Properties** window. A proper mute signal occurs when both channels of the mute device change to the Mute Active states while the muted safeguard is in the Run state.

The Safety Controller monitors the mute devices to verify that their outputs turn ON within 3 seconds of each other. If the inputs do not meet this simultaneity requirement, a mute condition cannot occur.

Several types and combinations of mute devices can be used, including, but not limited to photoelectric sensors, inductive proximity sensors, limit switches, positive-driven safety switches, and whisker switches.

#### Corner Mirrors, Optical Safety Systems, and Muting

Mirrors are typically used with safety light curtains and single-/multiple-beam safety systems to guard multiple sides of a hazardous area.

If the safety curtain screen is muted, the safeguarding function is suspended on all sides. It must not be possible for an individual to enter the guarded area without being detected and a stop command issued to the machine control. This supplemental safeguarding is normally provided by an additional device(s) that remains active while the Primary Safeguard is muted.

Therefore, mirrors are typically not allowed for muting applications.

#### Multiple Presence-Sensing Safety Devices

Muting multiple presence-sensing safety devices (PSSDs) or a PSSD with multiple sensing fields is not recommended unless it is not possible for an individual to enter the guarded area without being detected and a stop command issued to the machine control.

As with the use of corner mirrors (see "Corner Mirrors, Optical Safety Systems, and Muting" on page 174 ), if multiple sensing fields are muted, the possibility exists that personnel could move through a muted area or access point to enter the safeguarded area without being detected.

For example, in an entry/exit application where a pallet initiates the mute cycle by entering a cell, if both the entry and the exit PSSDs are muted, it may be possible for an individual to access the guarded area through the “exit” of the cell. An appropriate solution would be to mute the entry and the exit with separate safeguarding devices.

**WARNING:**

- **Do not safeguard multiple areas with mirrors or multiple sensing fields if personnel can enter the hazardous area while the system is muted and not be detected**
- Entering the hazardous area without being detected is dangerous and could result in serious injury or death.
- Verify all areas are guarded and a stop command is issued to the guarded machine when someone enters the hazardous area.

## 11.6 One Shot Block

The One Shot block allows the user-configurable pulsed on state of a maximum of 5 minutes, in 1 ms increments. This feature is available on XS/SC26 FID 4 and later.

| Default Nodes | Additional Nodes | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| IN | CD | A state change of the input signal going from low to high will trigger the output node to go high for the configured time then turn OFF. |

**NOTE:** The actual length of the One Shot time can be up to 1 scan time longer than the time setting.

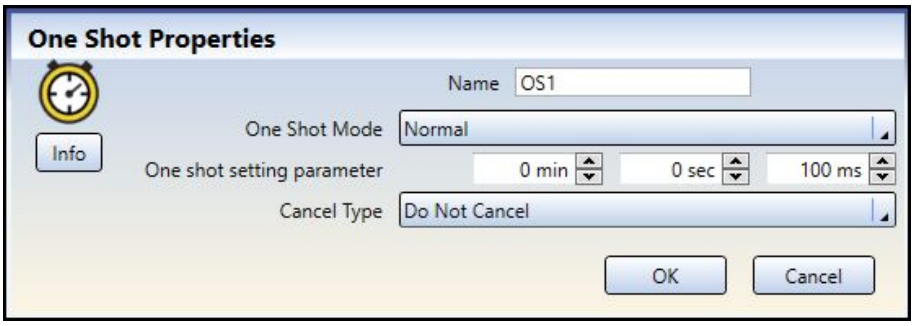

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

The Cancel Delay Node is a configurable node for the One Shot block. The Cancel Delay input will immediately turn off the output node of the One Shot block after it is recognized (because of human and system delays shorter one shots will most likely end before any cancel delay can be enacted).

**CAUTION:** One Shot delay time effect on response time
The one shot timing may significantly increase the safety control response time. This will impact the positioning of safeguards whose installation is determined by the safety (minimum) distance formulas or are otherwise influenced by the amount of time to reach a non-hazardous state. The installation of safeguards must account for the increase in response time.

**NOTE:** The response time provided on the Configuration Summary tab is a maximum time that can change depending on the use of Delay blocks, One Shot blocks, and other logic blocks (such as OR functions). The user is responsible to determine, verify, and incorporate the appropriate response time.

*Figure 157.* ***One Shot Properties***




The One Shot Properties window allows the user to configure the following:

**Name**

Create a name of up to 10 characters for the function block.

**One Shot Mode**

- Normal
- Heartbeat

**One Shot Setting Parameter**

One shot time: 1 ms to 5 minutes, in 1 ms increments.
The default setting is 100 ms.

**Cancel Type**

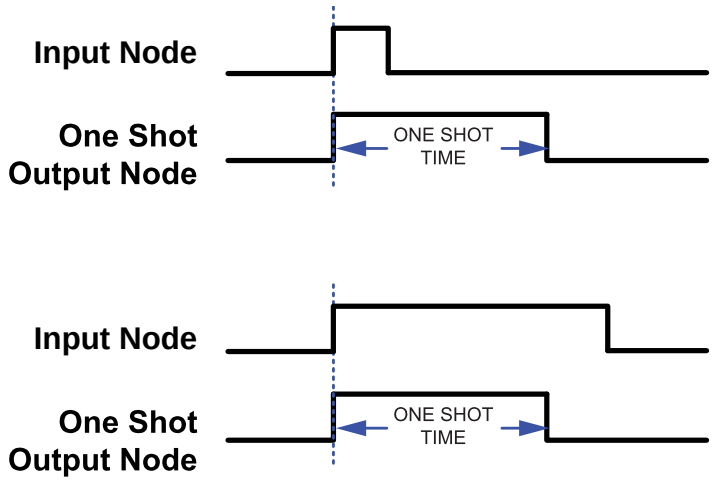
- Do Not Cancel
- Cancel Delay Node

## 11.7 One Shot Mode

When Normal mode is selected, the output node turns On when the input node turns On. The output stays on for the time set for the One Shot setting regardless of any state changes to the input. (See "Figure: Typical Normal One Shot Timing Diagrams" on page 176 for typical Normal One Shot timing diagrams.)


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

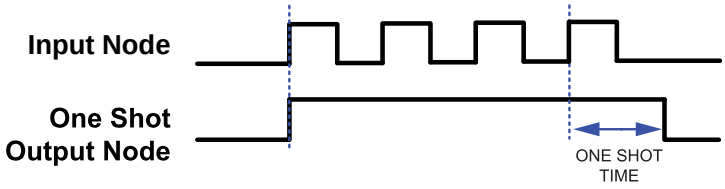
*Figure 158. Typical Normal One Shot Timing Diagrams*




**NOTE:** The Safety Output ON time will be reduced by the turn on delay of the safety output (approximately 60 ms). The shorter the One Shot timing, the more prominent the reduction (greater percentage of the desired pulse).

When Heartbeat mode is selected, the output node turns ON when the input node turns ON. The output stays on for the time set for the One Shot setting. The timer set for the one shot will reset if the input node turns Off then back ON. (See "Figure: Heartbeat One Shot Timing Diagram" on page 176 for a typical Heartbeat One Shot timing diagram.)

*Figure 159. Heartbeat One Shot Timing Diagram*




## 11.8 Press Control

The Press Control function block is designed for use with simple hydraulic/pneumatic power presses. This feature is available on XS/SC26 FID 4 and later.

The following standards apply:

B11.2-2013, Safety Requirements for Hydraulic and Pneumatic Power Presses
EN ISO 16092-1:2018, Machine Tool Safety Part 1 - General Safety Requirements
EN ISO 16092-3, Machine Tool Safety Part 3 - Safety Requirements for Hydraulic Presses
EN ISO 16092-4, General Safety Requirements Part 4 - Safety Requirements for Pneumatic Presses

The user has the sole responsibility to ensure their application complies with these and any other appropriate standards (including other press standards).

**WARNING:**

- The Press Control function block includes a starting device (initiates hazardous motion).
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- The Qualified individual must ensure that activation (going to the ON condition) of a stopped safety device (E-stop, rope pull, optical sensor, safety mat, protective stop, etc.) by a user does not initiate hazardous motion when interfaced with a Press Control function block that is already activated (ON condition).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

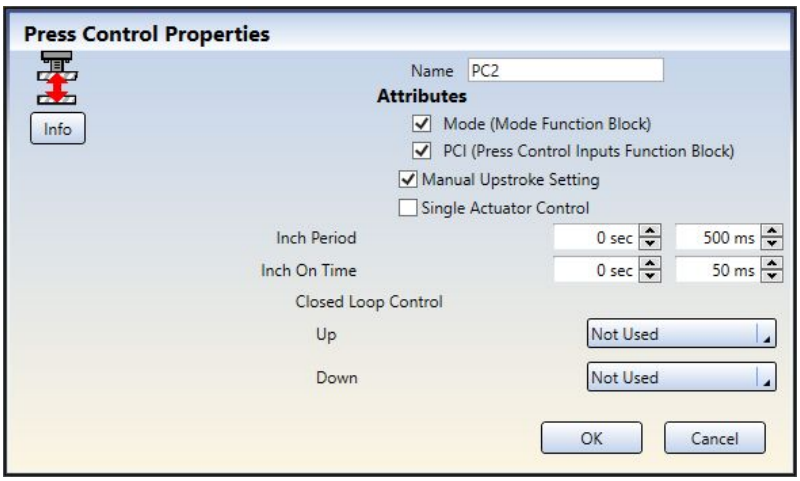
**WARNING:**

- Properly install this device.
- The user has the sole responsibility to ensure that this Banner Engineering Corp. device is installed and interfaced to the guarded machine by Qualified Persons, in accordance with this manual and applicable safety regulations. Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- If all mounting, installation, interfacing, and checkout procedures are not followed properly, the Banner Engineering Corp. device cannot provide the protection for which it was designed. The user is responsible for ensuring that all local, state, and national laws, rules, codes or regulations relating to the installation and use of this control system in any particular application are satisfied. Ensure that all legal requirements have been met and that all technical installation and maintenance instructions contained in this manual are followed.

| Default Nodes | Additional Nodes | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| GO<br>TOS<br>BOS<br>RST<br>NM Safety | Mode<br>PCI | When selecting the Mode or PCI (Press Control Input) inputs, each generates its own function block of inputs connected to the Press Control function block. For additional information, see "Mode Function Block " on page 178 and "Press Control Inputs Function Block" on page 178. |

The Press Control function block includes attributes that can be enabled or disabled.

*Figure 160.* ***Press Control Properties***




The additional nodes that can be added to the Press Control function block generate new function blocks of their own. The Mode Function Block is added if the Mode attribute is selected. The Press Control Inputs Function Block is added if the PCI attribute box is selected. The other two attributes, Manual Upstroke Setting and Single Actuator Control cannot both be selected.

When Manual Upstroke Setting is configured, the GO input must be maintained ON during the entire cycle (both down and up). The GO input node can only have a Two-Hand Control input or a Foot Switch input connected to it.

When the Single Actuator Control is configured, the GO input acts like a start button so only needs to be maintained on long enough to start the process. The GO input node can only have a Cycle Initiation input, a Foot Switch input or a Two-Hand Control input connected to it.

**WARNING:**

- Press upstroke hazard considerations.
- If a hazard exists during the upstroke, not using the Manual Upstroke Setting could result in serious injury or death.
- For Single Actuator Control, the upstroke of the press must not present any hazards because the mutable safety stop input is muted during the upstroke.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

The other feature in the Press Control function block is **Closed Loop Control**. Enabling **Closed Loop Control** forces the controller to verify that the devices connected to the noted outputs have turned off when signaled to turn off, before then next output can turn on. For additional information, see "Closed Loop Control" on page 182.

## 11.8.1 Mode Function Block

The Mode Function Block is added if the Mode attribute is selected in the **Press Control Properties**.

The Mode Function Block selection allows the ability to add a function selector switch. The three inputs to the Press Function Block are Run, Inch Up, and Inch Down.

> **NOTE:** Per the press Standards, the mode selection switch (or menu) should have these three positions and an Off position, at a minimum. The off position would not be a safety Off state, but a press in a non-run state input (does not get connected to the controller, but would also have the three Mode inputs in the Off state). If all 3 mode inputs are inactive/off, then the Press Mode FB remains Off (red).

*Figure 161. Press Control Function Block Inputs*




When the Mode Function Block is selected in the Press Control function block, the Inch Period and Inch On Time are added to the Press Control function block. These parameters are user-defined values for their system to ensure that the press does not move too fast when inching (typically used during setup modes).

> **NOTE:** EN ISO 16092-3:2018 specifies the inch speed cannot be faster than 10 mm/second during inch mode.

- An Inch process is an intermittent motion of the slide to slowly move it up or down, typically for maintenance or die-setting
- The **Inch Period** is the complete cycle time, On and Off, of one intermittent movement of the slide
- The **Inch On Time** is the On portion of the Inch Period (the turning On of the output period to drive the slide movement)
- In setting the period and on times, take into considerations delays in the initiation of movement and the stopping of the movement to ensure proper inch speed if the GO input is held closed for multiple Inch Periods

> **WARNING:**
> - Speed of the press during Inch Mode.
> - Excessive speed of the slide during inch mode could result in serious injury or death.
> - Care must be taken in the setting of the Inch Period and Inch On Time to ensure the slide moves at a safe speed during inch mode.

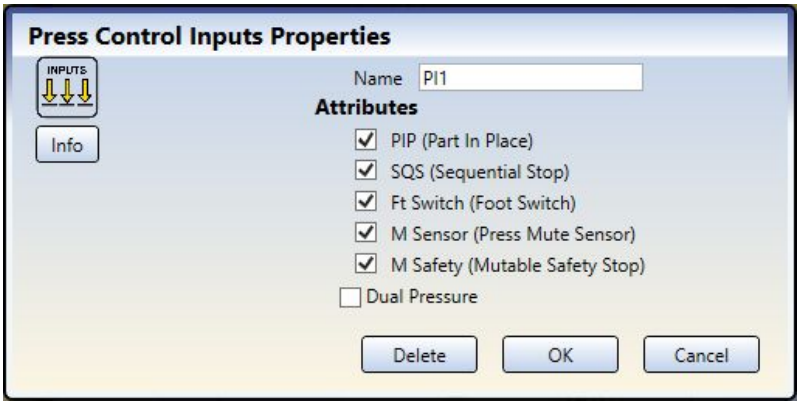
## 11.8.2 Press Control Inputs Function Block

The Press Control Inputs Function Block is added if the PCI attribute box is selected in the **Press Control Properties**.

When the PCI Function Block is selected, other press control attributes can be enabled.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 162. **Press Control Inputs Properties***




The default nodes of the PCI block are the **PIP** (Part in Place) input, **SQS** (Sequential Stop) input, and the **M Safety** (Mutable Safety Stop) input. Audience=BannerIf **SQS** is selected, the **Ft Switch** (Foot Switch) and **M Sensor** (Press Mute Sensor) inputs are available as options and the Dual Pressure attribute becomes available (this allows the addition of high and low pressure outputs to be added to the standard up and down outputs).

Use the PIP input in press controls where the press should not run if no part is present. The PIP input must be high for the press cycle to start. After the press leaves BOS, the PIP input must go low, then back to high, before the next press cycle can be initiated; this can happen before or after the press reaches TOS.

Use the SQS input in press controls where the press slide is lowered to a finger-safe point. At this point, the Mutable Safety Stop input can be muted, the operator can release the Two-Hand control input (TC1) (configured to the GO input of the Press Control function block) and can grasp the workpiece, if required. Initiating the Ft Switch (FS1) input will drive the press slide to the bottom of the stroke, where it will stop.

**NOTE:** The above is one method of controlling the Press Control process with SQS configured. There are three allowable processes:

1. TC1 turns on the GO input to drive the ram to the SQS point. Release TC1 and engage the FS1 to turn on the Ft Switch input to drive the ram to the BOS, release FS1 and engage TC1 to raise the ram.
2. FS1 turns on the GO input to drive the ram to the SQS point. Release FS1. Re-engaging FS1 drives the ram to the BOS point, and then back up to the TOS point. (The Ft Switch input will disappear when FS1 is connected to the GO node).
3. TC1 turns on the GO input to drive the ram to the SQS point, release TC1. Re-engaging TC1 drives the ram to the BOS point, and then back up to the TOS point. (To set the system up for this method, do NOT select the Ft Switch node in the Press Control Inputs Function Block.)

The M Sensor input can be used in conjunction with the SQS input to mute the Mutable Safety Stop input when it reaches a finger-safe position.

When the SQS input and Dual Pressure are configured in the Press Control Input function block, two new outputs are added to the Press Control function block. **H** (high) and **L** (low) output nodes are added in addition to the standard **U** (for Up, disengage, or return stroke) and **D** (for Down, engage, or out stroke) outputs. The H is to engage the high pressure to finish the last portion of the stroke. The L is to engage the standard (low) pressure to bring the slide down to the SQS point and to return the slide to the home position.

*Figure 163. Press Control Input Block*

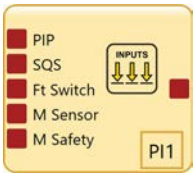
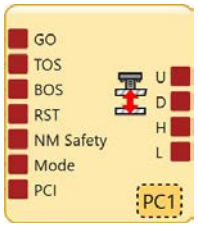



*Figure 164. Press Control Function Block*





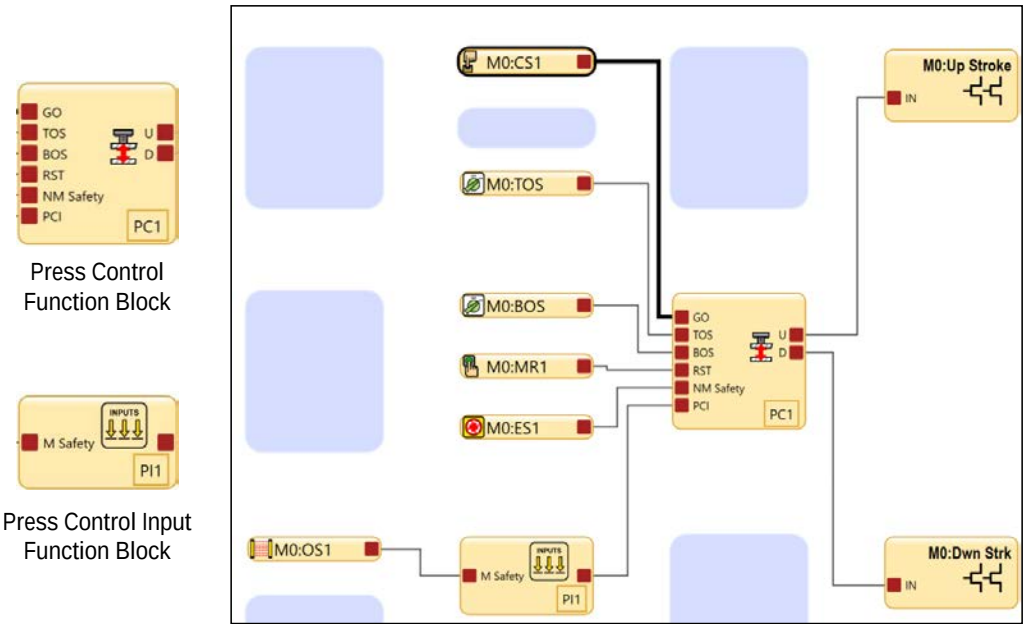
© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## 11.8.3 Press Control Function Block Examples

This section includes two example configurations.

The following is an example of a simple configuration for a small press.

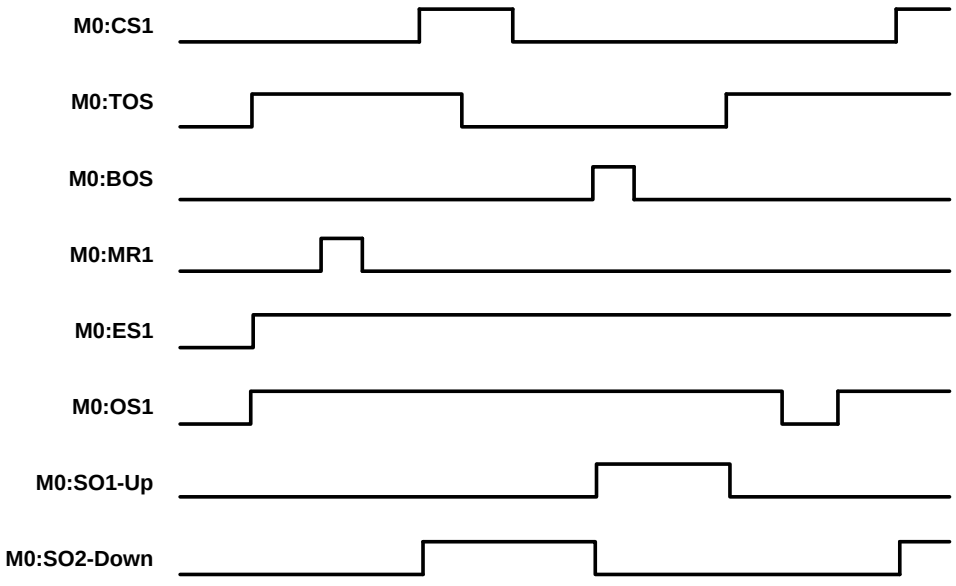
*Figure 165. Sample Configuration for a Small Press*




The Press Control function block requires the correct sequencing of the input signals for proper operation. ES1, OS1, and TOS must be in the Run state (and have been reset) before the CS1 input can turn on the appropriate output. This configuration is using Single Actuator Control so once the CS1 input has started the process, either the ES1 input, OS1 input or the end of the cycle (TOS turning back on) has turn OFF authority. See the timing chart below or the simulation description in "XS/SC26: Simple Press Control with Mutable Safety Input Sample Configuration " on page 100.

The following timing diagram shows the proper sequencing of the inputs to the Press Control function block resulting in the proper operation of the outputs when Single Actuator Control is enabled.

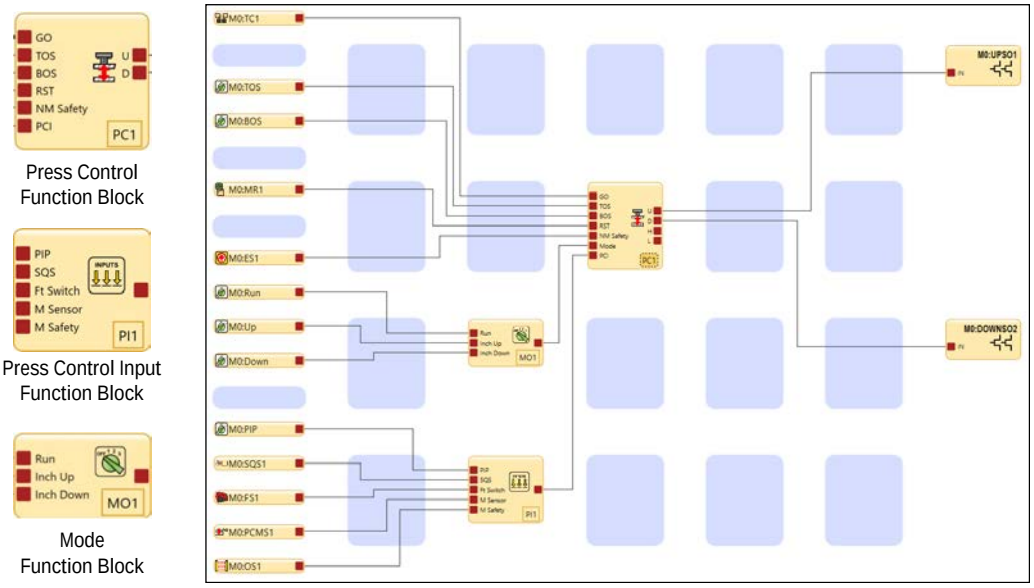
*Figure 166. Press Control—Timing Diagram, Single Actuator Control*




The following is a configuration using most of the features of the Press Control function block.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 167. Press Control—Sample Configuration*

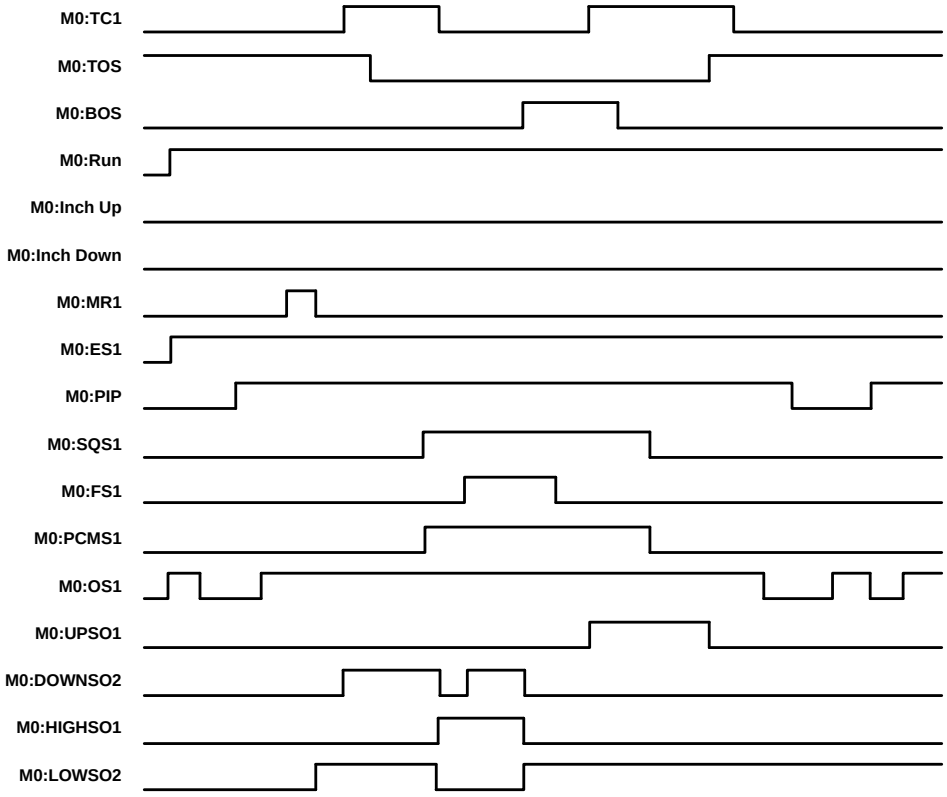



The Press Control function block requires the correct sequencing of the input signals for proper operation. This configuration uses the Manual Upstroke Setting. ES1, OS1, PIP, and TOS must be in the Run state (and have been reset) before the TC1 input can turn on the appropriate output. During the down stroke, the TC1 input starts the process, and the ES1 input, OS1 input, TC1 input or reaching the sequential stop input (SQS turns on) has turn OFF authority. When the press reaches the SQS point (SQS and PCMS turn on), it stops and the OS1 mutes. The TC1 can be released. To finish the stroke, turn on the FS1 input. During the rest of the down stroke, ES1 input, FS1 input, or the BOS (turning on) has turn OFF authority. When BOS is reached, the FS1 is released and TC1 is used to return the Press to the TOS position. During the upstroke, TC1 input, ES1 input, OS1 input, or reaching the TOS position have turn OFF authority. See the timing chart below or the simulation description in "XS/SC26: Full Feature Press Control Sample Configuration" on page 103.

The following timing diagram shows the proper sequencing of the inputs to the Press Control function block, resulting in the proper operation of the outputs when Manual Upstroke Setting is enabled.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 168. Press Control—Timing Diagram with Manual Upstroke Setting*




## 11.8.4 Closed Loop Control

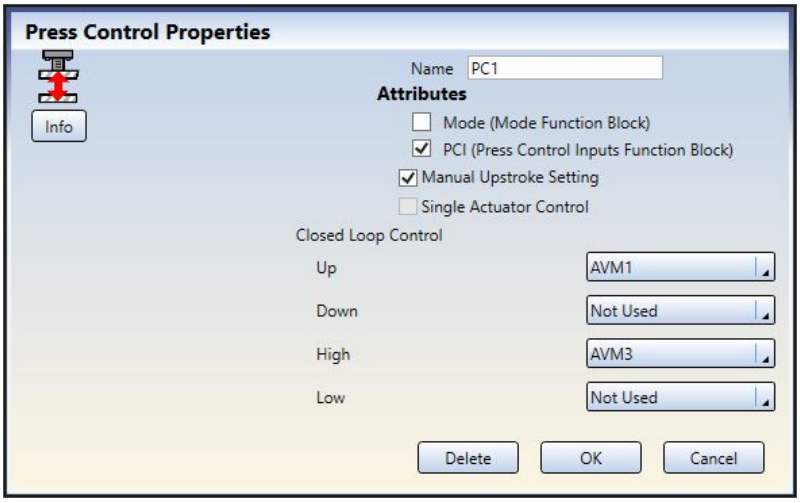
The Press Control function block includes the ability to enable Closed Loop Control.

Enabling Closed Loop Control forces the controller to verify that the devices connected to the noted outputs have turned off when signaled to turn off, before enabling the next output to turn on.

To use Closed Loop Control:

1. An AVM node must be added to the desired safety output driven by the Press Control function block.
2. The AVM Input provides an indication of the state of that Press valve.
3. The Press Control function block must be configured for Closed Loop Control on a per output basis. See the **Press Control Properties** in the following figure.

*Figure 169. Closed Loop Control*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

In this example the Closed Loop Control is set up to ensure the Up output valve has turned off before it will allow any other functions. It also ensures that the High valve has closed before engaging the Up output.

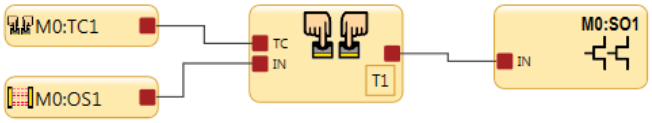
## 11.9 Two-Hand Control Block (For XS/SC26 FID 3 and older and SC10-2 FID 1)

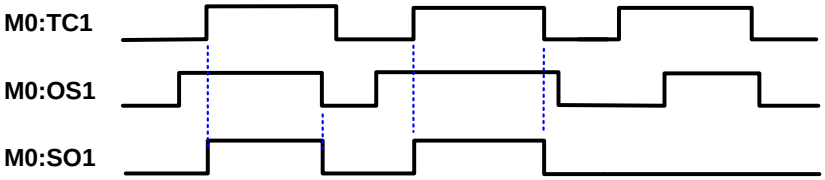
*Figure 170. Timing Diagram—Two-Hand Control Block*

| Default Nodes | Additional Nodes | Notes |
|---|---|---|
| TC<br>(up to 4 TC nodes) | IN<br>MP1<br>ME | Two-Hand Control inputs must connect either directly to a Two-Hand Control Block or indirectly through a Bypass Block connected to a Two-Hand Control Block. It is not possible to use a Two-Hand Control input without a Two-Hand Control Block.<br>Use the IN node to connect input devices that must be on before the THC can turn the outputs on. |




**Two-Hand Control Function Block**

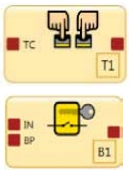


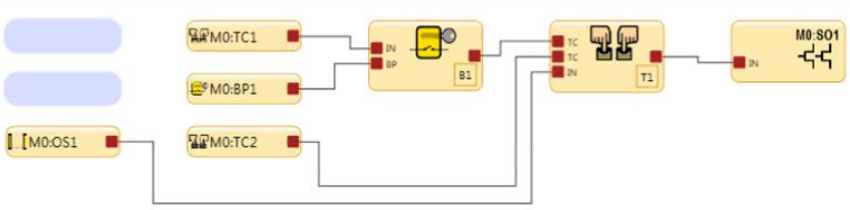

Either the TC1 input or the OS1 input has turn Off authority.
OS1 needs to be in the Run state before TC1 can turn the output of T1 & SO1 On.

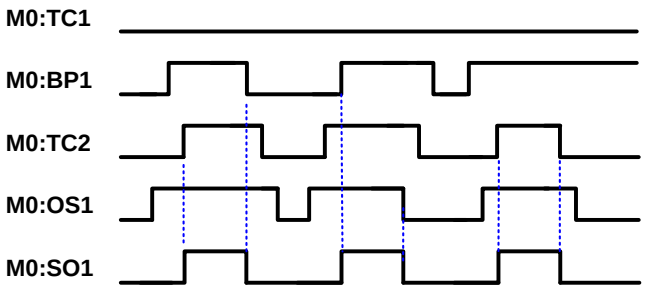

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 171. Timing Diagram—Two-Hand Control Block and Bypass Blocks*



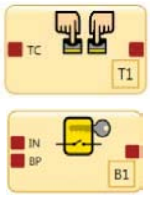

**Two-Hand Control & Bypass Function Blocks**



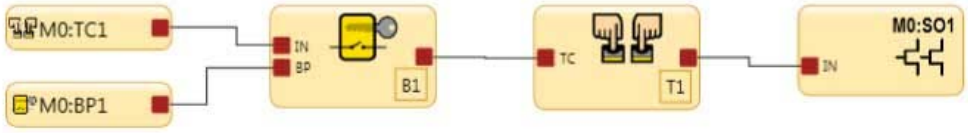



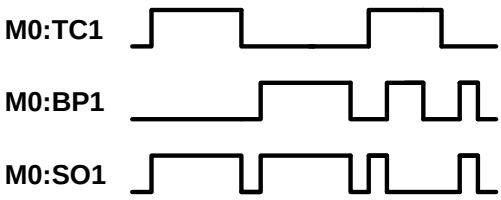

OS1 must transition to the Run state before TC2 transitions to the Run state. BP1 can transition to the Run state before or after OS1. If OS1 is in the Run state the sequence of TC2 or BP1 transition to the Run state does not matter, the last one to transition to the Run state will transition the T1 function block to the Run state.

*Figure 172. Timing Diagram—Two-Hand Control Block and Bypass Blocks with One (1) Two-Hand Control Input*




**Two-Hand Control & Bypass Function Blocks**

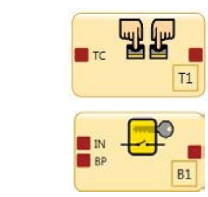


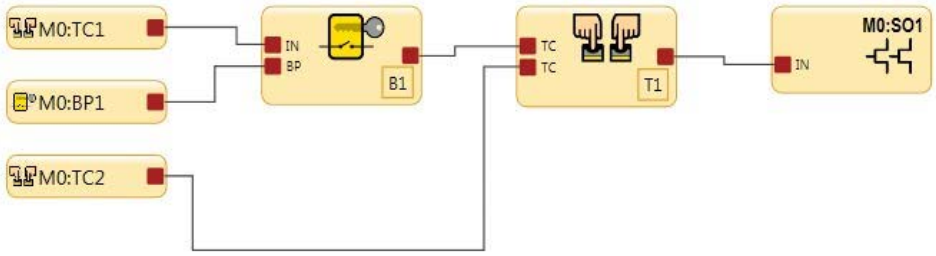

If both TC1 actuators and the BP1 Bypass switch are active at the same time, the B1 Bypass function block output and the Two-Hand Control function block output turn Off.
The outputs for B1 and T1 will only turn On when either the TC1 actuators or the BP1 switch are in the Run state.

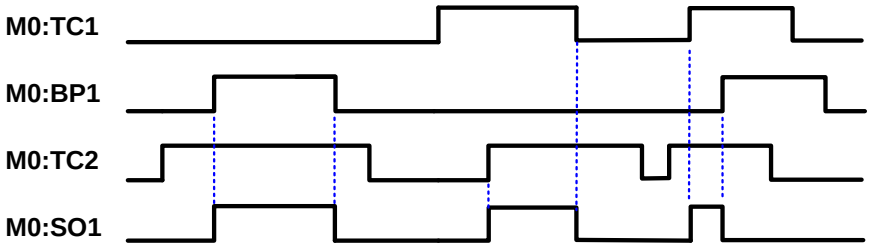

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 173. Timing Diagram—Two-Hand Control Block and Bypass Blocks with Two (2) Two-Hand Control Inputs*




**Two-Hand Control & Bypass Function Blocks**

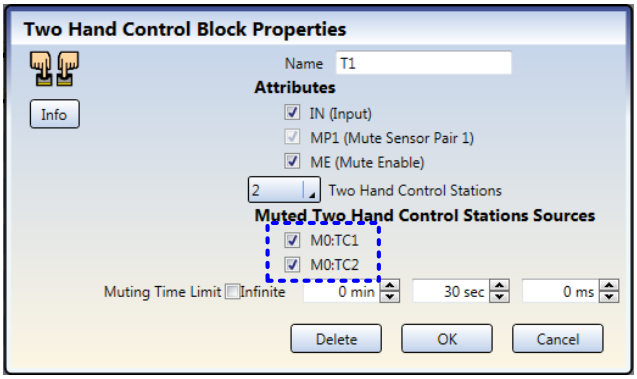



The Bypass function can be used with the TC2 actuators to turn the Safety Output On.

When the TC1 actuators are not bypassed they must be used along with the TC2 actuators to turn the Safety Output On. If the TC1 actuators and the Bypass switch are both in the Run state, TI and SO1 cannot be turned On or will turn Off.

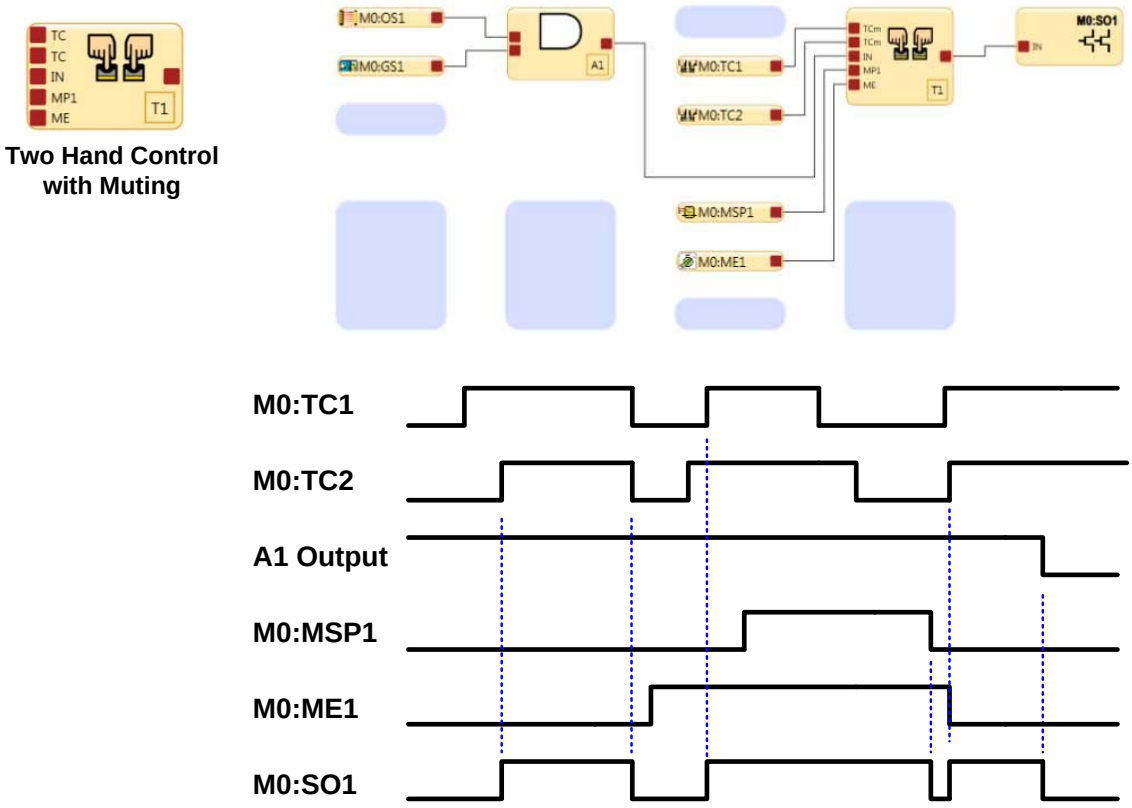
*Figure 174. Two-Hand Control Muting Options*




To configure the Two-Hand Control mute option, the TC actuators first need to be connected to the Two-Hand Control function block in the Function View. Check boxes (blue square above) in the Properties menu will display the names of all TC actuator input devices. Only those THx station boxes that are checked will be muted.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 175. Timing Diagram—Two-Hand Control Block with Muting*




Actuators TC1 and TC2 can initiate a two-hand cycle regardless of the state of the mute enable (ME1) input (on or off). ME1 must be active for the MSP1 mute sensors to keep the SO On after the TC1 and TC2 actuators are in the Stop state.

**Two-Hand Control Activation on Power-Up Protection.** The Safety Controller's two-hand control logic does not permit the assigned safety output to turn On when power is initially supplied while the THC actuators are in their Run state. The THC actuators must change to their Stop state and return to the Run state before the Safety Output can turn On. A Safety Output associated with a Two-Hand Control device will not have a manual reset option.

## 11.10 Two-Hand Control Block (XS/SC26 FID 4 and later and SC10-2 FID 2 and later )

In XS/SC26 FID 4 and later and SC10-2 FID 2 and later devices, the TC input can be mapped directly to an output or to a logic block. The Two-Hand Control function block can be mapped directly to an output or to a logic block.

If the machine has multiple operators and each operator must actuate their two-hand controls, use the Two-Hand Control function block in which multiple TC inputs can be selected.

If the system has a hold function (TC inputs causing an action that makes it safe, then the operators can remove their hands while the process finishes), use the Two-Hand Control function block with the Muting function selected.

If the machine has certain safety devices that should be satisfied (and must stay satisfied) for the TC input to make the machine operate, use the Two-Hand Control function block with the IN node selected.

- If the IN node is off, engaging the Two-Hand input results in no actions.
- If the Two-Hand Control function block is on and the TC block goes off, the output turns off.
- When the IN node goes back high, the output stays off until the TC inputs goes off and back high.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**WARNING:**

- Two-Hand Controls are starting devices (initiate hazardous motion).
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- The Qualified Individual must ensure that activation (going to the ON condition) of a stopping safety device (E-Stop, Rope Pull, Optical Sensor, Safety Mat, Protective Stop, etc.) by a user does not initiate hazardous motion when logically connected to a TC Input or Two-Hand Control function block that is already activated (ON condition).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

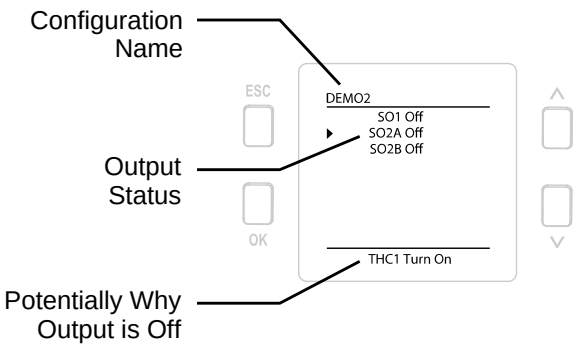
Chapter Contents

12.1 XS/SC26 Configuration Mode ..... 190
12.2 To *write* data to the SC-XM2/3 drive using the onboard interface: ..... 190
12.3 To *import* data from the SC-XM2/3 drive using the onboard interface: ..... 191

# Chapter 12 XS/SC26 Onboard Interface

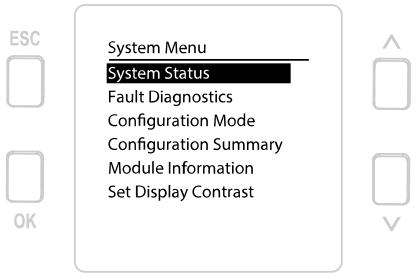
With the exception of special settings, the XS/SC26 Safety Controller onboard interface shows the System Status screen on power up.

*Figure 176. Onboard Interface at Start Up*




To access any other information via the onboard interface, press the escape button to access the **System Menu**.

*Figure 177. Onboard Interface—**System Menu***




### System Status

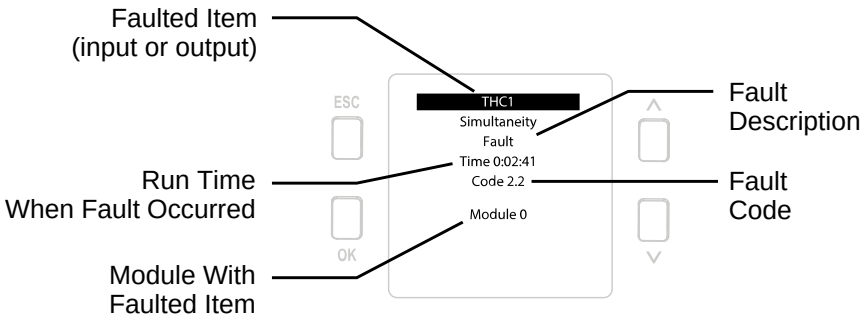
Displays the current status of Safety Outputs, and, when selected, inputs connected to that output (see "Figure: Onboard Interface at Start Up" on page 188).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### Fault Diagnostics

Displays the current faults, fault log, and an option to clear the fault log (see "Finding and Fixing Faults" on page 370).

*Figure 178. Onboard Interface—Fault Diagnostics*




Use the arrow buttons to move to other fault codes.

### Configuration Mode

Enters the Configuration Mode (PIN required) and provides access to copy or write the configuration from and to the SC-XM2/3 drive (see "XS/SC26 Configuration Mode " on page 190).

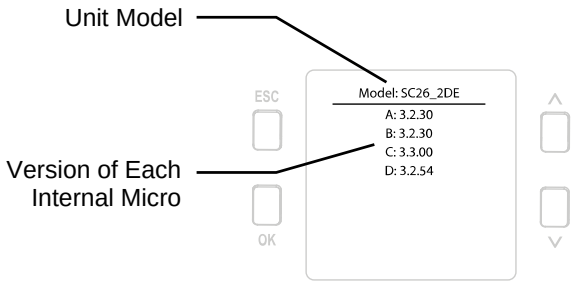
### Configuration Summary

Provides the access to terminal assignments, network settings, and configuration CRC.

### Model #

Displays the current model number and versions of each micro.

*Figure 179. Onboard Interface—**Model #***



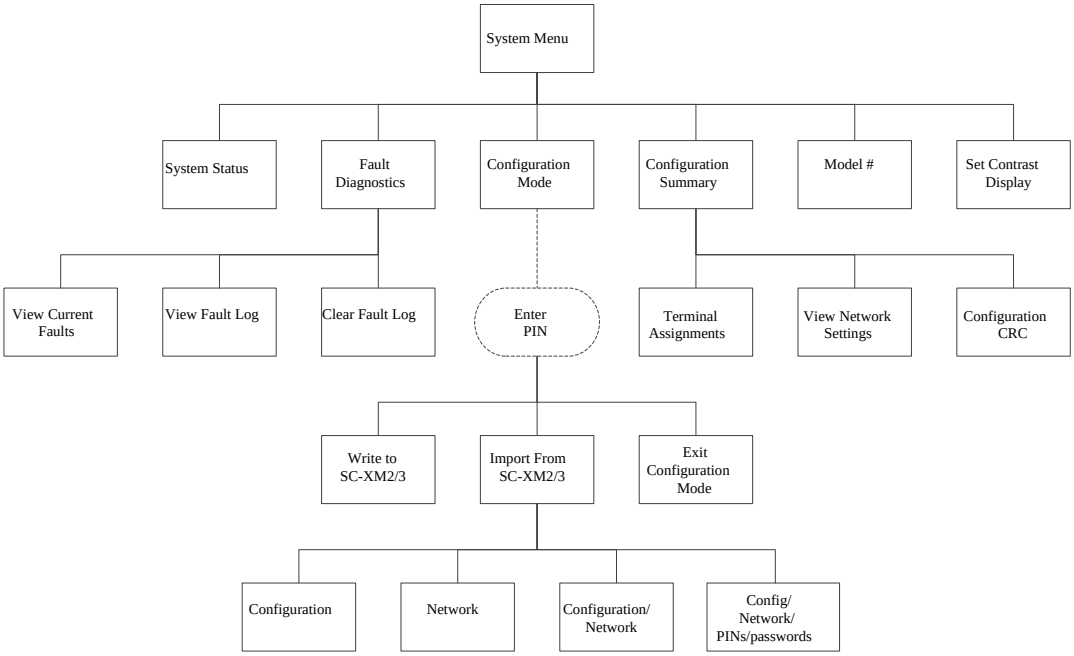

If expansion modules are attached to the Safety Controller, use the arrow buttons to view the expansion module versions.

### Set Display Contrast

Provides the controls to adjust the display brightness.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 180. Onboard Interface Map*




# 12.1 XS/SC26 Configuration Mode

**Configuration Mode** provides options to send the current configuration to an SC-XM2/3 drive and to receive a configuration from the SC-XM2/3 drive.

**IMPORTANT:** For a Safety Controller with Configuration via Network or Live Monitor via Network enabled (FID 7 or higher), using an SC-XM2/3 drive created prior to Banner Safety Controller Software version 5.0 or for a Controller with an FID less than 7 may result in disabling the Configuration via Network or Live Monitor via Network feature. If this happens, re-enable Configuration via Network or Live Monitor via Network using the USB connection.

**NOTE:** A PIN is required to access the **Configuration Mode** menu.

**IMPORTANT:** Entering the **Configuration Mode** turns Off Safety Outputs.

## 12.2 To *write* data to the SC-XM2/3 drive using the onboard interface:

1. Insert the SC-XM2/3 drive into the Safety Controller.
2. From the **System Menu**, select **Configuration Mode**.
3. Enter the PIN.
4. Hold **OK** until the **Configuration Mode** menu appears.
5. Select **Write to XM**.

   **NOTE:** The writing to XM process copies all data (configuration, network settings, and PINs/passwords) to the SC-XM2/3 drive.

6. Wait for the write process to complete.
7. Reset the System.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### 12.3 To *import* data from the SC-XM2/3 drive using the onboard interface:

1. Insert the SC-XM2/3 drive into the Safety Controller.
2. From the **System Menu**, select **Configuration Mode**.
3. Enter the PIN.
4. Hold **OK** until the **Configuration Mode** menu appears.
5. Select **Import from XM**:
    - For configuration only, select **Configuration**
    - For network settings only, select **Network Settings**
    - For configuration and network settings, select **Configuration/Network**
    - For all data, which includes configuration, network settings, and user PINs/passwords, select **Config/Network/Passwords**
6. Wait for the import process to complete.
7. Reset the System.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

13.1 Configuring the Safety Controller ..... 192
13.2 Industrial Ethernet Definitions ..... 195
13.3 Retrieving Current Fault Information ..... 196
13.4 EtherNet/IP™ ..... 196
13.5 Modbus® TCP ..... 259
13.6 PLC5, SLC500, and MicroLogix (PCCC) ..... 274
13.7 PROFINET® ..... 289
13.8 EtherCAT® ..... 318
13.9 ISD: Additional Information ..... 329

# Chapter 13 Industrial Ethernet (Field Bus) Overview

An aid for use in establishing Ethernet communications between the Safety Controller and a PLC or HMI.

The following sections include the instructions for Safety Controllers with the FID 2 designation on the label and date codes of 1717 or later, and for FID 3 or later Safety Controllers.

For FID 2 Safety Controllers with date codes of 1716 or earlier, see *XS26/SC26-2E (FID2 1716-) Industrial Ethernet User's Guide*. For FID 1 controllers with date codes of 1547 or later, see *XS/SC26-2E (FID 1) Industrial Ethernet User's Guide*. For older versions of FID 1 Safety Controllers, see *XS/SC26-2E (OLD) Industrial Ethernet User's Guide*. For information on where to find these documents, see "Which XS/SC26 EDS file and documentation should you use?" on page 200.

For PROFINET® connections on SC10-2 controllers and FID 2 or later XS/SC26 controllers, see " PROFINET®" on page 289.

For EtherCAT® connections on FID 6 or later XS26 controllers, see " EtherCAT® " on page 318.

Connecting to a Safety Controller from the software via Ethernet should not disrupt the Field Bus except for when a configuration is actually written to the controller.

## 13.1 Configuring the Safety Controller

Make sure that **Enable Network Interface** is selected and the network settings are configured as needed by the chosen protocol.

1. Connect the Safety Controller to your PC via the SC-USB2 USB cable or via Ethernet (for FID7 or later XS/SC26 Ethernet models) to enable the port.
2. Open the Banner Safety Controller Software.
3. Click **Network Settings**.
4. Select the **Enable Network Interface** checkbox on the **Field Bus** tab.
5. Configure the IP Address and Subnet Mask as needed for your network.

   > **NOTE:** If a Virtual Reset or Cancel Delay is used, an Actuation Code must be defined and then sent to the Safety Controller.

   Selecting the **Use onboard interface to set the last octet and actuation code** checkbox allows the user to set the last octet of the IP Address (and the actuation code, if needed) during the installation process. See "ClickSet IP Process " on page 193.
6. Click **Send**.
   The following are the default values for the Safety Controller's Ethernet port and Industrial Ethernet options.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 181. Default Values—**Basic** Tab*

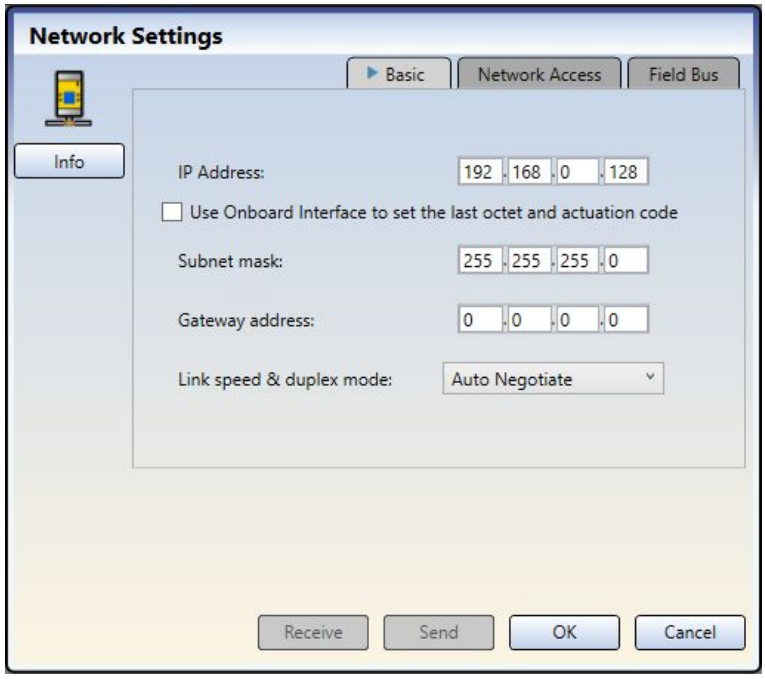
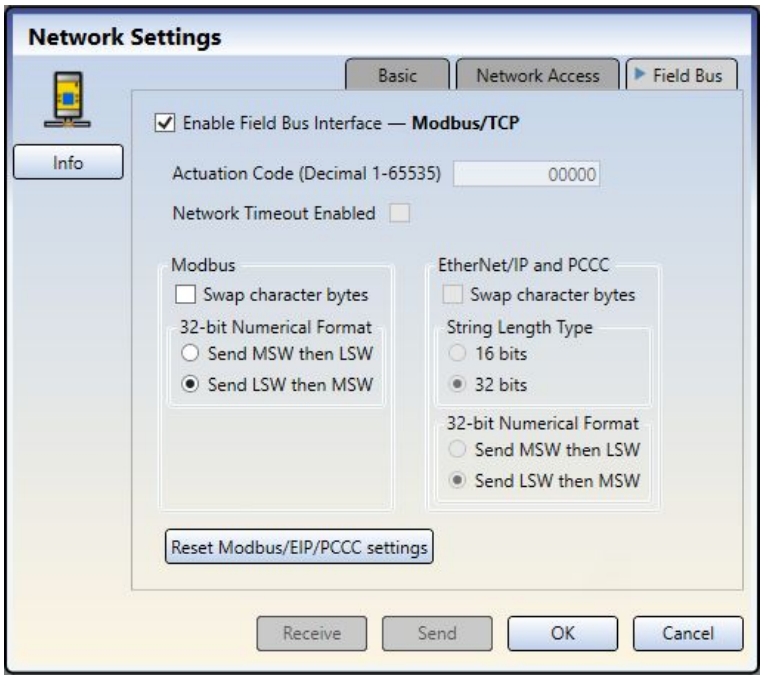



*Figure 182. Default Values—**Field Bus** Tab*




7. Provide the appropriate PIN/password to change the configuration and network settings for the Safety Controller.
8. Make sure the Safety Controller has a valid and confirmed configuration file.

The Ethernet port is enabled.

### 13.1.1 ClickSet IP Process

The ClickSet IP process is available on XS/SC26 FID 5 or later controllers with an onboard interface.

Selecting the **Use onboard interface to set the last octet and actuation code** checkbox in the **Network Settings** window (and sending it to a Controller) allows the user to finalize the IP address and actuation code, if needed, during the installation process.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Selecting the **Use onboard interface to set the last octet and actuation code** checkbox forces the Subnet mask to the default setting of 255.255.255.0.

When a virtual reset or cancel delay exists, selecting the **Use onboard interface to set the last octet and actuation code** checkbox allows a temporary all-zero actuation code to be sent to the controller. The process requires the actuation code to be changed to a valid number during the installation process.

The process for setting the last Octet and the Actuation Code (if needed) is as follows:

1. Select the **Use onboard interface to set the last octet and actuation code** checkbox in the **Network Settings** window.
2. Set the other parameters (that is, the first three octets). See "Configuring the Safety Controller" on page 192.
3. Send the network settings to the Controller.
4. Send the desired configuration to the Controller.

   When the Controller is powered on, the **Set IP Address** screen shows on the onboard interface.

   *Figure 183. **Set IP Address** Screen*

   > **NOTE:** To leave the **Set IP Address** screen, press the ESC button. The screen changes to the **System Status** screen. To return to the **Set IP Address** screen, cycle the power.

5. To adjust the octet value, use the up or down arrow buttons to increase or decrease the octet number.

   If an arrow button is held down the rate of change of the numbers increases. When 1 is reached while pressing the down button, the numbers return to 254 and continue. When 254 is reached while pressing the up button, the numbers return to 1 and continue.
6. Press and hold the OK button to accept (save) the IP address.

   > **NOTE:** After the last octet is accepted, you cannot return to the **Set IP Address** screen. Use the Banner Safety Controller software if the IP address needs to be changed.

   After the IP address is saved:
   - A message displays stating that a power cycle is required to finish the process. Go to step 8.
   - The **Set Actuation code** screen displays. Go to the next step.
7. If a virtual manual reset or cancel off delay input is used in the configuration, the **Set Actuation Code** screen shows on the onboard interface after the IP Address has been saved. Use the arrow buttons to set the desired Actuation Code.

   *Figure 184. **Set Actuation Code** Screen*

8. Press and hold the OK button to accept (save) the Actuation Code.

   > **NOTE:** After the actuation code is accepted (saved), you cannot return to the **Set Actuation Code** screen. Use the Banner Safety Controller software if the Actuation Code needs to be changed.

   After the actuation code has been saved, a message displays stating that a power cycle is required to finish the process.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

9. Cycle power to the Controller to internally set the new IP address and Actuation Code (if needed).

If this process is interrupted by a system lockout, the **System Status** screen opens so that the system lockout code can be checked.

If the process is interrupted (or not saved by holding the OK button), the **Set IP Address** opens the next time the controller is powered on.

## 13.2 Industrial Ethernet Definitions

The following are table row and column descriptions (listed in alphanumeric order) for the register maps found in the **Industrial Ethernet** tab of the Software.

*Table 8. Data Types*

| Data Type | Description |
|---|---|
| **UINT** | Unsigned integer—16 bits |
| **UDINT** | Unsigned double integer—32 bits |
| **Word** | Bit string—16 bits |
| **Dword** | Bit string—32 bits |
| **String** | Two ASCII characters per Word (see protocol-based String information below) |
| **Octet** | Reads as each byte translated to decimal separated by a dot |
| **Hex** | Reads as each nibble translated to hex, paired, and then separated by a space |
| **Byte** | Bit string—8 bits |

### Byte:Bit

Indicates the byte offset followed by the specific bit.

### Fault Flag

If the particular input or output being tracked causes a lockout, a flag associated with that virtual output will be set to **1**. In Modbus TCP, this can be read as a discrete input, input register, or holding register.

### Fault Index

If the Fault Flag bit is set for a virtual output, the Fault Index will contain a number, which translates to a Fault Code. For example, a Fault Index 41, can contain a number 201, which translates to the Fault Code 2.1; the number 412 would translate to the Fault Code 4.12 (see "XS/SC26 Fault Code Table" on page 370 and "SC10-2 Fault Code Table " on page 375 for more information).

### Function

The function that determines the state of that virtual output.

### Operating Mode

| Operating Mode Value | Description |
|---|---|
| 1 (0x01) | Normal Operating Mode (including I/O faults, if present) |
| 2 (0x02) | Configuration Mode |
| 4 (0x04) | System Lockout |
| 65 (0x41) | Waiting For System Reset/Exiting Configuration Mode |
| 129 (0x81) | Entering Configuration Mode |

### Reg:Bit

Indicates the offset from 30000 or 40000 followed by the specific bit in the register.

### Reserved

Registers that are reserved for internal use.

### Seconds Since boot

The time, in seconds, since power was applied to the Safety Controller. May be used in conjunction with the Timestamp in the Fault Log and a real time clock reference to establish the time when a fault occurred.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**String (EtherNet/IP and PCCC Protocol)**

The default format EtherNet/IP string format has a 32 bit length preceding the string (suitable for ControlLogix). When configuring the **Network Settings** using the Software, you can change this setting to a 16 bit length which corresponds to the standard CIP “String” under the **Advanced** menu. However, when reading an Input Assembly that includes a string with a 16 bit length, the string length will be preceded by an extra 16 bit word (0x0000).

The string itself is packed ASCII (2 characters per word). In some systems, the character order may appear reversed or out of order. For example, the word “System” may read out as “yStsme”. Use "*Swap character bytes*" option under the **Advanced** menu in the **Network Settings** window to swap characters so words read correctly.

**String (Modbus TCP Protocol)**

The string format is packed ASCII (two characters per word). In some systems, the character order may appear reversed or out of order. For example, the word “System” may read out as “yStsme”. Use "*Swap character bytes*" option under the **Advanced** menu in the **Network Settings** window to swap characters so words read correctly.

While the string length is provided, it is usually not required for Modbus TCP systems. If string length is used for Modbus TCP, the length format corresponds to the settings used for EtherNet/IP.

**Timestamp**

The time, in seconds, when the fault occurred since power up.

**Virtual Status Output**

The reference designator associated with a particular Virtual Status Output, for example, VO10 is Virtual Status Output 10.

**VO Status**

This identifies the location of a bit indicating the status of a Virtual Status Output. In the case of Modbus TCP, the state of the Virtual Status Output can be read as a discrete input, as part of an input register, or holding register. The register given is the offset from 30000 or 40000 followed by the bit location within the register.

## 13.3 Retrieving Current Fault Information

Follow the steps below to retrieve information via network communications about a fault that currently exists:

1. Read the *Fault Index* location to retrieve the fault index value.
2. Find the index value in the "XS/SC26 Fault Code Table" on page 370 or "SC10-2 Fault Code Table " on page 375 to access a fault description and steps to resolve the fault.

## 13.4 EtherNet/IP™

In this context, references to EtherNet/IP™[15] refer specifically to EtherNet/IP transport class 1. Sometimes referred to as cyclic EtherNet/IP IO data transfer or implicit messaging, this connection is meant to approximate a real-time data transfer to and from the PLC and the target device.

Allen-Bradley's CompactLogix® and ControlLogix®[16] family of PLCs uses this communication protocol. The programming software used by these PLCs is RSLogix5000® or Studio 5000 Logix Designer™[17].

There are three methods to establish an EIP connection between the PLC and the Safety Controller:

- L5X—see " L5X File Connection " on page 196
- EDS file (with optional CSV tag label file)—see "Banner Safety Controller EDS File Installation in ControlLogix Software" on page 201
- Generic Ethernet—see "Generic Ethernet Module Connection" on page 210

### 13.4.1 L5X File Connection

#### Create L5X Files For Ethernet/IP Assemblies

The .L5X file is an XML (eXtensilble Markup Language) file that stores both EtherNet/IP connection details and tag descriptions. Exporting this file from the Safety Controller software and importing it into the RS Studio 5000 PLC software is a convenient way to make an EtherNet/IP connection between the PLC and the Safety Controller with labeled tag descriptions, all in one step.

[15] EtherNet/IP™ is a trademark of ODVA, Inc.
[16] CompactLogix® and ControlLogix® are registered trademarks of Rockwell Automation.
[17] RSLogix5000® and Studio 5000 Logix Designer™ are registered trademarks of Rockwell Automation.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.

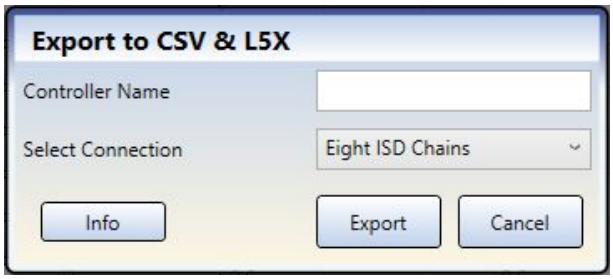
To create the L5X file, two items must be known:

- The name assigned to the Safety Controller in the PLC. This is needed to generate the file to import into the PLC software
- Which input and output assembly instances are going to be requested

1. On the **Industrial Ethernet** tab, make sure **Ethernet/IP Assemblies** is selected from the list at the left.
2. Click **Export**.

   The **Export to CSV & L5X** window opens.

   *Figure 185. **Export to CSV & L5X***




3. In the **Controller Name** field, enter the name assigned to the Safety Controller in the PLC software.
   See "Figure: New Module" on page 205.
4. Select the desired connection in the **Select Connection** list.

   Which connection to select is based on what Assembly Instances are being requested:

*Table 9. **Select Connection** Field Choices*

| Connection Name | Output Assembly | Size | Input Assembly | Size |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Status/Fault | 112 | 2 bit integer | 100 | 8 bit integer |
| Fault Index Words | 112 | 2 bit integer | 101 | 104 bit integer |
| Reset/Cancel Delay | 112 | 2 bit integer | 103 | 35 bit integer |
| VI Status/Faults | 113 | 11 bit integer | 100 | 8 bit integer |
| VI Fault Index Words | 113 | 11 bit integer | 101 | 104 bit integer |
| VI Reset/Cancel Delay | 113 | 11 bit integer | 103 | 35 bit integer |
| VRCD Plus ISD | 114 | 14 bit integer | 104 | 112 bit integer |
| Eight ISD Chains | 114 | 14 bit integer | 105 | 240 bit integer |

> **NOTE:** Select the same connection for the EDS file connection to ensure that the labels match.
> See "Figure: Module Definition" on page 206.

If any virtual inputs (VI) are being used, the PLC's output assembly must be set to 113 or 114. This is so that the PLC can send the virtual input words to the Safety Controller. If information on the ISD inputs is desired with XS26-ISD FID 5 or later or SC10-2 FID 2 or later controllers, an output assembly of 114 must be used to send virtual inputs (if used) and the extra words to request the ISD information (VRCD—virtual reset/cancel delay).

Input assembly 104 is used for up to two ISD chains (by either XS26-ISD FID 5 or later, if the chains are added to IN1/IN2 and IN3/IN4, or SC10-2 FID 2 or later controllers). Input assembly 105 supports up to eight ISD chains and can be used only by XS26-ISD FID 5 or later.

5. Click **Export**.
6. Save the .L5X file in the desired location.

> **NOTE:** A .L5X and a .csv file are both saved.

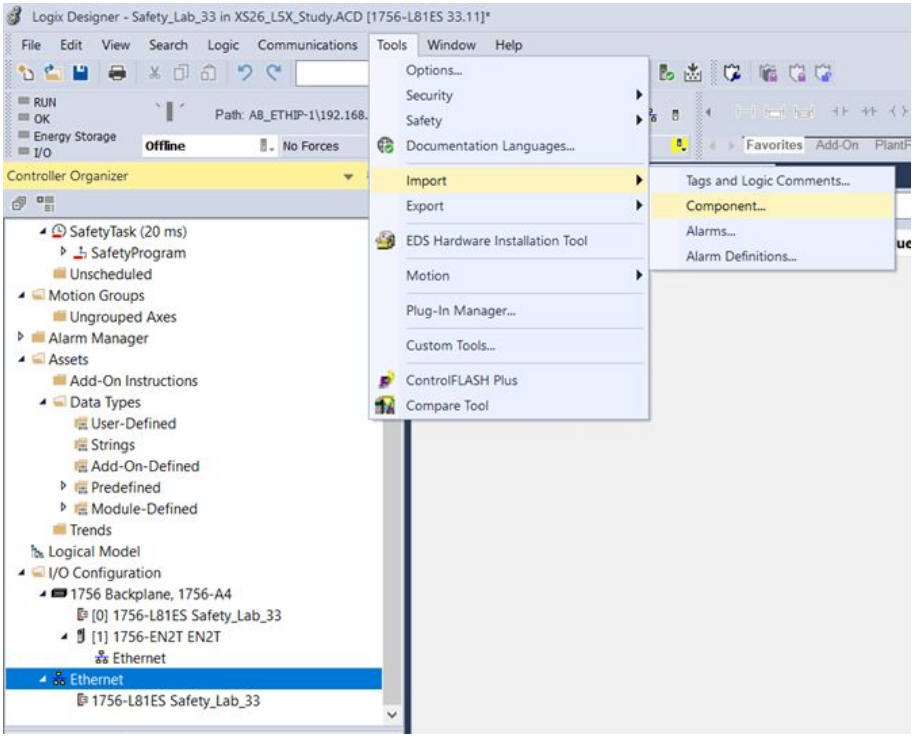
The .L5X file can create a labeled connection all in one step. See "Create Labeled Connections using an L5X File" on page 198.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## Create Labeled Connections using an L5X File

1. In Studio 5000®[18], click on the Ethernet module, then click **Tools › Import › Component**.

   *Figure 186. Studio 5000*




   The **Import Module** window opens.

2. Browse to the folder location where the .csv and .L5X files are saved and select the .L5X file.
3. Click **Open**.

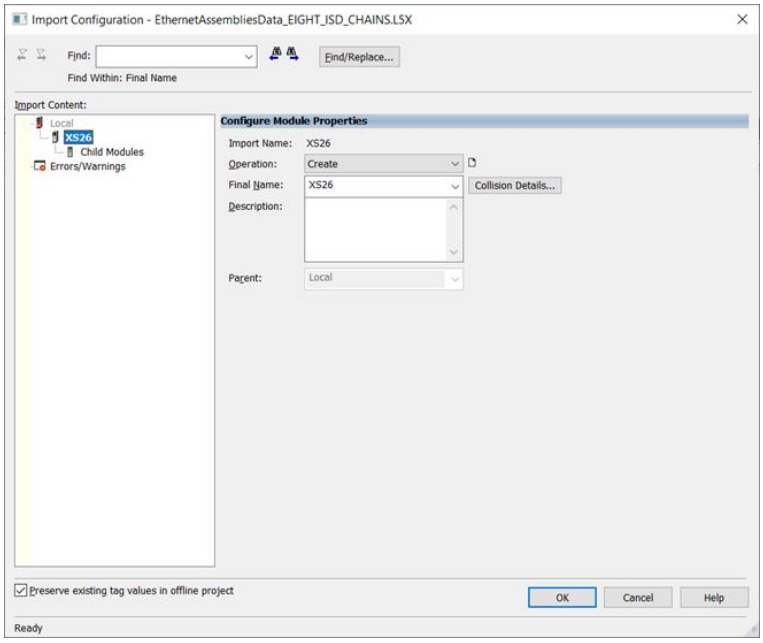
   Studio 5000 imports the .L5X file.

4. After the .L5X file has been successfully imported, click **OK** to use the .L5X file to make a connection with labeled tags.

[18] Studio 5000® is a registered trademark of Rockwell Automation.

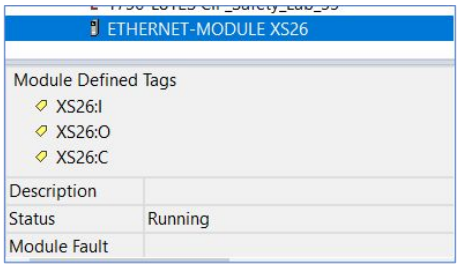

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 187. **Import Configuration** Window*



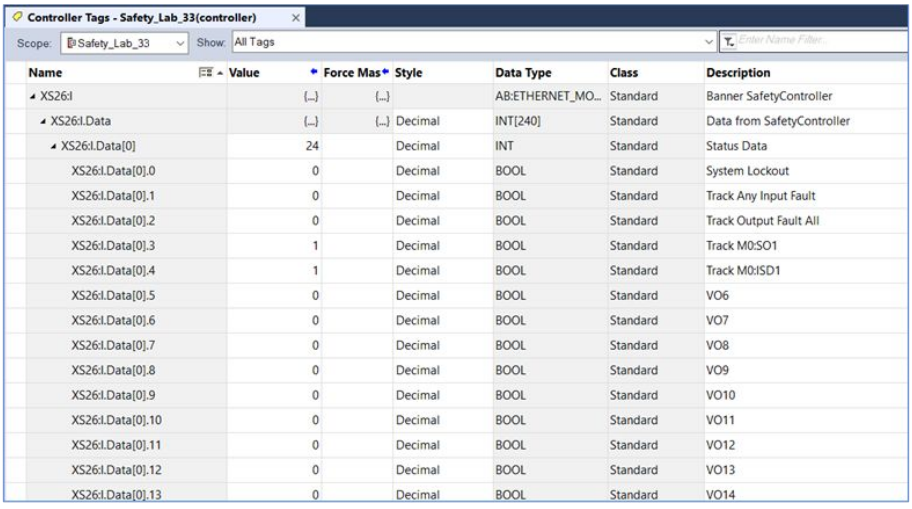

5. Download the project to the PLC.
6. Go to Run mode.

*Figure 188. Run Mode*




To see the PLC input data and the PLC output data, look in **Controller Tags** under the controller name provided when the .L5X file was created from the Banner Safety Controller software. The description column shows the labels specific to your safety controller configuration.

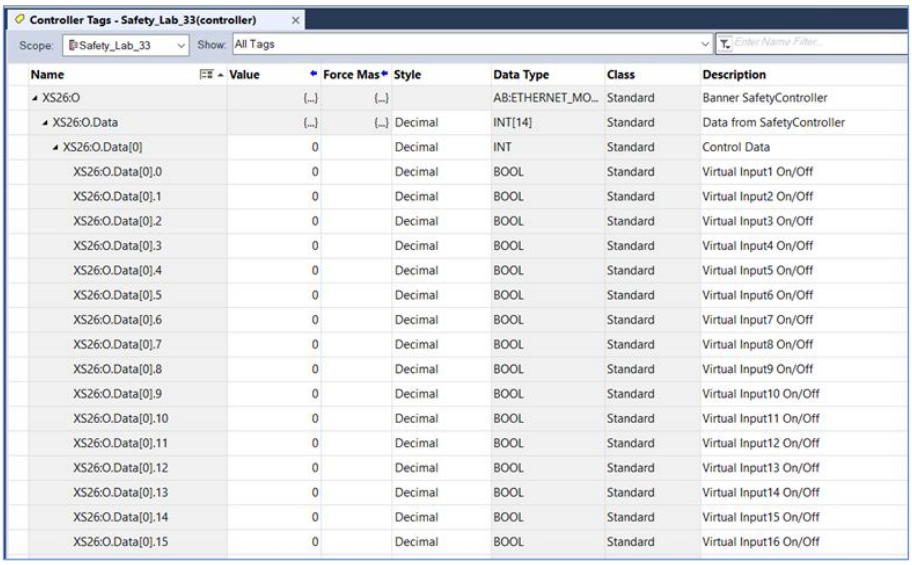
*Figure 189. **Controller Tags** Window—PLC Input Data*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 190. **Controller Tags** Window—PLC Output Data*




## 13.4.2 EDS File Connection

### Which XS/SC26 EDS file and documentation should you use?

*Figure 191. FID Number*

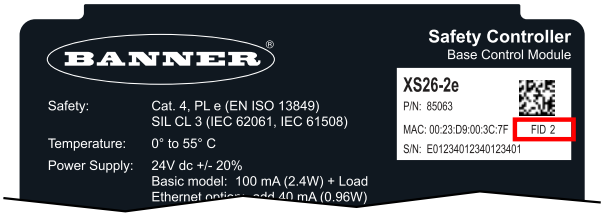
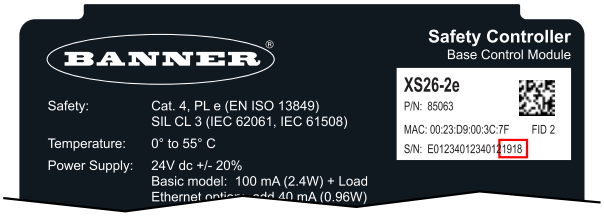



*Figure 192. Serial Number*




1. Check the model number label and take note of the FID number and date code.
   The date code is the last 4 digits of the Safety Controller serial number. In the example shown, “19” means 2019 and “18” means 18th week.
2. Use the FID number and date code to find the correct EIP parameters, EDS file, and Industrial Ethernet User's Guide (if applicable) from the following table.

| Model & FID | Date Code | EIP ProdCode | O>T — size | T>O — size | Files to Use |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| XS26<br>SC26<br><br>1 | 1546 or lower | 8193 | 112 (0×70) - 2 | 100 (0×64) - 8<br>101 (0×65) - 104<br><br>102 (0×66) - 150 | **Product Name [Maj.Min Rev]:** Banner XS26 (8193) [2.22]<br>**EDS File:** BannerXS_SC26_2E_8193_1_4_08102017.eds<br><br>**Industrial Ethernet User's Guide:** XS/SC26-2E (OLD) Industrial Ethernet User's Guide |
| XS26<br>SC26<br><br>1 | 1547 to 1705 | 300[19] | 112 (0×70) - 2 | 100 (0×64) - 8<br>101 (0×65) - 104<br><br>102 (0×66) - 150 | **Product Name [Maj.Min Rev]:** Banner XS26 1547 (300) [2.002]<br>**EDS File:**<br>BannerXS_SC26_2E_300_1547_1_6_08102017.eds[19]<br><br>**Industrial Ethernet User's Guide:** XS/SC26-2E (FID 1) Industrial Ethernet User's Guide |

Continued on page 201

[19] Banner_XS26_SC26_SC10_300_2_3_05192021.eds is backwards compatible with all ProdCode 300 controllers (XS26, SC26, SC10).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 200

| Model & FID | Date Code | EIP ProdCode | O>T — size | T>O — size | Files to Use |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| XS26<br>SC26<br><br>2 | 1706 to 1716 | 301 | 112 (0×70) - 11 | 100 (0×64) - 8<br>101 (0×65) - 104<br><br>102 (0×66) - 150<br><br>103 (0×67) - 35 | **Product Name [Maj.Min Rev]:** Banner XS26 FID2 (301) [2.050]<br>**EDS File:** BannerXS_SC26_2E_301_FID2_1_2_08102017.eds<br><br>**Industrial Ethernet User's Guide:** XS/SC26-2E (FID 2 1716-) Industrial Ethernet User's Guide |
| XS26<br>SC26<br><br>2 & 3 | 1717 or later | 300[19] | 112 (0×70) - 2<br>113 (0×70) - 11 | 100 (0×64) - 8<br>101 (0×65) - 104<br><br>102 (0×66) - 150<br><br>103 (0×67) - 35 | **Product Name [Maj.Min Rev]:** Banner XS26 FID 1/2 (300) [2.064]<br>**EDS File:** BannerXS_SC26_2E_300_1_8_11102017.eds[19]<br><br>**Industrial Ethernet User's Guide:** XS/SC26-2E (FID 2 1717+) Industrial Ethernet User's Guide |
| XS26<br>SC26<br><br>2, 3 & 4<br><br>SC10<br>any | 1717 or later | 300[19] | 112 (0×70) - 2<br>113 (0×70) - 11<br><br>114 (0×72) - 14 | 100 (0×64) - 8<br>101 (0×65) - 104<br><br>102 (0×66) - 150<br><br>103 (0×67) - 35<br><br>104 (0×68) - 112 | **Product Name [Maj.Min Rev]:** Banner XS26 SC26 SC10 (300) [2.090]<br>**EDS File:** Banner_XS26_SC26_SC10_300_2_1_06022020.eds[19]<br><br>**XS/SC26-2 and SC10-2 Instruction Manual:** rev R and later |
| XS26<br>2 and later<br><br>SC10<br>any | 1717 or later | 300 | 112 (0×70) - 2<br><br>113 (0×71) - 11<br><br>114 (0×72) - 14 | 100 (0×64) - 8<br><br>101 (0×65) - 104<br><br>102 (0×66) - 150<br><br>103 (0×67) - 35<br><br>104 (0×68) - 112<br><br>105 (0×69) - 240 | **Product Name [Maj.Min Rev]:** Banner Safety Controller [2.001]<br><br>**EDS File:** Banner_XS26_SC26_SC10_300_2_3_05192021.eds<br><br>**XS/SC26 and SC10-2 Instruction Manual:** rev W and later |

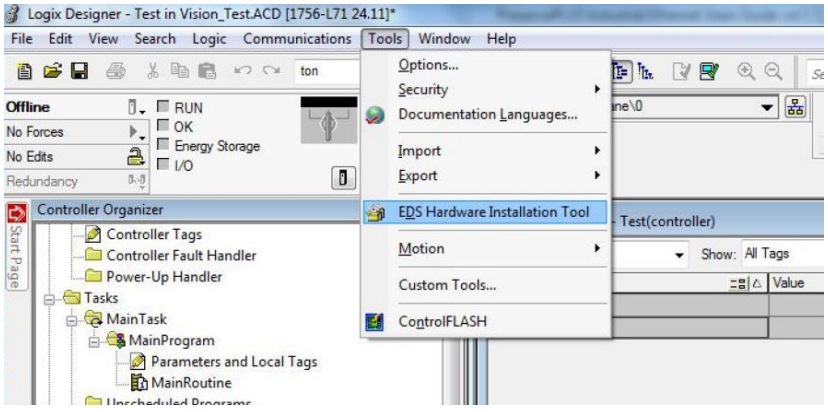
**NOTE:** As of 1 October 2019, the current Industrial Ethernet information is part of the *XS/SC26 and SC10-2 Instruction Manual*. The *Industrial Ethernet User's Guide* for the older systems is embedded in the EDS folder available at www.bannerengineering.com/safetycontroller.

## Banner Safety Controller EDS File Installation in ControlLogix Software

Use the **EDS Hardware Installation Tool** to register the Electronic Data Sheet (EDS) file.

1. On the **Tools** menu, click **EDS Hardware Installation Tool**.
   The **Rockwell Automation's EDS Wizard** dialog displays.

   *Figure 193. Tools—EDS Hardware Installation Tool*




2. Click **Next**.
3. Select the **Register an EDS file(s)** option.

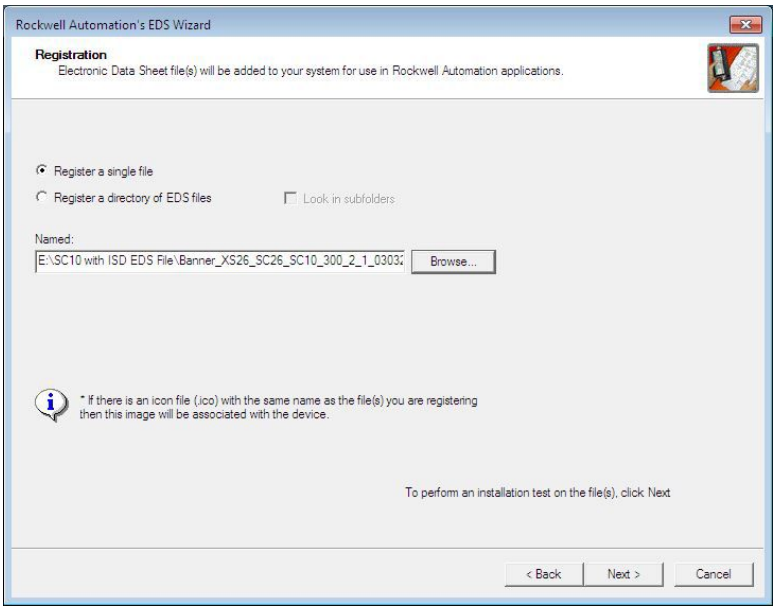

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 194. Rockwell Automation's EDS Wizard—Options*




4. Browse to locate the EDS file and click **Next**.
   See "Which XS/SC26 EDS file and documentation should you use?" on page 200 for more information.

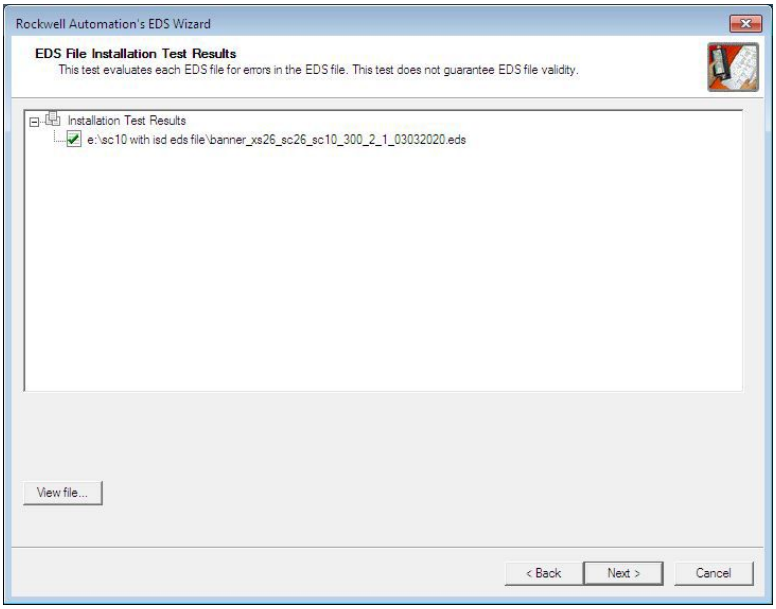
   *Figure 195. Select File to Register*




5. Click **Next** to register the tested file.

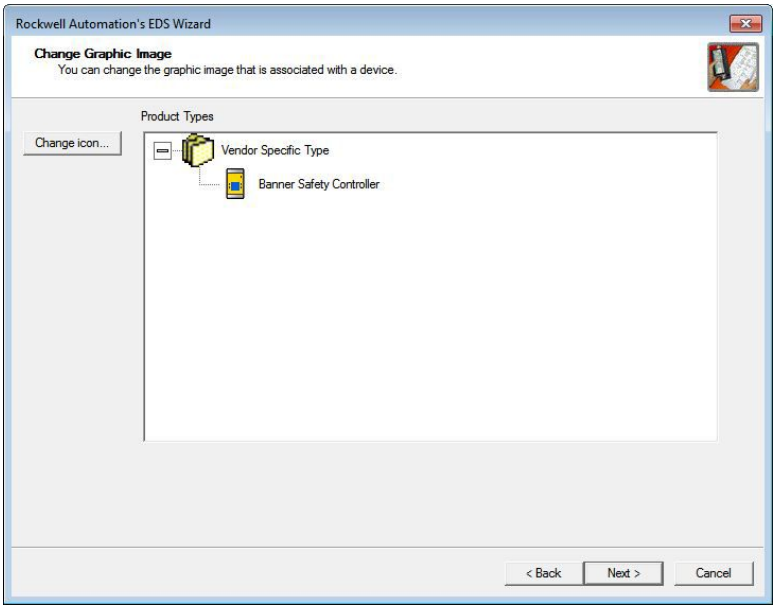

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 196. Register the Tested File*




6. Click **Next** when you see the icon associated with the EDS file.

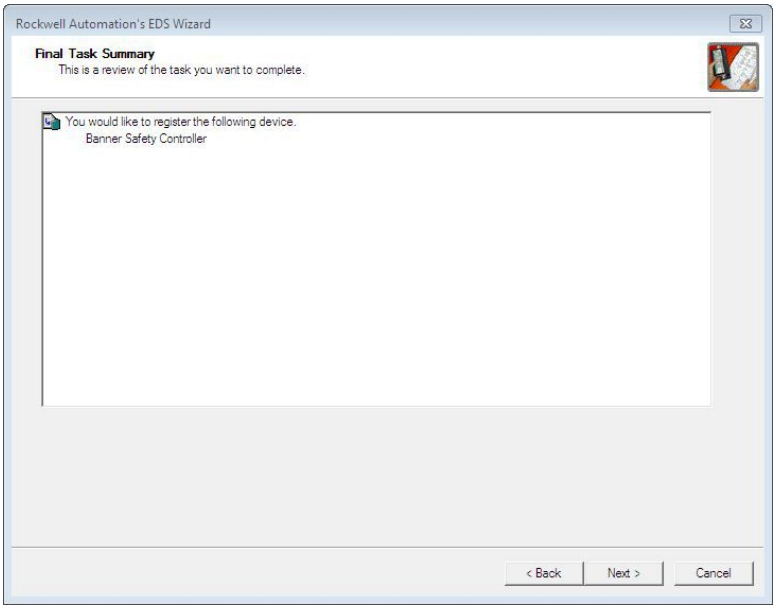
*Figure 197. Rockwell Automation's EDS Wizard*




7. Click **Next** to register the EDS file.

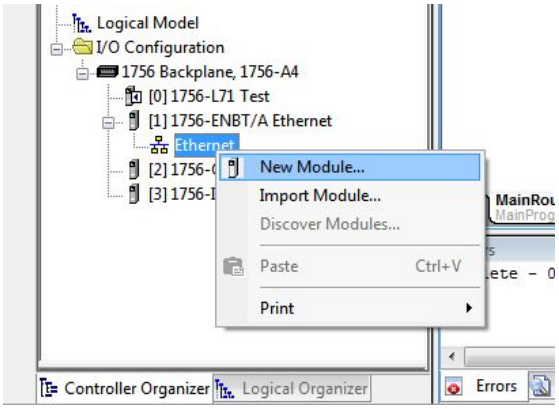

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 198. Register the EDS File*




8. Click **Finish** to close the **EDS Wizard** .
9. Right-click on the PLC's Ethernet adapter and select **New Module...**

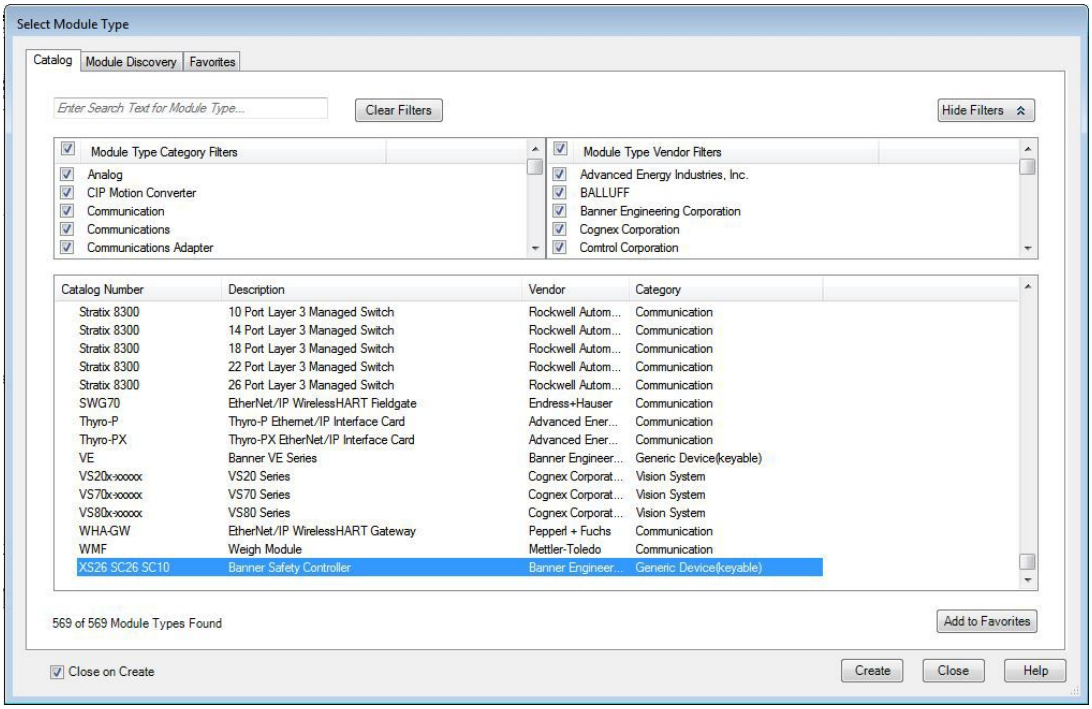
*Figure 199. New Module*




10. Locate the device in the catalog and click **Create**.

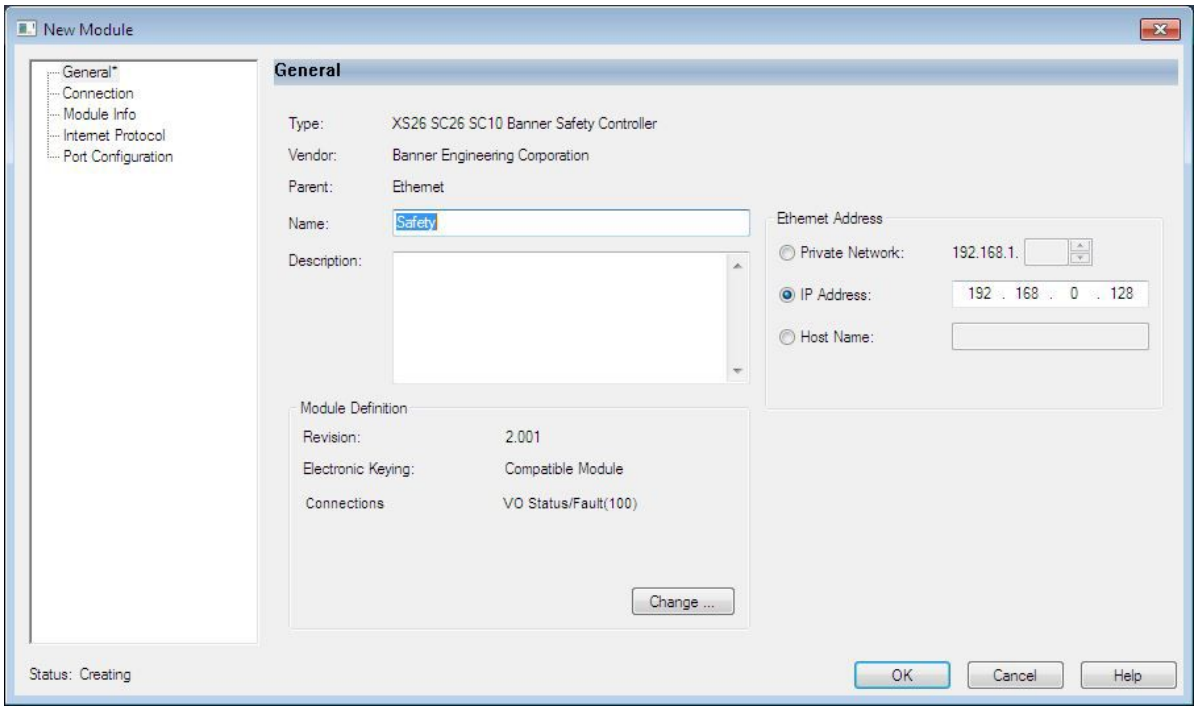

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 200. Select Module Type*




11. Enter a name, description (optional), and IP address for the device.

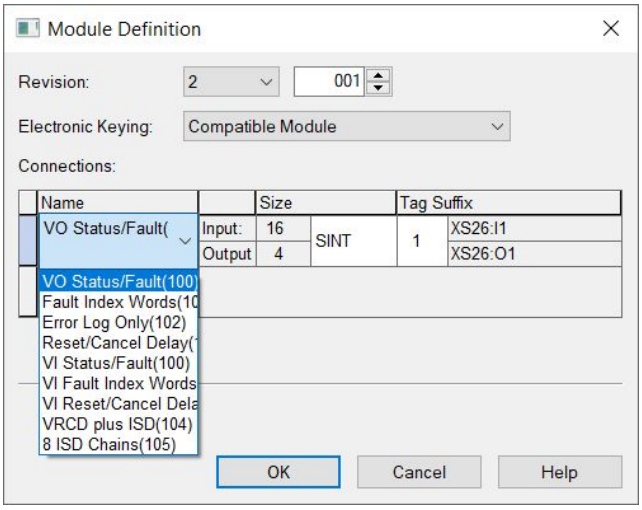
*Figure 201. New Module*




12. Click **Change** in the **Module Definition** field.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 202. Module Definition*




13. Select the desired connection in the **Module Definition** window. Each of the items in the **Name** list represents a fixed grouping of input and output assembly instances:

> **NOTE:**
> - Not all connection options are applicable to all Safety Controllers.
> - Select only one **Name** from the list. Assigning multiple names causes communication issues (causes bits to turn ON and OFF).

**VO Status/Fault (100)-**

- O>T PLC Output/Safety Controller Input Assembly 112 (0×70), size 2 16-bit registers
- T>O PLC Input/Safety Controller Output Assembly 100 (0×64), size 8 16-bit registers

**Fault Index Words (101)-**

- O>T PLC Output/Safety Controller Input Assembly 112 (0×70), size 2 16-bit registers
- T>O PLC Input/Safety Controller Output Assembly 101 (0×65), size 104 16-bit registers

**Error Log Only (102)-**

- O>T PLC Output/Safety Controller Input Assembly 112 (0×70), size 2 16-bit registers
- T>O PLC Input/Safety Controller Output Assembly 102 (0×66), size 150 16-bit registers

**Reset/Cancel Delay (103)-**

- O>T PLC Output/Safety Controller Input Assembly 112 (0×70), size 2 16-bit registers
- T>O PLC Input/Safety Controller Output Assembly 103 (0×67), size 35 16-bit registers

**VI Status/Fault (100)-** [20]

- O>T PLC Output/Safety Controller Input Assembly 113 (0×71), size 11 16-bit registers
- T>O PLC Input/Safety Controller Output Assembly 100 (0×64), size 8 16-bit registers

**VI Fault Index Words (101)-** [20]

- O>T PLC Output/Safety Controller Input Assembly 113 (0×71), size 11 16-bit registers
- T>O PLC Input/Safety Controller Output Assembly 101 (0×65), size 104 16-bit registers

**VI Reset/Cancel Delay (103)-** [20]

- O>T PLC Output/Safety Controller Input Assembly 113 (0×71), size 11 16-bit registers
- T>O PLC Input/Safety Controller Output Assembly 103 (0×67), size 35 16-bit registers

**VRCD plus ISD (104)–**[20]

- O>T PLC Output/Safety Controller Input Assembly 114 (0×72), size 14 16-bit registers
- T>O PLC Input/Safety Controller Output Assembly 104 (0×68), size 112 16-bit registers

[20] Select one of the O>T Assembly Instance 113 (0×71) or 114 (0×72) connections to use Virtual Input/Cancel Delay.

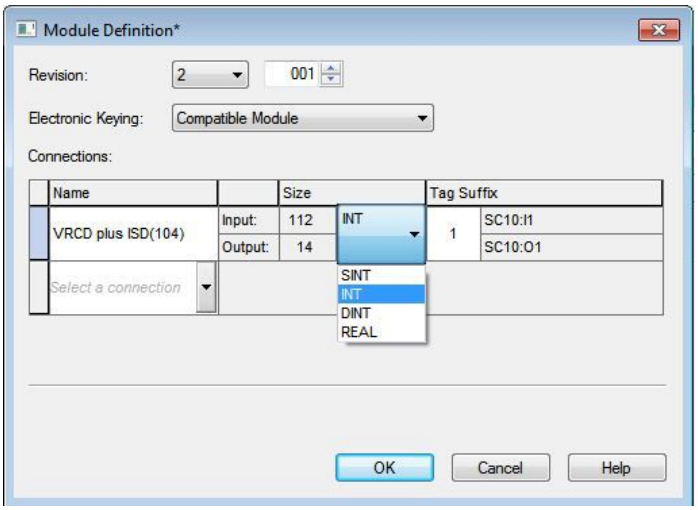

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**8 ISD Chains (105)–**

- O>T PLC Output/Safety Controller Input Assembly 114 (0×72), size 14 16-bit registers
- T>O PLC Input/Safety Controller Output Assembly 105 (0×69), size 240 16-bit registers

14. Select **INT** as the data type.

*Figure 203. Module Definition—Data Type*




15. Optional: The Banner Safety Controller software can export a CSV file to provide description labels for the newly created tags in the PLC.

    When offline in the RS Studio 5000 PLC software and there is a project open, import tag descriptions from a saved CSV file.

    Select the same connection for the EDS file connection (for example, Eight ISD Chains) and in the **Export to CSV & L5X** window. This ensures that the labels from the exported CSV will match the tags created by the EDS file.

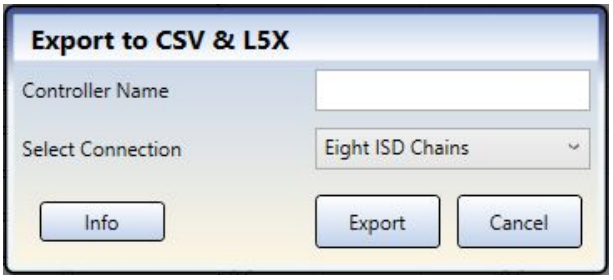
    To create the CSV files, two items must be known:

    - The name assigned to the Safety Controller in the PLC. This is needed to generate the file to import into the PLC software
    - Which input and output assembly instances are going to be requested

    a. In the Banner Safety Controller software, on the **Industrial Ethernet** tab, make sure **Ethernet/IP Assemblies** is selected from the list at the left.
    b. Click **Export**.

    The **Export to CSV & L5X** window opens.

*Figure 204. **Export to CSV & L5X***




    c. In the **Controller Name** field, enter the name assigned to the Safety Controller in the PLC software.
    d. Select the desired connection in the **Select Connection** list.

    Which connection to select is based on what Assembly Instances are being requested:

*Table 10. **Select Connection** Field Choices*

| Connection Name | Output Assembly | Input Assembly |
|---|---|---|
| Status/Fault | 112 | 100 |
| Fault Index Words | 112 | 101 |
| Reset/Cancel Delay | 112 | 103 |

Continued on page 208


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 207

| Connection Name | Output Assembly | Input Assembly |
|---|---|---|
| VI Status/Faults | 113 | 100 |
| VI Fault Index Words | 113 | 101 |
| VI Reset/Cancel Delay | 113 | 103 |
| VRCD Plus ISD | 114 | 104 |
| Eight ISD Chains | 114 | 105 |

If any virtual inputs (VI) are being used, the PLC's output assembly must be set to 113 or 114. This is so that the PLC can send the virtual input words to the Safety Controller. If information on the ISD inputs is desired with XS26-ISD FID 5 or later or SC10-2 FID 2 or later controllers, an output assembly of 114 must be used to send virtual inputs (if used) and the extra words to request the ISD information (VRCD—virtual reset/cancel delay).

Input assembly 104 is used for up to two ISD chains (by either XS26-ISD FID 5 or later, if the chains are added to IN1/IN2 and IN3/IN4, or SC10-2 FID 2 or later controllers). Input assembly 105 supports up to eight ISD chains and can be used only by XS26-ISD FID 5 or later.

e. Click **Export**.
f. Save the CSV files in the desired location.

> **NOTE:** A .csv and a .L5X file are both saved.

The CSV file is ready to be directly imported into the Ethernet/IP Assembly PLC software or the file can be opened with any software that can read a CSV file (for example, Microsoft Excel).

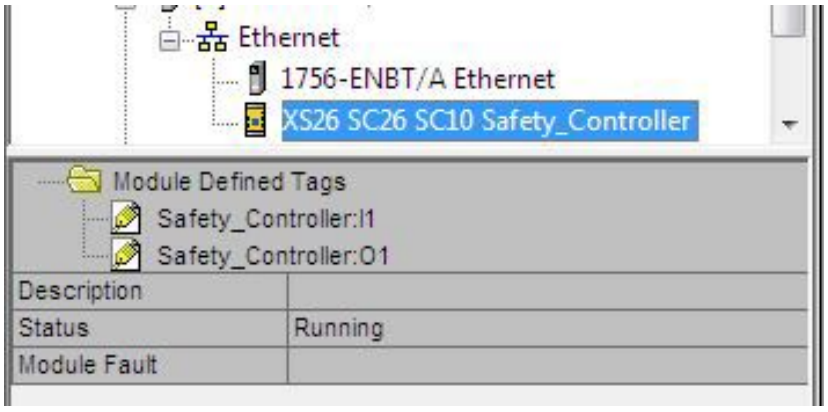
g. To import the CSV file into the RS Studio 5000 PLC software, go to **Tools › Import › Tags and Comments** and select the generated CSV file.

Tag descriptions are now added to the RS Studio software.

> **NOTE:** Steps c and d must have been accurately configured for this import to complete successfully.

16. Click **OK** twice and download the program to the PLC.

*Figure 205. Download to the PLC*




The connection looks like the one in "Figure: Download to the PLC" on page 208.

## Examples of Incorrect Connection Choices

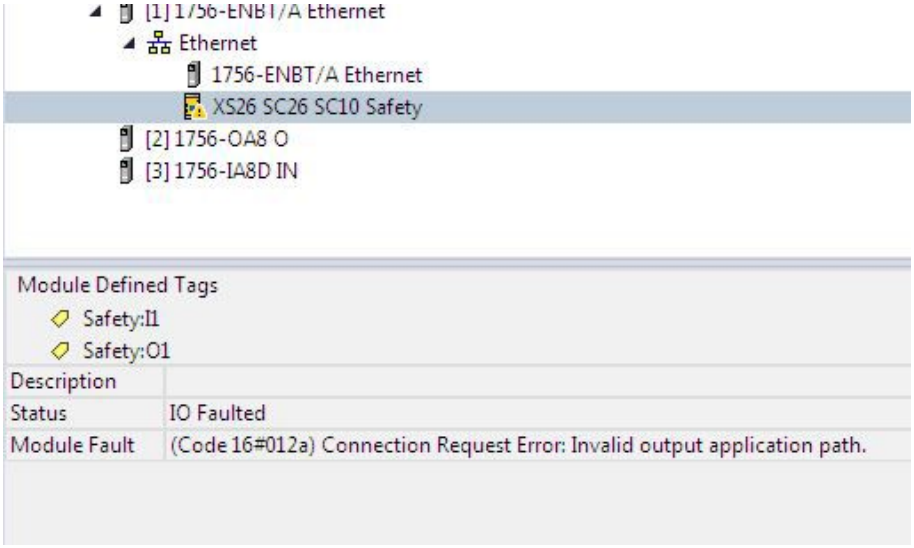
The following are examples of selecting an incorrect Connection from the EDS file.

### Example 1

Attempting to use "VI Status/Fault (100)" connection on a Safety Controller that does not support Virtual Inputs; O>T Assembly Instance 113 does not exist for that hardware.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

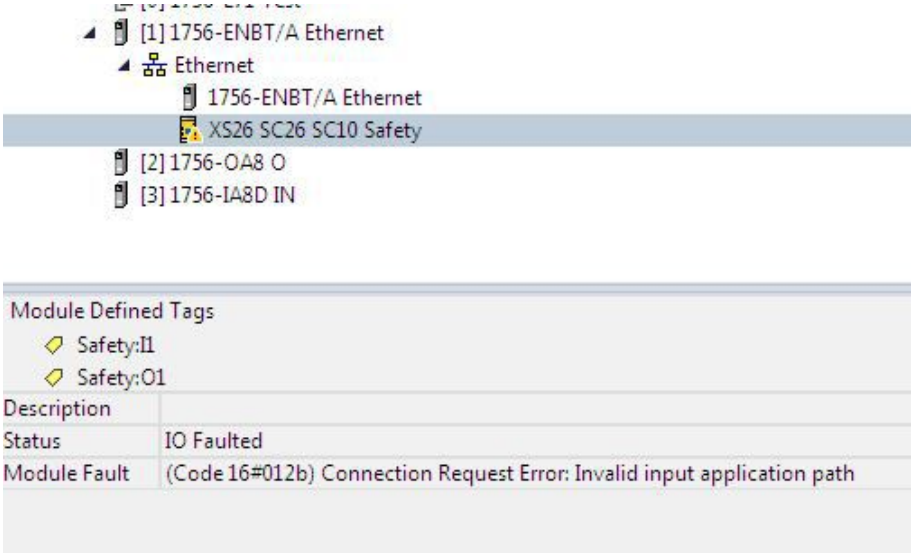
*Figure 206. Incorrect: Using VI/Status Faults on a Safety Controller that does not support this feature*




### Example 2

Attempting to use "Reset/Cancel Delay (103)" connection on a Safety Controller that does not support Virtual Inputs; T>O Assembly Instance 103 does not exist for that hardware.

*Figure 207. Incorrect: Reset/Cancel Delay on a Safety Controller that does not support this feature*

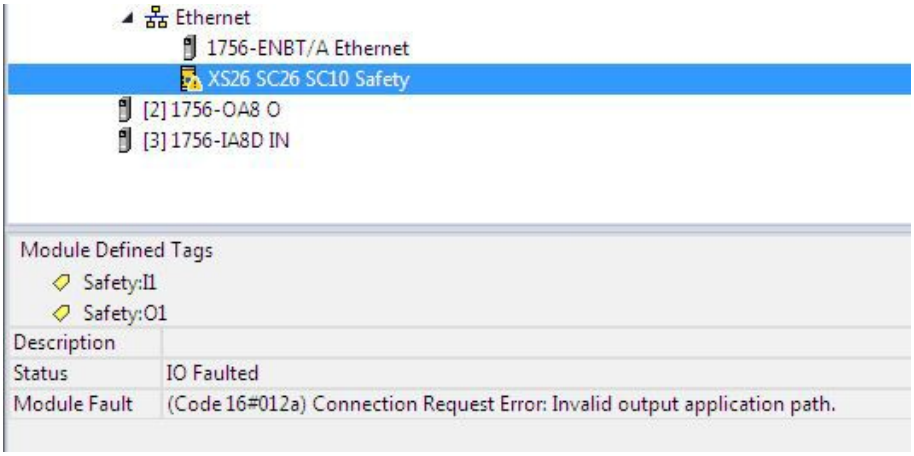



### Example 3

Attempting to use "VRCD plus ISD (104)" connection on a Safety Controller that does not support ISD; T>O Assembly Instance 104 does not exist for that hardware.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 208. Incorrect: VRCD plus ISD on a Safety Controller that does not support this feature*



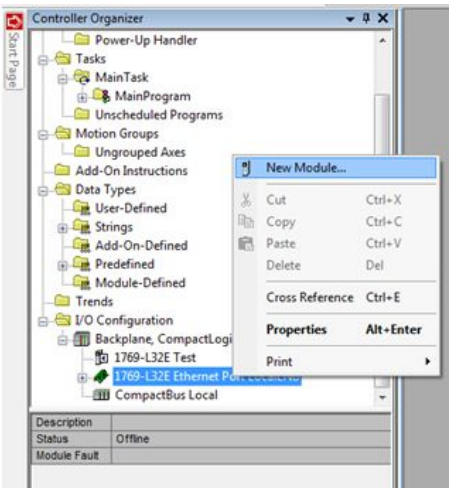

## 13.4.3 Generic Ethernet Module Connection

To create an implicit Class 1 configuration to the Safety Controller using EtherNet/IP when using a ControlLogix family PLC, configure the Safety Controller as a “Generic Ethernet Module”. The following is a sample setup of a Banner Engineering Corp. device.

**NOTE:** This is an example procedure.

1. Add a generic Ethernet module to the PLC’s Ethernet card.
   a. Click **New Module**.

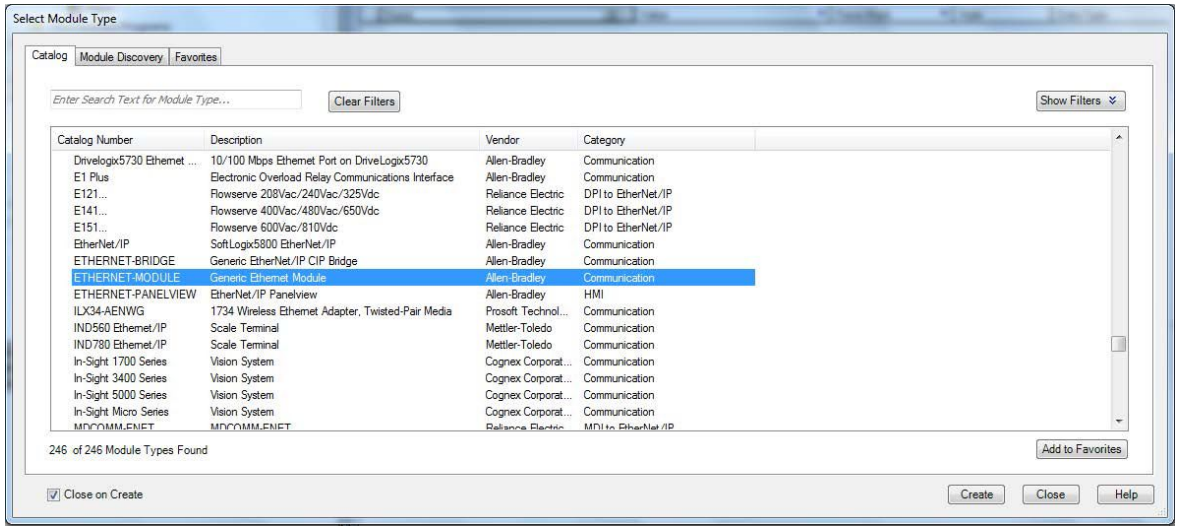
   *Figure 209. Add Ethernet Module*




   b. From the catalog, click **Generic Ethernet Module**.

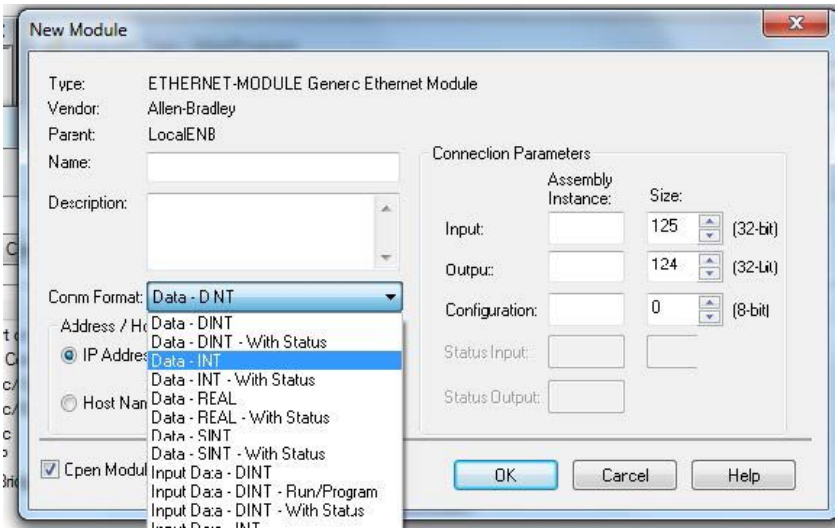

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 210. Select Module*




2. Configure the Module Properties.
   a. Select **INT** from the **Comm Format** list (default is DINT).

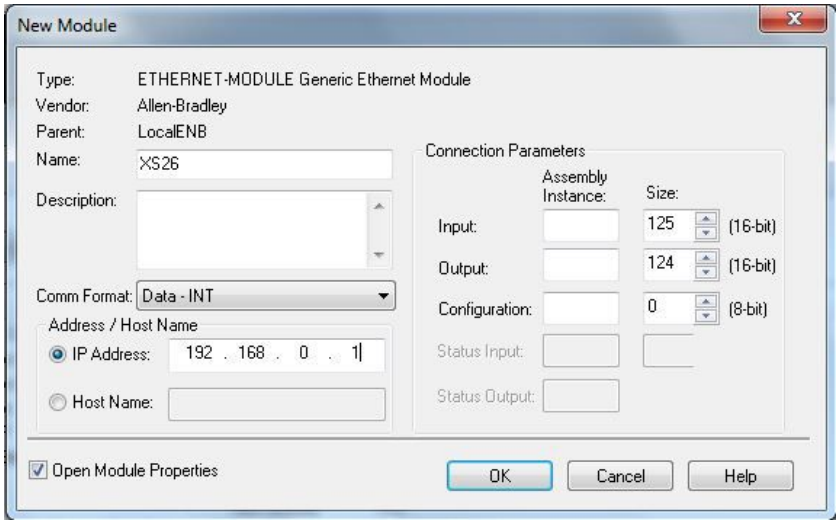
*Figure 211. Set Comm Format*




   b. Enter a module **Name** and the **IP Address** of the Safety Controller.
      The default Safety Controller IP address is 192.168.0.128 with a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

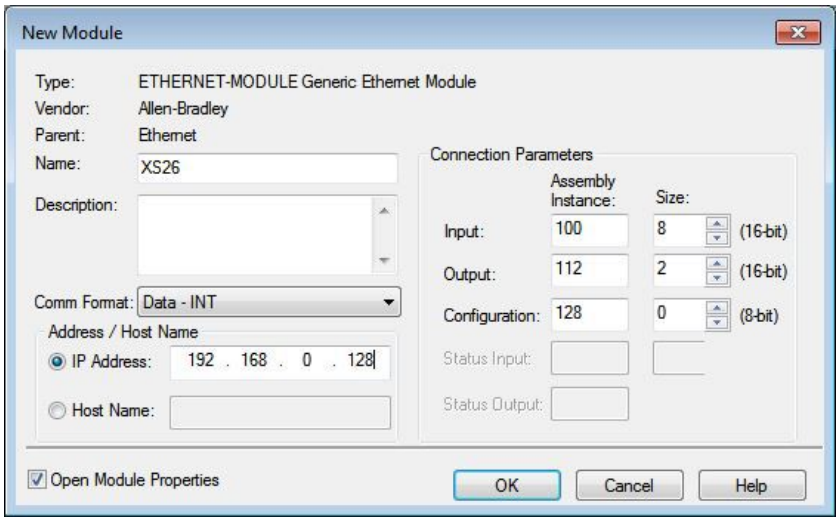
*Figure 212. Add Name and IP Address*




c. Under Connection Parameters, select one of many possible Assembly Object setups. See " Inputs to the Safety Controller (Outputs from the PLC)" on page 217 and "Outputs from the Safety Controller (Inputs to the PLC) " on page 218 for more information on each choice.

> **NOTE:** Select one of the O > T Assembly Instance 113 (0×71) connections to make use of Virtual Input/Cancel Delay.

*Figure 213. PLC Input Assembly 100 (0x64), size 8 words (VO Status/Fault)*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 214. PLC Input Assembly 101 (0x65), size 104 words (Fault Index Words)*

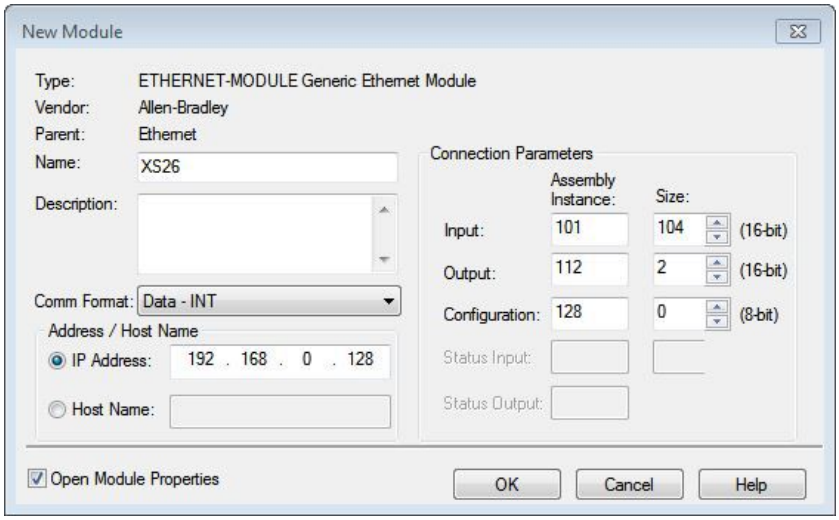



*Figure 215. PLC Input Assembly 102 (0x66), size 150 words (Safety Controller Fault Log Only)*

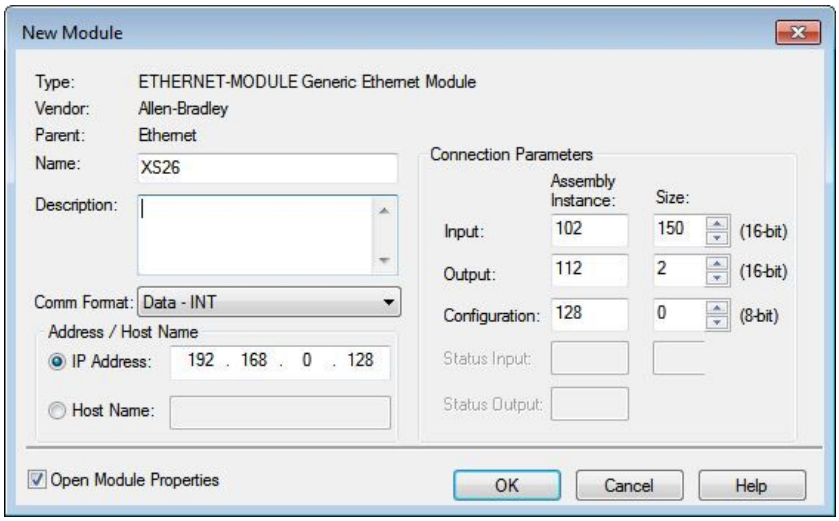
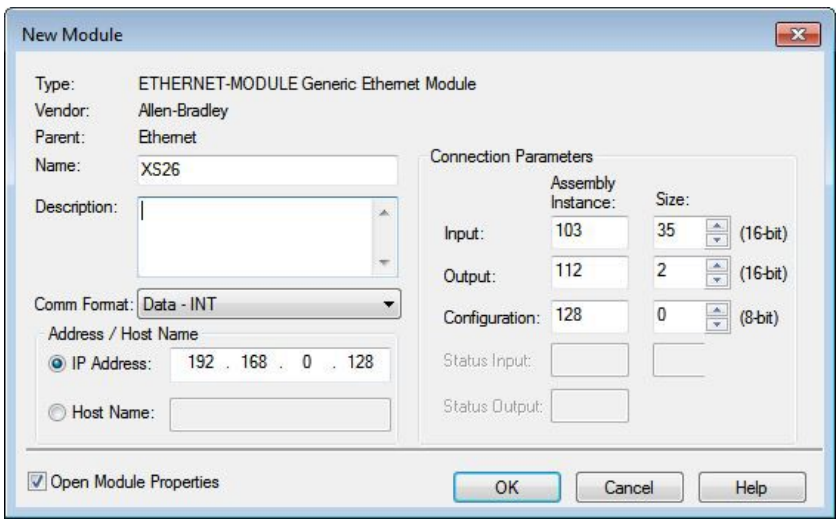



*Figure 216. PLC Input Assembly 103 (0x67), size 35 words (Reset/Cancel Delay)*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 217. PLC Input Assembly 100 (0x64), size 8 words (VI Status/Fault)*

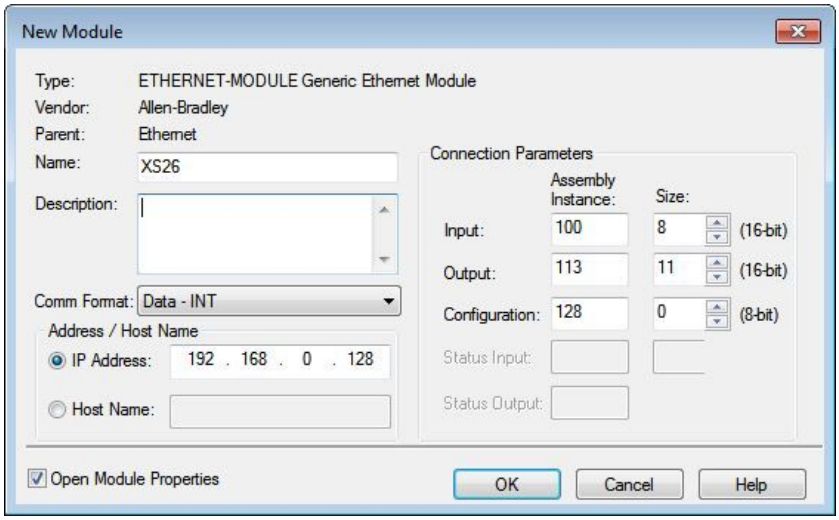



*Figure 218. PLC Input Assembly 101 (0x65), size 104 words (VI Fault Index Words)*

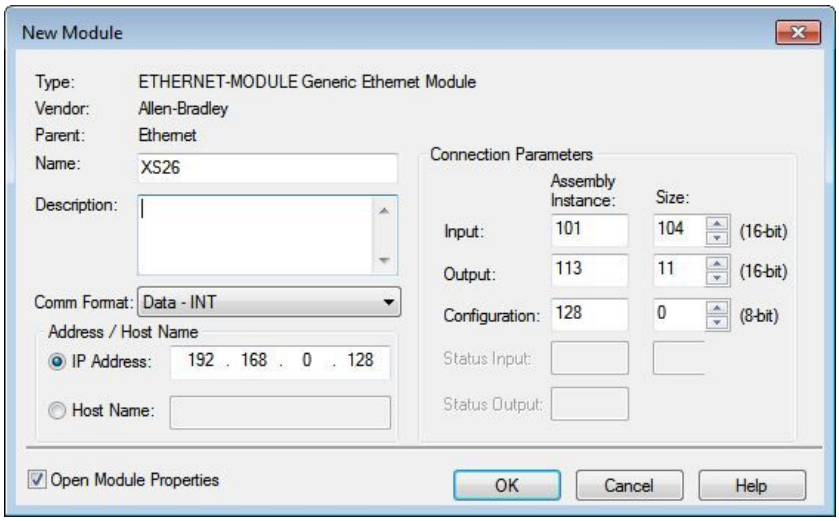
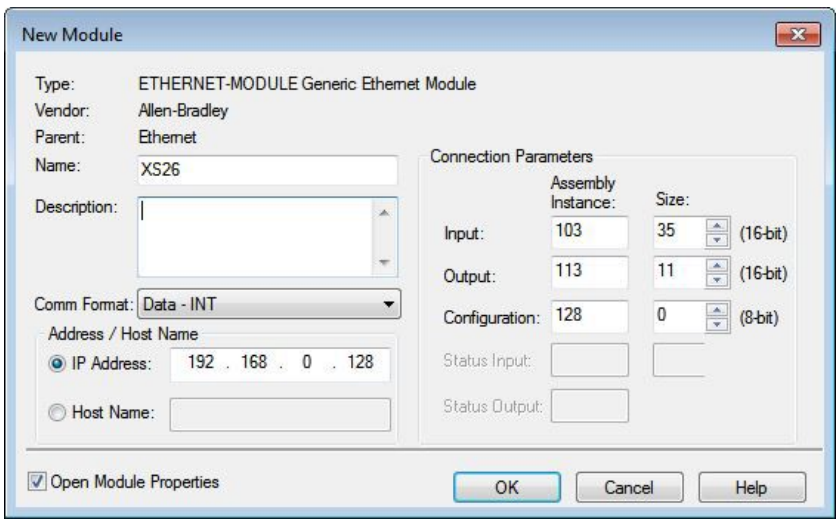



*Figure 219. PLC Input Assembly 103 (0×67), size 35 words (VI Reset/Cancel Delay)*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 220. PLC Input Assembly 104 (0×68), size 112 words (VRCD plus ISD)*

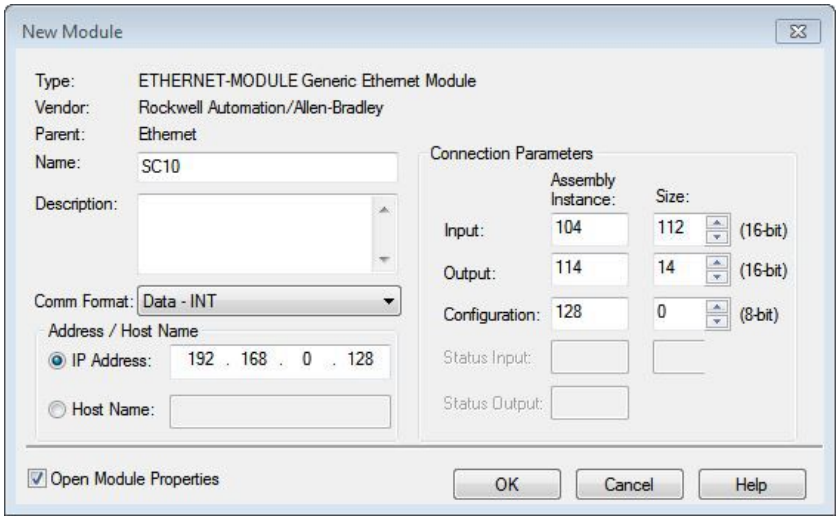
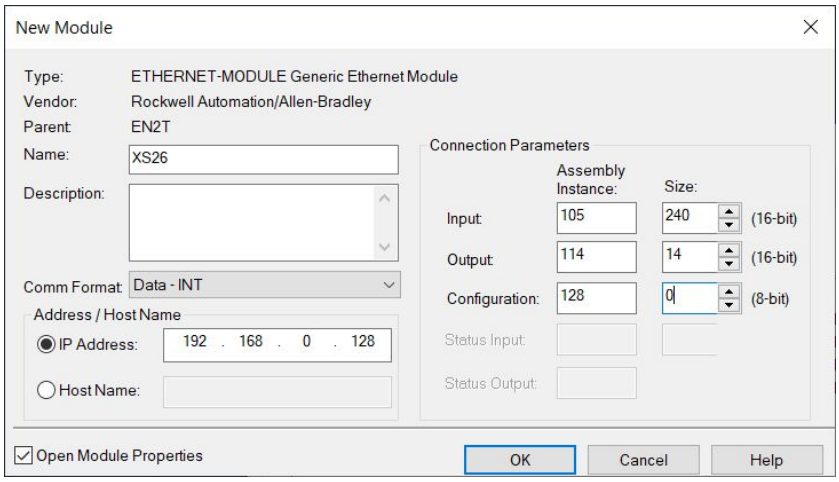



*Figure 221. PLC Input Assembly 105 (0×69), size 240 words (8 ISD Chains)*

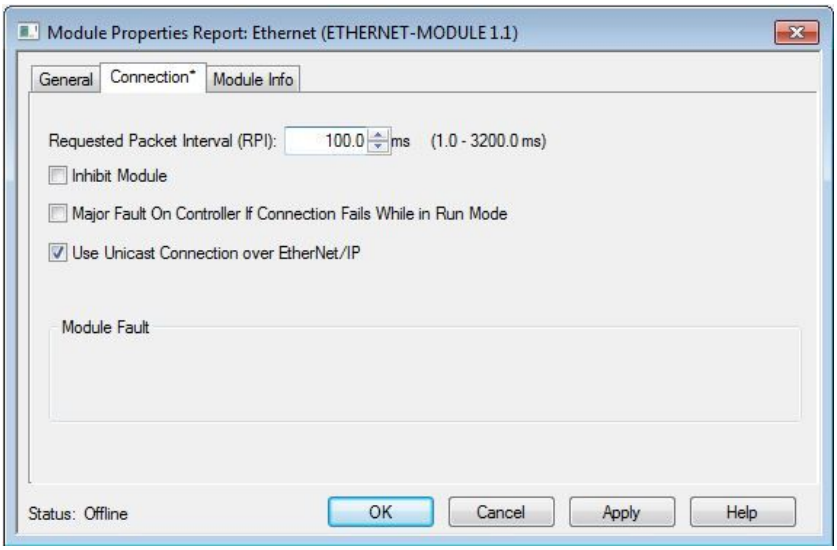



d. Go to the **Connection** tab and set the parameters:
   - Enter the desired **Requested Packet Interval (RPI)**
   - Enable or disable **Use Unicast Connection over Ethernet/IP**, using the checkbox

> **NOTE:** The recommended minimum RPI is 100 ms.

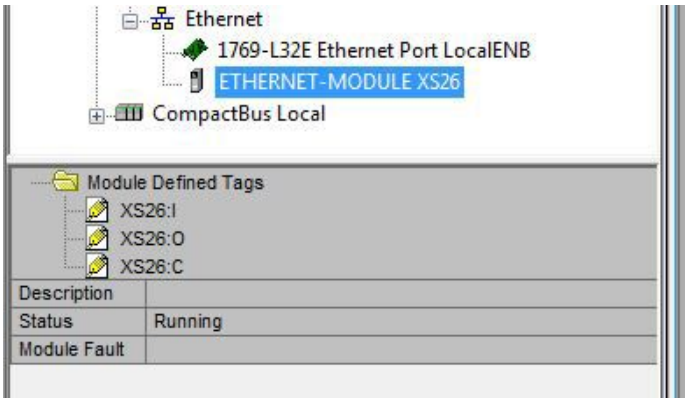

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 222. Connection Parameters*




If the module configuration was successful, the following information displays:

*Figure 223. Successful Configuration*




I = Inputs to PLC (outputs from the Safety Controller)

O = Outputs from PLC (inputs to the Safety Controller–not used)

C = Configuration (not used)

3. Locate the memory map in the **Controller Tags** list. The 8 input words from Assembly Instance 100 are shown below as an example.

*Figure 224. Memory Map*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| XS26:I | {...} | {...} | | AB:ETHERNET_MODULE_ |
| XS26:I.Data | {...} | {...} | Decimal | INT[8] |
| XS26:I.Data[0] | 1 | | Decimal | INT |
| XS26:I.Data[1] | 128 | | Decimal | INT |
| XS26:I.Data[2] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |
| XS26:I.Data[3] | 8 | | Decimal | INT |
| XS26:I.Data[4] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |
| XS26:I.Data[5] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |
| XS26:I.Data[6] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |
| XS26:I.Data[7] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |

In the example pictured above, we see that Virtual Outputs 1, 24, and 52 are ON.

VO1 is word 0, bit 0 > 2^0 = 1
VO24 is word 1, bit 7 > 2^7 = 128
VO52 is word 3, bit 3 > 2^3 = 8


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## 13.4.4 Inputs to the Safety Controller (Outputs from the PLC)

### PLC Output Assembly Instance 112 (0×70)—2 Registers (Basic VI)

The Safety Controller can use Instance 112 (0×70) with a size of two registers (16-bit) when sending virtual inputs 1–32 to the Safety Controller.

*Table 11. PLC Output Assembly Instance 112 (0×70)—Safety Controller Inputs O > T*

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Virtual Input On/Off (1–16) | 16-bit integer |
| 1 | Virtual Input On/Off (17–32) | 16-bit integer |

### PLC Output Assembly Instance 113 (0x71)—11 Registers (Expanded VI plus VRCD)

The Safety Controller uses Instance 113 (0x71)[21] with a size of eleven registers (16-bit) as its Input Assembly (PLC Output) when sending virtual inputs, resets, and cancel delays to the Safety Controller.

*Table 12. PLC Output Assembly Instance 113 (0x71)—Safety Controller Inputs O > T*

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Virtual Input On/Off (1–16) | 16-bit integer |
| 1 | Virtual Input On/Off (17–32) | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | Virtual Input On/Off (33–48) | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | Virtual Input On/Off (49–64) | 16-bit integer |
| 4 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 5 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 6 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 7 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 8 | Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay (1–16) [RCD Register Bits] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 9 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 10 | RCD Actuation Code [RCD Enable Register] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |

### PLC Output Assembly Instance 114 (0×72)—14 Registers (Expanded VI, VRCD, plus ISD)

The Safety Controller uses Instance 114 (0×72) with a size of fourteen registers (16-bit) as its Input Assembly (PLC Output) when sending virtual inputs, resets, and cancel delays to the safety controller and for obtaining performance and status information about ISD devices.

*Table 13. PLC Output Assembly Instance 114 (0×72)—Safety Controller Inputs O > T*

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Virtual Input On/Off (1–16) | 16-bit integer |
| 1 | Virtual Input On/Off (17–32) | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | Virtual Input On/Off (33–48) | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | Virtual Input On/Off (49–64) | 16-bit integer |
| 4 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 5 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 6 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 218

[21] This eleven word assembly is called 112 (0x70) for FID 2 Safety Controllers with date codes before and including "1716". See "Which XS/SC26 EDS file and documentation should you use?" on page 200 for more information.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 217

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 7 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 8 | Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay (1–16) [RCD Register Bits] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 9 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 10 | RCD Actuation Code [RCD Enable Register] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 11 | ISD Read Request (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 12 | ISD Chain Requested (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 13 | ISD Device Requested (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |

## 13.4.5 Outputs from the Safety Controller (Inputs to the PLC)

There are five choices for Safety Controller Output Assembly Objects.

The first and smallest choice includes information about Virtual Outputs and whether they have faults. The second choice adds advanced data such as the reason why each of the safety outputs is off, and more descriptive fault information for the Virtual Outputs. The third choice is used exclusively to access the Safety Controller's fault log. The fourth choice is used for the Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Off Delay feedback. The fifth choice allows access to both Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay feedback and ISD information. All five options are shown in the following sections.

### PLC Input Assembly Instance 100 (0×64)—8 Registers (VO Status/Fault)

This Assembly Instance includes only basic information about the status of the first 64 Virtual Outputs.

*Table 14. PLC Input Assembly Instance 100 (0×64)—Safety Controller Outputs T > O*

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 1 | VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 4 | Fault bits for VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 5 | Fault bits for VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 6 | Fault bits for VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 7 | Fault bits for VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |

### PLC Input Assembly Instance 101 (0×65)—104 Registers (Fault Index Words)

This Assembly Instance includes the status of the first 64 Virtual Outputs plus advanced information about potential error codes and the status of the 2 safety outputs.

*Table 15. PLC Input Assembly Instance 101 (0×65)—Safety Controller Outputs T > O*

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 1 | VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 4 | Fault bits for VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 219


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 218

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 5 | Fault bits for VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 6 | Fault bits for VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 7 | Fault bits for VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 8–39 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 40 | VO1 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 41 | VO2 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 42 | VO3 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 43 | VO4 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 44 | VO5 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 45 | VO6 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 46 | VO7 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 47 | VO8 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 48 | VO9 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 49 | VO10 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 50 | VO11 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 51 | VO12 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 52 | VO13 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 53 | VO14 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 54 | VO15 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 55 | VO16 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 56 | VO17 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 57 | VO18 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 58 | VO19 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 59 | VO20 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 60 | VO21 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 61 | VO22 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 62 | VO23 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 63 | VO24 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 64 | VO25 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 65 | VO26 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 66 | VO27 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 67 | VO28 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 68 | VO29 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 69 | VO30 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 70 | VO31 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 71 | VO32 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 72 | VO33 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 73 | VO34 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 74 | VO35 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 75 | VO36 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 76 | VO37 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 220


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 219

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 77 | VO38 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 78 | VO39 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 79 | VO40 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 80 | VO41 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 81 | VO42 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 82 | VO43 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 83 | VO44 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 84 | VO45 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 85 | VO46 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 86 | VO47 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 87 | VO48 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 88 | VO49 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 89 | VO50 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 90 | VO51 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 91 | VO52 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 92 | VO53 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 93 | VO54 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 94 | VO55 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 95 | VO56 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 96 | VO57 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 97 | VO58 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 98 | VO59 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 99 | VO60 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 100 | VO61 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 101 | VO62 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 102 | VO63 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 103 | VO64 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |

#### Virtual Output (VO) Fault Index Words

The Virtual Output Fault Index number is a way to represent the Fault Code associated with a given Virtual Output as a single 16-bit integer. This value is equivalent to the Error Message Index value for a given Virtual Output. See "XS/SC26 Fault Code Table" on page 370 and "SC10-2 Fault Code Table " on page 375. Note that not every Virtual Output has an associated Fault Index.

## PLC Input Assembly Instance 102 (0×66)—150 Registers (Error Log Only)

This Assembly Instance is used exclusively to access the fault log information on the Safety Controller.

Note that this Assembly Instance contains no information about the status of the Virtual Outputs.

The Safety Controller can store 10 faults in the log. Fault #1 is the most recent fault while higher fault numbers represent successively older faults.

*Table 16. PLC Input Assembly Instance 102 (0—66) – Safety Controller Outputs T > O*

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 0–1 | Fault #1 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 2–9 | Fault #1 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |

Continued on page 221


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 220

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 10 | Fault #1 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 11 | Fault #1 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 12 | Fault #1 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 13–14 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 15–16 | Fault #2 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 17–24 | Fault #2 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 25 | Fault #2 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 26 | Fault #2 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 27 | Fault #2 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 28–29 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 30–31 | Fault #3 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 32–39 | Fault #3 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 40 | Fault #3 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 41 | Fault #3 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 42 | Fault #3 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 43–44 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 45–46 | Fault #4 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 47–54 | Fault #4 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 55 | Fault #4 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 56 | Fault #4 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 57 | Fault #4 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 58–59 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 60–61 | Fault #5 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 62–69 | Fault #5 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 70 | Fault #5 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 71 | Fault #5 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 72 | Fault #5 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 73–74 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 75–76 | Fault #6 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 77–84 | Fault #6 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 85 | Fault #6 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 86 | Fault #6 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 87 | Fault #6 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 88–89 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 90–91 | Fault #7 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 92–99 | Fault #7 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 100 | Fault #7 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 101 | Fault #7 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 102 | Fault #7 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 103–104 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 105–106 | Fault #8 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 222


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 221

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 107–114 | Fault #8 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 115 | Fault #8 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 116 | Fault #8 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 117 | Fault #8 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 118–119 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 120–121 | Fault #9 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 122–129 | Fault #9 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 130 | Fault #9 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 131 | Fault #9 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 132 | Fault #9 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 133–134 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 135–136 | Fault #10 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 137–144 | Fault #10 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 145 | Fault #10 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 146 | Fault #10 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 147 | Fault #10 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 148–149 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |

**Fault Time Stamp**
The relative time, in seconds, when the fault occurred. As measured from time 0, which is the last time the Safety Controller was powered up.

**Name of I/O or System**
This is an ASCII-string describing the source of the fault.

**Error Code, Advanced Error Code, Error Index Message**
The Error Code and the Advanced Error Code, taken together, form the Safety Controller Fault Code. The format for the Fault Code is `Error Code 'dot' Advanced Error Code`. For example, a Safety Controller Fault Code of 2.1 is represented by an Error Code of `2` and an Advanced Error Code of `1`. The Error Message Index value is the Error Code and the Advanced Error Code together, and includes a leading zero with the Advanced Error Code, if necessary. For example, a Safety Controller Fault Code of 2.1 is represented by an Error Message Index of `201`. The Error Message Index value is a convenient way to get the complete Fault Code while only reading a single 16-bit register.

## PLC Input Assembly Instance 103 (0×67)—35 Registers (Reset/Cancel Delay)

This Assembly Instance is used to communicate the state of all 256 Virtual Outputs and Faults and to provide the feedback information required to execute virtual resets and cancel delays.

*Table 17. PLC Input Assembly Instance 103 (0×67)—Safety Controller Outputs T > O*

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 1 | VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 4 | VO65 – VO80 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 5 | VO81 – VO96 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 6 | VO97 – VO112 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 7 | VO113 – VO128 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 8 | VO129 – VO144 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 9 | VO145 – VO160 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 223


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 222

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 10 | VO161 – VO176 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 11 | VO177 – VO192 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 12 | VO193 – VO208 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 13 | VO209 – VO224 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 14 | VO225 – VO240 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 15 | VO241 – VO256 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 16 | Fault bits for VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 17 | Fault bits for VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 18 | Fault bits for VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 19 | Fault bits for VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 20 | Fault bits for VO65 – VO80 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 21 | Fault bits for VO81 – VO96 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 22 | Fault bits for VO97 – VO112 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 23 | Fault bits for VO113 – VO128 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 24 | Fault bits for VO129 – VO144 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 25 | Fault bits for VO145 – VO160 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 26 | Fault bits for VO161 – VO176 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 27 | Fault bits for VO177 – VO192 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 28 | Fault bits for VO193 – VO208 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 29 | Fault bits for VO209 – VO224 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 30 | Fault bits for VO225 – VO240 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 31 | Fault bits for VO241 – VO256 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 32 | Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay (1-16) Feedback [RCD Feedback Register Bits] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 33 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 34 | RCD Actuation Code Feedback [RCD Enable Feedback Register] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |

## PLC Input Assembly Instance 104 (0×68)—112 Registers (Reset/Cancel Delay plus ISD)

This Assembly Instance can be used by both the SC10-2 and XS26-ISD safety controllers.

The Assembly Instance includes the on/off state of all 256 Virtual Outputs and Faults, feedback required to execute virtual resets and cancel delays, and status information on up to two chains of ISD devices.

Note that Assembly Instance 105 (0×69) contains information on up to eight chains of ISD devices, but can only be used on the XS26-ISD.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**NOTE:** The ISD data is not immediately available upon power up. The ISD data can be delayed up to 10 seconds after the system power has been turned on

*Table 18. PLC Input Assembly Instance 104 (0×68)—Safety Controller Outputs T > O*

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 1 | VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 4 | VO65 – VO80 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 5 | VO81 – VO96 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 6 | VO97 – VO112 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 7 | VO113 – VO128 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 8 | VO129 – VO144 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 9 | VO145 – VO160 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 10 | VO161 – VO176 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 11 | VO177 – VO192 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 12 | VO193 – VO208 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 13 | VO209 – VO224 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 14 | VO225 – VO240 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 15 | VO241 – VO256 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 16 | Fault bits for VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 17 | Fault bits for VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 18 | Fault bits for VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 19 | Fault bits for VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 20 | Fault bits for VO65 – VO80 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 21 | Fault bits for VO81 – VO96 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 22 | Fault bits for VO97 – VO112 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 23 | Fault bits for VO113 – VO128 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 24 | Fault bits for VO129 – VO144 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 25 | Fault bits for VO145 – VO160 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 26 | Fault bits for VO161 – VO176 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 27 | Fault bits for VO177 – VO192 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 28 | Fault bits for VO193 – VO208 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 29 | Fault bits for VO209 – VO224 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 30 | Fault bits for VO225 – VO240 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 31 | Fault bits for VO241 – VO256 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 225


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 224

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 32 | Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay (1–16) Feedback [RCD Feedback Register Bits] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 33 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 34 | RCD Actuation Code Feedback [RCD Enable Feedback Register] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 35–36 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 37–38 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 39–40 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 41–42 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 43–44 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 45–46 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 47–48 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 49–50 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 51–52 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 53–54 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 55–56 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 57–58 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 59–60 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 61–62 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 63–64 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 65–66 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 67–82 | List of Detected ISD Devices on a Chain | Array of 32 bytes |
| 83–99 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 100 | ISD Read Request Acknowledge (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 101 | ISD Chain Requested Acknowledge (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 102 | ISD Device Requested Acknowledge (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 226


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 225

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 103–111 | ISD Individual Device-Specific Data (see "ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description" on page 230) | 16-bit integer |

## PLC Input Assembly Instance 105 (0×69)—240 Registers (8 ISD Chains)

This Assembly Instance is used only by the XS26-ISD safety controllers.

The Assembly Instance includes the on/off state of all 256 Virtual Outputs and Faults, feedback required to execute virtual resets and cancel delays, and status information on up to eight chains of ISD devices.

**NOTE:** The ISD data is not immediately available upon power up. The ISD data can be delayed up to 10 seconds after the system power has been turned on

*Table 19. PLC Input Assembly Instance 105 (0–69)—Safety Controller Outputs T > O*

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 1 | VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 4 | VO65 – VO80 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 5 | VO81 – VO96 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 6 | VO97 – VO112 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 7 | VO113 – VO128 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 8 | VO129 – VO144 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 9 | VO145 – VO160 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 10 | VO161 – VO176 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 11 | VO177 – VO192 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 12 | VO193 – VO208 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 13 | VO209 – VO224 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 14 | VO225 – VO240 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 15 | VO241 – VO256 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 16 | Fault bits for VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 17 | Fault bits for VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 18 | Fault bits for VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 19 | Fault bits for VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 233) | 16-bit integer |
| 20 | Fault bits for VO65 – VO80 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 21 | Fault bits for VO81 – VO96 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 22 | Fault bits for VO97 – VO112 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 23 | Fault bits for VO113 – VO128 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 24 | Fault bits for VO129 – VO144 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 25 | Fault bits for VO145 – VO160 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 26 | Fault bits for VO161 – VO176 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 227


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 226

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 27 | Fault bits for VO177 – VO192 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 28 | Fault bits for VO193 – VO208 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 29 | Fault bits for VO209 – VO224 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 30 | Fault bits for VO225 – VO240 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 31 | Fault bits for VO241 – VO256 (see " Extended Flags " on page 234) | 16-bit integer |
| 32 | Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay (1 – 16) (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 33 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 34 | RCD Enable Feedback (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 35–36 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 37–38 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 39–40 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 41–42 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 43–44 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 45–46 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 47–48 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 49–50 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 51–52 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 53–54 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 55–56 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 57–58 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 59–60 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 61–62 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 63–64 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 65–66 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 67–82 | List of Detected ISD Devices on a Chain | Array of 32 bytes |
| 83–99 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 100 | ISD Read Request Acknowledge | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 228


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 227

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 101 | ISD Chain Requested Acknowledge | 16-bit integer |
| 102 | ISD Device Requested Acknowledge | 16-bit integer |
| 103–111 | ISD Individual Device-Specific Data | 16-bit integer |
| 112–113 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 114–115 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 116–117 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 118–119 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 120–121 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 122–123 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 124–125 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 126–127 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 128–129 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 130–131 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 132–133 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 134–135 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 136–137 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 138–139 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 140–141 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 142–143 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 144–145 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 146–147 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 148–149 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 150–151 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 152–153 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 154–155 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 156–157 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 158–159 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 229


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 228

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 160–161 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 162–163 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 164–165 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 166–167 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 168–169 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 170–171 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 172–173 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 174–175 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 176–177 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 178–179 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 180–181 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 182–183 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 184–185 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 186–187 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 188–189 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 190–191 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 192–193 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 194–195 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 196–197 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 198–199 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 200–201 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 202–203 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 204–205 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 206–207 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 208–209 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 210–211 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 230


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 229

| WORD # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 212–213 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 214–215 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 216–217 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 218–219 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 220–221 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 222–223 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 224–225 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 226–227 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 228–229 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 230–231 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 232–233 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 234–235 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 236–237 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 238–239 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |

## ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description

The following table describes Assembly Instance 104 (0x68) WORD #103–111 or Explicit Message Read ISD Response WORD #68–76.

*Table 20. ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description*

| WORD.BIT # | Information | Data size |
|---|---|---|
| 103.0 | Safety Input Fault | 1 bit |
| 103.1 | *reserved* | 1 bit |
| 103.2 | Sensor Not Paired | 1-bit |
| 103.3 | ISD Data Error | 1-bit |
| 103.4 | Wrong Actuator/Button Status/Input Status | 1-bit |
| 103.5 | Marginal Range/Button Status/Input Status | 1-bit |
| 103.6 | Actuator Detected | 1-bit |
| 103.7 | Output Error | 1-bit |
| 103.8 | Input 2 | 1-bit |
| 103.9 | Input 1 | 1-bit |
| 103.10 | Local Reset Expected | 1-bit |
| 103.11 | Operating Voltage Warning | 1-bit |
| 103.12 | Operating Voltage Error | 1-bit |

Continued on page 231


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 230

| WORD.BIT # | Information | Data size |
|---|---|---|
| 103.13 | Output 2 | 1-bit |
| 103.14 | Output 1 | 1-bit |
| 103.15 | Power Cycle Required | 1-bit |
| 104.0 | Fault Tolerant Outputs | 1-bit |
| 104.1 | Local Reset Unit | 1-bit |
| 104.2 | Cascadable | 1-bit |
| 104.3 | High Coding Level | 1-bit |
| 104.4 to 104.7 | Teach-ins Remaining | 4-bit |
| 104.8 to 104.12 | Device ID | 5-bit |
| 104.13 to 105.2 | Range Warning Count | 6-bit |
| 105.3 to 105.7 | Output Switch-off Time | 5-bit |
| 105.8 to 105.15 | Number of Voltage Errors | 8-bit |
| 106.0 to 106.7 | Internal Temperature[22] | 8-bit |
| 106.8 to 106.15 | Actuator Distance[22] | 8-bit |
| 107.0 to 107.7 | Supply Voltage[22] | 8-bit |
| 107.8 to 107.11 | Expected Company Name | 4-bit |
| 107.12 to 107.15 | Received Company Name | 4-bit |
| 108 | Expected Code | 16-bit |
| 109 | Received Code | 16-bit |
| 110 | Internal Error A | 16-bit |
| 111 | Internal Error B | 16-bit |

## 13.4.6 Configuration Assembly Object

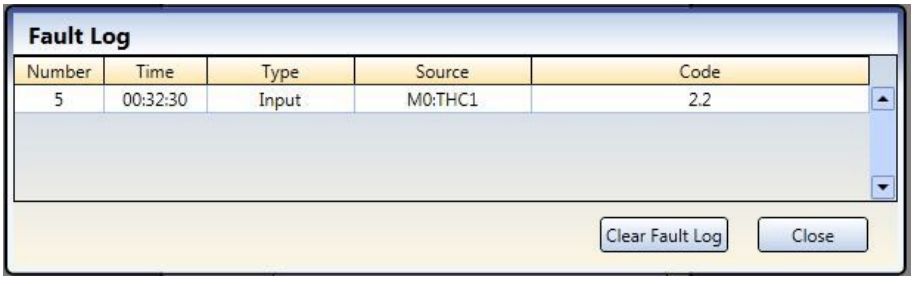
The Safety Controller does not use a Configuration Assembly Object.

Because some EtherNet/IP clients require one, use Instance 128 (0×80) with a size of zero registers (16-bit).

## 13.4.7 Fault Examples

The following figure shows a fault from the Banner Safety Controller Software fault log.

*Figure 225. Fault Log with One Fault*

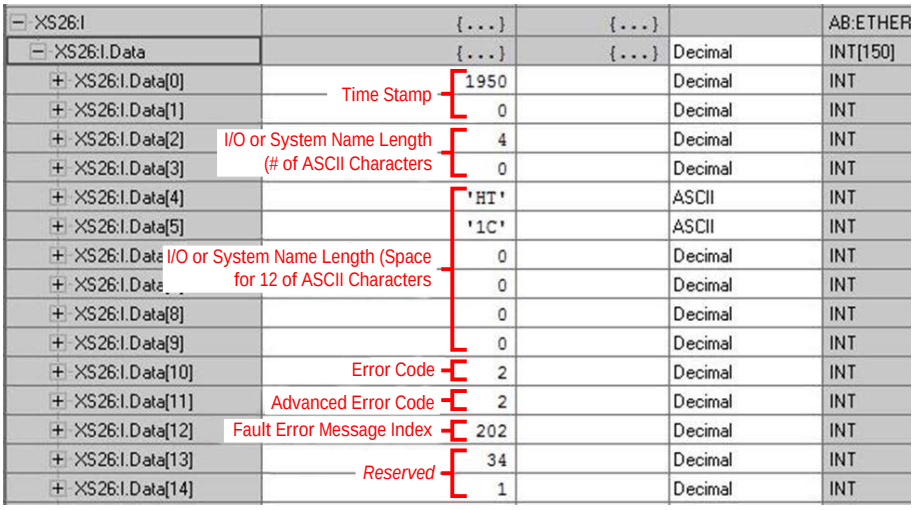



The following figure shows the same fault as seen in the EtherNet/IP registers.

[22] For conversion to Internal Temperature, Actuator Distance, and Supply Voltage, see "ISD: Temperature, Voltage, and Distance Conversion Information " on page 329.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 226. EtherNet/IP Registers with One Fault*

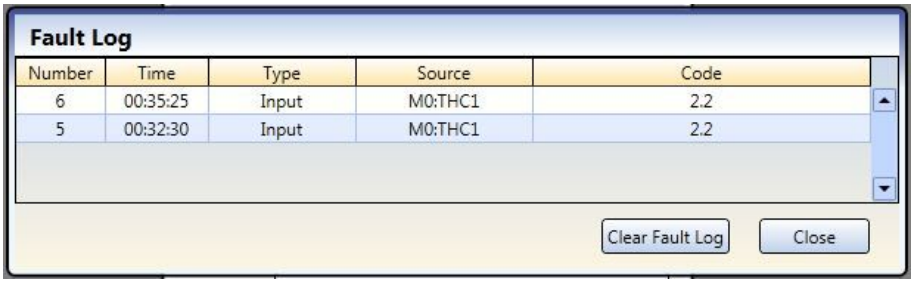



Note the ControlLogix string format, wherein the ASCII characters are shown, two per register, backwards. “THC1” becomes “HT” in register 4, followed by “1C” in register 5.

Fault Error Message Index 202 = Fault Code 2.2 (Simultaneity Fault). For more Fault information, see "XS/SC26 Fault Code Table" on page 370 or "SC10-2 Fault Code Table " on page 375.

The following figure shows two faults in the XS26-2E software fault log.

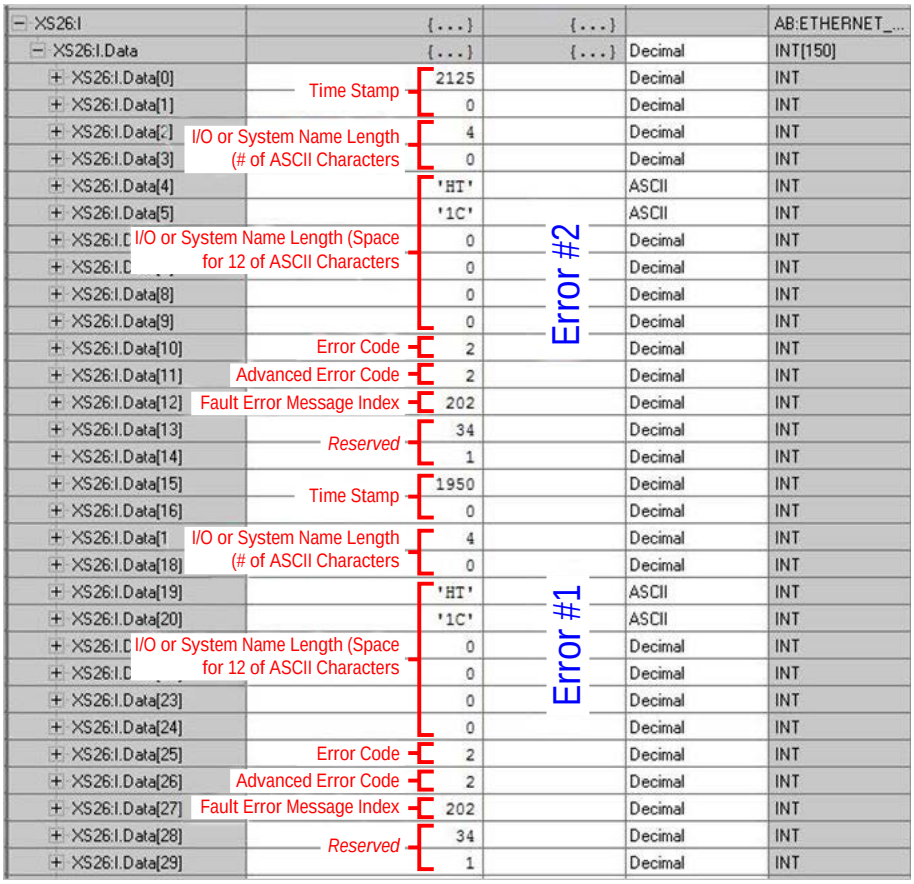
*Figure 227. Fault Log with Two Faults*




The following figure shows the same two faults in the PLC registers. Note how the newer Error #2 pushes Error #1 down the list.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 228. EtherNet/IP Registers with Two Faults*




## 13.4.8 Flags

Words 0 through 7, defined below, appear as the first 8 words in Assembly Instances 100, 101, and 103.

*Table 21. Word #0, Virtual Output 1–16*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO16 | VO15 | VO14 | VO13 | VO12 | VO11 | VO10 | VO9 | VO8 | VO7 | VO6 | VO5 | VO4 | VO3 | VO2 | VO1 |

*Table 22. Word #1, Virtual Output 17–32*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO32 | VO31 | VO30 | VO29 | VO28 | VO27 | VO26 | VO25 | VO24 | VO23 | VO22 | VO21 | VO20 | VO19 | VO18 | VO17 |

*Table 23. Word #2, Virtual Output 33–48*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO48 | VO47 | VO46 | VO45 | VO44 | VO43 | VO42 | VO41 | VO40 | VO39 | VO38 | VO37 | VO36 | VO35 | VO34 | VO33 |

*Table 24. Word #3, Virtual Output 49–64*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO64 | VO63 | VO62 | VO61 | VO60 | VO59 | VO58 | VO57 | VO56 | VO55 | VO54 | VO53 | VO52 | VO51 | VO50 | VO49 |

Note that not every Virtual Output has a defined Fault Flag.

*Table 25. Word #4, Fault Flag bits for Virtual Output 1–16*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO16 | VO15 | VO14 | VO13 | VO12 | VO11 | VO10 | VO9 | VO8 | VO7 | VO6 | VO5 | VO4 | VO3 | VO2 | VO1 |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Note that not every Virtual Output has a defined Fault Flag.

*Table 26. Word #5, Fault Flag bits for Virtual Output 17–32 Fault Flag*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO32 | VO31 | VO30 | VO29 | VO28 | VO27 | VO26 | VO25 | VO24 | VO23 | VO22 | VO21 | VO20 | VO19 | VO18 | VO17 |

Note that not every Virtual Output has a defined Fault Flag.

*Table 27. Word #6, Fault Flag bits for Virtual Output 33–48*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO48 | VO47 | VO46 | VO45 | VO44 | VO43 | VO42 | VO41 | VO40 | VO39 | VO38 | VO37 | VO36 | VO35 | VO34 | VO33 |

Note that not every Virtual Output has a defined Fault Flag.

*Table 28. Word #7, Fault Flag bits for Virtual Output 49–64*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO64 | VO63 | VO62 | VO61 | VO60 | VO59 | VO58 | VO57 | VO56 | VO55 | VO54 | VO53 | VO52 | VO51 | VO50 | VO49 |

### 13.4.9 Extended Flags

In addition to the first 64 virtual outputs listed above, Assembly Instance 103 adds 192 more (for a total of 256). The fault flag bits shift downward to make room for all 256 virtual outputs to be together.

Words 0 through 3 are the same as seen in " Flags " on page 233. In the case of Assembly Instance 103 the following changes are made:

- Word #4 – Virtual Outputs 65 through 80, where VO65 is found in bit 0 and VO80 in bit 15
- Word #5 – Virtual Outputs 81 through 96, where VO81 is found in bit 0 and VO96 in bit 15
- Word #6 – Virtual Outputs 97 through 112, where VO97 is found in bit 0 and VO112 in bit 15
- Word #7 – Virtual Outputs 113 through 128, where VO113 is found in bit 0 and VO128 in bit 15
- Word #8 – Virtual Outputs 129 through 144, where VO129 is found in bit 0 and VO144 in bit 15
- Word #9 – Virtual Outputs 145 through 160, where VO145 is found in bit 0 and VO160 in bit 15
- Word #10 – Virtual Outputs 161 through 176, where VO161 is found in bit 0 and VO176 in bit 15
- Word #11 – Virtual Outputs 177 through 192, where VO177 is found in bit 0 and VO192 in bit 15
- Word #12 – Virtual Outputs 193 through 208, where VO193 is found in bit 0 and VO208 in bit 15
- Word #13 – Virtual Outputs 209 through 224, where VO209 is found in bit 0 and VO224 in bit 15
- Word #14 – Virtual Outputs 225 through 240, where VO225 is found in bit 0 and VO240 in bit 15
- Word #15 – Virtual Outputs 241 through 256, where VO241 is found in bit 0 and VO256 in bit 15
- Word #16 through #19 are the same as Word #4 through #7 as seen in " Flags " on page 233. Assembly Instance 103 also includes more fault flag bits, as seen below
- Word #20 – Fault Bits for VO65 through VO80, where the fault for VO65 is found in bit 0 and VO80 in bit 15

This pattern continues for Word #21 through #31, covering the remainder of the fault bits for the 256 total Virtual Outputs.

### 13.4.10 ISD System Status Words

The ISD System Status words as found in PLC Input Assembly Instance 104 (0×68), words 39–62, are defined below.

Each of these System Status Words are not meant to be seen as a single 32-bit integer, but rather as an array of 32 individual ISD device status bits, where bit 0 is assigned to ISD device 1, bit 1 is assigned to ISD device 2, and so on until bit 31 is assigned to the 32$^{nd}$ ISD device on that chain.

- Word #39–40 Chain 1 Device On/Off Status—Chain 1, ISD device 1 on/off is Word 39, bit 0; chain 1, ISD device 32 on/off is Word 40, bit 15
- Word #41–42 Chain 2 Device On/Off Status—Chain 2, ISD device 1 on/off is Word 41, bit 0; chain 2, ISD device 32 on/off is Word 42, bit 15
- Word #43–44 Chain 1 Fault Status—Chain 1, ISD device 1 fault status is Word 43, bit 0; chain 1, ISD device 32 fault status is Word 44, bit 15
- Word #45–46 Chain 2 Fault Status—Chain 2, ISD device 1 fault status is Word 45, bit 0; chain 2, ISD device 32 fault status is Word 46, bit 15
- Word #47–48 Chain 1 Marginal Status—Chain 1, ISD device 1 marginal status is Word 47, bit 0; chain 1, ISD device 32 marginal status is Word 48, bit 15


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- Word #49–50 Chain 2 Marginal Status—Chain 2, ISD device 1 marginal status is Word 49, bit 0; chain 2, ISD device 32 marginal status is Word 50, bit 15
- Word #51–52 Chain 1 Alert Status—Chain 1, ISD device 1 alert status is Word 51, bit 0; chain 1, ISD device 32 alert status is Word 52, bit 15
- Word #53–54 Chain 2 Alert Status—Chain 2, ISD device 1 alert status is Word 53, bit 0; chain 2, ISD device 32 alert status is Word 54, bit 15
- Word #55–56 Chain 1 Reset Status—Chain 1, ISD device 1 reset status is Word 55, bit 0; chain 1, ISD device 32 reset status is Word 56, bit 15
- Word #57–58 Chain 2 Reset Status—Chain 2, ISD device 1 reset status is Word 57, bit 0; chain 2, ISD device 32 reset status is Word 58, bit 15
- Word #59–60 Chain 1 Actuator Recognized—Chain 1, ISD device 1 actuator recognized is Word 59, bit 0; chain 1, ISD device 32 actuator recognized is Word 60, bit 15
- Word #61–62 Chain 2 Actuator Recognized—Chain 2, ISD device 1 actuator recognized is Word 61, bit 0; chain 2, ISD device 32 actuator recognized is Word 62, bit 15

## 13.4.11 RSLogix5000 Configuration (Explicit Messaging)

To get a specific Fault Index Value for one of the first 255 Virtual Outputs, use Explicit Messaging connections. In addition to the Assembly Instances from the previous section, there are some extra Assembly Instances that can only be accessed via Explicit Messaging.

### Choices for Explicit Message Connections

#### Read Safety Controller Outputs

To perform a one-time read of one of the T>O Safety Controller output/PLC input Assembly Instances from "Outputs from the Safety Controller (Inputs to the PLC) " on page 218, use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 4, Instance 100 (0×64) or 101 (0×65) or 102 (0×66) or 103 (0×67) or 104 (0×68), Attribute 3. A successful Explicit Message of this type returns the appropriate Assembly Instance as shown in "Outputs from the Safety Controller (Inputs to the PLC) " on page 218.

See an example of this type of connection in " Read Safety Controller Outputs Example" on page 241.

#### Write Safety Controller Inputs

To perform a one-time write of the data in the Safety Controller Input (PLC Output) Assembly Instances from " Inputs to the Safety Controller (Outputs from the PLC)" on page 217, use Service Type 16 (Set Attribute Single, hex 10), Class 4, Instance 112 (0×70) or 113 (0×71) or 114 (0×72), Attribute 3. The size of the MSG Source Element (a user-defined tag array) is given by the Assembly Object in question. A successful Explicit Message of this type writes the relevant data to the Safety Controller; see " Inputs to the Safety Controller (Outputs from the PLC)" on page 217.

See an example of this type of connection in " Write Safety Controller Inputs Example " on page 242.

> **NOTE:** Not all Safety Controllers support virtual inputs.

#### Virtual Output Status

To get the current status of the first 64 Virtual Outputs, use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 0×64, Instance 1, Attribute 1. A successful Explicit Message of this type returns two 32-bit integers representing the status of VO1 through VO64. See an example of this type of connection in "Read Virtual Output Status Example" on page 243.

#### Read Extended Virtual Output Status

To get the current status of all 256 Virtual Outputs, use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 0×75, Instance 1, Attribute 1. A successful Explicit Message of this type returns eight 32-bit integers containing Virtual Output status bits VO1 through VO256.

#### Virtual Output Fault Bits

To get the current status of the first 64 Virtual Output Fault Bits, use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 0×65, Instance 1, Attribute 1. A successful Explicit Message of this type returns two 32-bit integers representing the status of the Fault Bits for VO1 through VO64.

#### Read Extended Virtual Output Fault Bits

To get the current status of all 256 Virtual Output Fault Bits, use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 0×76, Instance 1, Attribute 1. A successful Explicit Message of this type returns eight 32-bit integers containing Virtual Output Fault Bits VO1 Fault through VO256 Fault.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### Individual Fault Index Values

To get a specific Fault Index Value for one of the first 64 Virtual Outputs, use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 0×6F, Instance 1–64 (choose one), Attribute 1. A successful Explicit Message of this type returns a single 16-bit register representing the Fault Index value for one of the Virtual Outputs.

### Read Extended Individual Fault Index Values

To get a specific Fault Index Value for one of the first 255 Virtual Outputs, use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 0×7A, Instance 1–255 (choose one), Attribute 1.

A successful Explicit Message of this type returns a 16-bit register representing the Fault Index value for one of the Virtual Outputs.

### Write Virtual Inputs (On/Off Mute Enable)

To write Virtual On/Off Mute Enable bits to the Safety Controller, use Service Type 16 (Set Attribute Single, hex 10), Class 0×77, Instance 1, Attribute 1. The length of the data to be written is two 32-bit integers (8 bytes). A successful Explicit Message of this type writes Virtual On/Off Mute Enable VI1 through VI64.

| Word # | Word Name | Data Type |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | Virtual Inputs VI0–15 | 16-bit integer |
| 1 | Virtual Inputs VI16–31 | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | Virtual Inputs VI32–47 | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | Virtual Inputs VI48–63 | 16-bit integer |

### Write Virtual Inputs (Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Off Delay)

To write Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay bits to the Safety Controller, use Service Type 16 (Set Attribute Single, hex 10), Class 0x78, Instance 1, Attribute 1. The length of data to be written is two 32–bit integers (8 bytes). A successful Explicit Message of this type writes Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay bits VRCD1 through VRCD32 and the RCD Actuation Code.

**NOTE:** Not all Safety Controllers support virtual inputs.

| Word # | Word Name | Data Type |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | VRCD (VRCD1–16) (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 1 | VRCD (VRCD17–32) (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | RCD Actuation Code [RCD Enable] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |

### Read Virtual Outputs (Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Off Delay Feedback)

To read the status of Virtual Output bits related to the Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Off Delay Feedback from the Safety Controller, use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 0×79, Instance 1, Attribute 1.

A successful Explicit Message of this type returns two 32–bit integers containing Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay Feedback bits VRCD Feedback 1 through VRCD Feedback 32 and the RCD Actuation Code Feedback.

**NOTE:** Not all Safety Controllers support virtual inputs.

| Word # | Word Name | Data Type |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | VRCD Feedback (VRCD1–16) (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 1 | VRCD Feedback (VRCD17–32) (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 237


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 236

| Word # | Word Name | Data Type |
|---|---|---|
| 2 | RCD Actuation Code Feedback [RCD Enable Feedback] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |

### Write ISD Request

To write a request for ISD device information to the Safety Controller, use Service Type 16 (Set Attribute Single, hex 10), Class 0×81, Instance 1, Attribute 1. The length of the data to be written is three 16-bit integers (6 bytes). A successful Explicit Message of this type writes the ISD Request to the Safety Controller.

**NOTE:** Not all Safety Controllers support ISD.

| Word # | Word Name | Data Type |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | ISD Read Request (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 1 | ISD Chain Requested (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | ISD Device Requested (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |

### Read ISD Response (SC10-2 or XS26-ISD, up to 2 ISD Chains)

This Explicit Message can be used by both the SC10-2 and XS26-ISD safety controllers.

To read the Safety Controller's Response to an ISD Request (see "Write ISD Request" on page 237) , use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 0×80, Instance 1, Attribute 1. A successful Explicit Message of this type returns 77 words containing the information shown below.

**NOTE:**
- Not all Safety Controllers support ISD.
- The ISD data is not immediately available upon power up. The ISD data can be delayed up to 10 seconds after the system power has been turned on.

| Word # | Word Name | Data Type |
|---|---|---|
| 0–1 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 2–3 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 4–5 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 6–7 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 8–9 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 10–11 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 12–13 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 14–15 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 16–17 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 238


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 237

| Word # | Word Name | Data Type |
|---|---|---|
| 18–19 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 20–21 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 22–23 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 24–25 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 26–27 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 28–29 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 30–31 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 32–47 | List of Detected ISD Devices on a Chain | Array of 32 bytes |
| 48-64 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 65 | ISD Read Request Acknowledge (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 66 | ISD Chain Requested Acknowledge (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 67 | ISD Device Requested Acknowledge (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 68–76 | ISD Individual Device-Specific Data (see "ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description" on page 230) | 16-bit integer |

### Read ISD Response (XS26-ISD Models only, up to 8 ISD Chains)

This Explicit Message is used only by the XS26-ISD safety controller.

To read the Safety Controller's Response to an ISD Request (see "Write ISD Request" on page 237), use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 0x82, Instance 1, Attribute 1. A successful Explicit Message of this type returns 128 words containing the information shown below.

**NOTE:**

- Not all Safety Controllers support ISD.
- Only the XS26-ISD supports eight chains of ISD devices.
- The ISD data is not immediately available upon power up. The ISD data can be delayed up to 10 seconds after the system power has been turned on.

| Word # | Word Name | Data Type |
|---|---|---|
| 0-1 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 2-3 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device On/Off Status | 32-bit integer |
| 4-5 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Fault Status | 32-bit integer |
| 6-7 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Marginal Status | 32-bit integer |
| 8-9 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Alert Status | 32-bit integer |
| 10-11 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Reset Status | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 239


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 238

| Word # | Word Name | Data Type |
|---|---|---|
| 12-13 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Actuator Recognized Status | 32-bit integer |
| 14-15 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 System Status | 32-bit integer |
| 16-17 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 18-19 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device On/Off Status | 32-bit integer |
| 20-21 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Fault Status | 32-bit integer |
| 22-23 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Marginal Status | 32-bit integer |
| 24-25 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Alert Status | 32-bit integer |
| 26-27 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Reset Status | 32-bit integer |
| 28-29 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Actuator Recognized Status | 32-bit integer |
| 30-31 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 System Status | 32-bit integer |
| 32-33 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 34-35 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Device On/Off Status | 32-bit integer |
| 36-37 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Fault Status | 32-bit integer |
| 38-39 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Marginal Status | 32-bit integer |
| 40-41 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Alert Status | 32-bit integer |
| 42-43 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Reset Status | 32-bit integer |
| 44-45 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Actuator Recognized Status | 32-bit integer |
| 46-47 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 System Status | 32-bit integer |
| 48-49 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 50-51 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Device On/Off Status | 32-bit integer |
| 52-53 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Fault Status | 32-bit integer |
| 54-55 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Marginal Status | 32-bit integer |
| 56-57 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Alert Status | 32-bit integer |
| 58-59 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Reset Status | 32-bit integer |
| 60-61 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Actuator Recognized Status | 32-bit integer |
| 62-63 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 System Status | 32-bit integer |
| 64-65 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 66-67 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Device On/Off Status | 32-bit integer |
| 68-69 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Fault Status | 32-bit integer |
| 70-71 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Marginal Status | 32-bit integer |
| 72-73 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Alert Status | 32-bit integer |
| 74-75 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Reset Status | 32-bit integer |
| 76-77 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Actuator Recognized Status | 32-bit integer |
| 78-79 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 System Status | 32-bit integer |
| 80-81 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 82-83 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Device On/Off Status | 32-bit integer |
| 84-85 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Fault Status | 32-bit integer |
| 86-87 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Marginal Status | 32-bit integer |
| 88-89 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Alert Status | 32-bit integer |
| 90-91 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Reset Status | 32-bit integer |
| 92-93 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Actuator Recognized Status | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 240


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 239

| Word # | Word Name | Data Type |
|---|---|---|
| 94-95 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 System Status | 32-bit integer |
| 96-97 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 98-99 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Device On/Off Status | 32-bit integer |
| 100-101 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Fault Status | 32-bit integer |
| 102-103 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Marginal Status | 32-bit integer |
| 104-105 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Alert Status | 32-bit integer |
| 106-107 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Reset Status | 32-bit integer |
| 108-109 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Actuator Recognized Status | 32-bit integer |
| 110-111 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 System Status | 32-bit integer |
| 112-113 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 114-115 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Device On/Off Status | 32-bit integer |
| 116-117 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Fault Status | 32-bit integer |
| 118-119 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Marginal Status | 32-bit integer |
| 120-121 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Alert Status | 32-bit integer |
| 122-123 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Reset Status | 32-bit integer |
| 124-125 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Actuator Recognized Status | 32-bit integer |
| 126-127 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 System Status | 32-bit integer |

### Individual Fault Log Entry

To get a specific entry from the 10 entry Fault Log, use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 0×71, Instance 1, Attribute 1–10 (choose one). A successful Explicit Message of this type will return a single 15 register entry from the fault log, as defined below. Note that Attribute = 1 references the most recent entry in the error log, while Attribute = 10 is the oldest entry.

| Word # | Word Name | Data Type |
|---|---|---|
| 0–1 | Fault #1 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 2–9 | Fault #1 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 10 | Fault #1 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 11 | Fault #1 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 12 | Fault #1 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 13–14 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |

### System Information

Some system information can be accessed using Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 0×72, Instance 1, Attribute 1–4 (choose one, see the following table). A successful Explicit Message of this type returns the system information seen below (size and data type vary). See an example of this type of connection in " Read System Information Example" on page 244.

| Attribute | System Value | Data Type |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | Seconds Since Boot | 32-bit integer |
| 2 | Operating Mode | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | ConfigName | 2-word length + 16-ASCII characters |
| 4 | Config CRC | 32-bit integer |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## Examples of Explicit Message Connections

### Read Safety Controller Outputs Example

To perform a one-time read of the 100 (0×64) Assembly Instance, use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 4, Instance 100, Attribute 3. A successful Explicit Message of this type will return all 8 registers of the 100 (0×64) Assembly Instance, as defined in "Configuration Assembly Object " on page 231.

The following figure shows the MSG command for this explicit message.

*Figure 229. MSG Command—**Configuration** Tab*

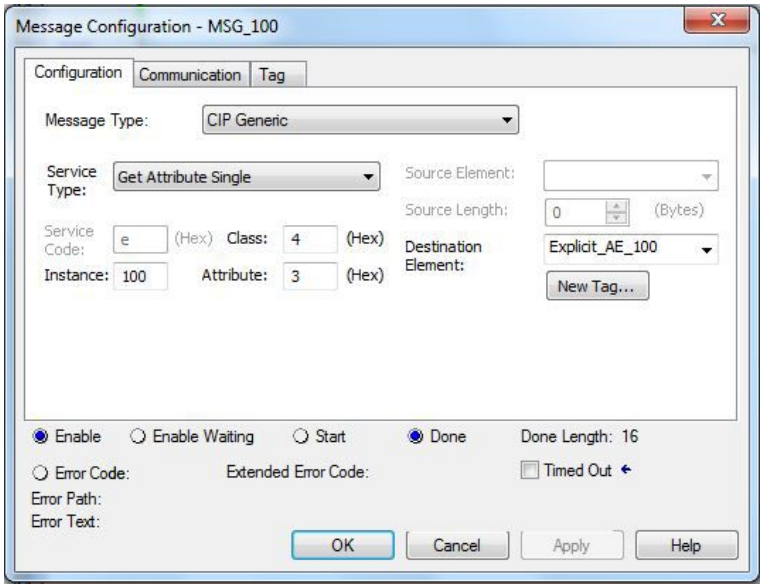
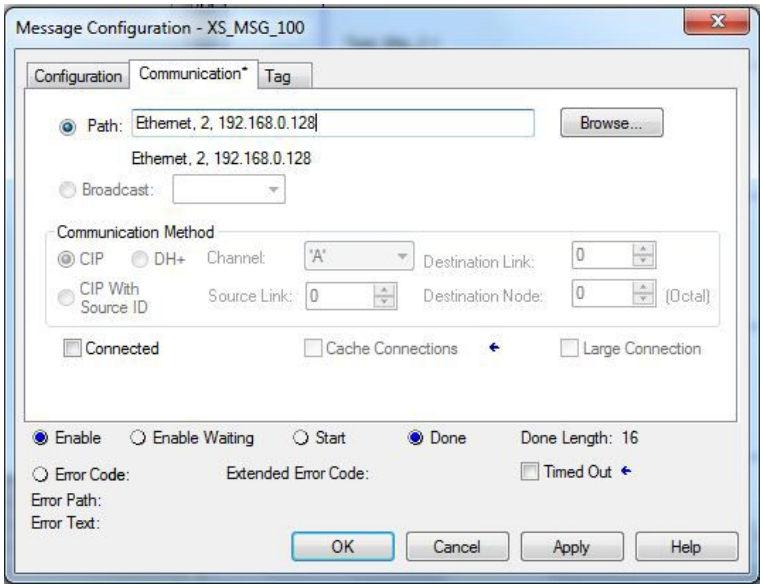



*Figure 230. MSG Command—**Communication** Tab*




The following figure shows the user-defined array (called XS_Explicit_AE_100) showing all 8 registers.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 231. User-Defined Array*

| | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ⊟ | XS_Explicit_AE_100 | {...} | {...} | Decimal | INT[8] |
| ⊞ | XS_Explicit_AE_100[0] | 2 | | Decimal | INT |
| ⊞ | XS_Explicit_AE_100[1] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |
| ⊞ | XS_Explicit_AE_100[2] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |
| ⊞ | XS_Explicit_AE_100[3] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |
| ⊞ | XS_Explicit_AE_100[4] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |
| ⊞ | XS_Explicit_AE_100[5] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |
| ⊞ | XS_Explicit_AE_100[6] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |
| ⊞ | XS_Explicit_AE_100[7] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |

In this example data, we can see that VO2 is currently ON. VO2 is word 0, bit 1> 2^1 = 2

## Write Safety Controller Inputs Example

To perform a one-time write of the data in the Safety Controller Input (PLC Output) Assembly Instance 112 (0×70), use Service Type 16 (Set Attribute Single, hex 10), Class 4, Instance 112 (0×70), Attribute 3. The size of the MSG Source Element (a user-defined tag array) is 4 bytes in this case.

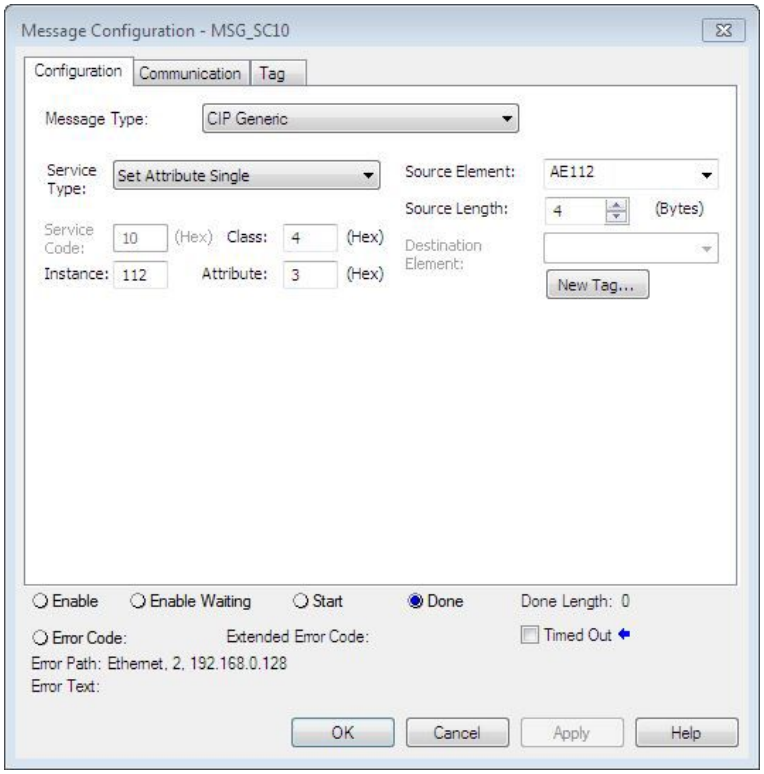
The following figure shows the user-defined array (called AE112) to be written to the Safety Controller.

*Figure 232. User-Defined Array to be Written to the Safety Controller*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| ◢ AE112 | {...} | {...} | Decimal | INT[2] |
| ▷ AE112[0] | 7 | | Decimal | INT |
| ▷ AE112[1] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |

The following figure shows the MSG command for this explicit message.

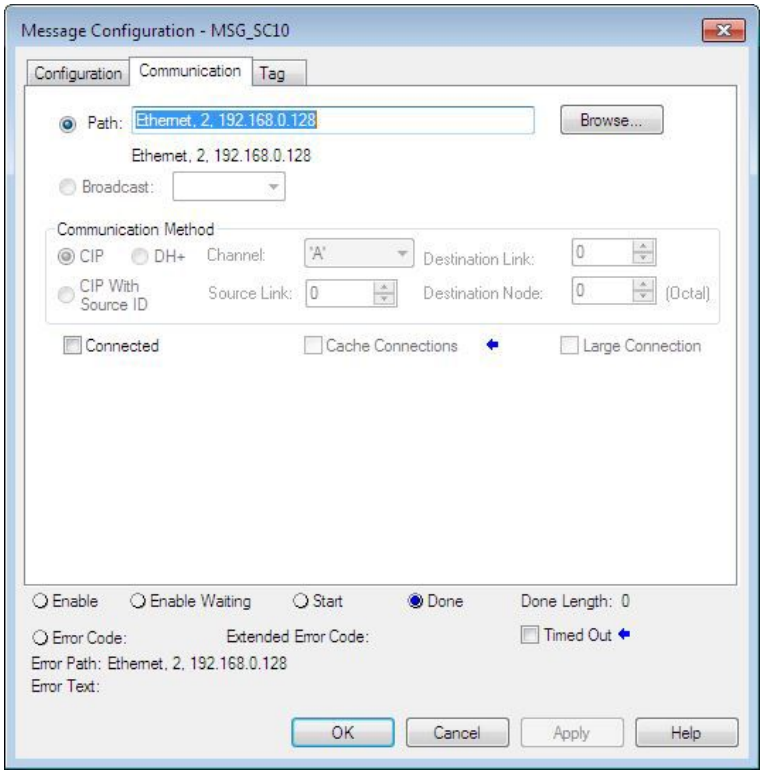
*Figure 233. MSG Command—**Configuration** Tab*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 234. MSG Command—**Communication** Tab*

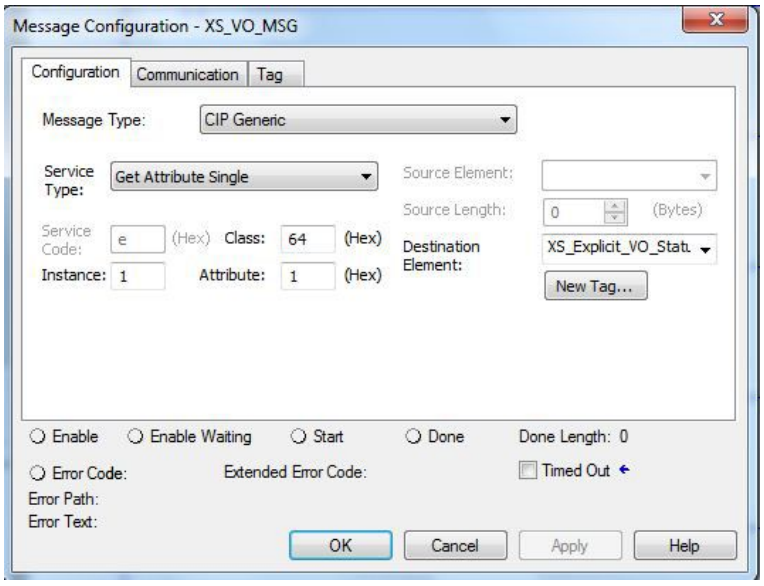



## Read Virtual Output Status Example

To perform a one-time read of the current status of the first 64 Virtual Outputs, use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 0×64, Instance 1, Attribute 1. A successful Explicit Message of this type returns two 32-bit integers representing the status of VO1 through VO64.

The following figure shows the MSG command for this explicit message.

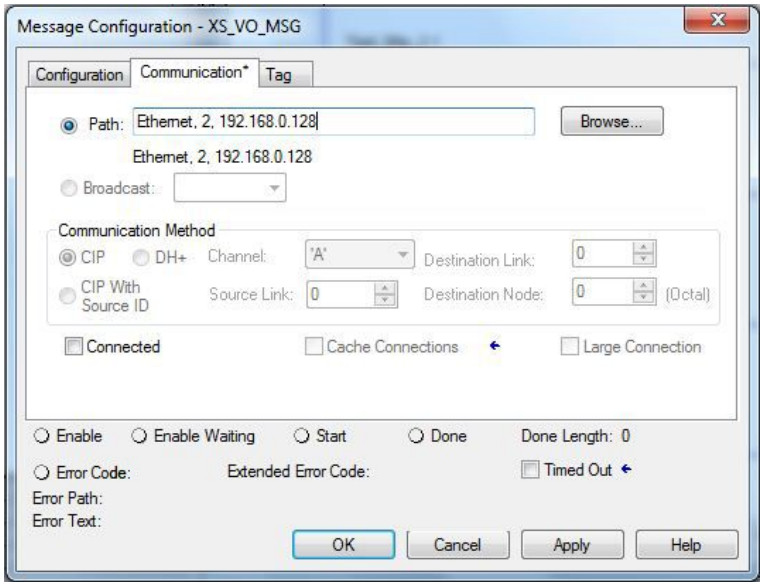
*Figure 235. MSG Command—**Configuration** Tab*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 236. MSG Command—**Communication** Tab*




The following figure shows the user-defined array (called XS_Explicit_VO_Status) showing two 32-bit integers.

*Figure 237. User-Defined Array*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| XS_Explicit_VO_Status | {...} | {...} | Decimal | DINT[2] |
| XS_Explicit_VO_Status[0] | 1 | | Decimal | DINT |
| XS_Explicit_VO_Status[1] | 0 | | Decimal | DINT |

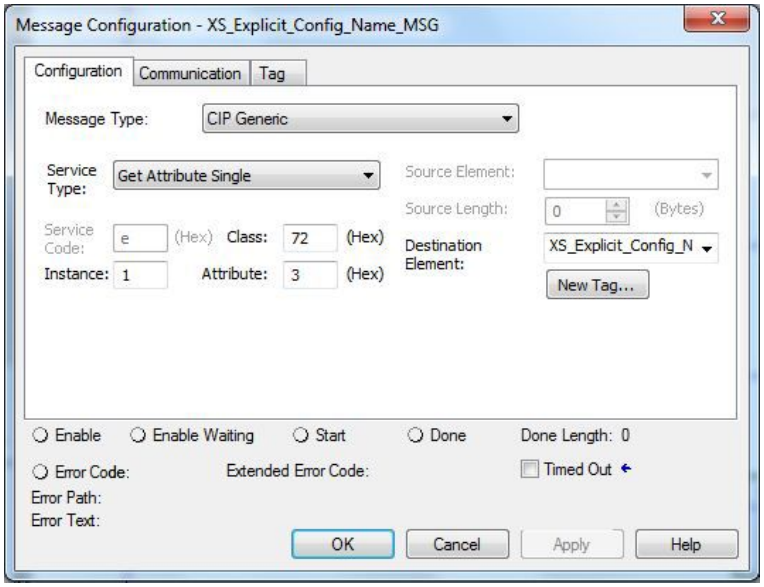
In this example data, we can see that VO1 is currently ON. VO1 is word 1, bit 0 > 2^0 = 1

## Read System Information Example

Some system information can be accessed using EtherNet/IP Explicit Messages. One such piece of data is the Configuration Name from the Safety Controller. To get this information, use Service Type 14 (Get Attribute Single, hex 0E), Class 0×72, Instance 1, Attribute 3. A successful Explicit Message of this type will return the 32-bit length and ASCII string comprising the Safety Controller Configuration Name.

The following figure shows the MSG command for this explicit message.

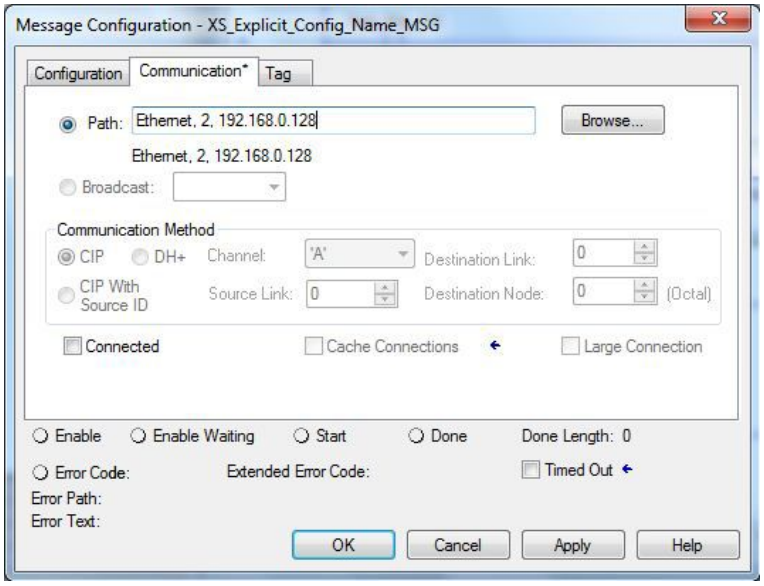
*Figure 238. MSG Command—**Configuration** Tab*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 239. MSG Command—**Communication** Tab*




The following figure shows the user-defined array (called XS_Explicit_Config_Name) showing all 8 registers.

*Figure 240. User-Defined Array*

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| XS_Explicit_Config_Name | {...} | {...} | Decimal | INT[10] |
| XS_Explicit_Config_Name[0] | 12 | | Decimal | INT |
| XS_Explicit_Config_Name[1] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |
| XS_Explicit_Config_Name[2] | '1B' | | ASCII | INT |
| XS_Explicit_Config_Name[3] | 'na' | | ASCII | INT |
| XS_Explicit_Config_Name[4] | ' k' | | ASCII | INT |
| XS_Explicit_Config_Name[5] | 'oC' | | ASCII | INT |
| XS_Explicit_Config_Name[6] | 'fn' | | ASCII | INT |
| XS_Explicit_Config_Name[7] | 'gi' | | ASCII | INT |
| XS_Explicit_Config_Name[8] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |
| XS_Explicit_Config_Name[9] | 0 | | Decimal | INT |

Note that the first two registers are a 32-bit integer describing how many ASCII characters are coming in the Config Name. Here that value is *12*. ASCII characters are packed, two per register, in the so-called ControlLogix String Format. The Config name here is *Blank Config*, but the ControlLogix string format displays those characters, two per line, in reverse order.

### Step-by-Step Explicit Messages

Making an explicit message connection from scratch in an Allen-Bradley PLC program requires the following steps.

1. Make a new tag with the Message data type.
2. Make a new tag to act as a Destination Element (a 16-bit array large enough to hold the data that will be requested).
3. Add a MSG command to your ladder logic (using the Message tag from #1 and the Destination Element from #2). The Class, Instance, and Attribute values depend on the data desired.
4. In the Communication tab of the MSG command, enter the path to the Safety Controller: for example, `Ethernet, 2, 192.168.0.128`, where the *2* is used for EtherNet/IP connections in the PLC and the IP Address shown is that of the Safety Controller.

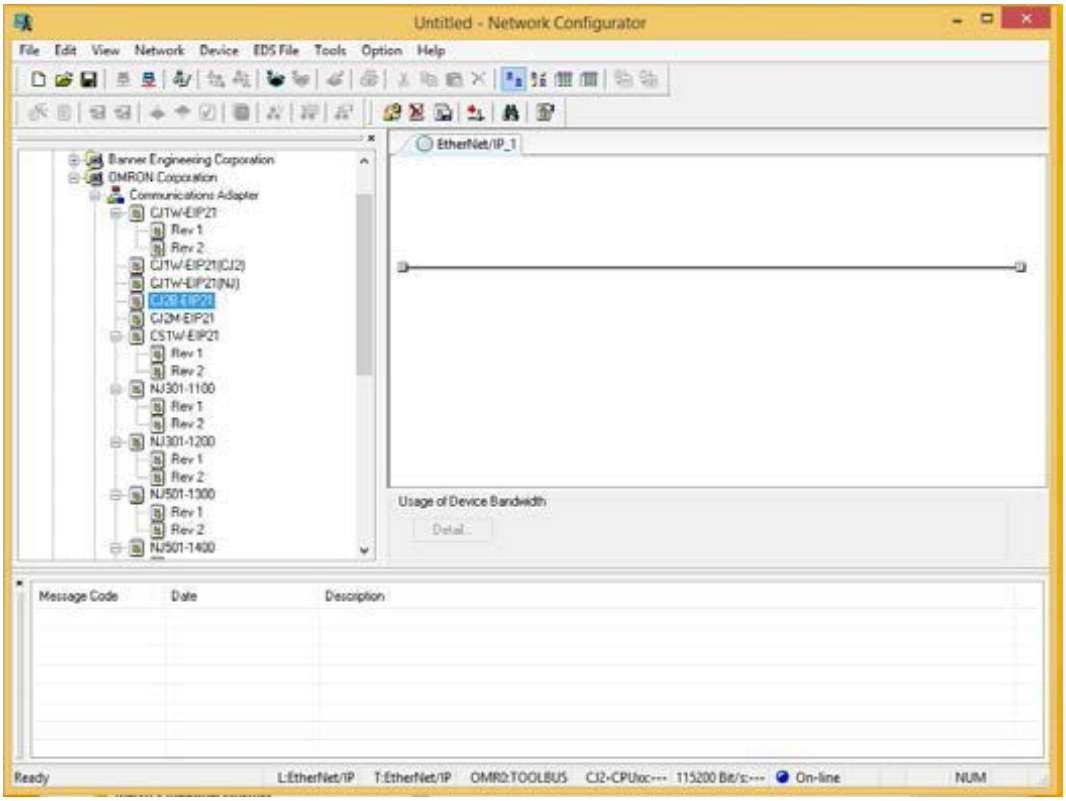
## 13.4.12 EIP on Omron PLC Configuration

The following figures show an EtherNet/IP Connection between a Safety Controller and an Omron CJ2H PLC.

1. Open the Omron Network Configurator software.

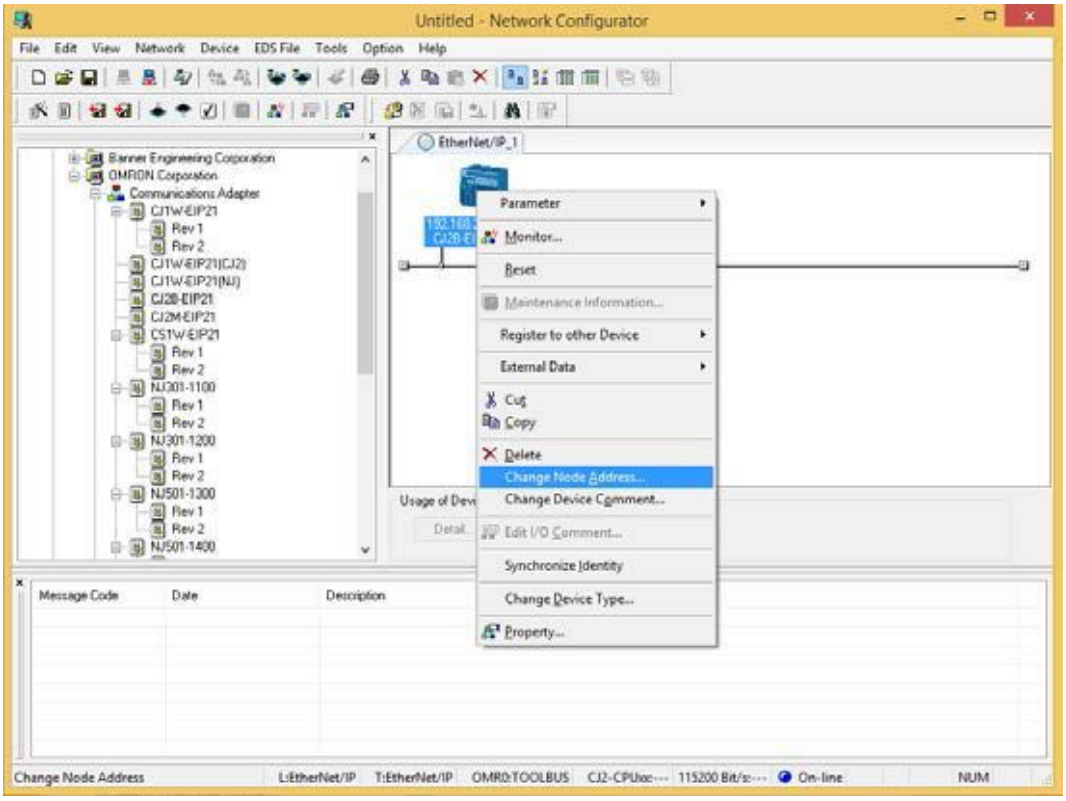

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 241. Omron Network Configurator Software*




2. Add the correct PLC to the network.
3. Right click on the PLC and click **Change Node Address** to change the IP address.

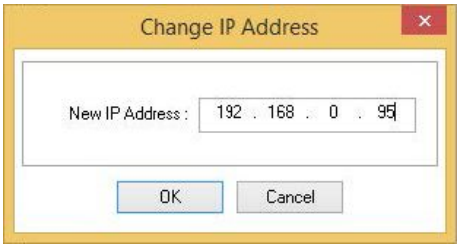
*Figure 242. Right-Click Menu*




Here is the PLC's IP address:

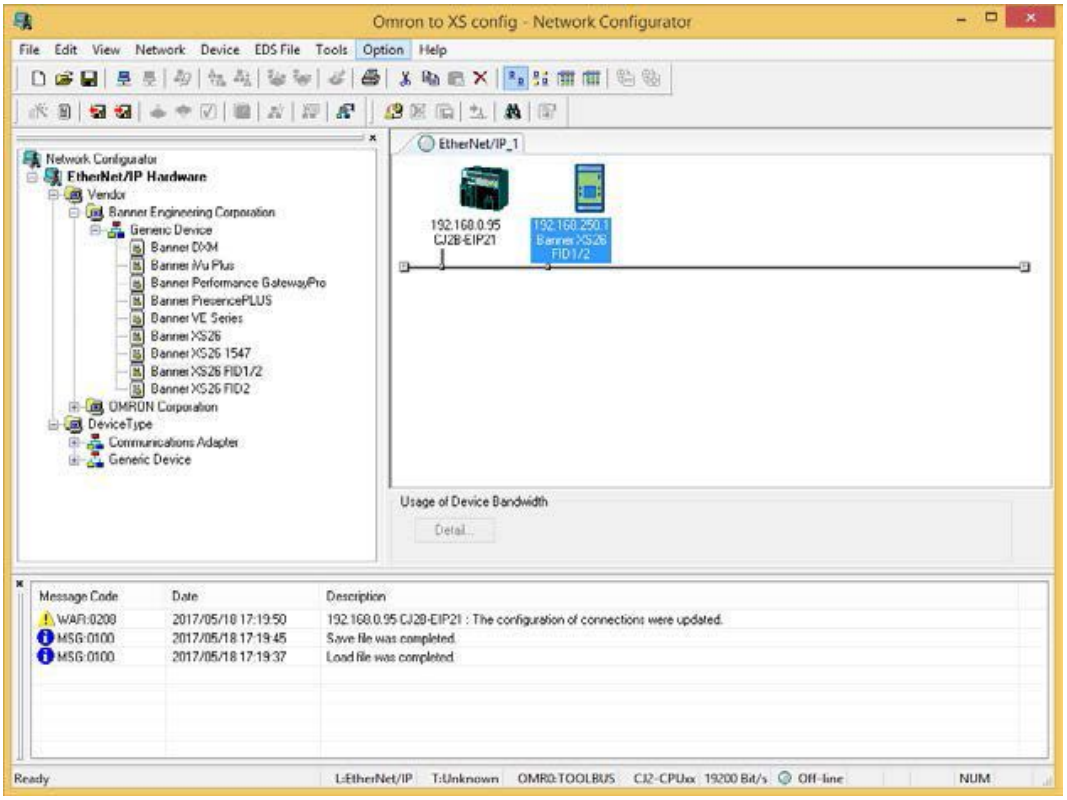

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 243. PLC IP Address*



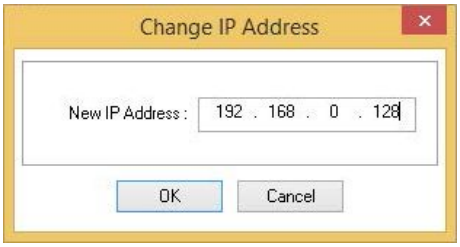

4. Install the Safety Controller EDS file.
    a. Go to **EDS_File › Install**.
    b. Browse to and select the EDS file.
    c. Double click the new item from the list at left to add it to the network.

*Figure 244. Add the Safety Controller*




5. Right click on the Safety Controller, and click **Change Node Address** to change the IP address.
6. Enter the Safety Controller's IP address.

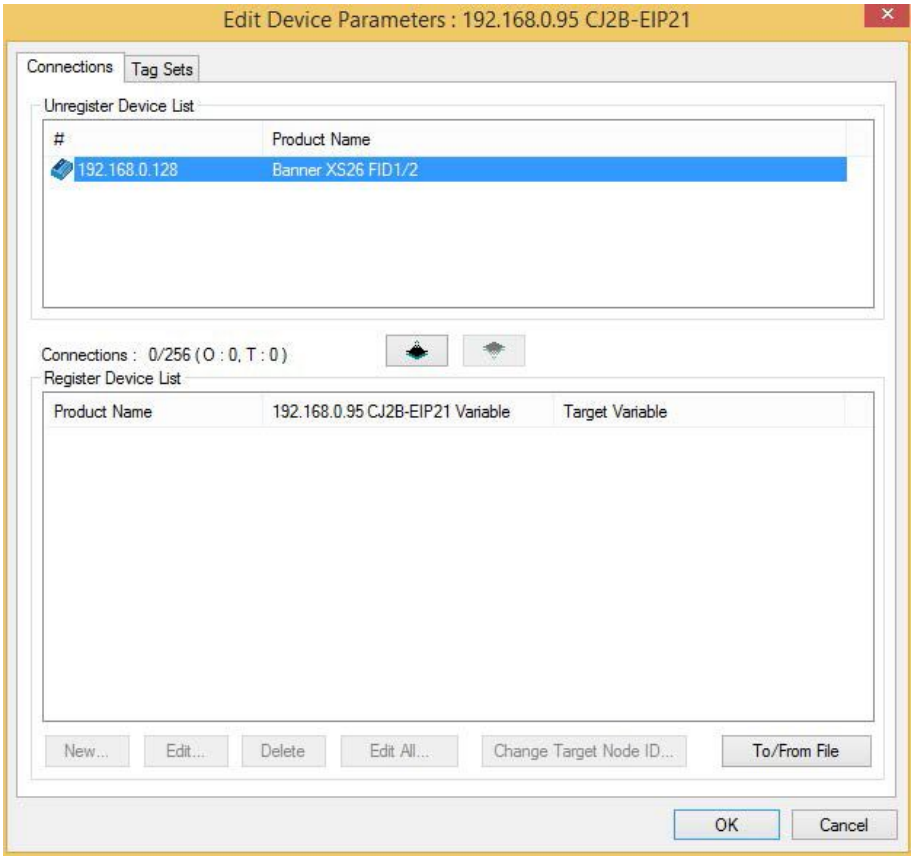
*Figure 245. Safety Controller IP Address*




7. Double click on the PLC icon to edit the device parameters.
    a. Select the Safety Controller from the **Unregister Device List**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

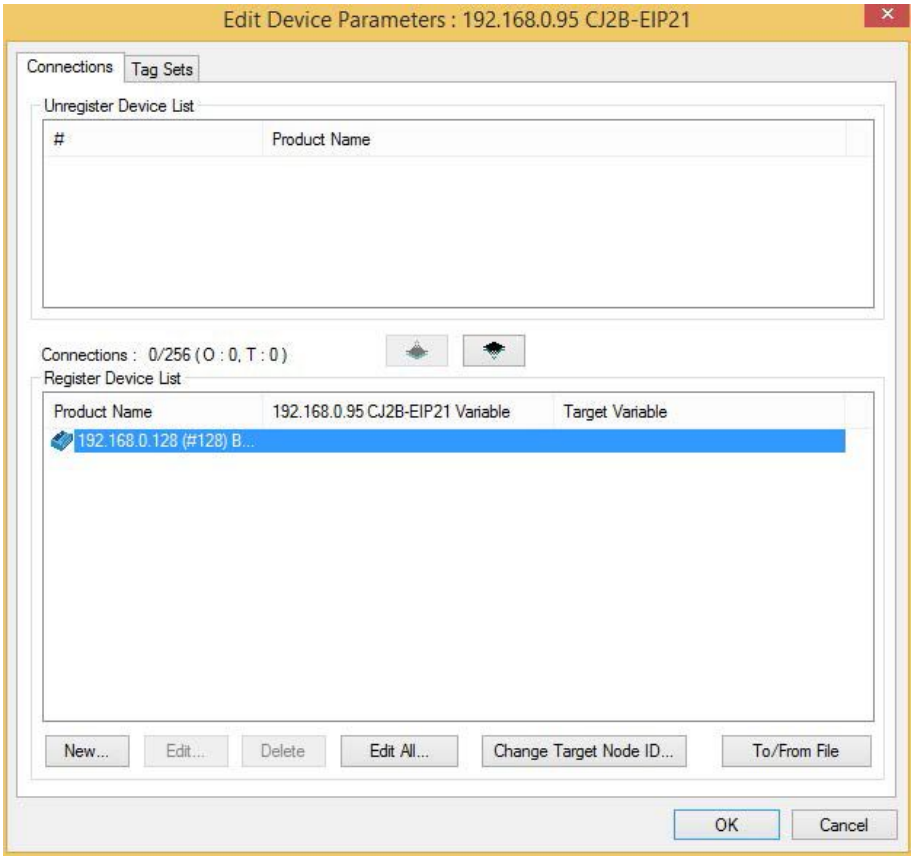
*Figure 246.* ***Unregister Device List***




b. Click the down arrow to send it to the **Register Device List**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

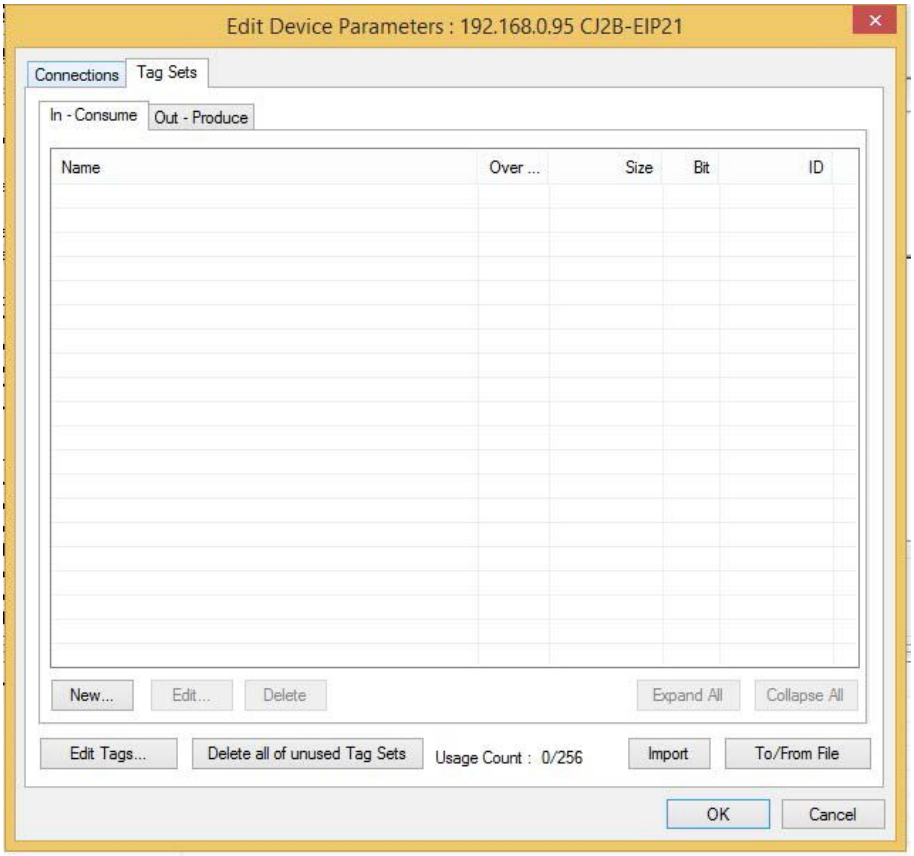
*Figure 247.* ***Register Device List***




c. Click the **Tag Sets** tab (to see the window below).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 248. **Tag Sets** Tab*

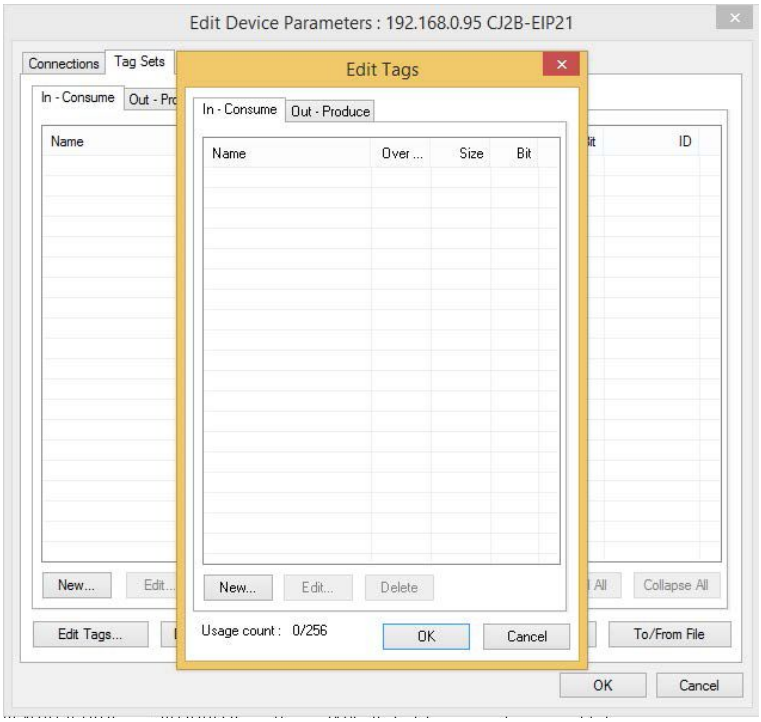



d. Click **Edit Tags…**.

The **Edit Tags** window displays.

e. Click on the **In - Consume** tab.

*Figure 249. **Edit Tag** Window—**In - Consume** Tab*




f. Click **New**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

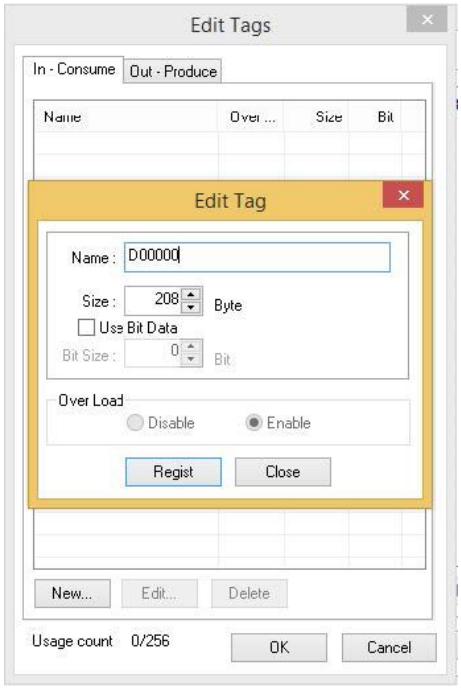
The **Edit Tag** window displays.

g. Select an appropriate type and size CPU Data Area.

In this example, the Safety Controller will be sending out 16-bit words, so the DM area works. Choose a **Size** (number of bytes) equal to the desired EIP assembly instance. Here we are looking at *In - Consume* (from the PLC's point of view), which is the T > O assemblies. See " Inputs to the Safety Controller (Outputs from the PLC)" on page 217 and "Outputs from the Safety Controller (Inputs to the PLC) " on page 218 for more information on the assembly objects. The choices are:

- VO Status/Fault - 100 (0×64), size 16 bytes
- Fault Index Words - 101 (0×65), size 208 bytes
- Error Log Only - 102 (0×66), size 300 bytes
- Reset/Cancel Delay - 103 (0×67), size 70 bytes
- VRCD plus ISD - 104 (0×68), size 224 bytes
- 8 ISD Chains - 105 (0×69), size 480 bytes

*Figure 250. **Edit Tag** Window*

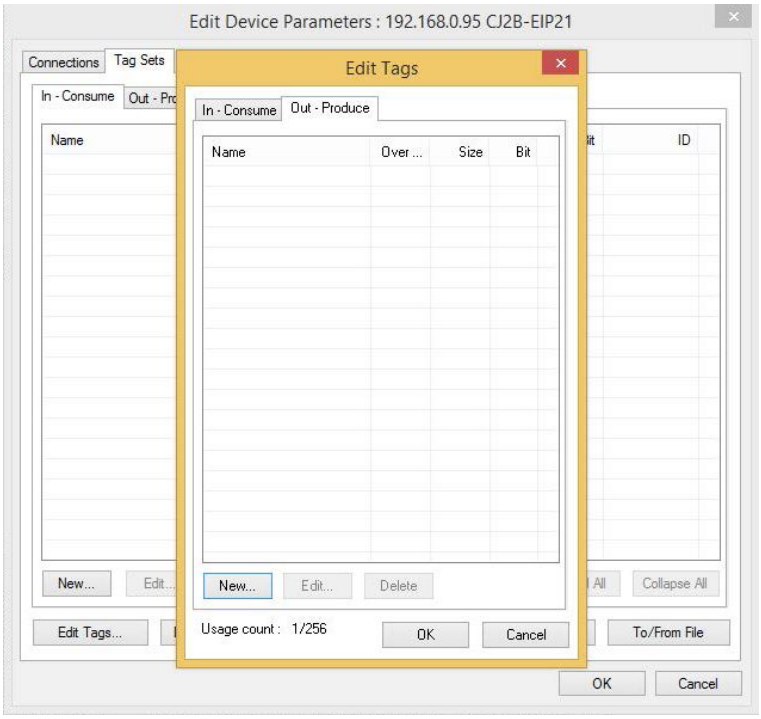



h. After entering the **Name** (remember that this refers to a CPU Data Area on the PLC) and **Size** in bytes, click **Regist**, then click **Close**.

i. Click on the **Out- Produce** tab.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 251. **Out- Produce** Tab*

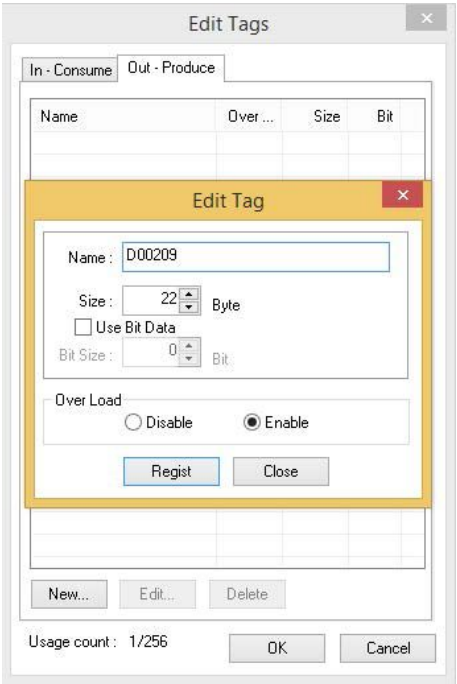



j. Click **New**.
k. Choose an appropriate type and size CPU Data Area.

   The choices are:

   - 112 (0×70), size 2 bytes (no data in these registers)
   - 113 (0×71), size 22 bytes (virtual reset, cancel delay bits)
   - 114 (0×72), size 28 bytes (8 ISD chains)

*Figure 252. **Edit Tag** Window*




l. After entering the **Name** (remember that this refers to a CPU Data Area on the PLC) and **Size** in bytes, click **Regist**, then click **Close**.
m. On the **Edit Tags** window, click **OK**.

   The message “The new Tags will be registered as Tag sets” displays.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

n. Click **Yes**.

8. Double check the tags by clicking on both the **In- Consume** and **Out- Produce** tabs.

*Figure 253. **In- Consume** Tab*

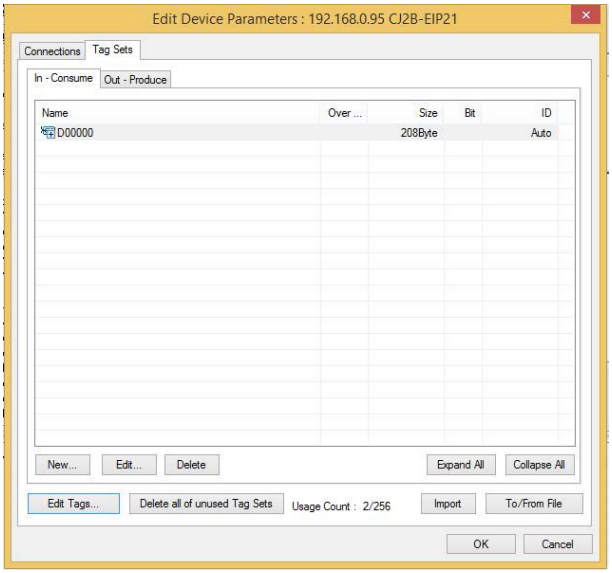
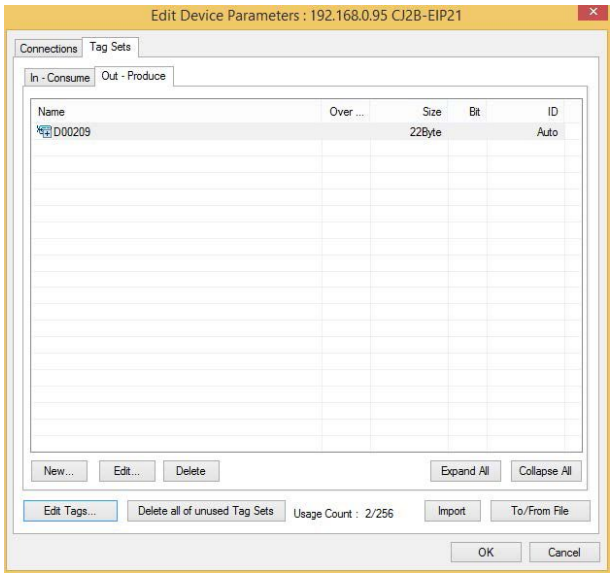
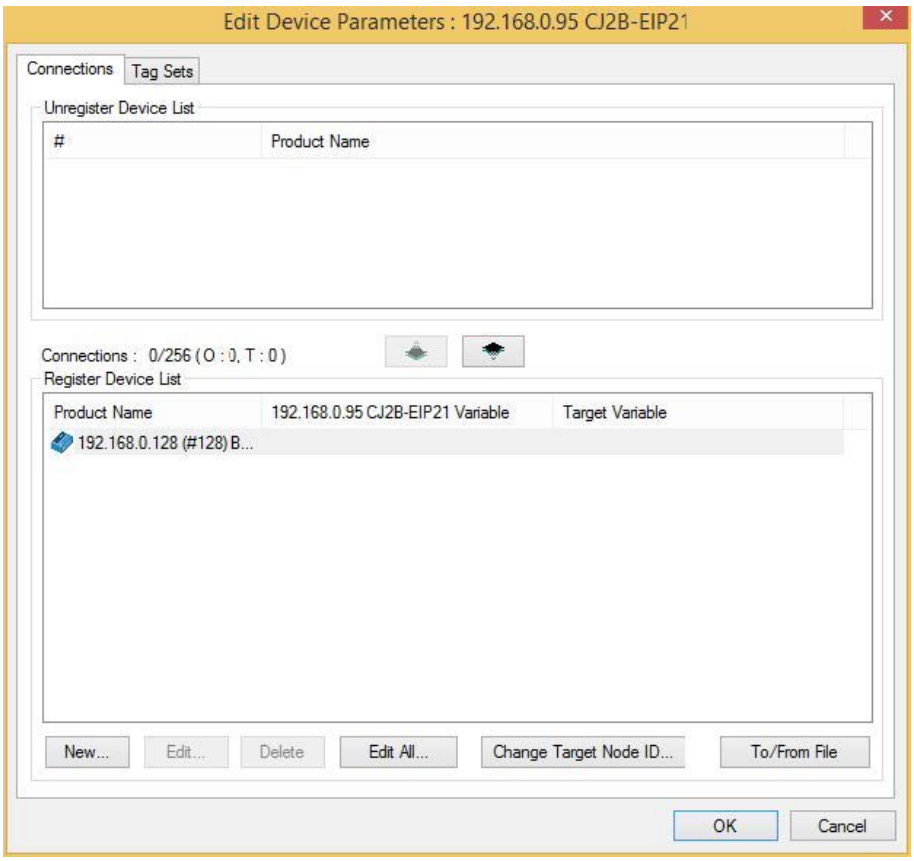



*Figure 254. **Out- Produce** Tab*




9. Go back to the **Connections** tab (to see the window below).

*Figure 255. **Edit Device Parameters** Window—**Connections** Tab*



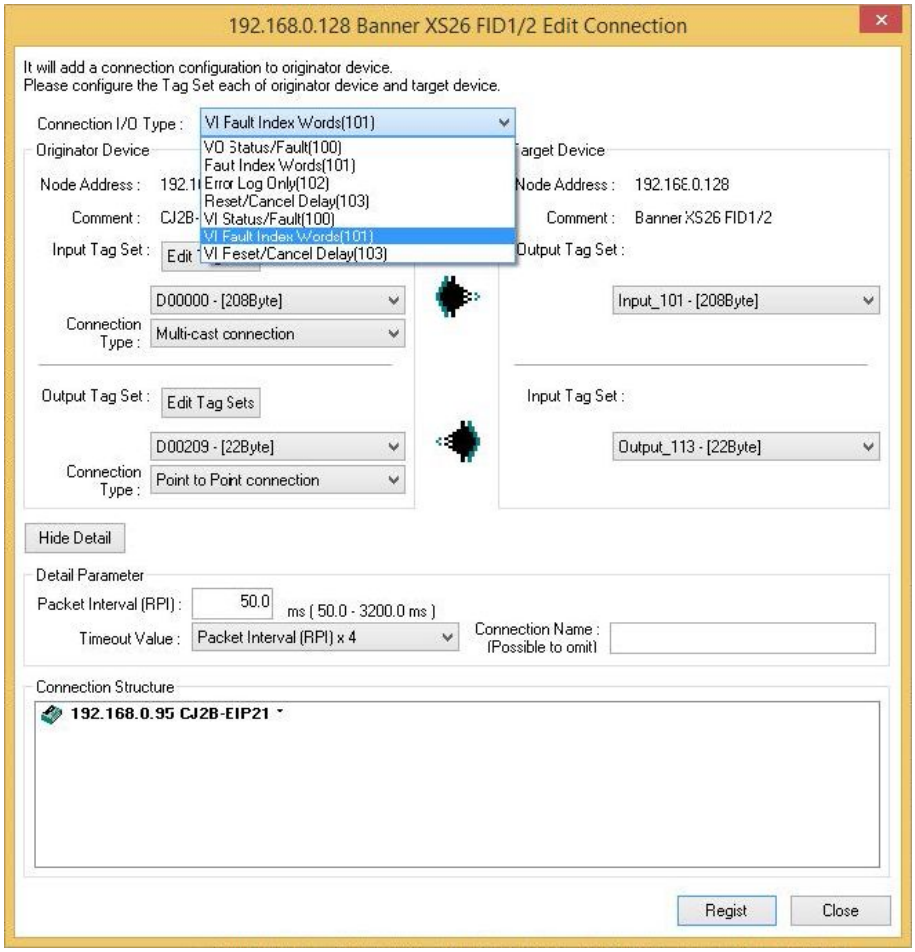

10. Double click on the Safety Controller seen in the **Register Device List**.

    The **Edit Connection** window opens.

11. Select the appropriate **Connections** and **RPI**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

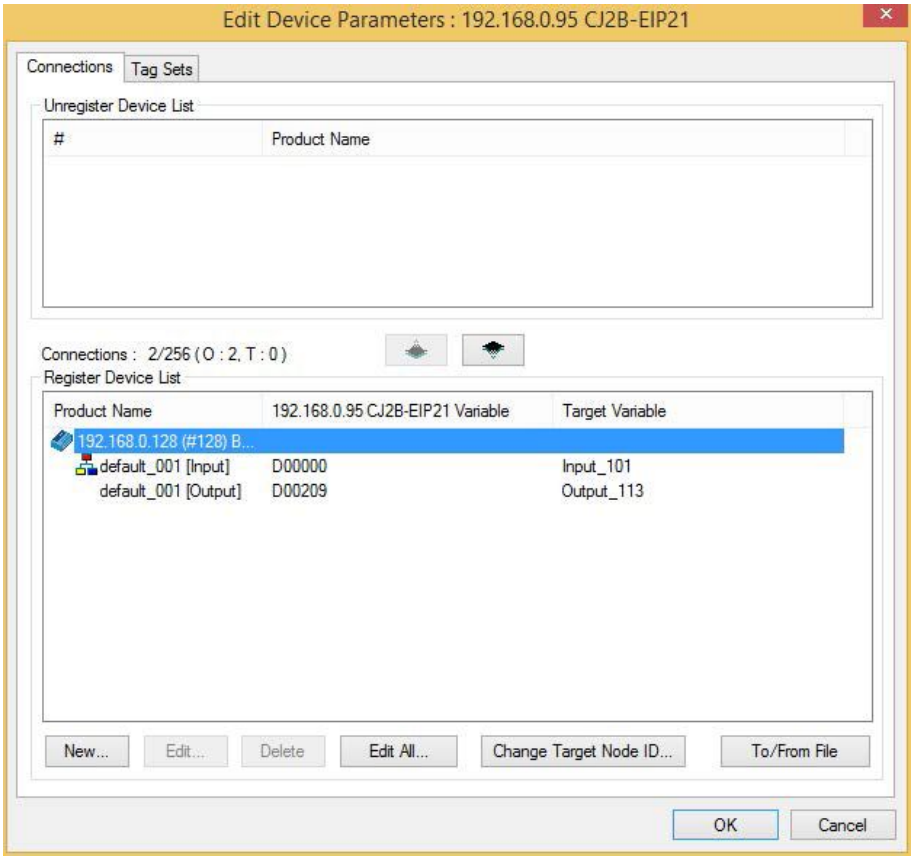
*Figure 256. Edit Connections*




12. Click **Regist**, then click **Close**.
13. Click **OK** on the **Edit Parameters** window.

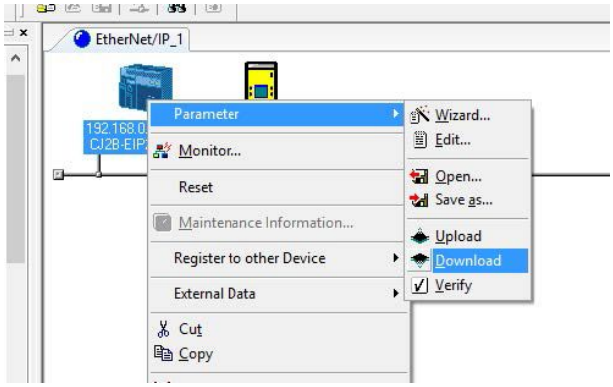

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 257. **Edit Parameters** Window*




14. Go online and download the configuration to the PLC.

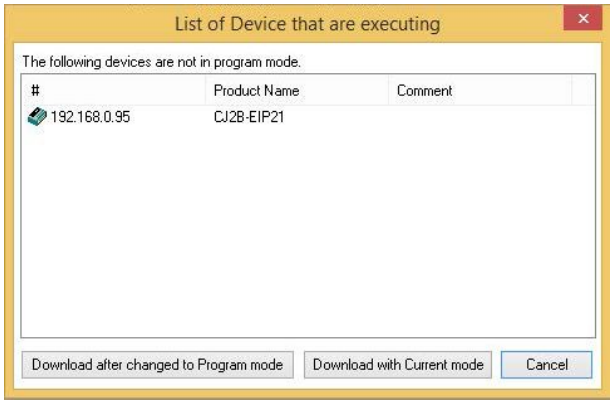
*Figure 258. Download the Configuration*




15. On the "Downloading parameters to selected devices will start" message, click **Yes**.
16. Select a download option.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 259. Download Options*




17. Click **Yes** on the "Controller's mode will be returned to the state before starting download" message, then click **OK** on the "Download of device parameter was completed" message.
18. Right click on the PLC icon and select **Monitor**.

    This window shows whether the connection looks good. Blue icons indicate a connection is running fine and without errors.

*Figure 260. **Monitor Device** Window—**Status 1** Tab*

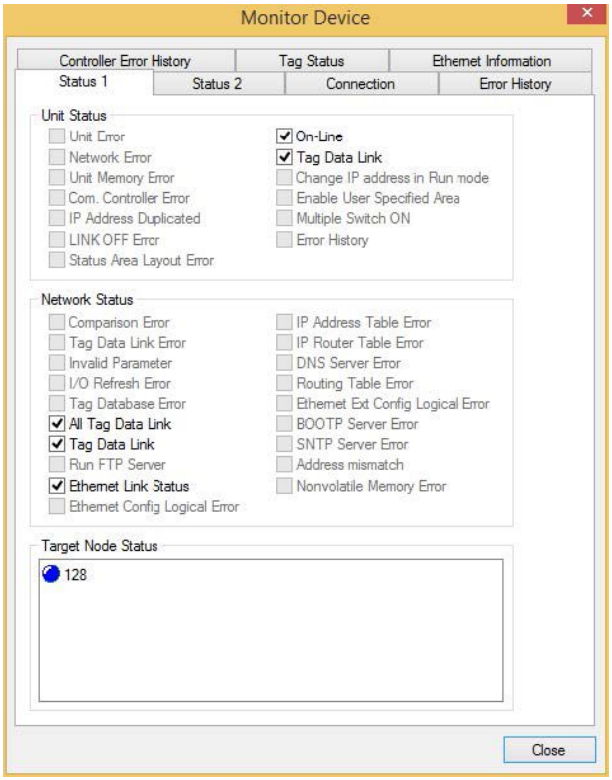
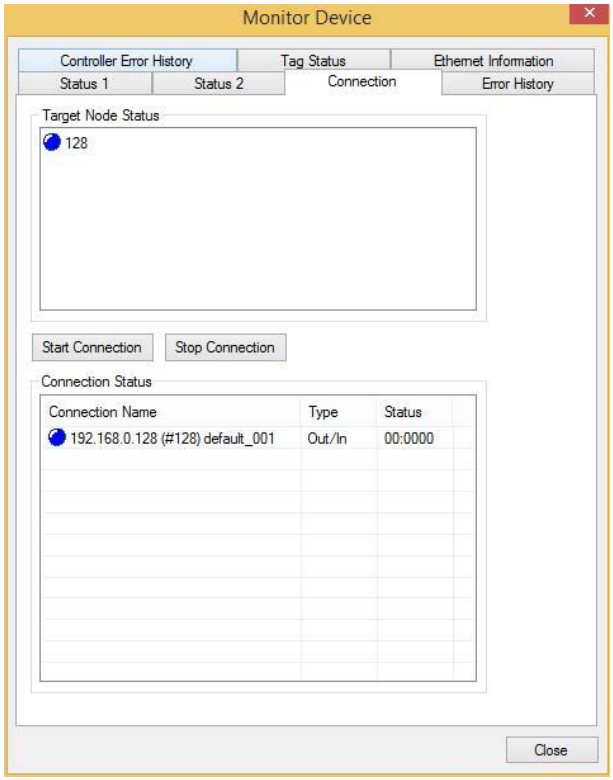



*Figure 261. **Monitor Device** Window—**Connection** Tab*

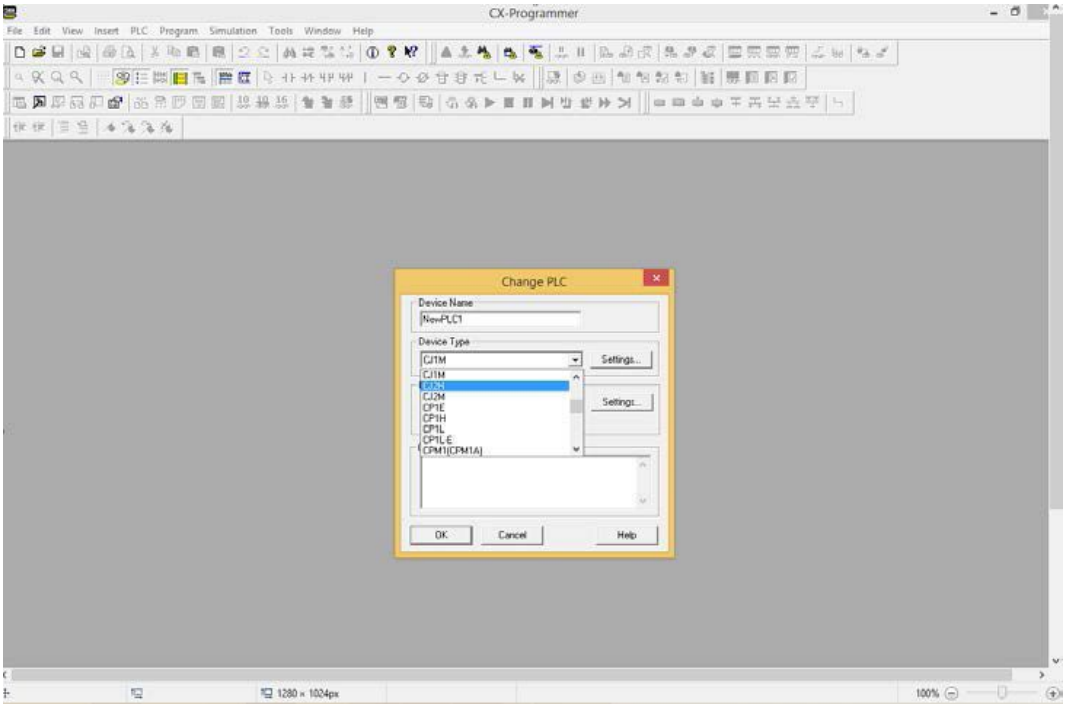



19. Open the CX Programmer software.
20. Go to **File › New**.

    The **Change PLC** window displays.
21. Select a PLC model, then click **Settings**.

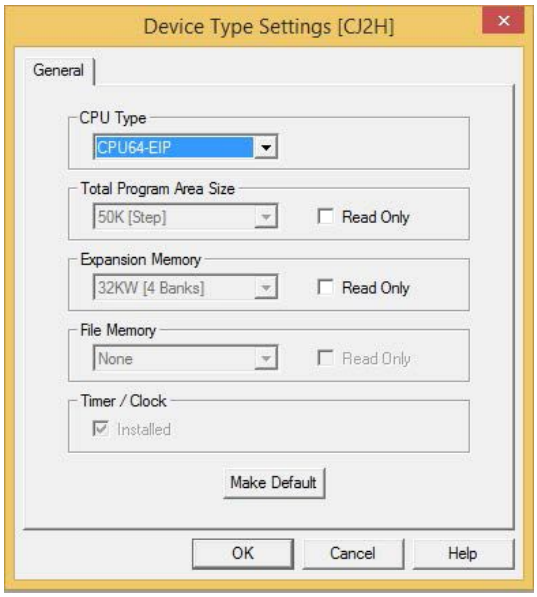

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 262. **Change PLC** Window*




22. Select a **CPU Type** and click **OK.**

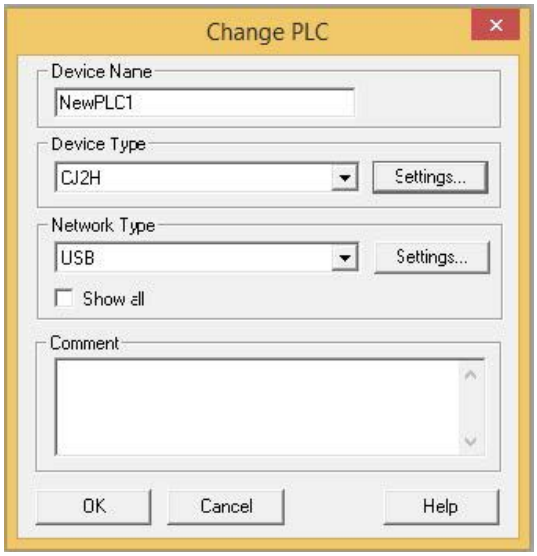
*Figure 263. **Device Type Settings** Window*




23. Select a **Network Type** and click **OK**.

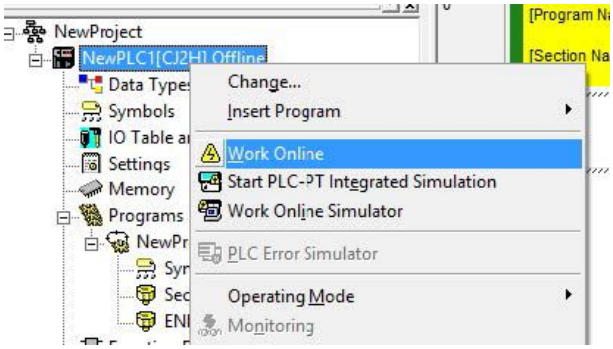

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 264. **Change PLC** Window*




24. Go Online with the PLC; click **Work Online**.

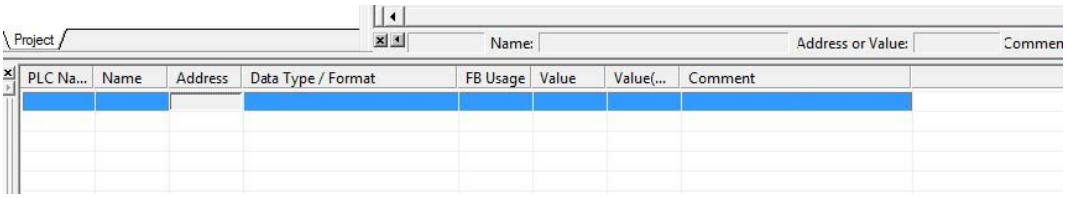
*Figure 265. Work Online*




25. Click **Yes** to connect to the PLC.
26. Go to **View › Windows › Watch**.
27. Click on the top line in the **Watch** window.

    The **Edit dialog** window opens.

*Figure 266. **Watch** Window*




28. Add some registers to the **Watch** window.

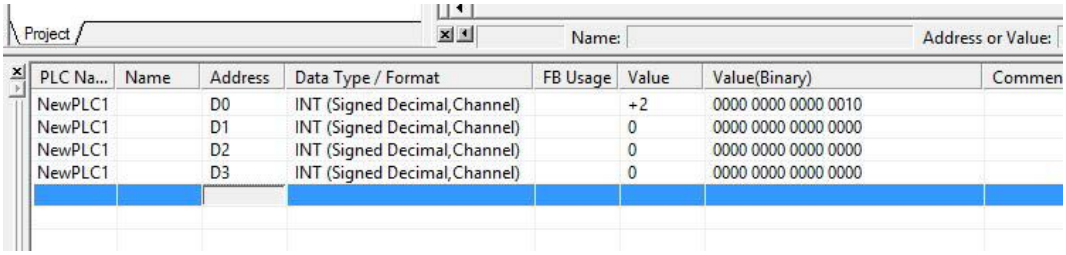
*Figure 267. **Edit Dialog***





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 268. **Watch** Window—Four Registers*




In the **Watch** window in the preceding figure, there are four registers of Safety Controller Output (PLC Input) data. Notice how Virtual Output #2 is currently on (D0 register, bit 1).

# 13.5 Modbus® TCP

The Modbus®[23] TCP protocol provides device information using register and coil banks defined by the slave device.

This section defines the register and coil banks. By specification, Modbus TCP uses TCP port 502. The Safety Controller does not support a Unit ID of 0 (sometimes called Slave ID or Device ID).

The following registers are used to send output values from the Safety Controller to the PLC. These can be read as Input Registers (30000) using Modbus function code 04 (Read Input Registers). The same values can also be read as Holding Registers (40000) using Modbus function code 03 (Read Holding Registers). The status information for all the virtual outputs and their fault flags, contained in the first eight registers, can also be read as Inputs (10000) using Modbus function code 02 (Read Input Status).

**NOTE:** FID 2 and later XS/SC26 Safety Controllers differ from FID 1 XS/SC26 models in that FID 2 and later no longer allows access to the first 64 Virtual Outputs using Modbus TCP Coils 0001–00064, nor the first 64 Virtual Output Faults bits using Modbus TCP Coils 00065–00128.

## 13.5.1 Input and Coil Bits

### The First 64 Virtual Outputs and Virtual Output Faults (Inputs 10001–10128)

*Table 29. 02: Read Input Status*

| Input # | NAME | Input # | NAME |
|---|---|---|---|
| 10001 | VO1 | 10065 | VO1 Fault bit |
| 10002 | VO2 | 10066 | VO2 Fault bit |
| 10003 | VO3 | 10067 | VO3 Fault bit |
| … | … | … | … |
| 10063 | VO63 | 10127 | VO63 Fault bit |
| 10064 | VO64 | 10128 | VO64 Fault bit |

[23] Modbus® is a registered trademark of Schneider Electric USA, Inc.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### All 256 Virtual Outputs and Virtual Output Faults (Inputs 11001-11256, 12001-12256)

*Table 30. 02: Read Input Status*

| Input # | NAME |
|---|---|
| 11001 | VO1 |
| 11002 | VO2 |
| 11003 | VO3 |
| … | … |
| 11255 | VO255 |
| 11256 | VO256 |

| Input # | NAME |
|---|---|
| 12001 | VO1 Fault bit |
| 12002 | VO2 Fault bit |
| 12003 | VO3 Fault bit |
| … | … |
| 12255 | VO255 Fault bit |
| 12256 | VO256 Fault bit |

### Virtual Input, Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay Control and Feedback (Coils 3001–3128, 4001–4032, Inputs 15001–15032)

See "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65.

*Table 31. 05: Write Single Coil; 02: Read Input Status*

| Input # | NAME |
|---|---|
| 3001 | VI1 On/Off |
| 3002 | VI2 On/Off |
| … | … |
| 3128 | VI128 On/Off |
| 4001 | VRCD1 On/Off |
| 4002 | VRCD2 On/Off |
| … | |
| 4032 | VRCD32 On/Off |

| Input # | NAME |
|---|---|
| 15001 | VRCD1 Feedback |
| 15002 | VRCD2 Feedback |
| … | … |
| 15032 | VRCD32 Feedback |

## 13.5.2 Input and Holding Registers

### Safety Controller Output Registers (Modbus TCP Input or Holding Registers)

*Table 32. Safety Controller Output Registers (Modbus TCP Input or Holding Registers)*

| Input REG # | Holding REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1 | VO1 – VO16 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | 2 | VO17 – VO32 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | 3 | VO33 – VO48 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| 4 | 4 | VO49 – VO64 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| 5 | 5 | Fault bits for VO1 – VO16 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| 6 | 6 | Fault bits for VO17 – VO32 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| 7 | 7 | Fault bits for VO33 – VO48 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 261


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 260

| Input REG # | Holding REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 8 | 8 | Fault bits for VO49 – VO64 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| | 9 | Virtual Input On/Off (1-16) | 16-bit integer |
| | 10 | Virtual Input On/Off (17-32) | 16-bit integer |
| | 11 | Virtual Input On/Off (33-48) | 16-bit integer |
| | 12 | Virtual Input On/Off (49-64) | 16-bit integer |
| 13–16 | 13–16 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| | 17 | Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay (1–16) [RCD Register Bits] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 18 | 18 | reserved | 16-bit integer |
| | 19 | RCD Actuation Code [RCD Enable Register] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 20 | 20 | Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay (1–16) Feedback [RCD Feedback Register Bits] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 21 | 21 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 22 | 22 | RCD Actuation Code Feedback [RCD Enable Feedback Register] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 23–40 | 23–40 | reserved | 16-bit integer |
| 41 | 41 | VO1 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 42 | 42 | VO2 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 43 | 43 | VO3 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 44 | 44 | VO4 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 45 | 45 | VO5 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 46 | 46 | VO6 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 47 | 47 | VO7 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 48 | 48 | VO8 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 49 | 49 | VO9 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 50 | 50 | VO10 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 51 | 51 | VO11 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 52 | 52 | VO12 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 53 | 53 | VO13 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 54 | 54 | VO14 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 55 | 55 | VO15 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 56 | 56 | VO16 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 57 | 57 | VO17 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 58 | 58 | VO18 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 59 | 59 | VO19 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 60 | 60 | VO20 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 61 | 61 | VO21 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 262


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 261

| Input REG # | Holding REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 62 | 62 | VO22 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 63 | 63 | VO23 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 64 | 64 | VO24 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 65 | 65 | VO25 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 66 | 66 | VO26 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 67 | 67 | VO27 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 68 | 68 | VO28 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 69 | 69 | VO29 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 70 | 70 | VO30 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 71 | 71 | VO31 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 72 | 72 | VO32 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 73 | 73 | VO33 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 74 | 74 | VO34 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 75 | 75 | VO35 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 76 | 76 | VO36 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 77 | 77 | VO37 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 78 | 78 | VO38 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 79 | 79 | VO39 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 80 | 80 | VO40 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 81 | 81 | VO41 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 82 | 82 | VO42 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 83 | 83 | VO43 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 84 | 84 | VO44 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 85 | 85 | VO45 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 86 | 86 | VO46 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 87 | 87 | VO47 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 88 | 88 | VO48 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 89 | 89 | VO49 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 90 | 90 | VO50 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 91 | 91 | VO51 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 92 | 92 | VO52 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 93 | 93 | VO53 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 94 | 94 | VO54 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 95 | 95 | VO55 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 96 | 96 | VO56 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 97 | 97 | VO57 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 98 | 98 | VO58 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 99 | 99 | VO59 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 100 | 100 | VO60 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 101 | 101 | VO61 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 263


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 262

| Input REG # | Holding REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 102 | 102 | VO62 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 103 | 103 | VO63 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 104 | 104 | VO64 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 105–106 | 105–106 | VO1 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 107–108 | 107–108 | VO2 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 109–110 | 109–110 | VO3 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 111–112 | 111–112 | VO4 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 113–114 | 113–114 | VO5 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 115–116 | 115–116 | VO6 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 117–118 | 117–118 | VO7 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 119–120 | 119–120 | VO8 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 121–122 | 121–122 | VO9 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 123–124 | 123–124 | VO10 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 125–126 | 125–126 | VO11 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 127–128 | 127–128 | VO12 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 129–130 | 129–130 | VO13 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 131–132 | 131–132 | VO14 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 133–134 | 133–134 | VO15 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 135–136 | 135–136 | VO16 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 137–138 | 137–138 | VO17 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 139–140 | 139–140 | VO18 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 141–142 | 141–142 | VO19 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 143–144 | 143–144 | VO20 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 145–146 | 145–146 | VO21 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 147–148 | 147–148 | VO22 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 149–150 | 149–150 | VO23 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 151–152 | 151–152 | VO24 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 153–154 | 153–154 | VO25 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 155–156 | 155–156 | VO26 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 157–158 | 157–158 | VO27 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 159–160 | 159–160 | VO28 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 161–162 | 161–162 | VO29 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 163–164 | 163–164 | VO30 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 165–166 | 165–166 | VO31 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 167–168 | 167–168 | VO32 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 169–170 | 169–170 | VO33 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 171–172 | 171–172 | VO34 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 173–174 | 173–174 | VO35 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 175–176 | 175–176 | VO36 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 177–178 | 177–178 | VO37 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 264


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 263

| Input REG # | Holding REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 179–180 | 179–180 | VO38 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 181–182 | 181–182 | VO39 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 183–184 | 183–184 | VO40 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 185–186 | 185–186 | VO41 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 187–188 | 187–188 | VO42 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 189–190 | 189–190 | VO43 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 191–192 | 191–192 | VO44 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 193–194 | 193–194 | VO45 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 195–196 | 195–196 | VO46 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 197–198 | 197–198 | VO47 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 199–200 | 199–200 | VO48 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 201–202 | 201–202 | VO49 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 203–204 | 203–204 | VO50 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 205–206 | 205–206 | VO51 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 207–208 | 207–208 | VO52 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 209–210 | 209–210 | VO53 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 211–212 | 211–212 | VO54 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 213–214 | 213–214 | VO55 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 215–216 | 215–216 | VO56 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 217–218 | 217–218 | VO57 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 219–220 | 219–220 | VO58 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 221–222 | 221–222 | VO59 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 223–224 | 223–224 | VO60 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 225–226 | 225–226 | VO61 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 227–228 | 227–228 | VO62 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 229–230 | 229–230 | VO63 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 231–232 | 231–232 | VO64 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 233–234 | 233–234 | Fault #1 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 235–242 | 235–242 | Fault #1 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 243 | 243 | Fault #1 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 244 | 244 | Fault #1 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 245 | 245 | Fault #1 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 246–247 | 246–247 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 248–249 | 248–249 | Fault #2 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 250–257 | 250–257 | Fault #2 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 258 | 258 | Fault #2 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 259 | 259 | Fault #2 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 260 | 260 | Fault #2 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 261–262 | 261–262 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 263–264 | 263–264 | Fault #3 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 265


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 264

| Input REG # | Holding REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 265–272 | 265–272 | Fault #3 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 273 | 273 | Fault #3 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 274 | 274 | Fault #3 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 275 | 275 | Fault #3 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 276–277 | 276–277 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 278–279 | 278–279 | Fault #4 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 280–287 | 280–287 | Fault #4 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 288 | 288 | Fault #4 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 289 | 289 | Fault #4 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 290 | 290 | Fault #4 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 291–292 | 291–292 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 293–294 | 293–294 | Fault #5 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 295–302 | 295–302 | Fault #5 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 303 | 303 | Fault #5 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 304 | 304 | Fault #5 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 305 | 305 | Fault #5 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 306–307 | 306–307 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 308–309 | 308–309 | Fault #6 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 310–317 | 310–317 | Fault #6 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 318 | 318 | Fault #6 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 319 | 319 | Fault #6 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 320 | 320 | Fault #6 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 321–322 | 321–322 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 323–324 | 323–324 | Fault #7 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 325–332 | 325–332 | Fault #7 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 333 | 333 | Fault #7 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 334 | 334 | Fault #7 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 335 | 335 | Fault #7 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 336–337 | 336–337 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 338–339 | 338–339 | Fault #8 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 340–347 | 340–347 | Fault #8 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 348 | 348 | Fault #8 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 349 | 349 | Fault #8 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 350 | 350 | Fault #8 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 351–352 | 351–352 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 353–354 | 353–354 | Fault #9 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 355–362 | 355–362 | Fault #9 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 363 | 363 | Fault #9 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 364 | 364 | Fault #9 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 365 | 365 | Fault #9 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 266


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 265

| Input REG # | Holding REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 366–367 | 366–367 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 368–369 | 368–369 | Fault #10 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 370–377 | 370–377 | Fault #10 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 378 | 378 | Fault #10 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 379 | 379 | Fault #10 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 380 | 380 | Fault #10 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 381–382 | 381–382 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 383–384 | 383–384 | Seconds Since Boot | 32-bit integer |
| 385 | 385 | Operating Mode | 16-bit integer |
| 386–395 | 386–395 | ConfigName | 2-word length + 16-ASCII characters |
| 396–397 | 396–397 | Config CRC | 32-bit integer |
| 398–900 | 398–900 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 901 | 901 | VO1 – VO16 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| 902 | 902 | VO17 – VO32 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| 903 | 903 | VO33 – VO48 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| 904 | 904 | VO49 – VO64 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| 905 | 905 | VO65 – VO80 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 906 | 906 | VO81 – VO96 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 907 | 907 | VO97 – VO112 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 908 | 908 | VO113 – VO128 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 909 | 909 | VO129 – VO144 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 910 | 910 | VO145 – VO160 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 911 | 911 | VO161 – VO176 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 912 | 912 | VO177 – VO192 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 913 | 913 | VO193 – VO208 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 914 | 914 | VO209 – VO224 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 915 | 915 | VO225 – VO240 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 916 | 916 | VO241 – VO256 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 917 | 917 | Fault bits for VO1 – VO16 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| 918 | 918 | Fault bits for VO17 – VO32 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| 919 | 919 | Fault bits for VO33 – VO48 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 267


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 266

| Input REG # | Holding REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 920 | 920 | Fault bits for VO49 – VO64 (see "Flags " on page 271) | 16-bit integer |
| 921 | 921 | Fault bits for VO65 – VO80 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 922 | 922 | Fault bits for VO81 – VO96 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 923 | 923 | Fault bits for VO97 – VO112 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 924 | 924 | Fault bits for VO113 – VO128 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 925 | 925 | Fault bits for VO129 – VO144 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 926 | 926 | Fault bits for VO145 – VO160 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 926 | 926 | Fault bits for VO161 – VO176 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 928 | 928 | Fault bits for VO177 – VO192 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 929 | 929 | Fault bits for VO193 – VO208 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 930 | 930 | Fault bits for VO209 – VO224 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 931 | 931 | Fault bits for VO225 – VO240 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 932 | 932 | Fault bits for VO241 – VO256 (see "Extended Flags" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| 933–934 | 933–934 | RCD bits feedback (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 32-bit integer |
| 935 | 935 | RCD Enable feedback (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 936 | 936 | VO1 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 937 | 937 | VO2 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 938 | 938 | VO3 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| … | ... | … | … |
| 1190 | 1190 | VO256 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 1191–1192 | 1191–1192 | VO1 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 1193–1194 | 1193–1194 | VO2 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 1195–1196 | 1195–1196 | VO3 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 1197–1198 | 1197–1198 | VO4 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| … | … | … | … |
| 1702–1703 | 1702–1703 | VO256 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 1704–1705 | 1704–1705 | ISD System Status - Chain 1 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 1706–1707 | 1706–1707 | ISD System Status - Chain 2 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 1708–1709 | 1708–1709 | ISD System Status - Chain 1 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 268


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 267

| Input REG # | Holding REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1710–1711 | 1710–1711 | ISD System Status - Chain 2 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1712–1713 | 1712–1713 | ISD System Status - Chain 1 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1714–1715 | 1714–1715 | ISD System Status - Chain 2 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1716–1717 | 1716–1717 | ISD System Status - Chain 1 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1718–1719 | 1718–1719 | ISD System Status - Chain 2 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1720–1721 | 1720–1721 | ISD System Status - Chain 1 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1722–1723 | 1722–1723 | ISD System Status - Chain 2 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1724–1725 | 1724–1725 | ISD System Status - Chain 1 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1726–1727 | 1726–1727 | ISD System Status - Chain 2 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1728–1729 | 1728–1729 | ISD System Status - Chain 1 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1730–1731 | 1730–1731 | ISD System Status - Chain 2 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1732–1733 | 1732–1733 | ISD System Status - Chain 1 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 1734–1735 | 1734–1735 | ISD System Status - Chain 2 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 1736–1751 | 1736–1751 | List of Detected ISD Devices on a Chain | 32 byte array |
| 1752–1768 | 1752–1768 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 1769 | 1769 | ISD Read Request Acknowledge (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 1770 | 1770 | ISD Chain Requested Acknowledge (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 1771 | 1771 | ISD Device Requested Acknowledge (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 1772–1780 | 1772–1780 | ISD Individual Device-Specific Data[24] (see "ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description" on page 272) | 16-bit integer |
| | 1781 | ISD Read Request (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| | 1782 | ISD Chain Requested (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 269

[24] For conversion to Internal Temperature, Actuator Distance, and Supply Voltage, see "ISD: Temperature, Voltage, and Distance Conversion Information " on page 329.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 268

| Input REG # | Holding REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|---|
| | 1783 | ISD Device Requested (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 1784–1785 | 1784–1785 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 1786–1787 | 1786–1787 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1788–1789 | 1788–1789 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1790–1791 | 1790–1791 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1792–1793 | 1792–1793 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1794–1795 | 1794–1795 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1796–1797 | 1796–1797 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1798–1799 | 1798–1799 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 1800–1801 | 1800–1801 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 1802–1803 | 1802–1803 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1804–1805 | 1804–1805 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1806–1807 | 1806–1807 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1808–1809 | 1808–1809 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1810–1811 | 1810–1811 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1812–1813 | 1812–1813 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1814–1815 | 1814–1815 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 1816–1817 | 1816–1817 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 1818–1819 | 1818–1819 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1820–1821 | 1820–1821 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1822–1823 | 1822–1823 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1824–1825 | 1824–1825 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1826–1827 | 1826–1827 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 270


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 269

| Input REG # | Holding REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1828–1829 | 1828–1829 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1830–1831 | 1830–1831 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 1832–1833 | 1832–1833 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 1834–1835 | 1834–1835 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1836–1837 | 1836–1837 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1838–1839 | 1838–1839 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1840–1841 | 1840–1841 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1842–1843 | 1842–1843 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1844–1845 | 1844–1845 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1846–1847 | 1846–1847 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 1848–1849 | 1848–1849 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 1850–1851 | 1850–1851 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1852–1853 | 1852–1853 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1854–1855 | 1854–1855 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1856–1857 | 1856–1857 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1858–1859 | 1858–1859 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1860–1861 | 1860–1861 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1862–1863 | 1862–1863 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 1864–1865 | 1864–1865 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 1866–1867 | 1866–1867 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1868–1869 | 1868–1869 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1870–1871 | 1870–1871 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1872–1873 | 1872–1873 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1874–1875 | 1874–1875 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 271


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 270

| Input REG # | Holding REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1876–1877 | 1876–1877 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1878–1879 | 1878–1879 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 1880–1881 | 1880–1881 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 1882–1883 | 1882–1883 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1884–1885 | 1884–1885 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1886–1887 | 1886–1887 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1888–1889 | 1888–1889 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1890–1891 | 1890–1891 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1892–1893 | 1892–1893 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1894–1895 | 1894–1895 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 1896–1897 | 1896–1897 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 1898–1899 | 1898–1899 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1900–1901 | 1900–1901 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1902–1903 | 1902–1903 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1904–1905 | 1904–1905 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1906–1907 | 1906–1907 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1908–1909 | 1908–1909 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 1910–1911 | 1910–1911 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |

**NOTE:** The ISD data is not immediately available upon power up. The ISD data can be delayed up to 10 seconds after the system power has been turned on.

## Flags

Registers 1 through 8, defined below, appear as the first eight words in register map.

This represents the first 64 virtual outputs and the associated fault flags. The information in these registers can be read as Input Registers (30000) using Modbus function code 04 (Read Input Registers). The same values can also be read as Holding Registers (40000) using Modbus function code 03 (Read Holding Registers).

PLC Input register 30001 or Holding Register 40001, also Inputs 10001–16 or Coils 00001–16


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Table 33. Virtual Output 1–16*

| bit 15 | bit 14 | bit 13 | bit 12 | bit 11 | bit 10 | bit 9 | bit 8 | bit 7 | bit 6 | bit 5 | bit 4 | bit 3 | bit 2 | bit 1 | bit 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| VO16 | VO15 | VO14 | VO13 | VO12 | VO11 | VO10 | VO9 | VO8 | VO7 | VO6 | VO5 | VO4 | VO3 | VO2 | VO1 |

PLC Input register 30002 or Holding Register 40002, also Inputs 10017–32 or Coils 00017–32

*Table 34. Virtual Output 17–32*

| bit 15 | bit 14 | bit 13 | bit 12 | bit 11 | bit 10 | bit 9 | bit 8 | bit 7 | bit 6 | bit 5 | bit 4 | bit 3 | bit 2 | bit 1 | bit 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| VO32 | VO31 | VO30 | VO29 | VO28 | VO27 | VO26 | VO25 | VO24 | VO23 | VO22 | VO21 | VO20 | VO19 | VO18 | VO17 |

PLC Input register 30003 or Holding Register 40003, also Inputs 10033–48 or Coils 00033–48

*Table 35. Virtual Output 33–48*

| bit 15 | bit 14 | bit 13 | bit 12 | bit 11 | bit 10 | bit 9 | bit 8 | bit 7 | bit 6 | bit 5 | bit 4 | bit 3 | bit 2 | bit 1 | bit 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| VO48 | VO47 | VO46 | VO45 | VO44 | VO43 | VO42 | VO41 | VO40 | VO39 | VO38 | VO37 | VO36 | VO35 | VO34 | VO33 |

PLC Input register 30004 or Holding Register 40004, also Inputs 10049–64 or Coils 00049–64

*Table 36. Virtual Output 49–64*

| bit 15 | bit 14 | bit 13 | bit 12 | bit 11 | bit 10 | bit 9 | bit 8 | bit 7 | bit 6 | bit 5 | bit 4 | bit 3 | bit 2 | bit 1 | bit 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| VO64 | VO63 | VO62 | VO61 | VO60 | VO59 | VO58 | VO57 | VO56 | VO55 | VO54 | VO53 | VO52 | VO51 | VO50 | VO49 |

PLC Input register 30005 or Holding Register 40005, also Inputs 10033–48 or Coils 00033–48

*Table 37. Virtual Output Fault 1–16*

| bit 15 | bit 14 | bit 13 | bit 12 | bit 11 | bit 10 | bit 9 | bit 8 | bit 7 | bit 6 | bit 5 | bit 4 | bit 3 | bit 2 | bit 1 | bit 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| VO16 fault | VO15 fault | VO14 fault | VO13 fault | VO12 fault | VO11 fault | VO10 fault | VO9 fault | VO8 fault | VO7 fault | VO6 fault | VO5 fault | VO4 fault | VO3 fault | VO2 fault | VO1 fault |

PLC Input register 30006 or Holding Register 40006, also Inputs 10049–64 or Coils 00049–64

*Table 38. Virtual Output Fault 17–32*

| bit 15 | bit 14 | bit 13 | bit 12 | bit 11 | bit 10 | bit 9 | bit 8 | bit 7 | bit 6 | bit 5 | bit 4 | bit 3 | bit 2 | bit 1 | bit 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| VO32 fault | VO31 fault | VO30 fault | VO29 fault | VO28 fault | VO27 fault | VO26 fault | VO25 fault | VO24 fault | VO23 fault | VO22 fault | VO21 fault | VO20 fault | VO19 fault | VO18 fault | VO17 fault |

PLC Input register 30007 or Holding Register 40007, also Inputs 10033–48 or Coils 00033–48

*Table 39. Virtual Output Fault 33–48*

| bit 15 | bit 14 | bit 13 | bit 12 | bit 11 | bit 10 | bit 9 | bit 8 | bit 7 | bit 6 | bit 5 | bit 4 | bit 3 | bit 2 | bit 1 | bit 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| VO48 fault | VO47 fault | VO46 fault | VO45 fault | VO44 fault | VO43 fault | VO42 fault | VO41 fault | VO40 fault | VO39 fault | VO38 fault | VO37 fault | VO36 fault | VO35 fault | VO34 fault | VO33 fault |

PLC Input register 30008 or Holding Register 40008, also Inputs 10049–64 or Coils 00049–64

*Table 40. Virtual Output Fault 49–64*

| bit 15 | bit 14 | bit 13 | bit 12 | bit 11 | bit 10 | bit 9 | bit 8 | bit 7 | bit 6 | bit 5 | bit 4 | bit 3 | bit 2 | bit 1 | bit 0 |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| VO64 fault | VO63 fault | VO62 fault | VO61 fault | VO60 fault | VO59 fault | VO58 fault | VO57 fault | VO56 fault | VO55 fault | VO54 fault | VO53 fault | VO52 fault | VO51 fault | VO50 fault | VO49 fault |

## Extended Flags

All 256 Virtual Outputs can be accessed in a way similar to that seen in "Flags " on page 271.

Inputs 11001 through 11256 represent all 256 possible Virtual Outputs. These Virtual Outputs can also be read as Input Registers 901-916 or Holding Registers 901-916.

Inputs 12001 through 12256 are all 256 Virtual Output Faults. These Virtual Output Faults can also be read as Input Registers 917-932 or Holding Registers 917-932.

## ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description

The following table describes Data Input and Holding Registers 1772–1780.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Table 41. ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description*

| Input REG # | Holding REG # | Information | Data size |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1772.0 | 1772.0 | Safety Input Fault | 1 bit |
| 1772.1 | 1772.1 | *reserved* | 1 bit |
| 1772.2 | 1772.2 | Sensor Not Paired | 1-bit |
| 1772.3 | 1772.3 | ISD Data Error | 1-bit |
| 1772.4 | 1772.4 | Wrong Actuator/Button Status/Input Status | 1-bit |
| 1772.5 | 1772.5 | Marginal Range/Button Status/Input Status | 1-bit |
| 1772.6 | 1772.6 | Actuator Detected | 1-bit |
| 1772.7 | 1772.7 | Output Error | 1-bit |
| 1772.8 | 1772.8 | Input 2 | 1-bit |
| 1772.9 | 1772.9 | Input 1 | 1-bit |
| 1772.10 | 1772.10 | Local Reset Expected | 1-bit |
| 1772.11 | 1772.11 | Operating Voltage Warning | 1-bit |
| 1772.12 | 1772.12 | Operating Voltage Error | 1-bit |
| 1772.13 | 1772.13 | Output 2 | 1-bit |
| 1772.14 | 1772.14 | Output 1 | 1-bit |
| 1772.15 | 1772.15 | Power Cycle Required | 1-bit |
| 1773.0 | 1773.0 | Fault Tolerant Outputs | 1-bit |
| 1773.1 | 1773.1 | Local Reset Unit | 1-bit |
| 1773.2 | 1773.2 | Cascadable | 1-bit |
| 1773.3 | 1773.3 | High Coding Level | 1-bit |
| 1773.4 to 1773.7 | 1773.4 to 1773.7 | Teach-ins Remaining | 4-bit |
| 1773.8 to 1773.12 | 1773.8 to 1773.12 | Device ID | 5-bit |
| 1773.13 to 1774.2 | 1773.13 to 1774.2 | Range Warning Count | 6-bit |
| 1774.3 to 1774.7 | 1774.3 to 1774.7 | Output Switch-off Time | 5-bit |
| 1774.8 to 1774.15 | 1774.8 to 1774.15 | Number of Voltage Errors | 8-bit |
| 1775.0 to 1775.7 | 1775.0 to 1775.7 | Internal Temperature[25] | 8-bit |
| 1775.8 to 1775.15 | 1775.8 to 1775.15 | Actuator Distance[25] | 8-bit |
| 1776.0 to 1776.7 | 1776.0 to 1776.7 | Supply Voltage[25] | 8-bit |
| 1776.8 to 1776.11 | 1776.8 to 1776.11 | Expected Company Name | 4-bit |
| 1776.12 to 1776.15 | 1776.12 to 1776.15 | Received Company Name | 4-bit |
| 1777 | 1777 | Expected Code | 16-bit |
| 1778 | 1778 | Received Code | 16-bit |
| 1779 | 1779 | Internal Error A | 16-bit |
| 1780 | 1780 | Internal Error B | 16-bit |

[25] For conversion to Internal Temperature, Actuator Distance, and Supply Voltage, see "ISD: Temperature, Voltage, and Distance Conversion Information " on page 329.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 13.6 PLC5, SLC500, and MicroLogix (PCCC)

Allen-Bradley's PLC5, SLC 500, and MicroLogix family of devices uses PCCC communications protocol.

PCCC is also known as EtherNet/IP transport class 3 and uses explicit Read and Write message commands, or EIP messaging, placed into the ladder logic program, to interface with the Safety Controller.

These PLCs do not support cyclic EtherNet/IP IO data transfer (referred to as EtherNet/IP in this manual). The programming software used by these PLCs is RSLogix 5 (PLC5) or RSLogix 500 (SLC500 and MicroLogix series).

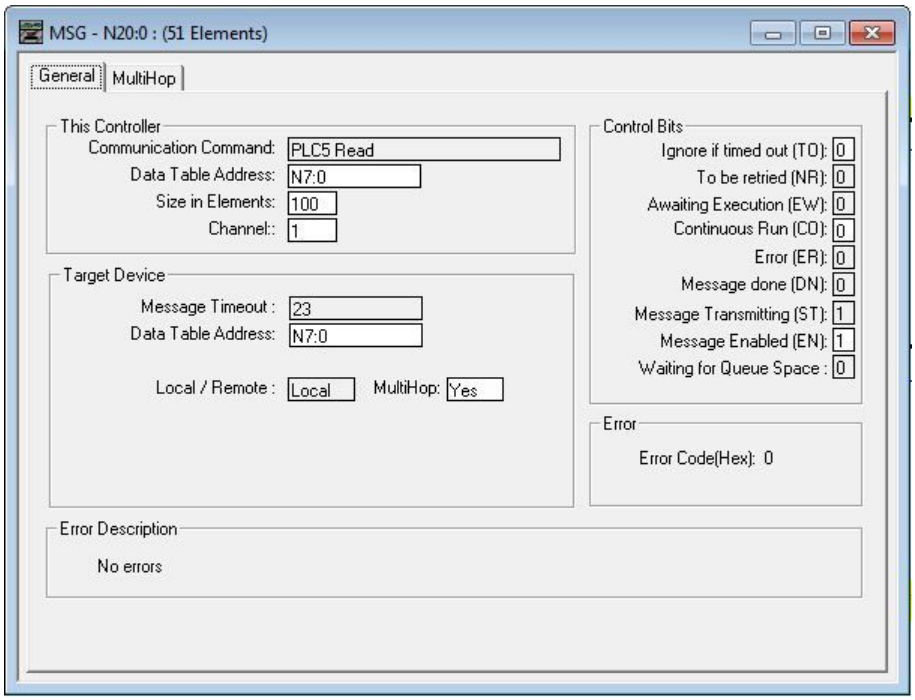
The Safety Controller supports these PLCs using an input register array. The term *Input* is from the point of view of the PLC.

## 13.6.1 PLC Configuration

The images below represent a typical configuration.

1. Read. Message command reading from N7 table on the Safety Controller.

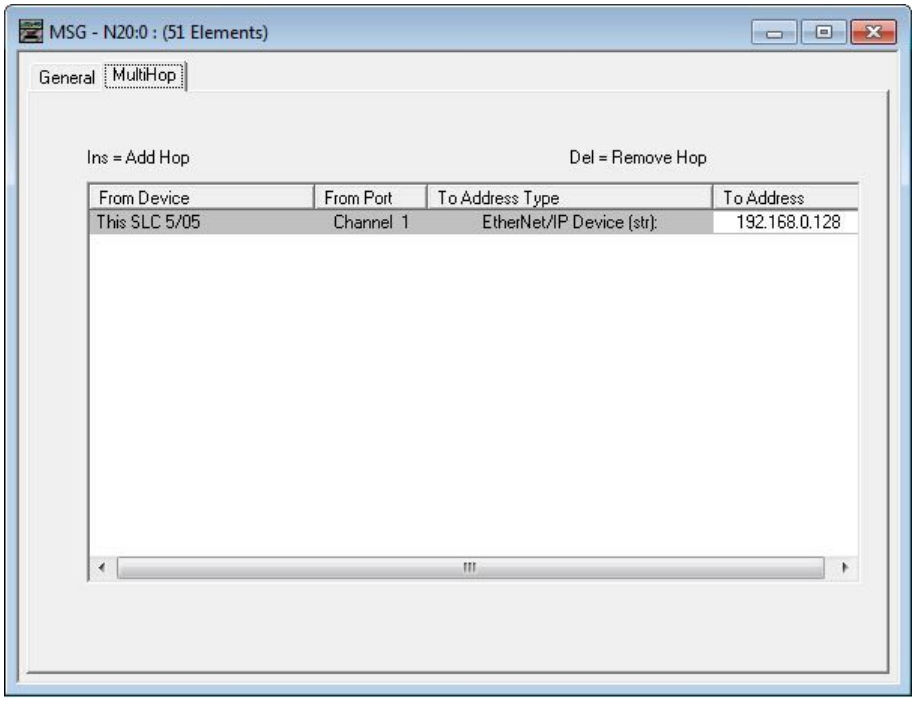
*Figure 269. Message Command reading 100 registers from the Safety Controller's N7 table*




2. Read. IP Address of the Safety Controller is entered here.

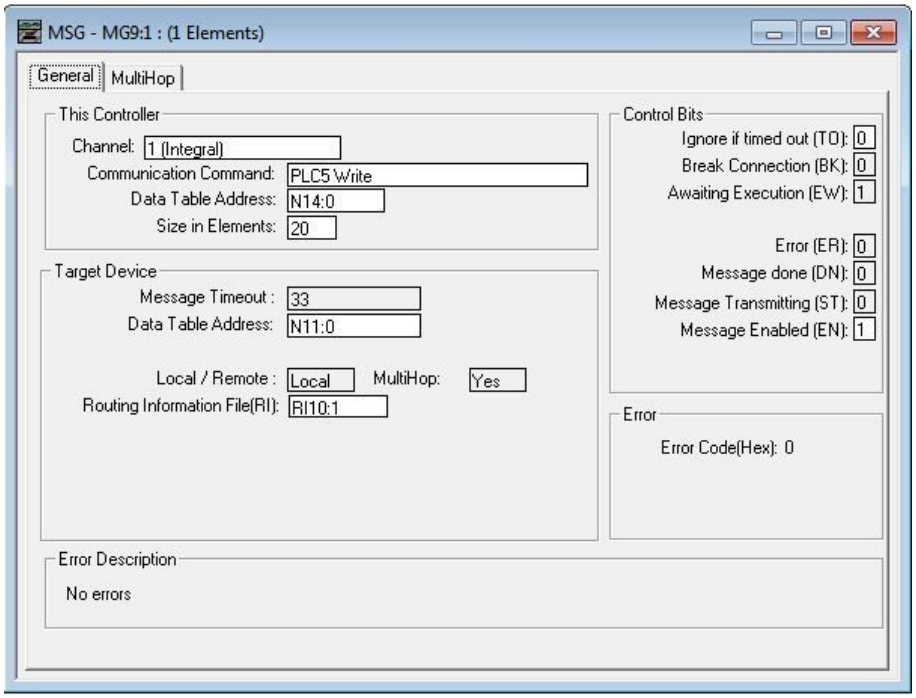

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 270. Add the Safety Controller's IP Address in the **To Address** area*




3. Write. Message command writing to N11 table on Safety Controller.

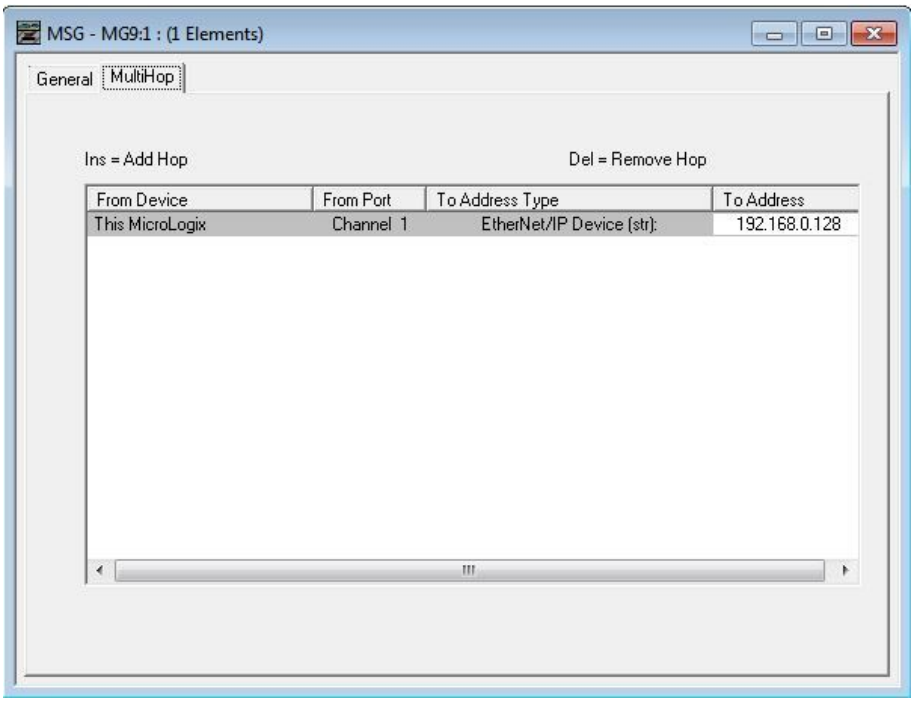
*Figure 271. Message Command writing 20 registers to the Safety Controller's N11 table*




4. Write. IP Address of the Safety Controller is entered here.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 272. Add the Safety Controller's IP Address in the **To Address** area*




## 13.6.2 Outputs from Safety Controller (Inputs to PLC)

The Output registers are used to push output values from the Safety Controller to the PLC. There are two tables of output values due to size. MSG (message) commands are used to Read (N7, N20) from the Safety Controller.

**NOTE:** Not all Safety Controllers support ISD.

**NOTE:** Only the XS26-ISD supports eight chains of ISD devices.

*Table 42. N7 REGS*

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 1 | VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 4 | Fault bits for VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 5 | Fault bits for VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 6 | Fault bits for VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 7 | Fault bits for VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 8–18 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 19 | Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay (1–16) Feedback [RCD Feedback Register Bits] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 20 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 21 | RCD Actuation Code Feedback [RCD Enable Feedback Register] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 22–39 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 277


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 276

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 40 | VO1 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 41 | VO2 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 42 | VO3 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 43 | VO4 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 44 | VO5 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 45 | VO6 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 46 | VO7 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 47 | VO8 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 48 | VO9 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 49 | VO10 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 50 | VO11 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 51 | VO12 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 52 | VO13 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 53 | VO14 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 54 | VO15 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 55 | VO16 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 56 | VO17 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 57 | VO18 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 58 | VO19 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 59 | VO20 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 60 | VO21 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 61 | VO22 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 62 | VO23 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 63 | VO24 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 64 | VO25 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 65 | VO26 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 66 | VO27 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 67 | VO28 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 68 | VO29 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 69 | VO30 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 70 | VO31 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 71 | VO32 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 72 | VO33 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 73 | VO34 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 74 | VO35 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 75 | VO36 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 76 | VO37 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 77 | VO38 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 78 | VO39 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 79 | VO40 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 80 | VO41 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 278


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 277

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 81 | VO42 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 82 | VO43 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 83 | VO44 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 84 | VO45 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 85 | VO46 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 86 | VO47 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 87 | VO48 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 88 | VO49 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 89 | VO50 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 90 | VO51 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 91 | VO52 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 92 | VO53 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 93 | VO54 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 94 | VO55 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 95 | VO56 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 96 | VO57 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 97 | VO58 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 98 | VO59 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 99 | VO60 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 100 | VO61 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 101 | VO62 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 102 | VO63 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 103 | VO64 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 104–105 | VO1 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 106–107 | VO2 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 108–109 | VO3 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 110–111 | VO4 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 112–113 | VO5 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 114–115 | VO6 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 116–117 | VO7 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 118–119 | VO8 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 120–121 | VO9 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 122–123 | VO10 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 124–125 | VO11 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 126–127 | VO12 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 128–129 | VO13 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 130–131 | VO14 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 132–133 | VO15 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 134–135 | VO16 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 136–137 | VO17 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 138–139 | VO18 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 279


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 278

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 140–141 | VO19 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 142–143 | VO20 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 144–145 | VO21 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 146–147 | VO22 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 148–149 | VO23 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 150–151 | VO24 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 152–153 | VO25 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 154–155 | VO26 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 156–157 | VO27 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 158–159 | VO28 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 160–161 | VO29 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 162–163 | VO30 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 164–165 | VO31 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 166–167 | VO32 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 168–169 | VO33 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 170–171 | VO34 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 172–173 | VO35 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 174–175 | VO36 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 176–177 | VO37 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 178–179 | VO38 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 180–181 | VO39 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 182–183 | VO40 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 184–185 | VO41 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 186–187 | VO42 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 188–189 | VO43 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 190–191 | VO44 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 192–193 | VO45 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 194–195 | VO46 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 196–197 | VO47 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 198–199 | VO48 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 200–201 | VO49 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 202–203 | VO50 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 204–205 | VO51 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 206–207 | VO52 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 208–209 | VO53 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 210–211 | VO54 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 212–213 | VO55 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 214–215 | VO56 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 216–217 | VO57 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 218–219 | VO58 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 220–221 | VO59 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 280


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 279

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 222–223 | VO60 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 224–225 | VO61 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 226–227 | VO62 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 228-229 | VO63 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 230–231 | VO64 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 232-233 | Fault #1 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 234–241 | Fault #1 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 242 | Fault #1 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 243 | Fault #1 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 244 | Fault #1 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 245–246 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 247–248 | Fault #2 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 249–256 | Fault #2 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 257 | Fault #2 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 258 | Fault #2 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 259 | Fault #2 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 260–261 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 262–263 | Fault #3 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 264–271 | Fault #3 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 272 | Fault #3 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 273 | Fault #3 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 274 | Fault #3 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 275–276 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 277–278 | Fault #4 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 279–286 | Fault #4 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 287 | Fault #4 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 288 | Fault #4 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 289 | Fault #4 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 290–291 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 292–293 | Fault #5 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 294–301 | Fault #5 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 302 | Fault #5 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 303 | Fault #5 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 304 | Fault #5 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 305–306 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 307–308 | Fault #6 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 309–316 | Fault #6 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 317 | Fault #6 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 318 | Fault #6 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 319 | Fault #6 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 320–321 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 281


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 280

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 322–323 | Fault #7 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 324–331 | Fault #7 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 332 | Fault #7 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 333 | Fault #7 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 334 | Fault #7 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 335–336 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 337–338 | Fault #8 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 339–346 | Fault #8 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 347 | Fault #8 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 348 | Fault #8 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 349 | Fault #8 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 350–351 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 352–353 | Fault #9 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 354–361 | Fault #9 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 362 | Fault #9 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 363 | Fault #9 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 364 | Fault #9 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 365–366 | reserved | 16-bit integer |
| 367–368 | Fault #10 Time Stamp | 32-bit integer |
| 369–376 | Fault #10 Name of I/O or System | 2-word length + 12-ASCII characters |
| 377 | Fault #10 Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 378 | Fault #10 Advanced Error Code | 16-bit integer |
| 379 | Fault #10 Error Message Index | 16-bit integer |
| 380–381 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 382–383 | Seconds Since Boot | 32-bit integer |
| 384 | Operating Mode | 16-bit integer |
| 385–394 | ConfigName | 2-word length + 16-ASCII characters |
| 395–396 | Config CRC | 32-bit integer |
| 397–899 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 900 | VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 901 | VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 902 | VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 903 | VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 904 | VO65 – VO80 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 905 | VO81 – VO96 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 906 | VO97 – VO112 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 907 | VO113 – VO128 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 908 | VO129 – VO144 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 909 | VO145 – VO160 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 910 | VO161 – VO176 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 911 | VO177 – VO192 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 282


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 281

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 912 | VO193 – VO208 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 913 | VO209 – VO224 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 914 | VO225 – VO240 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 915 | VO241 – VO256 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 916 | Fault bits for VO1 – VO16 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 917 | Fault bits for VO17 – VO32 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 918 | Fault bits for VO33 – VO48 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 919 | Fault bits for VO49 – VO64 (see " Flags " on page 288) | 16-bit integer |
| 920 | Fault bits for VO65 – VO80 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 921 | Fault bits for VO81 – VO96 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 922 | Fault bits for VO97 – VO112 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 923 | Fault bits for VO113 – VO128 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 924 | Fault bits for VO129 – VO144 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 925 | Fault bits for VO145 – VO160 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 926 | Fault bits for VO161 – VO176 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 927 | Fault bits for VO177 – VO192 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 928 | Fault bits for VO193 – VO208 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 929 | Fault bits for VO209 – VO224 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 930 | Fault bits for VO225 – VO240 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 931 | Fault bits for VO241 – VO256 (see " Extended Flags " on page 289) | 16-bit integer |
| 932 | Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay (1–16) Feedback [RCD Feedback Register Bits] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 933 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 934 | RCD Actuation Code Feedback [RCD Enable Feedback Register] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |

*Table 43. N20 REGS*

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | VO1 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | VO2 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | VO3 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| … | … | … |
| 256 | VO256 Fault Index | 16-bit integer |
| 257-258 | VO1 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 259-260 | VO2 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 283


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 282

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 261-262 | VO3 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 263-264 | VO4 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| … | … | … |
| 767-768 | VO256 Complete Fault Code | 32-bit integer |
| 769-770 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 771-772 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 773-774 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 775-776 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 777-778 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 779-780 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 781-782 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 783-784 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 785-786 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 787-788 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 789-790 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 791-792 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 793-794 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 795-796 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 797-798 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 799-800 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 801-816 | List of Detected ISD Devices on a Chain | Array of 32 bytes |
| 817-833 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 834 | ISD Read Request Acknowledge (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 835 | ISD Chain Requested Acknowledge (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 836 | ISD Device Requested Acknowledge (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |

Continued on page 284


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 283

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 837-845 | ISD Individual Device-Specific Data[26] (see "ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description" on page 286) | 16-bit integer |
| 846-848 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 849-850 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 851-852 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 853-854 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 855-856 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 857-858 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 859-860 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 861-862 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 863-864 | ISD System Status – Chain 1 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 865-866 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 867-868 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 869-870 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 871-872 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 873-874 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 875-876 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 877-878 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 879-880 | ISD System Status – Chain 2 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 881-882 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 883-884 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 885-886 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 887-888 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 889-890 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 891-892 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 285

[26] For conversion to Internal Temperature, Actuator Distance, and Supply Voltage, see "ISD: Temperature, Voltage, and Distance Conversion Information " on page 329.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 284

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 893-894 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 895-896 | ISD System Status – Chain 3 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 897-898 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 899-900 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 901-902 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 903-904 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 905-906 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 907-908 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 909-910 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 911-912 | ISD System Status – Chain 4 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 913-914 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 915-916 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 917-918 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 919-920 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 921-922 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 923-924 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 925-926 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 927-928 | ISD System Status – Chain 5 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 929-930 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 931-932 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 933-934 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 935-936 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 937-938 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 939-940 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 941-942 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |

Continued on page 286


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 285

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 943-944 | ISD System Status – Chain 6 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 945-946 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 947-948 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 949-950 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 951-952 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 953-954 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 955-956 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 957-958 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 959-960 | ISD System Status – Chain 7 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |
| 961-962 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Device Count | 32-bit integer |
| 963-964 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 965-966 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 967-968 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 969-970 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 971-972 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 973-974 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 Actuator Recognized Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit integer |
| 975-976 | ISD System Status – Chain 8 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit integer |

**NOTE:**

- See "ISD Individual Device-Specific Data " on page 55 for more information of the structure of the ISD data.
- The ISD data is not immediately available upon power up. The ISD data can be delayed up to 10 seconds after the system power has been turned on.

## ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description

The following table describes N20 REG #837-845.

*Table 44. ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description*

| REG # | Information | Data size |
|---|---|---|
| 837.0 | Safety Input Fault | 1 bit |
| 837.1 | *reserved* | 1 bit |
| 837.2 | Sensor Not Paired | 1-bit |
| 837.3 | ISD Data Error | 1-bit |

Continued on page 287


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 286

| REG # | Information | Data size |
|---|---|---|
| 837.4 | Wrong Actuator/Button Status/Input Status | 1-bit |
| 837.5 | Marginal Range/Button Status/Input Status | 1-bit |
| 837.6 | Actuator Detected | 1-bit |
| 837.7 | Output Error | 1-bit |
| 837.8 | Input 2 | 1-bit |
| 837.9 | Input 1 | 1-bit |
| 837.10 | Local Reset Expected | 1-bit |
| 837.11 | Operating Voltage Warning | 1-bit |
| 837.12 | Operating Voltage Error | 1-bit |
| 837.13 | Output 2 | 1-bit |
| 837.14 | Output 1 | 1-bit |
| 837.15 | Power Cycle Required | 1-bit |
| 838.0 | Fault Tolerant Outputs | 1-bit |
| 838.1 | Local Reset Unit | 1-bit |
| 838.2 | Cascadable | 1-bit |
| 838.3 | High Coding Level | 1-bit |
| 838.4 to 838.7 | Teach-ins Remaining | 4-bit |
| 838.8 to 838.12 | Device ID | 5-bit |
| 838.13 to 839.2 | Range Warning Count | 6-bit |
| 839.3 to 839.7 | Output Switch-off Time | 5-bit |
| 839.8 to 839.15 | Number of Voltage Errors | 8-bit |
| 840.0 to 840.7 | Internal Temperature[27] | 8-bit |
| 840.8 to 840.15 | Actuator Distance[27] | 8-bit |
| 841.0 to 841.7 | Supply Voltage[27] | 8-bit |
| 841.8 to 841.11 | Expected Company Name | 4-bit |
| 841.12 to 841.15 | Received Company Name | 4-bit |
| 842 | Expected Code | 16-bit |
| 843 | Received Code | 16-bit |
| 844 | Internal Error A | 16-bit |
| 845 | Internal Error B | 16-bit |

**NOTE:** See "ISD Individual Device-Specific Data " on page 55 for more information of the structure of the ISD data.

[27] For conversion to Internal Temperature, Actuator Distance, and Supply Voltage, see "ISD: Temperature, Voltage, and Distance Conversion Information " on page 329.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### 13.6.3 Inputs to Safety Controller (Outputs from PLC)

The Input registers are used to send information to the Safety Controller from the PLC. MSG (message) commands are used to write (N11, N21) to the Safety Controller.

*Table 45. N11 REGS*

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 0–7 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 8 | Virtual Input On/Off (1–16) | 16-bit integer |
| 9 | Virtual Input On/Off (17–32) | 16-bit integer |
| 10 | Virtual Input On/Off (33–48) | 16-bit integer |
| 11 | Virtual Input On/Off (49–64) | 16-bit integer |
| 12–15 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 16 | Virtual Reset/Cancel Delay (1–16) [RCD Register Bits] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |
| 17 | *reserved* | 16-bit integer |
| 18 | RCD Actuation Code [RCD Enable Register] (see "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65) | 16-bit integer |

*Table 46. N21 REGS*

| REG # | WORD NAME | DATA TYPE |
|---|---|---|
| 1 | ISD Read Request (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 2 | ISD Chain Requested (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |
| 3 | ISD Device Requested (see "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54) | 16-bit integer |

### 13.6.4 Flags

Registers 0 through 7, defined below, appear as the first 8 words in the N7 register map.

*Table 47. Register #0, Virtual Output 1-16, Bit Position*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO16 | VO15 | VO14 | VO13 | VO12 | VO11 | VO10 | VO9 | VO8 | VO7 | VO6 | VO5 | VO4 | VO3 | VO2 | VO1 |

*Table 48. Register #1, Virtual Output 17-32, Bit Position*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO32 | VO31 | VO30 | VO29 | VO28 | VO27 | VO26 | VO25 | VO24 | VO23 | VO22 | VO21 | VO20 | VO19 | VO18 | VO17 |

*Table 49. Register #2, Virtual Output 33-48, Bit Position*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO48 | VO47 | VO46 | VO45 | VO44 | VO43 | VO42 | VO41 | VO40 | VO39 | VO38 | VO37 | VO36 | VO35 | VO34 | VO33 |

*Table 50. Register #3, Virtual Output 49-64, Bit Position*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO64 | VO63 | VO62 | VO61 | VO60 | VO59 | VO58 | VO57 | VO56 | VO55 | VO54 | VO53 | VO52 | VO51 | VO50 | VO49 |

Note that not every Virtual Output has a defined Fault Flag.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Table 51. Register #4, Fault Flag bits for Virtual Output 1-16, Bit Position*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO16 | VO15 | VO14 | VO13 | VO12 | VO11 | VO10 | VO9 | VO8 | VO7 | VO6 | VO5 | VO4 | VO3 | VO2 | VO1 |

Note that not every Virtual Output has a defined Fault Flag.

*Table 52. Register #5, Fault Flag bits for Virtual Output 17-32 Fault Flag, Bit Position*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO32 | VO31 | VO30 | VO29 | VO28 | VO27 | VO26 | VO25 | VO24 | VO23 | VO22 | VO21 | VO20 | VO19 | VO18 | VO17 |

Note that not every Virtual Output has a defined Fault Flag.

*Table 53. Register #6, Fault Flag bits for Virtual Output 33-48, Bit Position*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO48 | VO47 | VO46 | VO45 | VO44 | VO43 | VO42 | VO41 | VO40 | VO39 | VO38 | VO37 | VO36 | VO35 | VO34 | VO33 |

Note that not every Virtual Output has a defined Fault Flag.

*Table 54. Register #7, Fault Flag bits for Virtual Output 49-64, Bit Position*

| Bit Position | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 15 | 14 | 13 | 12 | 11 | 10 | 9 | 8 | 7 | 6 | 5 | 4 | 3 | 2 | 1 | 0 |
| VO64 | VO63 | VO62 | VO61 | VO60 | VO59 | VO58 | VO57 | VO56 | VO55 | VO54 | VO53 | VO52 | VO51 | VO50 | VO49 |

### 13.6.5 Extended Flags

All 256 Virtual Outputs can be accessed in a way similar to that seen in " Flags " on page 288.

All 256 possible Virtual Outputs can be read as Registers 900-915.

All 256 possible Virtual Output Faults can be read as Registers 916-931.

## 13.7 PROFINET®

PROFINET®[28] is a data communication protocol for industrial automation and processes. PROFINET IO defines how controllers (IO controllers) and peripheral devices (IO devices) exchange data in real time.

The Banner Safety Controller supports PROFINET IO. The data communication protocol is TCP/IP; the data transmission medium is copper wire; the PROFINET conformance class is CC-A.[29]

**NOTE:** In this document, outputs from the Safety Controller device are referred to as "inputs" to the controller (PLC). Outputs from the controller (PLC) are referred to as "inputs" to the Safety Controller device.

### 13.7.1 PROFINET® and the Safety Controllers

This section covers instructions for XS/SC26 Safety Controllers with the FID 2 designation on the product label and a date code of 1706 or later, and also FID 3 and later XS/SC26 Safety Controllers.

This section also covers the SC10-2.

PROFINET real time data is sent and received via slots.

**NOTE:** The GSD file is available for download at www.bannerengineering.com/safetycontroller.

### 13.7.2 General Station Description (GSD) File

The General Station Description (GSD) file contains module information, such as:

[28] PROFINET® is a registered trademark of PROFIBUS Nutzerorganisation e.V.
[29] CC-A ensures that the device has the minimum properties regarding functionality and interoperability.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- Configuration data
- Data information (pass count, inspection status, etc.)
- Diagnostics

### 13.7.3 PROFINET® IO Data Model

The PROFINET IO data model is based on the typical, expandable field device that has a backplane with slots. Modules and submodules have different functionalities.

Modules are plugged into slots; submodules are plugged into subslots. In the PROFINET IO data model, Slot 0 Subslot 1 is reserved for the Device Access Point (DAP) or network interface.

Both modules and submodules are used to control the type and volume of data that is sent to the controller (PLC).

- A submodule is typically designated as input type, output type, or combined input/output type
- An input submodule is used to send data to the controller (PLC)
- An output submodule is used to receive data from the controller (PLC)
- The combined input/output submodule simultaneously receives and sends data in both directions

### 13.7.4 Configuring the Safety Controller for a PROFINET IO Connection

1. Connect the Safety Controller to the PC via the SC-USB2 USB cable or via Ethernet (for FID7 or later XS/SC26 Ethernet models).
2. Open the Banner Safety Controller Software, and click the **Industrial Ethernet** tab.
3. From the drop-down list on the left, select **Profinet**.
4. Click  to add information to the PROFINET Submodules.
   **Auto Configure** can assist in this task.
5. Provide the appropriate PIN/password to change the configuration and network settings for the Safety Controller.
6. Make sure the Safety Controller has a valid and confirmed configuration file.

> **NOTE:** If a Virtual Reset or Cancel Delay is used, an Actuation Code must be created in **Network Settings**. Then the code must be sent to the Safety Controller using **Send** in **Network Settings**.

> **NOTE:** The ClickSet IP process does not apply to PROFINET, because the IP address is set by the PLC system not by the Controller software.

### 13.7.5 Create a XML File For PROFINET

Several items must be known:

- The name assigned to the Safety Controller in the PLC. This is needed to generate the file to import into the PROFINET PLC software
- PLC Slot 1 address location
- PLC Slot 13 address location
- PLC Slot 20 or PLC Slot 22 address location
- PLC Slot 21 address location
- PLC Slot 23 address location

This information is available in the PLC Software. The following figure is an example from Siemens TIA Portal (v15) software.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.

*Figure 273. **Device overview***

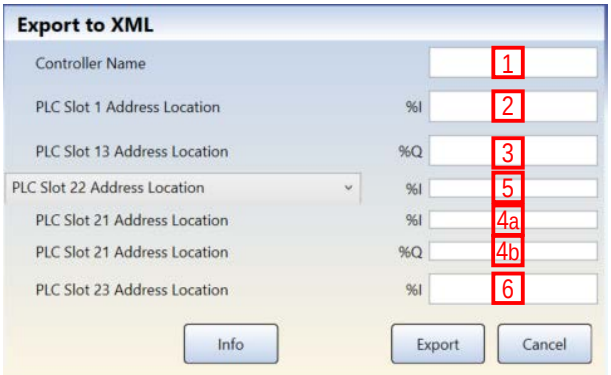
| Module | Rack | Slot | I address | Q address | Type |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| xs26 1 | 0 | 0 | | | XS26 |
| I | 0 | 0 X1 | | | xs26 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_1 | 0 | 1 | 2...5 2 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_2 | 0 | 2 | 6...9 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_3 | 0 | 3 | 10...13 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_4 | 0 | 4 | 14...17 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_5 | 0 | 5 | 18...21 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_6 | 0 | 6 | 22...25 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_7 | 0 | 7 | 26...29 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_8 | 0 | 8 | 30...33 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_9 | 0 | 9 | 34...37 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_10 | 0 | 10 | 38...41 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_11 | 0 | 11 | 42...45 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_12 | 0 | 12 | 46...49 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 8 Bytes Virtual On/Off/ME Data_1 | 0 | 13 | | 2...9 3 | 8 Bytes Virtual On/Off/ME Data |
| 2 Bytes RCD Data_1 | 0 | 14 | | 10...11 | 2 Bytes RCD Data |
| 2 Byte RCD Acutation Code_1 | 0 | 15 | | 12...13 | 2 Byte RCD Acutation Code |
| RCD Data Feedback Register_1 | 0 | 16 | 50...51 | | RCD Data Feedback Register |
| RCD Passcode Feedback Register_1 | 0 | 17 | 52...53 | | RCD Passcode Feedback Register |
| | 0 | 18 | | | |
| System Information Module_1 | 0 | 19 | 54...83 | | System Information Module |
| | 0 | 20 | | | |
| ISD Individual Status Information Module_1 | 0 | 21 | | | ISD Individual Status Information Module |
| ISD Device Information Request | 0 | 21 IS... | 4a | 14...19 4b | ISD Device Information Request |
| ISD Device Information Response | 0 | 21 IS... | 372...395 | | ISD Device Information Response |
| ISD Status Information Module 8 Chain_1 | 0 | 22 | 5 84...339 | | ISD Status Information Module 8 Chain |
| ISD Specific Chain Information Module_1 | 0 | 23 | 340...371 6 | | ISD Specific Chain Information Module |

**NOTE:** Slot 20, 21, 22 and 23 are for ISD information, and are only available after ISD inputs have been configured (SC10-2 FID 2 or later, XS26-ISD FID 5 or later). Slot 22 is not available with SC10-2 configurations.

1. In the Banner Safety Controller software, on the **Industrial Ethernet** tab, make sure **PROFINET** is selected from the list at the left.
2. Click **Export**.

   The **Export to XML** window opens.

   *Figure 274. **Export to XML**—XS26-ISD Image Shown*

   The numbers in this figure correspond to the numbers in "Figure: Device overview" on page 291.
3. Enter the information in the window.
   a. In the **Controller Name** field, enter the name assigned to the Safety Controller in the PLC software. See item 1 in "Figure: Device overview" on page 291. In this example it is `xs26`.
   b. In the **PLC Slot 1 Address Location** field, enter the beginning address location of slot 1 (status outputs). See item 2 in "Figure: Device overview" on page 291. In this example, it is `2`.
   c. In the **PLC Slot 13 Address Location** field, enter the beginning address location of slot 13 (virtual inputs). See item 3 in "Figure: Device overview" on page 291. In this example, it is `2`.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

4. Enter the optional information in the window. These fields must be blank if they are not used.
    a. SC10-2 models: In the **PLC Slot 20 Address Location** field, enter the beginning address location of slot 20 (ISD Status Information Module 4 Chain).
    b. XS26-ISD models: From the drop down menu, select one of the following:
        - **PLC Slot 20 Address Location** for ISD Status Information Module 4 Chain (this is not shown in "Figure: Device overview" on page 291).
        - **PLC Slot 22 Address Location** for ISD status Information Module 8 Chain (see item 5 in "Figure: Device overview" on page 291). In this example, it is `84`.
    c. XS26-ISD models: In the **PLC Slot 21 Address Location** field, enter the beginning address location of slot 21 (ISD Individual Device Information Module). See items 4a and 4b in "Figure: Device overview" on page 291. In this example it is `372` and `14`.
    d. XS26-ISD models: In the **PLC Slot 23 Address Location** field, enter the beginning address location of slot 23 (ISD Specific Chain Information Module), See item 6 in "Figure: Device overview" on page 291. In this example it is `340`.
5. Click **Export**.
6. Save the .xml file to the desired location.

The .xml file is ready to be directly imported into the PROFINET PLC software or the file can be opened with any software that can read an .xml file.

## 13.7.6 Description of Modules

In this table, the I/O direction is from the point of view of the PLC.

*Table 55. Assignment of Slots*

| Slot | Module Function | I/O | Module Name | Module Size (Bytes) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | User-Defined Status Bits (0–31) | In | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_1 | 4 |
| 2 | User-Defined Status Bits (32–63) | In | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_2 | 4 |
| 3 | Safety Controller Fault Bits (0–31) | In | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_3 | 4 |
| 4 | Safety Controller Fault Bits (32–63) | In | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_4 | 4 |
| 5 | Safety Controller Input Status Bits (0–31) | In | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_5 | 4 |
| 6 | Safety Controller Input Status Bits (32–63) | In | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_6 | 4 |
| 7 | Safety Controller Input Status Bits (64–95) | In | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_7 | 4 |
| 8 | Safety Controller Input Status Bits (96–127) | In | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_8 | 4 |
| 9 | Safety Controller Input Status Bits (128–159) | In | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_9 | 4 |
| 10 | Safety Controller Output Status Bits (0–31) | In | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_10 | 4 |
| 11 | Safety Controller Output Status Bits (32–63) | In | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_11 | 4 |
| 12 | Safety Controller Output Status Bits (64–95) | In | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_12 | 4 |
| 13 | Virtual I/O (On/Off/Mute Enable) Bits (0–63) | Out | 8 Bytes Virtual On/Off/ME Data_1 | 8 |
| 14 | Virtual Reset, Cancel Delay Bits (0–16) | Out | 2 Bytes RCD Data_1 | 2 |
| 15 | Reset, Cancel Delay Actuation Code | Out | 2 Byte RCD Actuation Code_1 | 2 |
| 16 | Virtual Reset, Cancel Delay Bits (0–16) Feedback | In | RCD Data Feedback Register_1 | 2 |
| 17 | Reset, Cancel Delay Actuation Code Feedback | In | RCD Passcode Feedback Register_1 | 2 |

Continued on page 293


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 292

| Slot | Module Function | I/O | Module Name | Module Size (Bytes) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 18[30] | Fault Log | In | Fault Log Buffer Module | 300 |
| 19[30] | System Information | In | System Information Module | 30 |
| 20 | ISD Status (4 chains) | In | ISD Status Information Module 4 Chain | 128 |
| 21 | ISD Individual Device Information | In/Out | ISD Individual Status Information Module | 24 In/6 Out |
| 22 | ISD Status (8 chains) | In | ISD Status Information Module 8 Chain | 256 |
| 23 | List of Detected ISD Devices on a Chain | In | ISD Specific Chain Information Module | 32 |

**NOTE:**

- See "ISD Individual Device-Specific Data " on page 55 for more information on the structure of the ISD data.
- The ISD data is not immediately available upon power-up. The ISD data can be delayed up to 10 seconds after the system power has been turned on.

## User-Defined Status Bits

The first two slots are always filled with User Defined Status Bit modules. These modules include 64 bits worth of virtual status output information of any type.

*Table 56. User-Defined Status Bits (0–31) Module (Ident 0×0100) [fixed in Slot 1]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| User-Defined Status bits 0–7 | Byte |
| User-Defined Status bits 8–15 | Byte |
| User-Defined Status bits 16–23 | Byte |
| User-Defined Status bits 24–31 | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

*Table 57. User-Defined Status Bits (32–63) Module (Indent 0×0100) [fixed in Slot 2]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| User-Defined Status bits 32–39 | Byte |
| User-Defined Status bits 40–47 | Byte |
| User-Defined Status bits 48–55 | Byte |
| User-Defined Status bits 56–63 | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

[30] The Fault Log and System Information Modules are not used by the default connection.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## Fault Bits

Slots 3 and 4 are always filled with 64-bits of Fault type virtual status output information from the Safety Controller.

*Table 58. Safety Controller Fault Bits (0–31) Module (Ident 0×0100) [fixed in Slot 3]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Fault bits 0–7 | Byte |
| Fault bits 8–15 | Byte |
| Fault bits 16–23 | Byte |
| Fault bits 24–31 | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

*Table 59. Safety Controller Fault Bits (32–63) Module (Ident 0×0100) [fixed in Slot 4]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Fault bits 32–39 | Byte |
| Fault bits 40–47 | Byte |
| Fault bits 48–55 | Byte |
| Fault bits 56–63 | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

## Input Status Bits

Slots 5 through 9 are always reserved for 160 bits of Safety Controller input information. An expandable Safety Controller might have up to 154 inputs, if all of eight possible expansion cards were used as 16-channel inputs (in addition to the 26 inputs built into the Base Controller).

*Table 60. Safety Controller Input Status Bits (0–31) Module (Ident 0×1000) [fixed in Slot 5]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Input Status bits 0–7 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 8–15 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 16–23 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 24–31 | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

*Table 61. Safety Controller Input Status Bits (32–63) Module (Ident 0×0100) [fixed in Slot 6]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Input Status bits 32–39 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 40–47 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 48–55 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 56–63 | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Table 62. Safety Controller Input Status Bits (64–95) Module (Ident 0×0100) [fixed in Slot 7]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Input Status bits 64–71 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 72–79 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 80–87 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 88–95 | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

*Table 63. Safety Controller Input Status Bits (96–127) Module (Ident 0×0100) [fixed in Slot 8]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Input Status bits 96–103 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 104–111 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 112–119 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 120–127 | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

*Table 64. Safety Controller Input Status Bits (128–159) Module (Ident 0×0100) [fixed in Slot 9]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Input Status bits 128–135 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 136–143 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 144–151 | Byte |
| Input Status bits 152–159 | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

## Output Status Bits

Slots 10 through 12 are reserved for 96 Safety Controller output type virtual status output bits.

*Table 65. Safety Controller Output Status Bits (0–31) Module (Ident 0×0100) [fixed in Slot 10]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Output Status bits 0–7 | Byte |
| Output Status bits 8–15 | Byte |
| Output Status bits 16–23 | Byte |
| Output Status bits 24–31 | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Table 66. Safety Controller Output Status Bits (32–63) Module (Ident 0×0100) [fixed in Slot 11]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Output Status bits 32–39 | Byte |
| Output Status bits 40–47 | Byte |
| Output Status bits 48–55 | Byte |
| Output Status bits 56–63 | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

*Table 67. Safety Controller Output Status Bits (64–95) Module (Ident 0×0100) [fixed in Slot 12]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Output Status bits 64–71 | Byte |
| Output Status bits 72–79 | Byte |
| Output Status bits 80–87 | Byte |
| Output Status bits 88–95 | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

## Virtual On, Off, Mute Enable Bits

Slot 13 is filled with 64 virtual non-safety inputs, to be used as virtual on/off inputs (to the Safety Controller) or virtual mute enable inputs (to the Safety Controller).

*Table 68. Virtual On/Off/Mute Enable Bits (0–63) Module (Ident 0×0200) [fixed in Slot 13]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Virtual On/Off/ME bits 0–7 | Byte |
| Virtual On/Off/ME bits 8–15 | Byte |
| Virtual On/Off/ME bits 16–23 | Byte |
| Virtual On/Off/ME bits 24–31 | Byte |
| Virtual On/Off/ME bits 32–39 | Byte |
| Virtual On/Off/ME bits 40–47 | Byte |
| Virtual On/Off/ME bits 48–55 | Byte |
| Virtual On/Off/ME bits 56–63 | Byte |

## Virtual Reset, Cancel Delay (VRCD) Bits

Sixteen virtual non-safety inputs can be found in slot 14, to be used in the virtual reset, cancel delay sequence.

See "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65.

*Table 69. Virtual Reset, Cancel Delay Bits (0–63) Module (Ident 0×0300) [fixed in Slot 14]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| VRCD bits 0-7 | Byte |
| VRCD bits 8-15 | Byte |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## Reset, Cancel Delay (RCD) 16-bit Actuation Code

Slot 15 contains the RCD Actuation Code, an important code word used in the virtual reset, cancel delay sequence.

See "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65.

*Table 70. Reset, Cancel Delay Actuation Code Module (Ident 0×0301) [fixed in Slot 15]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Reset, Cancel Delay Actuation Code | Unsigned 16 |

## Virtual Reset, Cancel Delay Feedback Bits

Slot 16 includes feedback bits for the 16 virtual non-safety inputs found in slot 14. They are used in the virtual reset, cancel delay sequence.

See "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65.

*Table 71. Virtual Reset, Cancel Delay Bits (0–63) Module (Ident 0×0400) [fixed in Slot 16]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| VRCD Feedback bits 0–7 | Byte |
| VRCD Feedback bits 8–15 | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

## Reset, Cancel Delay 16-bit Actuation Code Feedback

Slot 17 includes the RCD Actuation Code feedback value, an important code word used in the virtual reset, cancel delay sequence.

See "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65.

*Table 72. Reset, Cancel Delay Actuation Code Module (Ident 0×0401) [fixed in Slot 17]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Reset, Cancel Delay Actuation Code Feedback | Unsigned 16 |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## Fault Log Entries

Slot 18 can be filled with the optional Fault Log Buffer Module.

*Table 73. Safety Controller Fault Log Buffer Module (Ident 0×0500) [optional; fixed in Slot 18 when used]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Fault Log entry 1 (most recent) | 15 words |
| Fault Log entry 2 | 15 words |
| Fault Log entry 3 | 15 words |
| Fault Log entry 4 | 15 words |
| Fault Log entry 5 | 15 words |
| Fault Log entry 6 | 15 words |
| Fault Log entry 7 | 15 words |
| Fault Log entry 8 | 15 words |
| Fault Log entry 9 | 15 words |
| Fault Log entry 10 (oldest) | 15 words |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Not applicable |

| Fault Log Entry | Type | Length (Words) |
|---|---|---|
| Timestamp | UDINT | 2 |
| Name Length | DWORD | 2 |
| Name String | String | 6 |
| Error Code | WORD | 1 |
| Advanced Error Code | WORD | 1 |
| Error Index Message | WORD | 1 |
| *reserved* | WORD | 2 |

**Fault Time Stamp**

The relative time, in seconds, when the fault occurred. As measured from time 0, which is the last time the Safety Controller was powered up.

**Name Length**

The number of ASCII characters in the “Name String”.

**Name String**

An ASCII-string describing the source of the fault.

**Error Code, Advanced Error Code, Error Index Message**

The Error Code and the Advanced Error Code, taken together, form the Safety Controller Fault Code. The format for the Fault Code is `Error Code ‘dot’ Advanced Error Code`. For example, a Safety Controller Fault Code of 2.1 is represented by an Error Code of `2` and an Advanced Error Code of `1`. The Error Message Index value is the Error Code and the Advanced Error Code together, and includes a leading zero with the Advanced Error Code, if necessary. For example, a Safety Controller Fault Code of 2.1 is represented by an Error Message Index of `201`. The Error Message Index value is a convenient way to get the complete Fault Code while only reading a single 16-bit register.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## System Information Buffer

Slot 19 can be filled with the optional System Information Buffer Module.

*Table 74. Safety Controller System Information Buffer Module (Ident 0×0600) [optional; fixed in Slot 19 when used]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type | PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|---|---|
| System Information Buffer | 30 words | Not applicable | Not applicable |

| System Information Buffer | Type | Length (Words) |
|---|---|---|
| Seconds Since Boot | UDINT | 2 |
| Operating Mode | WORD | 1 |
| Length of Config Name | DWORD | 2 |
| Config Name | String | 8 |
| Config CRC | WORD | 2 |

**Seconds Since Boot**

A 32-bit integer representation of the number of seconds since powering up the Safety Controller.

**Operating Mode**

The current operational state of the Safety Controller.

| Operating Mode Value | Description |
|---|---|
| 1 (0×01) | Normal Operating Mode (including I/O faults, if present) |
| 2 (0×02) | Configuration Mode |
| 4 (0×04) | System Lockout |
| 65 (0×41) | Waiting for System Reset/Exiting Configuration Mode |
| 129 (0×81) | Entering Configuration Mode |

**Length of Config Name**

The number of ASCII characters in the “Config Name”.

**Config Name**

An ASCII-string describing the source of the fault.

**Config CRC**

The Cyclic Redundancy Check (CRC) value for the current Safety Controller configuration.

## ISD Status Information Module 4 Chain

Slot 20 can be filled with the optional ISD Status Information Module 4 Chain.

**NOTE:**

- Not all Safety Controller support ISD.
- Only the XS26-ISD models support more than two chains of ISD devices.

*Table 75. ISD Status Information Module 4 Chain (Ident 0×0700) [optional; fixed in Slot 20 when used]*

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Unsigned 16 |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device Count | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device Count | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Device Count | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Device Count | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | Unsigned 32 |

## ISD Individual Device Information Module

Slot 21 can be filled with the optional ISD Individual Device Information Module.

See also "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54 and "ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description" on page 301.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Table 76. ISD Individual Status Information Module (Ident 0×0800) [optional; fixed in Slot 21 when used]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| ISD Read Request Acknowledge | Unsigned 16 |
| ISD Chain Requested Acknowledge | Unsigned 16 |
| ISD Device Requested Acknowledge | Unsigned 16 |
| ISD Individual Device-Specific Data (18 Bytes)[31] | Byte |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| ISD Read Request | Unsigned 16 |
| ISD Chain Requested | Unsigned 16 |
| ISD Device Requested | Unsigned 16 |

## ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description

The following table describes Slot 21[32].

*Table 77. ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description*

| Module Input | Information | Data size |
|---|---|---|
| 206.0 | Safety Input Fault | 1 bit |
| 206.1 | *reserved* | 1 bit |
| 206.2 | Sensor Not Paired | 1-bit |
| 206.3 | ISD Data Error | 1-bit |
| 206.4 | Wrong Actuator/Button Status/Input Status | 1-bit |
| 206.5 | Marginal Range/Button Status/Input Status | 1-bit |
| 206.6 | Actuator Detected | 1-bit |
| 206.7 | Output Error | 1-bit |
| 207.0 | Input 2 | 1-bit |
| 207.1 | Input 1 | 1-bit |
| 207.2 | Local Reset Expected | 1-bit |
| 207.3 | Operating Voltage Warning | 1-bit |
| 207.4 | Operating Voltage Error | 1-bit |
| 207.5 | Output 2 | 1-bit |
| 207.6 | Output 1 | 1-bit |
| 207.7 | Power Cycle Required | 1-bit |
| 208.0 | Fault Tolerant Outputs | 1-bit |
| 208.1 | Local Reset Unit | 1-bit |
| 208.2 | Cascadable | 1-bit |
| 208.3 | High Coding Level | 1-bit |
| 208.7 to 208.4 | Teach-ins Remaining | 4-bit |
| 209.4 to 209.0 | Device ID | 5-bit |
| 210.2 to 209.5 | Range Warning Count | 6-bit |
| 210.7 to 210.3 | Output Switch-off Time | 5-bit |
| 211 | Number of Voltage Errors | 8-bit |

Continued on page 302

[31] For conversion to Internal Temperature, Actuator Distance, and Supply Voltage, see "ISD: Temperature, Voltage, and Distance Conversion Information " on page 329.

[32] The Slot 21 example assumes that the slot starts at PLC address %I200. Bytes 0–5 are used by the ISD Read Request Acknowledge, the ISD Chain Requested Acknowledge, and the ISD Device Requested Acknowledge. The example also assumes data is in byte format.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 301

| Module Input | Information | Data size |
|---|---|---|
| 212 | Internal Temperature[33] | 8-bit |
| 213 | Actuator Distance[33] | 8-bit |
| 214 | Supply Voltage[33] | 8-bit |
| 215.3 to 215.0 | Expected Company Name | 4-bit |
| 215.7 to 215.4 | Received Company Name | 4-bit |
| 217 to 216 | Expected Code | 16-bit |
| 219 to 218 | Received Code | 16-bit |
| 221 to 220 | Internal Error A | 16-bit |
| 223 to 222 | Internal Error B | 16-bit |

## ISD Status Information Module 8 Chain

Slot 22 can be filled with the optional ISD Status Information Module 8 Chain.

**NOTE:**
- Not all Safety Controllers support ISD.
- Only the XS26-ISD supports more than two chains of ISD devices.

*Table 78. ISD Status Information Module 8 Chain (Ident 0×0900) [optional; fixed in Slot 22 when used]*

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Unsigned 16 |

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device Count | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 1 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device Count | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |

Continued on page 303

[33] For conversion to Internal Temperature, Actuator Distance, and Supply Voltage, see "ISD: Temperature, Voltage, and Distance Conversion Information " on page 329.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 302

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| ISD System Status – Chain 2 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Device Count | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 3 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Device Count | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 4 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 5 Device Count | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 5 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 5 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 5 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 5 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 5 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 5 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 5 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 6 Device Count | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 6 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 6 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 6 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 6 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 6 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 6 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 6 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 7 Device Count | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 7 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |

Continued on page 304


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 303

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| ISD System Status – Chain 7 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 7 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 7 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 7 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 7 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 7 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 8 Device Count | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 8 Device On/Off Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 8 Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 8 Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 8 Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 8 Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 8 Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | Unsigned 32 |
| ISD System Status – Chain 8 System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | Unsigned 32 |

### ISD Specific Chain Information Module

Slot 23 can be filled with the optional ISD Specific Chain Information Module.

See also "ISD Individual Device Information Module " on page 300.

See also "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54.

**NOTE:** Not all Safety Controllers support ISD.

*Table 79. ISD Specific Chain Information Module (Ident 0×0A00) [optional; fixed in Slot 23 when used]*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| List of Detected ISD Devices on a Chain | Array of 32 bytes |

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| Not applicable | Unsigned 16 |

## 13.7.7 Configuration Instructions

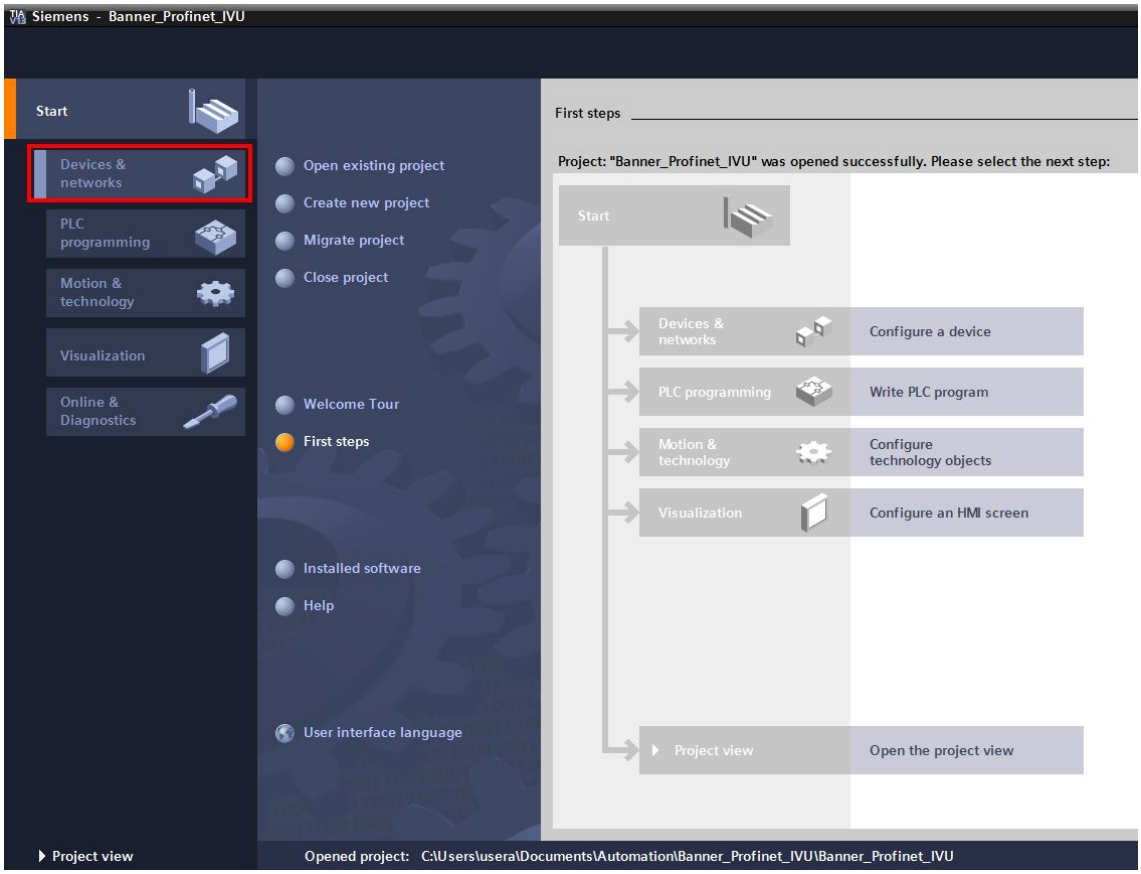
### Installing the GSD File

Use these instructions to install the GSD file in the Siemens TIA Portal (v15) software. Use these instructions as a basis for installing the GSD file in another controller (PLC).

1. Download the GSD file from www.bannerengineering.com.
2. Start the Siemens TIA Portal (v15) software.
3. Click **Open existing project**.
4. Select a project and open it.
5. Click **Devices & networks** after the project has been uploaded.

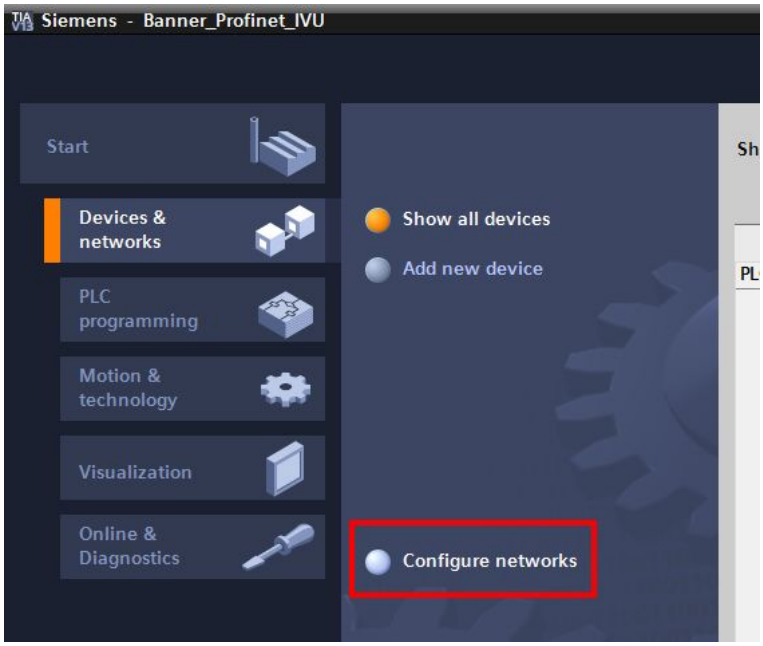

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 275. Devices and Networks*




6. Click **Configure networks**.

*Figure 276. Configure Networks*

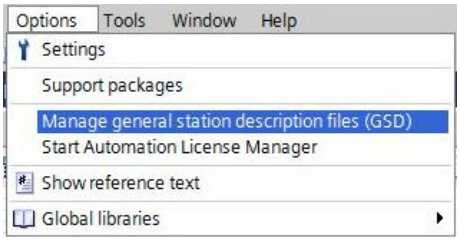



**Network view** displays.

7. Click **Options** and select **Manage general station description file (GSD)**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

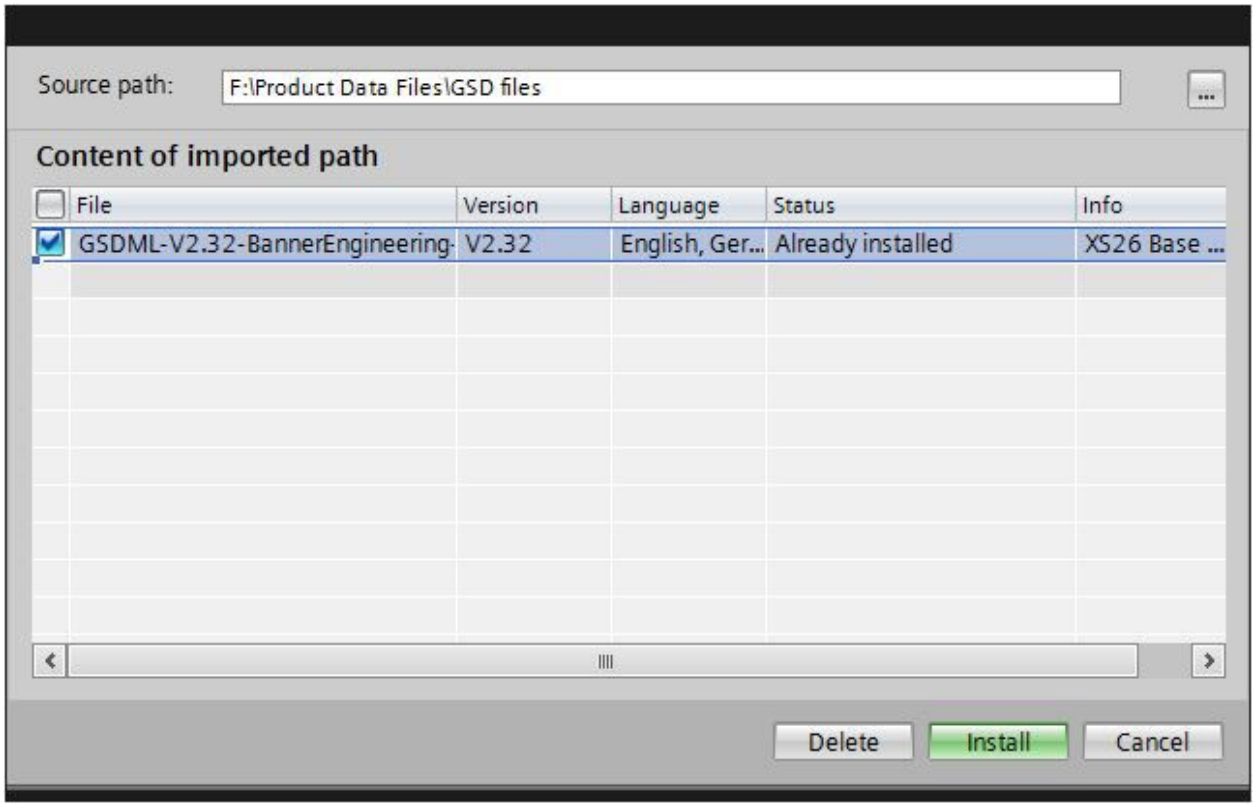
*Figure 277. Options—Install the GSD*




The **Install general station description file** window opens.

8. Click the browse button **(...)** to the right of the **Source path** field.

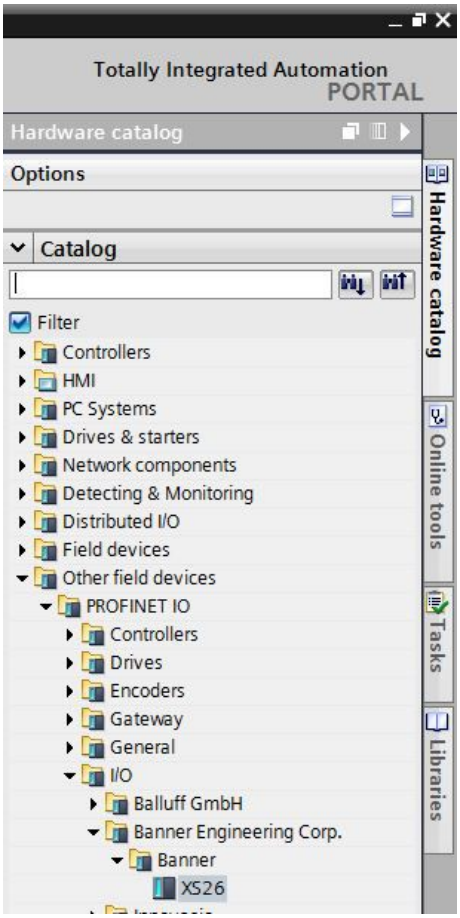
*Figure 278. Manage GSD Files*




9. Navigate to the location the ABR GSD file was downloaded to.
10. Select the Safety Controller GSD file.
11. Click **Install**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 279. Hardware Catalog*




12. Click **Close** when the install finishes.
13. Click **Devices & networks**.

    The system installs the Safety Controller GSD file and places it in the **Hardware catalog**. In the above example, the ABR GSD file is located under **Other field devices › PROFINET IO › Sensors › Banner Engineering Corp. › Banner ABR3000 › ABR3000**.

> **NOTE:** If the Safety Controller GSD file does not install properly, save the log and contact Banner Engineering Corp..

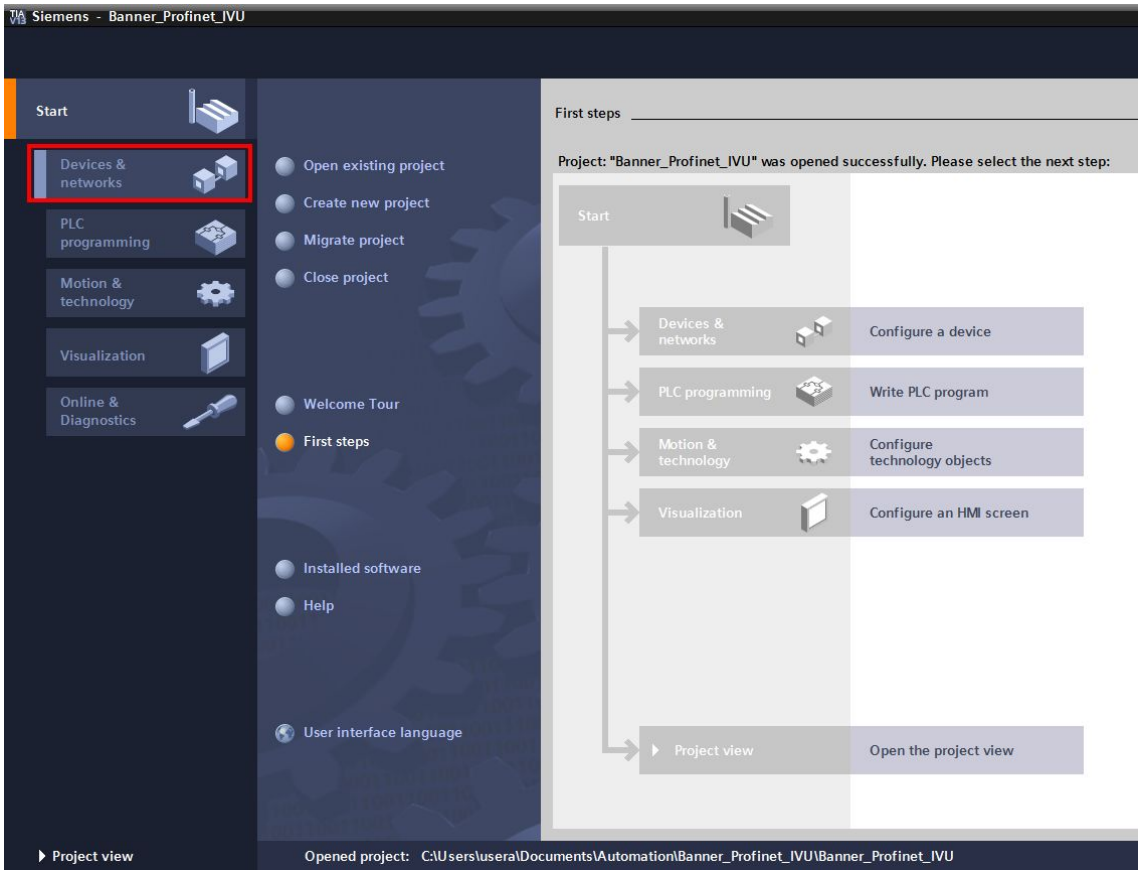
## Adding a Device to a Project

Use these instructions to add a XS/SC26 device to a Siemens TIA Portal (v15) project, and to configure the device. Use these instructions as a basis for adding a XS/SC26 device to another controller (PLC).

1. Start the Siemens TIA Portal (v15) software.
2. Click **Open existing project**.
3. Select a project and open it.
4. Click **Devices & networks** after the project has been uploaded.

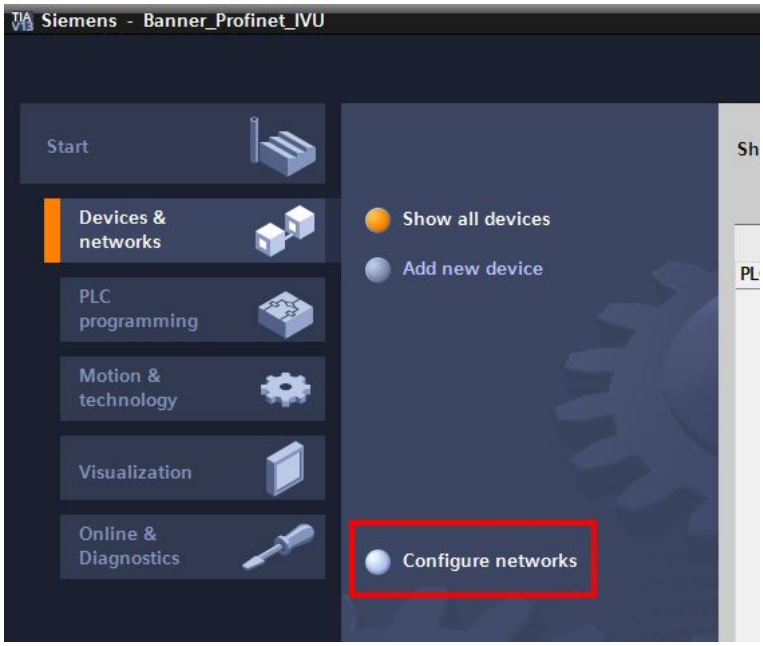

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 280. Devices and Networks*




5. Click **Configure networks**.

*Figure 281. Configure Networks*



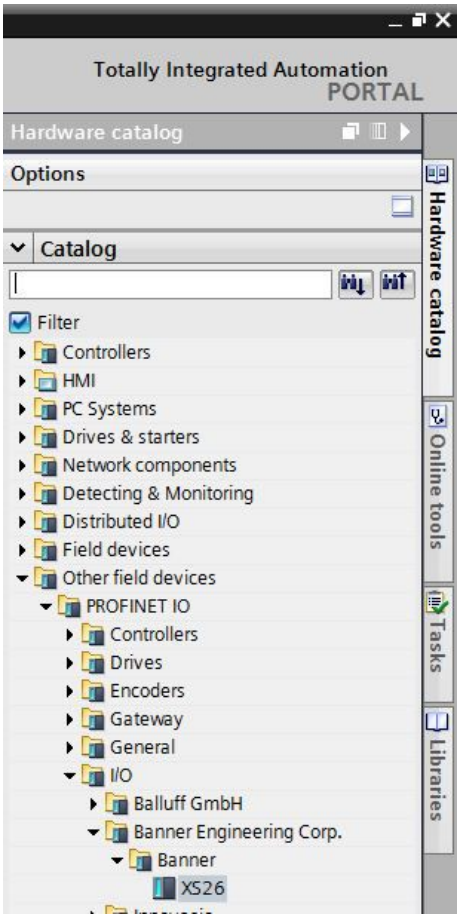

**Network view** displays.

> **NOTE:** For Step 6 through Step 10, **Network view** must be open.

6. Locate the XS/SC26 in the **Hardware catalog**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 282. Hardware Catalog*



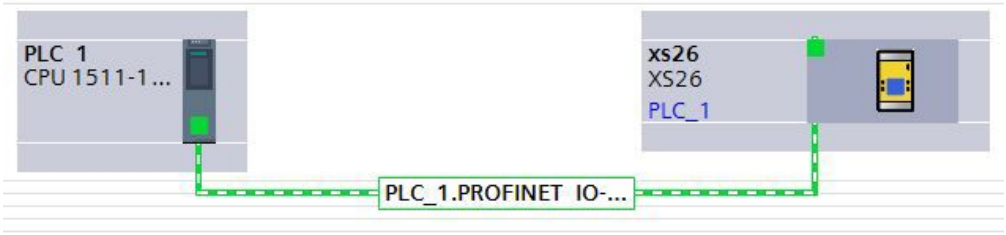

In the above example, the Safety Controller is located under **Other field devices › PROFINET IO › I/O › Banner Engineering Corp. › Banner**.

7. Select the device and add it to the configuration.

| Selection Option | Description |
|---|---|
| Drag | Drag the Safety Controller from the **Hardware catalog** directly into the configuration. |
| Double-click | Double-click on the Safety Controller and add it to the configuration. |

8. Click the green square on the Safety Controller icon. Drag the pointer to the green square on the PLC_1 icon to connect the device to the controller (PLC).

*Figure 283. Drag to Connect*

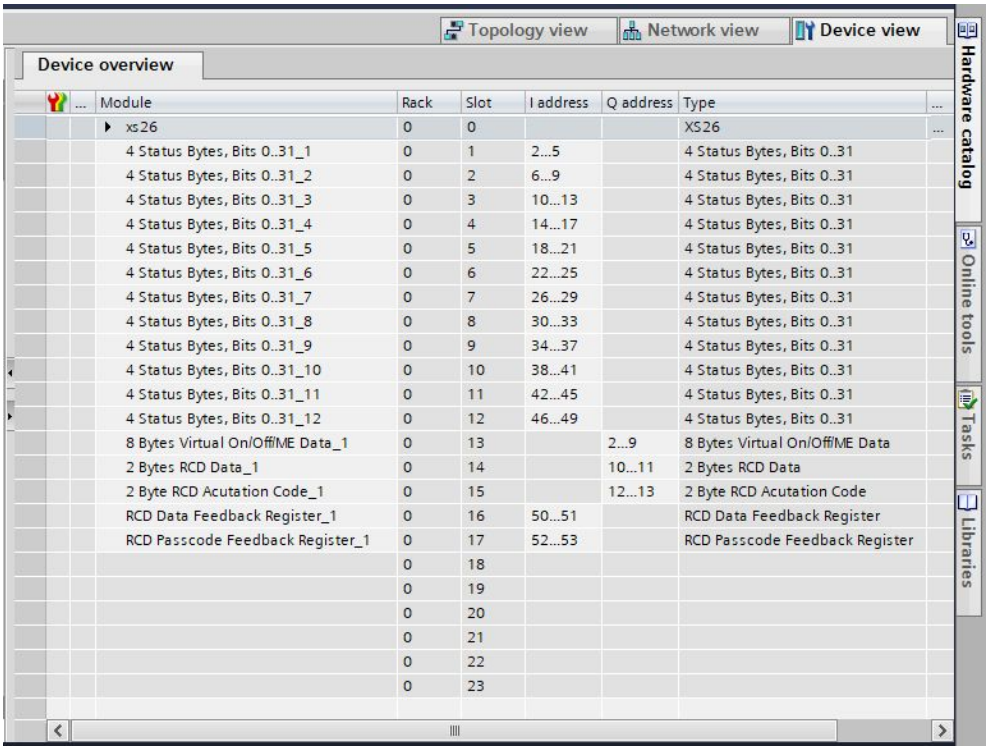



The connection is made.

9. Double-click the Safety Controller icon to open the **Device** window.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 284. Device Overview Tab*




| | Module | Rack | Slot | I address | Q address | Type |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | xs26 | 0 | 0 | | | XS26 |
| | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_1 | 0 | 1 | 2...5 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_2 | 0 | 2 | 6...9 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_3 | 0 | 3 | 10...13 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_4 | 0 | 4 | 14...17 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_5 | 0 | 5 | 18...21 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_6 | 0 | 6 | 22...25 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_7 | 0 | 7 | 26...29 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_8 | 0 | 8 | 30...33 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_9 | 0 | 9 | 34...37 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_10 | 0 | 10 | 38...41 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_11 | 0 | 11 | 42...45 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_12 | 0 | 12 | 46...49 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| | 8 Bytes Virtual On/Off/ME Data_1 | 0 | 13 | | 2...9 | 8 Bytes Virtual On/Off/ME Data |
| | 2 Bytes RCD Data_1 | 0 | 14 | | 10...11 | 2 Bytes RCD Data |
| | 2 Byte RCD Acutation Code_1 | 0 | 15 | | 12...13 | 2 Byte RCD Acutation Code |
| | RCD Data Feedback Register_1 | 0 | 16 | 50...51 | | RCD Data Feedback Register |
| | RCD Passcode Feedback Register_1 | 0 | 17 | 52...53 | | RCD Passcode Feedback Register |
| | | 0 | 18 | | | |
| | | 0 | 19 | | | |
| | | 0 | 20 | | | |
| | | 0 | 21 | | | |
| | | 0 | 22 | | | |
| | | 0 | 23 | | | |

**NOTE:** The default connection uses slots 1 to 17.

10. Select the desired modules or submodules from the **Hardware catalog** and drag them onto the **Device overview** tab on the **Device view** tab.

    The Safety Controller device is configured.

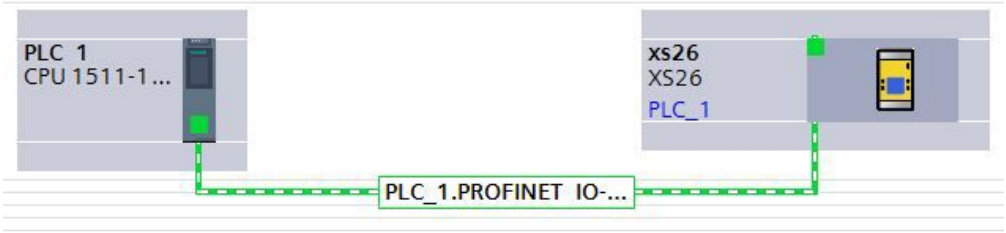
## Add Optional Modules to the PROFINET Configuration

Use these instructions to add optional XS26 modules to an existing PROFINET configuration in the Siemens TIA Portal software (v15 shown).

To establish the PROFINET connection, see "Adding a Device to a Project" on page 307.

1. Open a project and click on **Devices & networks** to go to the **Network view**.

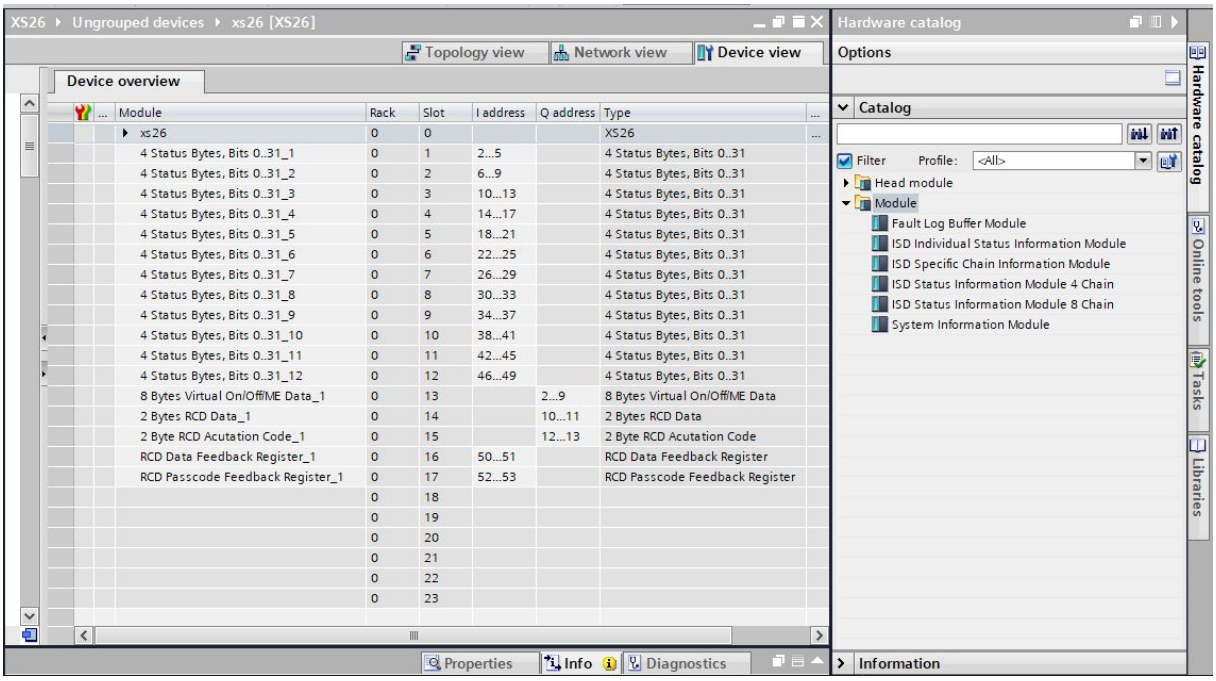
   *Figure 285. **Network view***




   **Network view** displays.
2. Double click the XS26 icon in the **Network view** window to open the **Device overview** window.
3. Click on the **Hardware catalog** tab along the right side of the TIA Portal software, then click on the **Module** folder.
   This is a list of the optional modules available for use in the PROFINET configuration.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 286. **Hardware Catalog—Module** Folder*



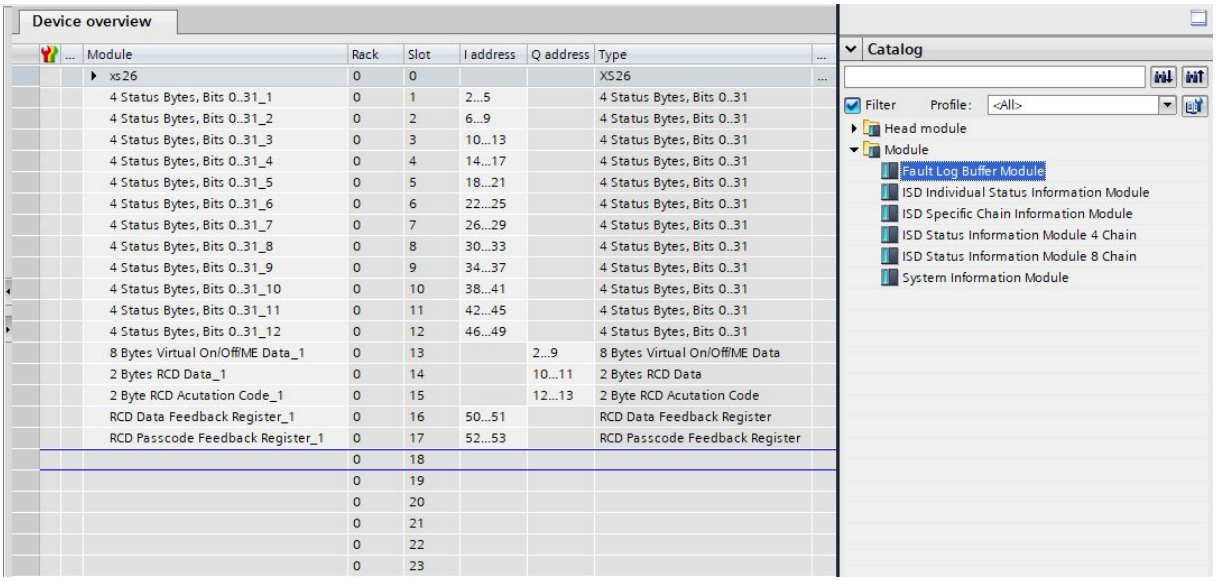

Each optional module is tied to one specific slot in the configuration. For example:

- The optional **Fault Log Buffer Module**, for example, can only be added to slot 18
- The optional **ISD Specific Chain Information Module** can only be added to slot 23
- The optional **System Information Module** can only be added to slot 19

4. Highlight the module in the **Catalog**.

   Its corresponding slot is outlined in blue.

*Figure 287. **Device Overview**—Module and Corresponding Slot*




5. Double click on the module in the **Catalog** to add it to the configuration.

## Example Configuration

The following is a configuration that makes use of a variety of optional modules. Note that the IO Controller (PLC) has automatically assigned I and Q addresses in the order in which the modules were added to the configuration. These PLC Slot Address Locations (%I and %Q) are required when creating an XML File for PROFINET to label the data.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 288. Example Configuration*

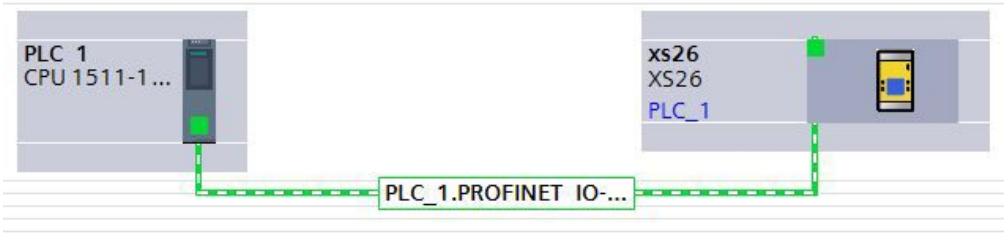
| Module | Rack | Slot | I address | Q address | Type |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| xs26 | 0 | 0 | | | XS26 |
| I | 0 | 0 X1 | | | xs26 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_1 | 0 | 1 | 2...5 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_2 | 0 | 2 | 6...9 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_3 | 0 | 3 | 10...13 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_4 | 0 | 4 | 14...17 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_5 | 0 | 5 | 18...21 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_6 | 0 | 6 | 22...25 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_7 | 0 | 7 | 26...29 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_8 | 0 | 8 | 30...33 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_9 | 0 | 9 | 34...37 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_10 | 0 | 10 | 38...41 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_11 | 0 | 11 | 42...45 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31_12 | 0 | 12 | 46...49 | | 4 Status Bytes, Bits 0..31 |
| 8 Bytes Virtual On/Off/ME Data_1 | 0 | 13 | | 2...9 | 8 Bytes Virtual On/Off/ME Data |
| 2 Bytes RCD Data_1 | 0 | 14 | | 10...11 | 2 Bytes RCD Data |
| 2 Byte RCD Acutation Code_1 | 0 | 15 | | 12...13 | 2 Byte RCD Acutation Code |
| RCD Data Feedback Register_1 | 0 | 16 | 50...51 | | RCD Data Feedback Register |
| RCD Passcode Feedback Register_1 | 0 | 17 | 52...53 | | RCD Passcode Feedback Register |
| | 0 | 18 | | | |
| System Information Module_1 | 0 | 19 | 54...83 | | System Information Module |
| | 0 | 20 | | | |
| ISD Individual Status Information Module_1 | 0 | 21 | | | ISD Individual Status Information Module |
| ISD Device Information Request | 0 | 21 IS... | | 14...19 | ISD Device Information Request |
| ISD Device Information Response | 0 | 21 IS... | 372...395 | | ISD Device Information Response |
| ISD Status Information Module 8 Chain_1 | 0 | 22 | 84...339 | | ISD Status Information Module 8 Chain |
| ISD Specific Chain Information Module_1 | 0 | 23 | 340...371 | | ISD Specific Chain Information Module |

## Changing the Device Name

Use these instructions to change the name of the Safety Controller device, using the Siemens TIA Portal software (v15 shown). Use these instructions as a basis if you are using another controller (PLC).

1. Open a project and click on **Devices & networks** to go to the **Network view**.

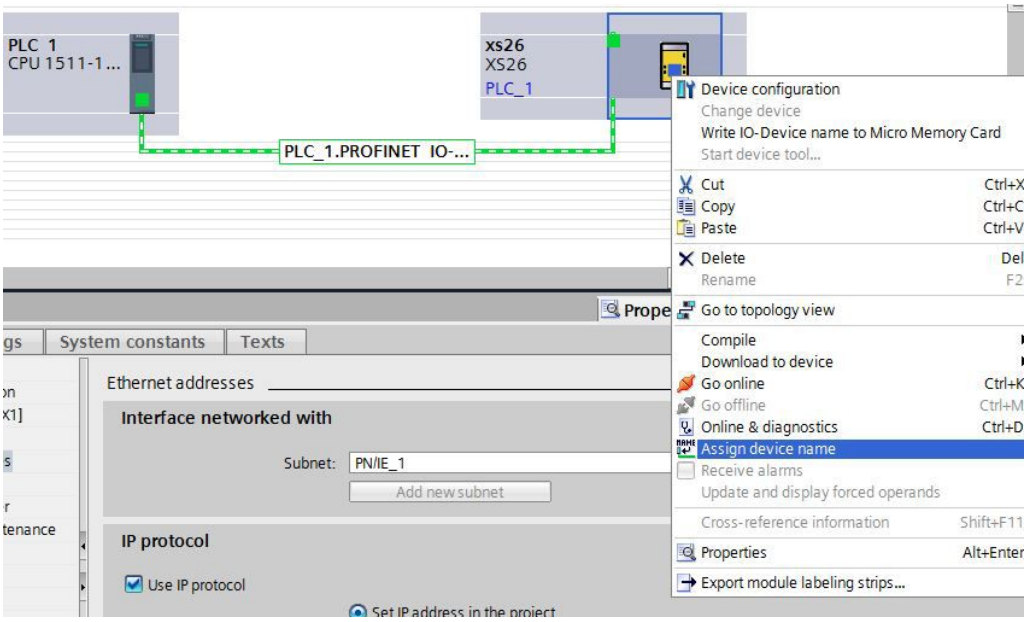
   *Figure 289. Network View*

   **Network view** displays.
2. Right-click on the Safety Controller icon and select **Assign device name.**

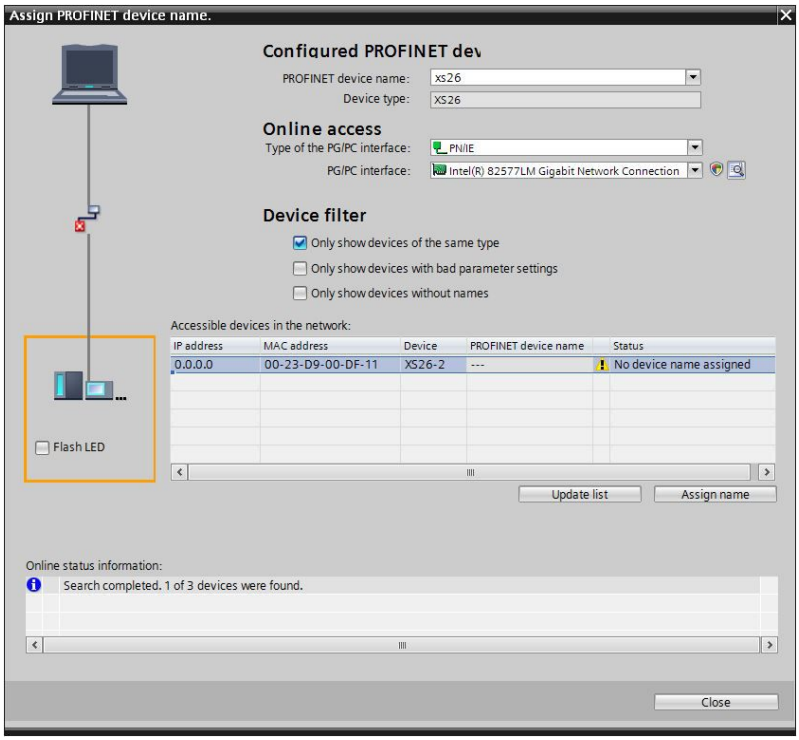

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 290. Ethernet Addresses*




The **Assign PROFINET device name** window displays, and the software searches for devices of the same type.

*Figure 291. Ethernet Addresses*



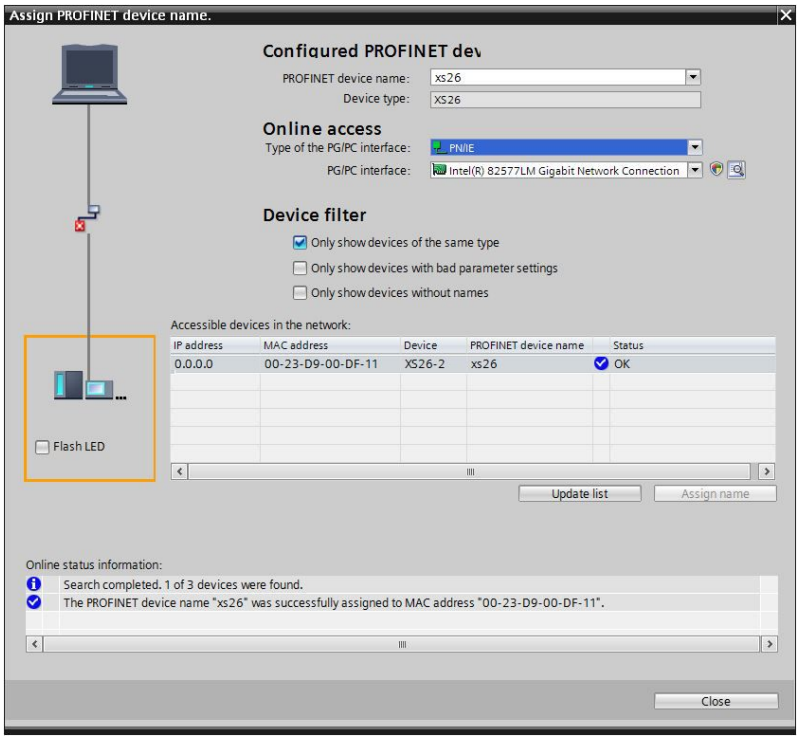

3. Enter the desired name in the **PROFINET device name** field.

> **NOTE:** Each name can be used only once.

4. Click **Assign name**.
   The device now has a PROFINET name.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 292. Ethernet Addresses*





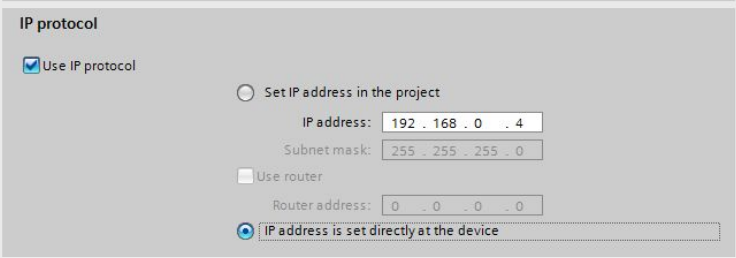
© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## Changing the Device IP Address

**NOTE:** PROFINET devices commonly lack an IP address on startup (IP address = all zeros). However, Safety Controller devices require an IP address to connect to Banner Safety Controller to set the device configuration.
By default, each Banner Engineering Corp. device shipped from the factory is assigned the IP address 192.168.0.128. The default address can be changed using the Banner Safety Controller software.

Immediately after the PROFINET protocol has been enabled in the Banner Engineering Corp. device, but before the PLC discovers and connects to the Banner Engineering Corp. device, the Banner Engineering Corp. device will retain its IP address. After the PLC discovers and connects to the Banner Engineering Corp. device, the behavior of the IP address depends on how the PLC was configured to assign the Banner Engineering Corp. device IP address. Two configuration options are available.

*Figure 293. Siemens TIA Portal (v15): IP Protocol Options*




- The IP address is set in the project: If the PLC is told to assign the Banner Engineering Corp. device IP address (for example, using the **Set IP address in the project** option in Siemens TIA Portal), the Banner Engineering Corp. device receives the specified address, but only after the program has been loaded into the PLC and is running.
  If the Banner Engineering Corp. device is restarted after it was discovered and configured by the PLC, the Banner Engineering Corp. device has an IP address of 0.0.0.0 until the PLC discovers it and assigns it the specified address again.

  When the Banner Engineering Corp. device has no IP address assigned, it is still possible to assign an IP address to the Banner Engineering Corp. device using Banner Safety Controller. However, if this address is different than what is specified in the PLC, the Banner Engineering Corp. device reverts to the address specified in the PLC when the PLC becomes active again.

  Use this option for a Safety Controller with FID 1–6.
- The IP address is set at the device: If the PLC is told that the Banner Engineering Corp. device IP address is configured at the device (for example, using the **IP address is set directly at the device** option in Siemens TIA Portal), the Banner Engineering Corp. device always retains the IP address that was assigned to through Banner Safety Controller.
  This is the preferred method for setting the IP address of a Safety Controller with FID 7 or greater.

These configuration options conform to the PROFINET standard.

### Set the IP Address Directly at the Device

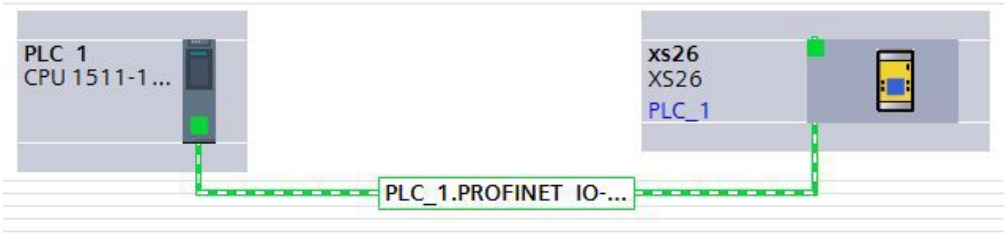
Use these instructions to change the IP address of the Safety Controller device, using the Siemens TIA Portal software (v15 shown). Use these instructions as a basis if you are using another controller (PLC). This is the preferred method for setting the IP address of a Safety Controller with FID 7 or greater.

Set the IP address using the Banner Safety Controller Software first.

1. Start the Siemens TIA Portal software.
2. Click **Open existing project**.
3. Select a project an open it.
4. Click **Devices & networks** after the project has been uploaded to go to **Network view**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

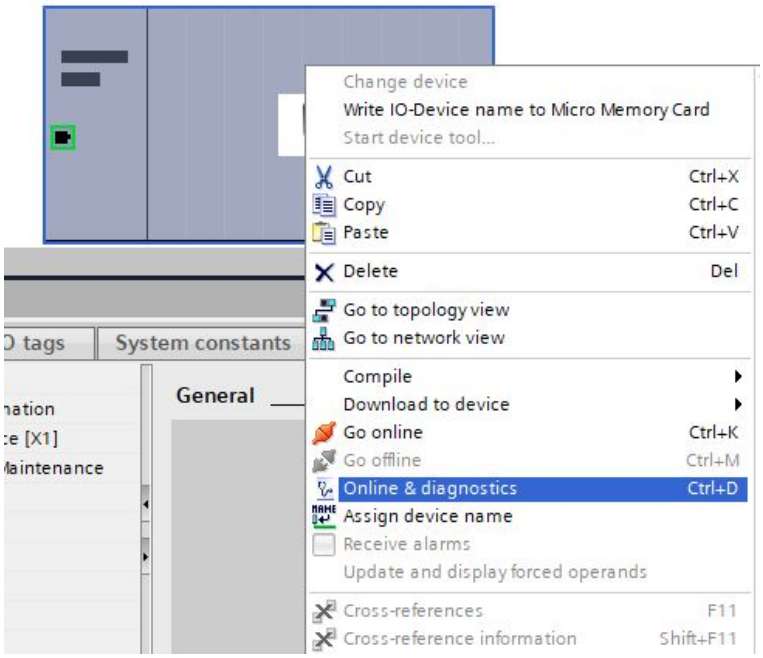
*Figure 294. Network View*




**Network View** displays.

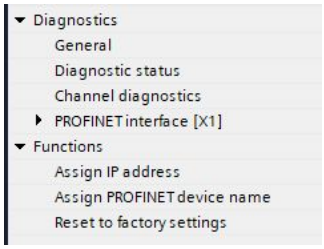
5. Double-click on the Safety Controller icon to open the **Device view**.
6. Click on the Safety Controller icon in the graphic area of the **Device view** to open the **Module properties** window. The module can now be configured.
7. Right-click on the device icon and select **Online & diagnostics**.

*Figure 295. Select Online & Diagnostics*




The **Online & diagnostics** window displays.

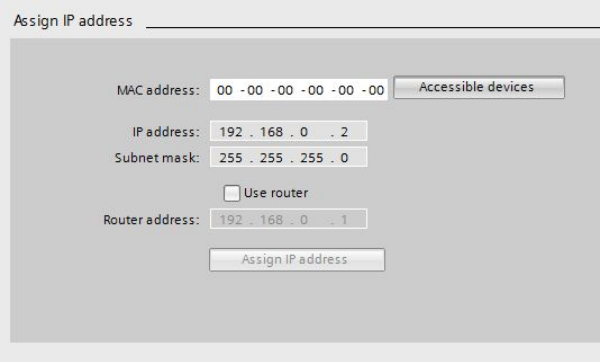
*Figure 296. Online & Diagnostics*




8. Select **Assign IP address** under **Functions**.
9. Click **Accessible devices**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

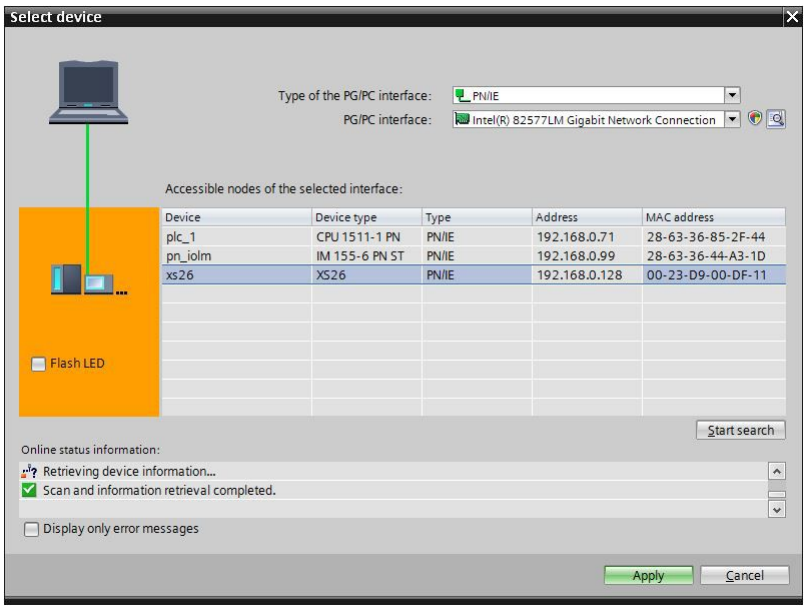
*Figure 297. Assign IP Address—Accessible Devices*




The **Select device** window searches the network for available devices.

10. Determine the device to be adjusted via the MAC address and select it.
11. Click **Apply**.

*Figure 298. Select the Device and Apply Changes*




The IP address for the device is updated.

12. Click **Assign IP address** to complete the step.
    This step is completed for every device.

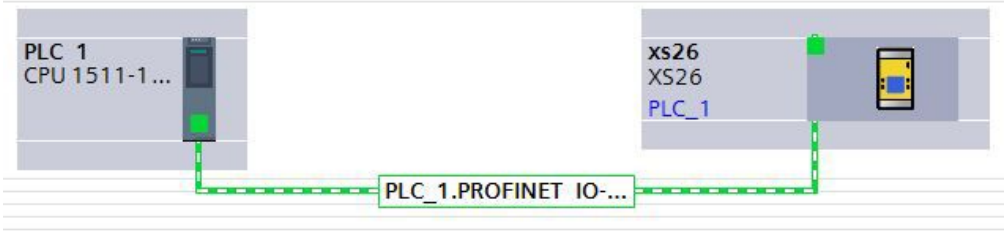
## Set the IP Address in the Project

Use these instructions to change the IP address of the Safety Controller device, using the Siemens TIA Portal software (v15 shown). Use these instructions as a basis if you are using another controller (PLC). Use this option for a Safety Controller with FID 1–6.

1. Start the Siemens TIA Portal software.
2. Click **Open existing project**.
3. Select a project an open it.
4. Click **Devices & networks** after the project has been uploaded to go to **Network view**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

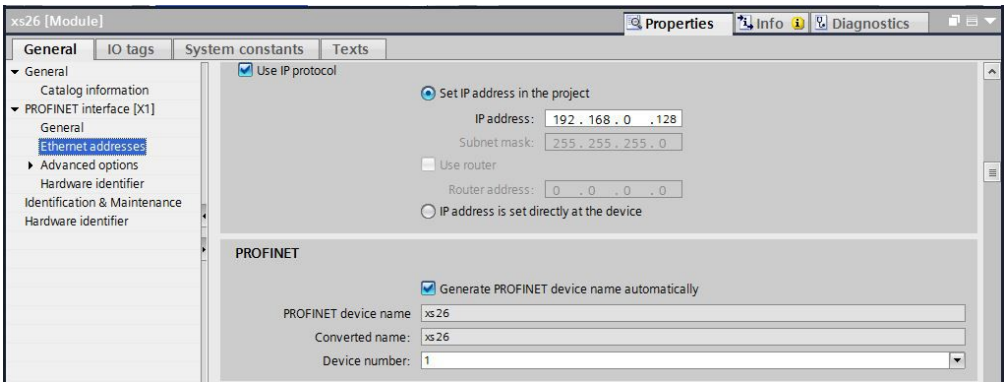
*Figure 299. Network View*




**Network View** displays.

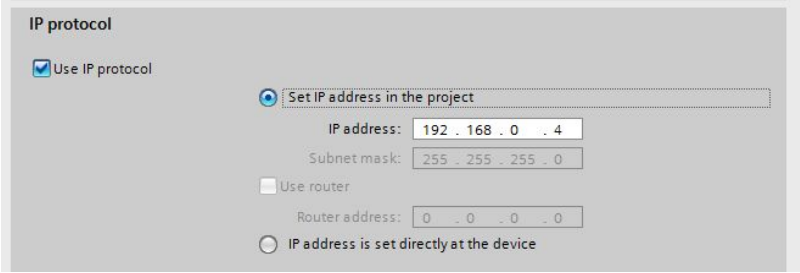
5. Double-click on the Safety Controller icon to open the **Device view**.
6. Click on the Safety Controller icon in the graphic area of the **Device view** to open the **Module properties** window.
   The module can now be configured.
7. Click **Properties**.
8. Click **General**.
9. Select **PROFINET interface › Ethernet addresses**.

   *Figure 300. Ethernet Addresses*




10. Select **Set IP address in the project**.

    *Figure 301. Set IP Address*




    The project sets the IP address of the device.
11. Enter the IP address.
    The IP address for the device is updated.

# 13.8 EtherCAT®

EtherCAT®[34] is a data communication protocol for industrial automation processes. EtherCAT IO defines how controllers (IO controllers) and peripheral devices (IO devices) exchange data in real time.

The Banner Safety Controller supports EtherCAT IO. The EtherCAT protocol follows the IEC 61158 standard; the data transmission medium is copper wire.

[34] EtherCAT® is a registered trademark and patented technology, licensed by Beckhoff Automation GmbH, Germany.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**NOTE:** In this document, outputs from the Safety Controller device are referred to as "inputs" to the controller (PLC). Outputs from the controller (PLC) are referred to as "inputs" to the Safety Controller device.

### 13.8.1 EtherCAT® and the Safety Controllers

This section covers instructions for XS/SC26 Safety Controllers with the FID 6 or later designation on the product label.

The Safety Controller must have the EtherCAT communications gateway, XSeCAT, installed.

EtherCAT real time data is transmitted and received via Process Data Objects (PDO).

**NOTE:** The ESI file is available for download at www.bannerengineering.com/safetycontroller.

**NOTE:** Before loading a new configuration into an active controller on an EtherCAT system, the PLC should place the EtherCAT module into the INIT or PREOP state. This will prevent the module from entering an error state during the configuration download process that requires a power cycle or other action from the EtherCAT PLC.

### 13.8.2 EtherCAT® Slave Information (ESI) File

The EtherCAT Slave Information (ESI) file contains module information, such as:

- Configuration data
- Data information (pass count, inspection status, etc.)
- Diagnostics

### 13.8.3 EtherCAT® IO Data Model

The EtherCAT IO data model is based on the typical, expandable field device that has a backplane with slots.

Each slot is either a Tx-PDO (Transmit Process Data Object) or a Rx-PDO (Received Process Data Object). The Tx-PDO or Rx-PDO is broken up into data structures. The majority of the XS/SC26 data is broken up in PDOs with 4 bytes of data. The ISD, RCD, Fault Log, and System Information PDOs have custom structures.

- A PDO is designated as either a Tx (Transmit) or a Rx (Received)
- A Transmit PDO is used to send data to the controller (PLC)
- A Received PDO is used to receive data from the controller (PLC)

### 13.8.4 Configuring the Safety Controller for EtherCAT® IO Connection

1. Connect the Safety Controller to the PC via the SC-USB2 USB cable or via Ethernet (for FID7 or later XS/SC26 Ethernet models).
2. Open the Banner Safety Controller Software, and click the **Industrial Ethernet** tab.
3. Check that the EtherCAT Communication Gateway has been added in the **Equipment** tab for the Project file.
   The **EtherCAT** tab should automatically display, because the EtherCAT Communication Gateway is in **Equipment** tab.
4. Click ✚ to add information to the EtherCAT Process Data Object (PDO). **Auto Configure** can assist in this task.
5. Provide the appropriate password to change the configuration and network settings for the Safety Controller.
6. Make sure the Safety Controller has a valid and confirmed configuration file.

**NOTE:** If a Virtual Reset or Cancel Delay is used, an Actuation Code must be created in **Network Settings**. Then the code must be sent to the Safety Controller using **Send** in **Network Settings**.

**NOTE:** ClickSet IP is not available for EtherCAT.

### 13.8.5 Create a PLCopenXML for EtherCAT® for TwinCAT® 3.0

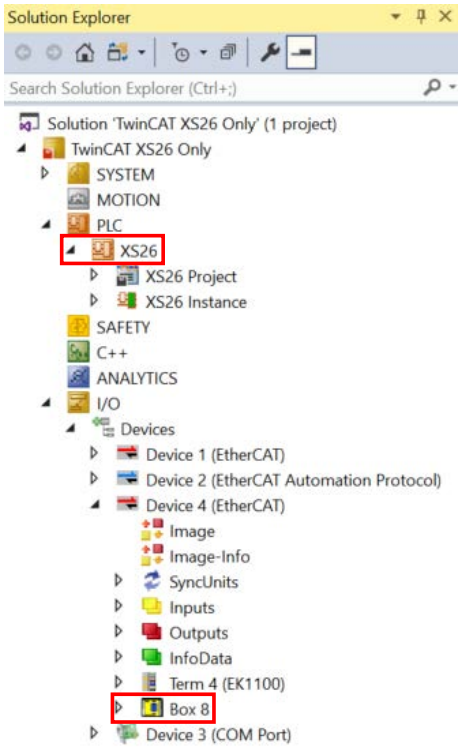
Two items must be known:


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- The name of the project in TwinCAT[35]
- The name of the Safety Controller in the system

This Information is available in the PLC software. The following figure is an example from Beckhoff TwinCAT 3.0 software.

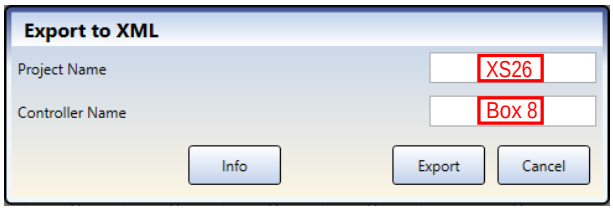
*Figure 302. Solution Explorer*




1. In the Banner Safety Controller software, on the **Industrial Ethernet** tab, make sure **EtherCAT** is selected from the list at the left.
2. Click **Export**.

   The **Export to XML** window opens.

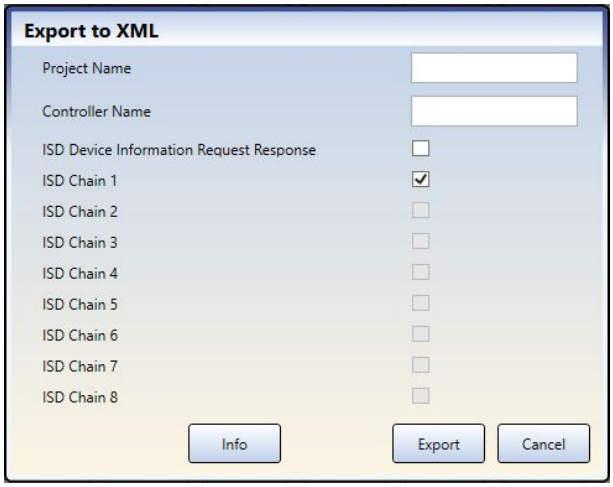
   *Figure 303. **Export to XML**—No ISD Chains*




[35] TwinCAT® is a registered trademark of and licensed by Beckhoff Automation GmbH, Germany.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 304. **Export to XML**—with ISD Chains*




3. Enter the information in the window.
    a. In the **Project Name** field, enter the name of the project in the PLC software. See item 1 in "Figure: Export to XML—No ISD Chains " on page 320. In this example it is `XS26`.
    b. In the **Controller Name** field, enter the name of the Safety Controller in the PLC Software. See item 2 in "Figure: Export to XML—No ISD Chains " on page 320. In this example it is `Box 8`.
4. Click **Export**.
5. Save the PLCopenXML file to the desired location.

The PLCopenXML file is ready to be directly imported into the Beckhoff TwinCAT software or the file can be opened with any software that can read an .xml file.

## 13.8.6 Description of Process Data Objects

In this table, the I/O direction is from the point of view of the PLC.

*Table 80. PDO Assignment*

| PDO | Name | IO | Size (Bytes) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1A00 | User-Defined VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A00 | In | 4 |
| 1A01 | User-Defined VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A01 | In | 4 |
| 1A02 | Faults VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A02 | In | 4 |
| 1A03 | Faults VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A03 | In | 4 |
| 1A04 | Inputs VS TxPDO[1] 0×1A04 | In | 4 |
| 1A05 | Inputs VS TxPDO[2] 0×1A05 | In | 4 |
| 1A06 | Inputs VS TxPDO[3] 0×1A06 | In | 4 |
| 1A07 | Inputs VS TxPDO[4] 0×1A07 | In | 4 |
| 1A08 | Inputs VS TxPDO[5] 0×1A08 | In | 4 |
| 1A09 | Outputs VS TxPDO[1] 0×1A09 | In | 4 |
| 1A0A | Outputs VS TxPDO[2] 0×1A0A | In | 4 |
| 1A0B | Outputs VS TxPDO[3] 0×1A0B | In | 4 |
| 1A0C | Reset, Cancel Delay Feedback TxPDO 0×1A0C | In | 4 |
| 1A10 | ISD Device Information Response 0×1A10[36] | In | 56 |
| 1A20 | System Status of ISD Chain 1 TxPDO 0×1A20[36] | In | 32 |
| 1A3A | ECAT Module Status TxPDO 0x1A3A | In | 4 |

Continued on page 322

[36] This PDO assignment is off by default.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 321

| PDO | Name | IO | Size (Bytes) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1600 | On/Off, Mute Enable VI RxPDO [1] 0×1600 | Out | 4 |
| 1601 | On/Off, Mute Enable VI RxPDO [2] 0×1601 | Out | 4 |
| 1602 | Reset, Cancel Delay Control RxPDO 0×1610 | Out | 4 |
| 1610 | ISD Device Information Request RxPDO 0×1610[36] | Out | 6 |

## User-Defined Status Bits

PDO 1 and PDO 2 are filled with User-Defined Status Bit Process Data Objects (PDO). These PDO include 64 bits worth of virtual status output information of any type.

*Table 81. User-Defined VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A00*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| User-Defined VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A00 Byte 0 | BYTE |
| User-Defined VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A00 Byte 1 | BYTE |
| User-Defined VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A00 Byte 2 | BYTE |
| User-Defined VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A00 Byte 3 | BYTE |

*Table 82. User-Defined VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A01*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| User-Defined VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A01 Byte 0 | BYTE |
| User-Defined VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A01 Byte 1 | BYTE |
| User-Defined VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A01 Byte 2 | BYTE |
| User-Defined VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A01 Byte 3 | BYTE |

## Fault Bits

PDO 3 and PDO 4 are filled with 64 bits of fault type virtual status output information from the Safety Controller.

*Table 83. Faults VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A02*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Faults VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A02 Byte 0 | BYTE |
| Faults VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A02 Byte 1 | BYTE |
| Faults VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A02 Byte 2 | BYTE |
| Faults VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A02 Byte 3 | BYTE |

*Table 84. Faults VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A03*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Faults VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A03 Byte 0 | BYTE |
| Faults VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A03 Byte 1 | BYTE |
| Faults VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A03 Byte 2 | BYTE |
| Faults VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A03 Byte 3 | BYTE |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## Input Status Bits

PDO 5 through PDO 9 are reserved for 160 bits of Safety Controller input information. An expandable Safety Controller might have up to 154 inputs, if all of the eight possible expansion cards are used as 16-channel inputs (in addition to the 26 inputs built into the Base Controller).

*Table 85. Inputs VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A04*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Inputs VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A04 Byte 0 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A04 Byte 1 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A04 Byte 2 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A04 Byte 3 | BYTE |

*Table 86. Inputs VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A05*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Inputs VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A05 Byte 0 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A05 Byte 1 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A05 Byte 2 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A05 Byte 3 | BYTE |

*Table 87. Inputs VS TxPDO [3] 0×1A06*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Inputs VS TxPDO [3] 0×1A06 Byte 0 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [3] 0×1A06 Byte 1 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [3] 0×1A06 Byte 2 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [3] 0×1A06 Byte 3 | BYTE |

*Table 88. Inputs VS TxPDO [4] 0×1A07*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Inputs VS TxPDO [4] 0×1A07 Byte 0 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [4] 0×1A07 Byte 1 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [4] 0×1A07 Byte 2 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [4] 0×1A07 Byte 3 | BYTE |

*Table 89. Inputs VS TxPDO [5] 0×1A08*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Inputs VS TxPDO [5] 0×1A08 Byte 0 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [5] 0×1A08 Byte 1 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [5] 0×1A08 Byte 2 | BYTE |
| Inputs VS TxPDO [5] 0×1A08 Byte 3 | BYTE |

## Output Status Bits

PDO 10 through PDO 12 are reserved for 96 Safety Controller output type virtual status output bits.

*Table 90. Outputs VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A09*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Outputs VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A09 Byte 0 | BYTE |
| Outputs VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A09 Byte 1 | BYTE |

Continued on page 324


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 323

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Outputs VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A09 Byte 2 | BYTE |
| Outputs VS TxPDO [1] 0×1A09 Byte 3 | BYTE |

*Table 91. Outputs VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A0A*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Outputs VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A0A Byte 0 | BYTE |
| Outputs VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A0A Byte 1 | BYTE |
| Outputs VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A0A Byte 2 | BYTE |
| Outputs VS TxPDO [2] 0×1A0A Byte 3 | BYTE |

*Table 92. Outputs VS TxPDO [3] 0×1A0B*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Outputs VS TxPDO [3] 0×1A0B Byte 0 | BYTE |
| Outputs VS TxPDO [3] 0×1A0B Byte 1 | BYTE |
| Outputs VS TxPDO [3] 0×1A0B Byte 2 | BYTE |
| Outputs VS TxPDO [3] 0×1A0B Byte 3 | BYTE |

## Virtual Reset, Cancel Delay (RCD) Feedback

PDO 13 contains the RCD Actuation Code Feedback along with 16 virtual non-safety inputs. They are used in virtual reset, cancel delay sequence.

See "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65.

*Table 93. Virtual Reset, Cancel Delay*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| RCD Actuation Code Feedback | UINT |
| Reset, Cancel Delay Feedback TxPDO [1] 0×1A0C Byte 0 | BYTE |
| Reset, Cancel Delay Feedback TxPDO [1] 0×1A0C Byte 1 | BYTE |

## ISD Device Information Response

PDO 14 contains the response data for communication to an individual ISD Device.

See also "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54 and "ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description" on page 230.

*Table 94. ISD Device Information Response*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| ISD Request Acknowledgement | UINT |
| ISD Chain Acknowledgement | UINT |
| ISD Device Acknowledgement | UINT |
| ISD Device Information[37] | ARRAY[0..17] of BYTE |
| Detected Device [0–15] in One Chain | ARRAY[0..15] of BYTE |
| Detected Device [16–31] in One Chain | ARRAY[0..15] of BYTE |

[37] For the data format, see " ISD Individual Device Information-Specific Data Detailed Description " on page 325.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.

## ISD Individual Device Information-Specific Data Detailed Description

Gives the data format for PLC Input Data Name: ISD Device Information.

See " ISD Device Information Response " on page 324.

*Table 95. ISD Individual Device Data*

| Information | Byte.Bit | Data Size |
|---|---|---|
| Safety Input Fault | 0.0 | 1-bit |
| *reserved* | 0.1 | 1-bit |
| Sensor Not Paired | 0.2 | 1-bit |
| ISD Data Error | 0.3 | 1-bit |
| Wrong Actuator/Button Status/Input Status | 0.4 | 1-bit |
| Marginal Range/Button Status/Input Status | 0.5 | 1-bit |
| Actuator Detected | 0.6 | 1-bit |
| Output Error | 0.7 | 1-bit |
| Input 2 | 1.0 | 1-bit |
| Input 1 | 1.1 | 1-bit |
| Local Reset Expected | 1.2 | 1-bit |
| Operating Voltage Warning | 1.3 | 1-bit |
| Operating Voltage Error | 1.4 | 1-bit |
| Output 2 | 1.5 | 1-bit |
| Output 1 | 1.6 | 1-bit |
| Power Cycle Required | 1.7 | 1-bit |
| Fault Tolerant Outputs | 2.0 | 1-bit |
| Local Reset Unit | 2.1 | 1-bit |
| Cascadable | 2.2 | 1-bit |
| High Coding Level | 2.3 | 1-bit |
| Teach-ins Remaining | 2.7 to 2.4 | 4-bit |
| Device ID | 3.4 to 3.0 | 5-bit |
| Range Warning Count | 4.2 to 3.5 | 6-bit |
| Output Switch-off Time | 4.7 to 4.3 | 5-bit |
| Number of Voltage Errors | 5 | 8-bit |
| Internal Temperature | 6 | 8-bit |
| Actuator Distance | 7 | 8-bit |
| Supply Voltage | 8 | 8-bit |
| Expected Company Name | 9.3 to 9.0 | 4-bit |
| Received Company Name | 9.7 to 9.4 | 4-bit |
| Expected Code | 11 to 10 | 16-bit |
| Received Code | 13 to 12 | 16-bit |
| Internal Error A | 15 to 14 | 16-bit |
| Internal Error B | 17 to 16 | 16-bit |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## System Status of ISD Chain – 8 Chains

PDO 15 to PDO 22 cover the data specific to an individual ISD Chain. Each chain has its own data.

*Table 96. Individual ISD Chain Status*

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| Number of Inputs in Chain # | UDINT |
| Chain Status of Chain #[38] | ARRAY[0..27] of BYTE |

## Chain Status of Chain #-Specific Data Detailed Description

Gives the data format for PLC Input Data Name: Chain Status of Chain #.

See "System Status of ISD Chain – 8 Chains " on page 326.

*Table 97. ISD Individual Chain Data*

| Information | Data Size |
|---|---|
| Chain # Device Count | 32-bit |
| Chain # Device On/Off (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit |
| Chain # Fault Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit |
| Chain # Marginal Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit |
| Chain # Alert Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit |
| Chain # Reset Status (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit |
| Chain # Actuator Recognized (see " ISD System Status Words " on page 234) | 32-bit |
| Chain # System Status (see "ISD Chain System Status" on page 54) | 32-bit |

## EtherCAT Module Status

| PLC Input Data Name | Input Data Type |
|---|---|
| ECAT Module Status | UINT |
| Operating Mode | UINT |

## Virtual On, OFF, Mute Enable Bits

PDO 25 is filled with 64 virtual non-safety inputs, to be used as virtual on/off inputs (to the Safety Controller) or virtual mute enable inputs (to the Safety Controller).

*Table 98. Virtual On, OFF, Mute Enable Bits 0×1600*

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| On/Off, Mute Enable VI RxPDO [1] 0×1600 Byte 0 | BYTE |
| On/Off, Mute Enable VI RxPDO [1] 0×1600 Byte 1 | BYTE |
| On/Off, Mute Enable VI RxPDO [1] 0×1600 Byte 2 | BYTE |
| On/Off, Mute Enable VI RxPDO [1] 0×1600 Byte 3 | BYTE |

*Table 99. Virtual On, OFF, Mute Enable Bits 0×1601*

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| On/Off, Mute Enable VI RxPDO [2] 0×1601 Byte 0 | BYTE |
| On/Off, Mute Enable VI RxPDO [2] 0×1601 Byte 1 | BYTE |
| On/Off, Mute Enable VI RxPDO [2] 0×1601 Byte 2 | BYTE |

Continued on page 327

[38] For the data format, see " Chain Status of Chain #-Specific Data Detailed Description " on page 326.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 326

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| On/Off, Mute Enable VI RxPDO [2] 0×1601 Byte 3 | BYTE |

### Virtual Reset, Cancel Delay (RCD) Control

PDO 26 contains the RCD Actuation Code, an important code word used in the virtual reset, cancel delay sequence.

See "Virtual Manual Reset and Cancel Delay (RCD) Sequence" on page 65. This PDO also contains sixteen virtual non-safety inputs, to be used in the virtual reset, cancel delay sequence.

*Table 100. RCD Control*

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| RCD Actuation Code | UDINT |
| Reset, Cancel Dealy Control RxPDO [1] 0×1602 Byte 0 | BYTE |
| Reset, Cancel Dealy Control RxPDO [1] 0×1602 Byte 1 | BYTE |

### ISD Individual Device Information Request

PDO 27 contains the response data for communication to an individual ISD Device.

See also "Request Performance and Status Information about an Individual Device via ISD" on page 54 and "ISD Individual Device-Specific Data Detailed Description" on page 230.

*Table 101. ISD Individual Device Information Request*

| PLC Output Data Name | Output Data Type |
|---|---|
| ISD Read Request | UINT |
| ISD Chain Requested | UINT |
| ISD Device Requested | UINT |

## 13.8.7 Configuration Instructions

### Installing the ESI File

Use these instructions to install the ESI file in the Beckhoff TwinCAT 3 software.

1. Download the ESI file from www.bannerengineering.com.
2. Navigate to the *TwinCAT/3.1/Config/Io/EtherCAT* folder.
3. Move the ESI file to this folder.

   The ESI will be available in TwinCAT the next time the program is started.

### Adding the Safety Controller to a Project

Use these instructions to add a XS/SC26 device to a TwinCAT project.

1. Start the TwinCAT 3 software.
2. Open a project.
3. Expand the I/O selection.
4. Right-click on the device that the Banner Safety Controller will be a part of.
5. Select the **Add New Item** option.

   "Banner Engineering Corporation" will be listed. Optionally, use the Search and enter `XS26` to quickly select the ESI.
6. Select **XS26 EtherCAT Module**.
7. Change the **Name** as necessary for the system.
8. Click **OK** to add the Safety Controller into the system.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## 13.8.8 EtherCAT® PDO Modification

The EtherCAT PDO can be modified. By default, only a specific set of data is activated.

It is possible to turn ON PDO that are currently OFF, while also turning OFF PDO that are currently ON. Adjusting the PDO allows for sending and receiving only the data needed for the application.

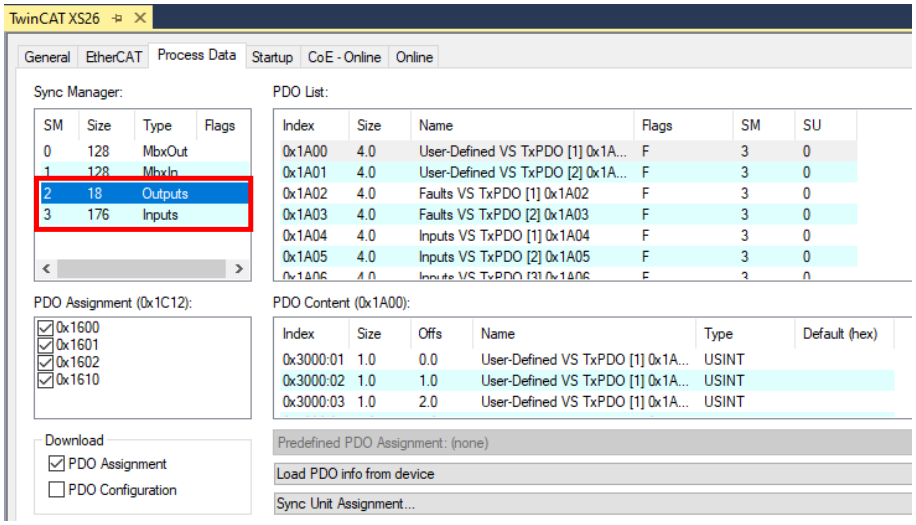
The smaller the PDO, the easier it is to fit into the allocated packet size for EtherCAT.

Use the following instructions to turn ON and OFF PDO as required.

### Access the PDO Menu

1. In TwinCAT Solution Explorer, double-click on the Banner Safety Controller in the I/O tree.
   A window opens. The **General** tab is active by default.
2. Click on the **Process Data** tab.
   This is the tab that allows for turning ON and OFF PDO.
3. Make note of the Outputs and Inputs in the **Sync Manager** pane.

*Figure 305. Output and Inputs in Sync Manager*




### Turn Off a PDO

This example procedure turns OFF an output PDO.

1. From the **Sync Manager** pane in TwinCAT, select either **Outputs** or **Inputs**.
2. Examine the **PDO Assignment** pane for Outputs.
3. Clear the checkbox for the item you want to turn OFF.
   This example turns OFF PDO 0×1610 (ISD Device Information Request).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 306. PDO Assignment—All Outputs Selected*

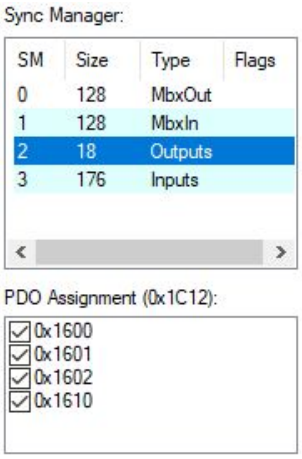
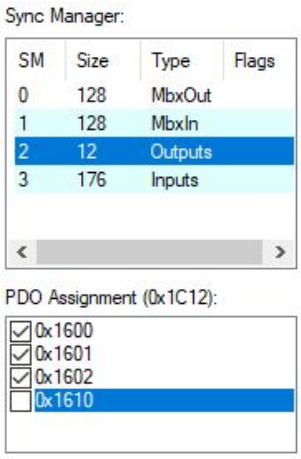



*Figure 307. PDO Assignment—0×1610 Cleared*




4. Repeat this process as needed for all items that need to be turned OFF.

### Turn On a PDO

This example procedure turns on an input PDO.

1. From the **Sync Manager** pane in TwinCAT, select either **Outputs** or **Inputs**.
2. Examine the **PDO Assignment** pane for Inputs.
3. Select the checkbox for the item or items you want to turn ON.
   This example turns ON PDO 0×1A20 and 0×1A21 (ISD Status Chain 1 and ISD Status Chain 2).

*Figure 308. PDO Assignment—All Inputs Cleared*

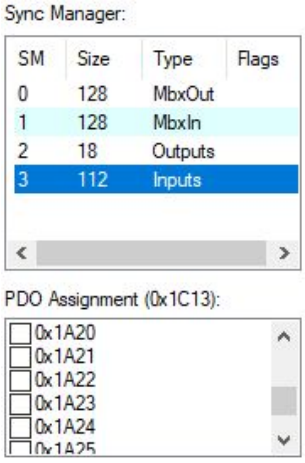
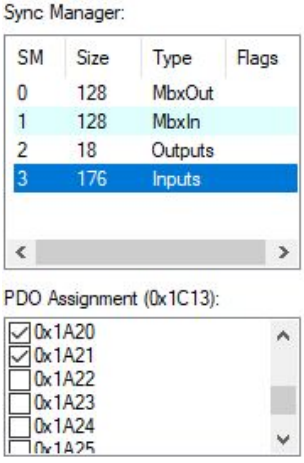



*Figure 309. PDO Assignment—Two Inputs Selected*




# 13.9 ISD: Additional Information

## 13.9.1 ISD: Temperature, Voltage, and Distance Conversion Information

Download an AOI from www.bannerengineering.com to insert into the PLC program to perform the conversions from the obtained values to the real values.

### ISD: Supply Voltage

To obtain the actual voltage reading from the Analog to digital conversion (ADC) value sent to the PLC, multiple the ADC value by 0.1835.

Supply Voltage = ADC Value × 0.1835


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## ISD: Internal Temperature

First, shift the Analog to digital conversion (ADC) value left by 2 bits. Then, convert the binary reading into a number. If the number matches an ADC value in the following table, read the temperature. If the number is between the readings in the table, use the following formula to obtain the actual temperature.

*Table 102. Temperature*

| | ADC Reading | Temperature (°C) |
|---|---|---|
| | 41 | -40 |
| | 54 | -35 |
| | 69 | -30 |
| | 88 | -25 |
| | 110 | -20 |
| | 136 | -15 |
| | 165 | -10 |
| | 199 | -5 |
| | 237 | 0 |
| | 278 | 5 |
| `Internal Temperature = ((A–L) / (H–L)) × 5 + T` | 321 | 10 |
| | 367 | 15 |
| | 414 | 20 |
| **A** | 461 | 25 |
| the ADC Value obtained from the controller | 508 | 30 |
| **L** | 554 | 35 |
| the ADC value on the lookup table less than or equal to A | 598 | 40 |
| **H** | 640 | 45 |
| the ADC value on the lookup table greater than A | 679 | 50 |
| **T** | 715 | 55 |
| the temperature associated with the L value | 748 | 60 |
| | 778 | 65 |
| | 804 | 70 |
| | 829 | 75 |
| | 850 | 80 |
| | 869 | 85 |
| | 886 | 90 |
| | 901 | 95 |
| | 914 | 100 |
| | 926 | 105 |
| | 936 | 110 |

## ISD: Actuator Distance

Convert the binary reading into a number. If the number matches an Analog to digital conversion (ADC) value in the following table, read the distance. If the number is between the readings in the table, use the following formula to obtain the actual distance.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Table 103. Distance*

| | ADC Reading | Distance (mm) |
|---|---|---|
| | <62 | <7 |
| | 62 | 7 |
| `Actuator Distance = ((A-L) / (H-L)) + D` | 65 | 8 |
| | 77 | 9 |
| **A** | 110 | 10 |
| the ADC Value obtained from the controller | 133 | 11 |
| **L** | 148 | 12 |
| the ADC value on the lookup table less than or equal to A | 158 | 13 |
| **H** | 163 | 14 |
| the ADC value on the lookup table greater than A | 169 | 15 |
| **D** | 172 | 16 |
| the distance associated with the L value | 176 | 17 |
| | 180 | 18 |
| | >180 | >18 |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

14.1 Schedule of Required Checkouts ..... 332
14.2 Commissioning Checkout Procedure ..... 333

# Chapter 14 System Checkout

## 14.1 Schedule of Required Checkouts

Verifying the configuration and proper functioning of the Safety Controller includes checking each safety and non-safety input device, along with each output device. As the inputs are individually switched from the Run state to the Stop state, the safety outputs must be validated that they turn On and Off as expected.

Banner Engineering Corp. highly recommends performing the checkouts as described. However, a qualified person (or team) should evaluate these generic recommendations considering their specific application and determine the appropriate frequency of checkouts. This will generally be determined by a risk assessment, such as the one contained in ANSI B11.0. The result of the risk assessment will drive the frequency and content of the periodic checkout procedures and must be followed.

**WARNING:**
- **Do not use the system until the checkouts are verified**
- Attempts to use the guarded/controlled machine before these checks are verified could result in serious injury or death.
- If all these checks cannot be verified, do not attempt to use the safety system that includes the Banner Engineering Corp. device and the guarded/controlled machine until the defect or problem has been corrected.

A comprehensive test must be used to verify the operation of the Safety Controller and the functionality of the intended configuration. "Initial Setup, Commissioning, and Periodic Checkout Procedures" on page 333 is intended to assist in developing a customized (configuration-specific) checklist for each application. This customized checklist must be made available to maintenance personnel for commissioning and periodic checkouts. A similar, simplified daily checkout checklist should be made for the operator (or Designated Person[39]). It is highly recommended to have copies of the wiring and logic diagrams and the configuration summary available to assist in the checkout procedures.

**WARNING:**
- **Perform Periodic Checkouts**
- Failure to perform these checks could create a dangerous situation that could result in serious injury or death.
- The appropriate personnel must perform the commissioning, periodic, and daily safety system checks at the suggested times to ensure that the safety system is operating as intended.

**Commissioning Checkout:** A Qualified Person[39] must perform a safety system commissioning procedure before the safeguarded machine application is placed into service and after each Safety Controller configuration is created or modified.

**Periodic (Semi-Annual) Checkout:** A Qualified Person[39] must also perform a safety system re-commissioning semi-annually (every 6 months) or at periodic intervals based on the appropriate local or national regulations.

**Daily Operational Checks:** A Designated Person[39] must also check the effectiveness of the risk reduction measures, per the device manufacturers' recommendation, each day that the safeguarded machine is in service.

[39] See Glossary for definitions.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**WARNING:**
- **Clear the guarded area before applying power or resetting the system**
- Failure to clear the guarded area before applying power could result in serious injury or death.
- Verify that the guarded area is clear of personnel and any unwanted materials before applying power to the guarded machine or before resetting the system.

# 14.2 Commissioning Checkout Procedure

**Before proceeding, verify that:**

- All solid-state and relay output terminals of the complete Safety Controller system are not connected to the machine. Disconnecting all of the Safety Controller's safety output plug-on terminals is recommended
- Power has been removed from the machine, and no power is available to the machine controls or actuators

Permanent connections are made at a later point.

## 14.2.1 Verifying System Operation

**The commissioning checkout procedure must be performed by a Qualified Person**[40]. **It must be performed only after configuring the Safety Controller and after properly installing and configuring** the safety systems and safeguarding devices connected to its inputs (see "Safety Input Device Options" on page 40 and the appropriate standards).

The commissioning checkout procedure is performed on two occasions:

1. When the Safety Controller is first installed, to ensure proper installation.
2. Whenever any maintenance or modification is performed on the System or on the machine being guarded by the System, to ensure continued proper Safety Controller function (see "Schedule of Required Checkouts" on page 332).

**For the initial part of the commissioning checkout, the Safety Controller and associated safety systems must be checked without power being available to the guarded machine.** Final interface connections to the guarded machine cannot take place until these systems have been checked out.

**Verify that:**
- **The Safety Output leads are isolated**—not shorted together, and not shorted to power or ground
- If used, the external device monitoring (EDM) connections have been connected to +24 V DC via the normally closed (NC) monitoring contacts of the device(s) connected to the safety outputs, as described in "External Device Monitoring (EDM)" on page 76 and the wiring diagrams
- The proper Safety Controller configuration file for your application has been installed into the Safety Controller
- All connections have been made according to the appropriate sections and comply with NEC and local wiring codes

This procedure allows the Safety Controller and the associated safety systems to be checked out, by themselves, before permanent connections are made to the guarded machine.

## 14.2.2 Initial Setup, Commissioning, and Periodic Checkout Procedures

There are two ways to verify that the Safety Outputs are changing state at the appropriate times in the initial configuration check out phase (open the **Configuration Summary** tab in the Software to view the Startup test and Power-up configuration settings):
- Monitor the LEDs associated with the inputs and outputs. If the input LED is green, the input is high (or 24 V). If the input LED is red, the input is low (or 0 V). Similarly, if the RO1 or RO2 output contacts are closed, the corresponding LED is green. If the contacts are open, the LED is red.
- Start the **Live Mode** in the Software (the Safety Controller must be powered up and plugged in to the PC via the SC-USB2 cable).

### Startup Configuration

Outputs associated with Two-Hand Control, Bypass, Press Control, or Enabling Device functions do not turn on at power-up. After power-up, switch these devices to the Stop state and back to the Run state for their associated outputs to turn ON.

For the Press Control Function follow the process discussed in " Press Control" on page 176.

[40] See Glossary for definitions.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**If configured for Normal Power-Up**

If latch function is not used: verify that Safety Outputs turn ON after power-up.

If either input devices or outputs use the latch function: verify that Safety Outputs do not turn ON after the power-up until the specific manual latch reset operations are performed.

**If configured for Automatic Power-Up**

Verify that all Safety Outputs turn ON within approximately 7 seconds (outputs with ON-Delay enabled may take longer to turn ON).

**If configured for Manual Power-Up**

Verify that all Safety Outputs remain OFF after power up.

Wait at least 10 seconds after power-up and perform the Manual Power-Up reset.

Verify that the Safety Outputs turn ON (outputs with ON-Delay enabled may take longer to turn ON).



**CAUTION: Verifying Input and Output Function**
The Qualified Person is responsible to cycle the input devices (Run state and Stop state) to verify that the Safety Outputs turn ON and OFF to perform the intended safeguarding functions under normal operating conditions and foreseeable fault conditions. Carefully evaluate and test each Safety Controller configuration to make sure that the loss of power to any safeguarding input device, the Safety Controller, or the inverted input signal from a safeguarding input device, do not cause an unintended Safety Output ON condition, mute condition, or bypass condition.

**NOTE:** If an Input or Output indicator is flashing red, see "Troubleshooting" on page 364.

## Safety Input Device Operation (E-stop, Rope Pull, Optical Sensor, Safety Mat, Protective Stop, Gate Switch, ISD Device Chain)

1. While the associated Safety Outputs are ON, actuate each safety input device, one at a time (including each device in a ISD chain or cascade series).
2. Verify that each associated Safety Output turns OFF with the proper OFF-Delay, where applicable.
3. With the safety device in the Run state:
   - **If a safety input device is configured with a Latch Reset function:**
     1. Verify that the Safety Output remains OFF.
     2. Perform a latch reset to turn the outputs ON.
     3. Verify that each associated Safety Output turns ON.
   - **If no Latch Reset functions are used:** Verify that the Safety Output turns ON

**IMPORTANT:** Always test the safeguarding devices according to the recommendations of the device manufacturer.

**In the sequence of steps below, if a particular function or device is not part of the application, skip that step and proceed to the next checklist item or to the final commissioning step.**

## Two-Hand Control Function without Muting

1. Make sure the Two-Hand Control actuators are in the Stop state.
2. Make sure that all other inputs associated with Two-Hand Control function are in the Run state and activate the Two-Hand Control actuators to turn the associated Safety Output On.
3. Verify that the associated Safety Output remains Off unless both actuators are activated within 0.5 seconds of each other.
4. Verify that Safety Output turns Off and remains Off when any single hand is removed and replaced (while maintaining the other actuator in the Run state).
5. Verify that switching a safety input (non-Two-Hand Control actuator) to the Stop state causes the associated Safety Output to turn Off or stay Off.
6. If more than one set of Two-Hand Control actuators are used, the additional actuators need to be activated before the Safety Output turns On. Verify that the Safety Output turns Off and remains Off when any single hand is removed and replaced (while maintaining the other actuators in the Run state).


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## Two-Hand Control Function with Muting

1. Follow the verification steps in Two-Hand Control function above.
2. Activate the Two-Hand Control actuators then activate the Mute Sensor Pair 1 (MSP1) sensors.
3. With the MSP1 sensors active, remove your hands from the Two-Hand Control and verify that the Safety Output stays On.
4. Verify that the Safety Output turns Off when either:
    - MSP1 sensors are switched to the stop state
    - Mute time limit expires
5. For multiple Two-Hand Control actuators with at least one set of non-mutable actuators: verify that while in an active mute cycle, removing one or both hands from each non-muted actuators causes the Safety Outputs to turn Off.

## Bidirectional (Two-Way) Muting Function (Also valid for Zone Control Mute Functions)

1. With the muted safeguard in the Run state, activate the Mute Enable input (if used) and then activate each mute sensor, in sequential order, within 3 seconds.
2. Generate a stop command from the muted safeguarding device:
    a. Verify that the associated Safety Outputs remain On.
    b. If a mute time limit has been configured, verify that the associated Safety Outputs turn Off when the mute timer expires.
3. Repeat above steps for each Muting Sensor Pair (MSP).
4. Verify proper operation of each muted safeguarding device.
5. While in the mute cycle, one at a time, generate a stop command from any non-muted safeguarding devices and verify that the associated Safety Outputs turn Off.
6. Verify the mute process in the opposite direction, repeating the process above, activating the mute sensors in the reverse order.

## Unidirectional (One Way) Muting Function

1. With the mute sensors not activated, the muted safeguarding devices in the Run state, and the Safety Outputs On:
    a. Activate Muting Sensor Pair 1 (MSP1).
    b. Change the muted safeguarding device to the Stop state.
    c. Activate Muting Sensor Pair 2 (MSP2).
    d. Deactivate MSP1.
2. Verify the associated Safety Output remains On throughout the process.
3. Repeat the test in the *wrong direction* (MSP2, then the safeguarding device, then MSP1).
4. Verify that when the safeguard changes to the Stop state the output turns Off.

## If a mute time limit has been configured

1. Verify that the associated Safety Outputs turn Off when the mute timer expires.

## Mute Function with Power-Up Operation (not applicable for Two-Hand Control)

1. Turn the Safety Controller power off.
2. Activate the Mute Enable input, if used.
3. Activate an appropriate Muting Sensor Pair for starting a mute cycle.
4. Make sure that all mutable safeguarding devices are in the Run state.
5. Apply power to the Safety Controller.
6. Verify that the Safety Output turns ON and that a mute cycle begins.
7. Repeat this test with the mutable safeguard device in the Stop state.
8. Verify that the Safety Output stays OFF.

## Mute Function with Mute-Dependent Override

1. Make sure mute sensors are not activated and mute safeguarding devices are in the Run state.
2. Verify that the Safety Outputs are On.
3. Switch the safeguarding device to the Stop state.
4. Verify that the Safety Output turns Off.

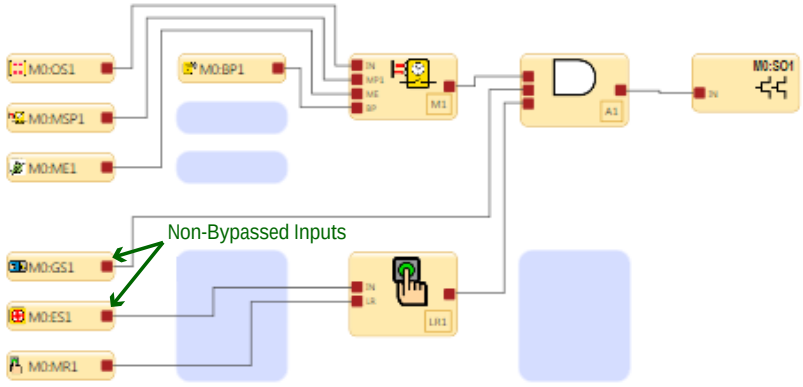

© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.

5. Activate one of the mute sensors.
6. Verify the optional mute lamp is flashing.
7. Start the mute dependent override by activating the Bypass Switch.
8. Verify that the Safety Output turns On.
9. Verify that the Safety Output turns Off under any of the following conditions:
    - Bypass (Override) Time limit expires
    - Mute sensors are deactivated
    - The Bypass device is deactivated

## Mute Function with Bypass

1. Verify that each safety input, that can be both muted and bypassed, is in the Stop state.
2. Verify that when the Bypass Switch is in the Run state:
    a. The associated Safety Outputs turn On.
    b. The associated Safety Outputs turn Off when the bypass timer expires.
3. Change the Bypass Switch to the Run state and verify that the associated Safety Outputs turn On.
4. One at a time, switch the associated non-bypassed input devices to their Stop state and verify that associated Safety Outputs turn Off while the Bypass Switch is in the Run state.

*Figure 310. Mute Function with Bypass*




## Bypass Function

1. Verify that the associated Safety Outputs are OFF when the safety inputs to be bypassed are in the Stop state.
2. Verify that when the Bypass Switch is in the Run state:
    a. The associated Safety Outputs turn ON.
    b. The associated Safety Outputs turn OFF when the bypass timer expires.
3. Change the Bypass Switch to the Run state and verify that the associated Safety Outputs turn ON.
4. One at a time, switch the non-bypassed input devices to the Stop state and verify that the associated Safety Outputs turn OFF while the Bypass Switch is in the Run state.

## Safety Output OFF-Delay Function

1. With any one of the controlling inputs in the Stop state and the delayed Safety Output in an OFF-Delay state, verify that the Safety Output turns OFF after the time delay is over.
2. With any one of the controlling inputs in the Stop state and the OFF-Delay timer is active, switch the input to the Run state and verify that the Safety Output is ON and remains ON.

## Safety Output OFF-Delay Function—Cancel Delay Input

1. With the associated inputs in the Stop state and the delayed Safety Output in an OFF-Delay state, activate the Cancel Delay input and verify that the Safety Output turns OFF immediately.

## Safety Output OFF-Delay Function—Controlling Inputs

1. With any one of the controlling inputs in the Stop state and the delayed Safety Output is in an OFF-Delay state, switch the input to the Run state.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

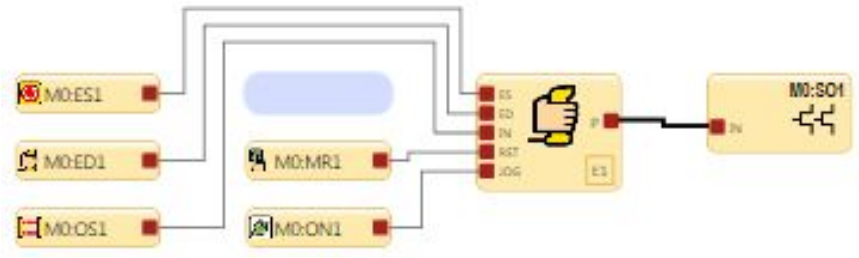
2. Verify that the Safety Output is ON and remains ON.

## Safety Output OFF-Delay Function and Latch Reset

1. Make sure the associated input devices are in the Run state so that the delayed Safety Output is ON.
2. Start the OFF-Delay time by switching an input device to the Stop state.
3. Switch the input device to the Run state again during the OFF-Delay time and push the Reset button.
4. Verify that the delayed output turns OFF at the end of the delay and remains OFF (a latch reset signal during the delay time is ignored).

## Enabling Device Function without Secondary Jog Output

*Figure 311. Device Function without Secondary Jog Output*

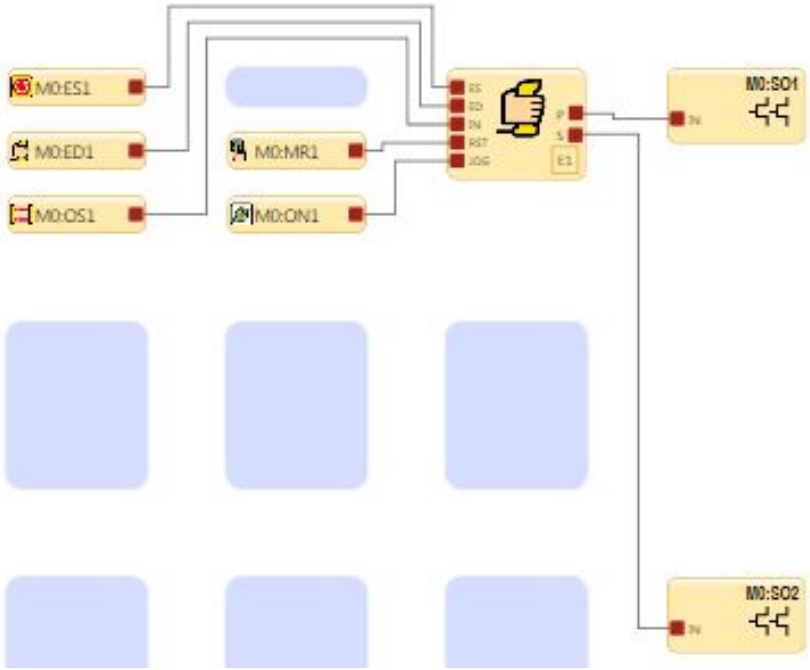



1. With the associated inputs in the Run state and the Enabling Device in the Stop state, verify that the Safety Output is On.
2. With the Enabling Device still in the Run state and the associated Safety Output On, verify that the Safety Output turns Off when the Enabling Device timer expires.
3. Return the Enabling Device to the Stop state and then back to the Run state, and verify that the Safety Outputs turns On.
4. Switch the Enabling Device to the Stop state, and verify that the associated Safety Outputs turn Off.
5. Switch each E-stop and Rope Pull device associated with the Enabling Device function to the Stop state, and verify, one at a time, that the associated Safety Outputs are On and in the Enable mode.
6. With the Enabling Device in the Stop state, perform a reset.
7. Verify that control authority is now based on associated input devices of the Enabling device function:
    a. If one or more input devices are in the Stop state, verify that the output is Off.
    b. If all of the input devices are in the Run state, verify that the output is On.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

## Enabling Device Function—With Jog feature on the Secondary Output

*Figure 312. Device Function—With Jog feature on the Secondary Output*




1. With the Enabling Device and the Jog button in the Run state in control of the primary Safety Output, verify that the output turns Off when either the Enabling Device or the Jog button is switched to the Stop state.
2. With the Enabling Device in control of the primary Safety Output and the Jog button in control of the secondary output verify that the primary Output turns:
    a. ON when the Enabling Device is in the Run state.
    b. OFF when the Enabling Device is in the Stop state and the Jog button is in the Run state.
3. Verify that the output turns On only when the Enabling Device is in the Run state while the Jog button is in the Run state.
4. Verify that the secondary Output turns:
    a. ON when the Enabling Device and the Jog button are in the Run state.
    b. OFF when the either the Enabling Device or the Jog button are in the Stop state.

## Press Control Function Block with Single Actuator Control Configured

1. Make sure the Non-Mutable Safety input, Mutable Safety Stop input (if configured), and the TOS are ON.
2. Perform a reset cycle.
3. Momentarily turn ON the GO input. Verify the down motion starts.
4. Use a test piece to block the Mutable Safety Stop input. Verify the down motion stops.
5. Clear the Mutable Safety Stop input and perform a reset cycle.
6. Momentarily turn ON the GO input. Verify the ram moves up to the TOS position and stops.
7. Momentarily turn ON the GO input. Verify the ram moves down.
8. When the ram reaches the BOS point and starts its upward motion, block the Mutable Safety Stop input with the test piece. Verify that the ram continues to move up to the TOS position.

## Press Control Function Block with the Manual Upstroke Setting Configured

1. Make sure the Non-Mutable Safety input, Mutable Safety input, and TOS are ON.
2. Perform a reset cycle, turn on PIP (if used), and then engage the GO input. Verify the Down output turns ON.
3. Disengage the GO input. Verify the Down output turns OFF.
4. Engage the GO input. The Down output should turn back ON.
5. Use a test piece to block the Mutable Safety Stop input. Verify the down motion stops.
6. Clear the Mutable Safety Stop input and perform a reset cycle.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

7. Engage the GO input. Verify the ram moves up to the TOS position and stops.
8. Engage the GO input. After the RAM reaches the BOS point, verify the Down output turns OFF and the Up output turns ON.
9. With the test piece, block the Mutable Safety Stop input. Verify the up motion stops.
10. Release the GO input.
11. Clear the Mutable Safety Stop input.
12. Perform a reset cycle.
13. Engage the GO input to drive the ram back to the TOS position.

## Press Control Mode Function Block Checks

If the Dual Pressure setting is selected, verify all outputs are working correctly. The high-pressure output should only turn on in Run mode.

1. Make sure the Non-Mutable Safety input, Mutable Safety input, and TOS are ON (but all Mode inputs are OFF).
2. Perform a reset cycle, turn on PIP (if used), and then engage the GO input. Verify no output turns ON.
3. Turn off the GO input.
4. Select the RUN state, perform a reset cycle, then engage the GO input. The Down output should turn ON. (Run a complete cycle then stop, including cycling the PIP input.)
5. Turn off the Run input and turn on the Inch Down input.
6. Perform a reset cycle and then engage the GO input. Verify the Down output cycles on and off (and verify the ram speed is within inch specifications).
7. At the BOS point of the process, turn off the Inch Down input and turn on the Inch Up input.
8. Perform a reset cycle and then engage the GO input. Verify the Up output cycles on and off (and verify the ram speed is within inch specifications).

## Press Control SQS (or SQS & PCMS) Checks

If the Dual Pressure setting is selected, verify the high-pressure output only turns ON when the ram is moving down from SQS to BOS.

See "Press Control Inputs Function Block" on page 178 for specific GO, SQS and Ft Switch configurations and behaviors.

1. Make sure the Non-Mutable Safety input, Mutable Safety input, and TOS are ON.
2. Perform a reset cycle, turn on PIP (if used), and then engage the GO input. Verify the Down output turns ON.
3. Verify that the ram stops at the SQS sensor(s) (or SQS & PCMS sensors).
4. Release (turn off) the GO input. Verify that the gap of the tools is less than 6 mm (finger-safe). Verify that the Mutable Safety Stop input is now muted.
5. Engage the Ft Switch input. Verify that the ram moves from the SQS point to the BOS point and stops.
6. Release the Ft Switch input.
7. Engage the GO input. Verify the RAM returns to the TOS point and stops.
8. Release the GO input.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

15.1 XS/SC26 LED Status ..... 340
15.2 Input Module Status Indicators ..... 342
15.3 Output Module (Solid-State or Relay) Status Indicators ..... 342
15.4 EtherCAT® Communication Gateway Module Status Indicators ..... 343
15.5 SC10-2 LED Status ..... 343
15.6 Live Mode Information: Software ..... 345
15.7 Live Mode Information: Onboard Interface ..... 345
15.8 Lockout Conditions ..... 345
15.9 Recovering from a Lockout ..... 346
15.10 AutoDetect ISD Option ..... 346
15.11 SC10-2 Using Automatic Terminal Optimization ..... 348
15.12 SC10-2 Example Configuration without Automatic Terminal Optimization ..... 350
15.13 XS/SC26 Models without an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3 ..... 354
15.14 XS/SC26 Models with an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3 ..... 356
15.15 SC10-2: Using the SC-XM3 ..... 361
15.16 Reset the Safety Controller to Factory Defaults ..... 362
15.17 Factory Defaults ..... 363

# Chapter 15 Status and Operating Information

Operate the XS/SC26 Safety Controller using either the onboard interface or Software to monitor ongoing status.

Operate the SC10-2 Safety Controller using the Software to monitor ongoing status.

## 15.1 XS/SC26 LED Status

| LED | Status | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **All** | OFF | Initialization Mode |
| | **Sequence:**<br>Green ON for 0.5 s<br>Red ON for 0.5 s<br>OFF for 0.5 s minimum | Power applied |
| **Power/Fault** | OFF | Power OFF |
| | Green: Solid | Run mode |
| | Green: Flashing | Configuration Mode<br>OR<br>Manual Power-Up mode |
| | Red: Flashing | Non-operating Lockout condition |
| **USB (FID 2 or earlier Base Controller)** | OFF | No link to the PC established |
| | Green: Solid | Link to the PC established |
| | Green: Flashing for 5 s, then OFF | SC-XM2/3 configuration match |
| | Red: Flashing for 5 s, then OFF | SC-XM2/3 configuration mismatch |
| **USB (FID 3 or later Base Controller)** | OFF | No link established and configured Safety Controller |
| | Green: Solid | USB cable connected to a configured Safety Controller |
| | Green: Flashing | No link established and factory default Safety Controller<br>OR<br>USB cable connected and factory default Safety Controller |
| | Green: Flashing fast (FID 7 or later Base Controller only) | Unit connected to the Software via an Ethernet connection |
| | Green: Flashing for 4 s, then Green ON | Configured SC-XM2/3 (locked or unlocked) that contains information that was created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.2 or later, or that was created from an FID 3 or later Safety Controller, is plugged into a factory default Safety Controller |

Continued on page 341


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 340

| LED | Status | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Green: Flashing for 5 s, then OFF | Configured and unlocked SC-XM2/3 that contains information that was created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.2 or later, or that was created from an FID 3 or later Safety Controller, is plugged into a configured Safety Controller with a matching configuration, matching PINs/passwords, and matching or mismatched network settings<br><br>OR<br><br>SC-XM2/3 that contains information that was created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.1 or earlier, or that was created from an FID 2 or earlier Safety Controller, is inserted into FID 3 or later controller (configured or factory default) and has a matching configuration |
| | Green: Flashing for 5 s, then Red flashing | Configured and locked SC-XM2/3 that contains information that was created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.2 or later, or that was created from an FID 3 or later Safety Controller, is plugged into a configured Safety Controller with a matching configuration and matching PINs/passwords but mismatched network settings |
| | Red: Flashing | Configured SC-XM2/3 (locked or unlocked) that contains information that was created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.2 or later, or that was created from an FID 3 or later Safety Controller, is plugged into a configured Safety Controller with a mismatched configuration, a mismatched PIN/password, or a blank SC-XM2/3 plugged in<br><br>OR<br><br>Blank SC-XM2/3 plugged into a factory default Safety Controller or a configured Safety Controller |
| | Red: Flashing for 5 s, then OFF | SC-XM2/3 that contains information that was created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.1 or earlier, or that was created from an FID 2 or earlier Safety Controller, is inserted into FID 3 or later controller (configured or factory default) and has a mismatched configuration |
| **Inputs** | Green: Solid | No input faults |
| | Red: Flashing | One or more inputs is in the Lockout condition |
| **SO1, SO2** | OFF | Output not configured |
| | Green: Solid | Safety Output ON |
| | Red: Solid | Safety Output OFF |
| | Red: Flashing | Safety Output fault detected or EDM fault detected or AVM fault detected |

| LED Status for Split Outputs | Meaning |
|---|---|
| Green: Solid | Both outputs are ON |
| Red: Solid | SOxa and/or SOxb is OFF |
| Red: Flashing | SOxa and/or SOxb fault detected |

| Ethernet Diagnostic LEDs | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Amber LED** | **Green LED** | **Description** |
| ON | Varies with traffic | Link established/normal operation |
| OFF | OFF | Hardware failure |

| Amber LED and Green LED Flash in Unison | Description |
|---|---|
| 5 flashes followed by several rapid flashes | Normal power up |
| 1 flash every 3 seconds | Contact Banner Engineering Corp. |
| 2 flash repeating sequence | In the past 60 seconds, a cable was unplugged while active |
| 3 flash repeating sequence | A cable is unplugged |
| 4 flash repeating sequence | Network not enabled in the configuration |
| 5+ flash repeating sequence | Contact Banner Engineering Corp. |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

| Flash Command | Meaning |
|---|---|
| The Base Controller LEDs flash for 4 seconds<br> | The flashing LEDs indicate that the Base Controller is connected. It is the result of the "Flash LED" command from the PROFINET network.<br>The LEDs flash when  is clicked in the **Available Controllers** window of the Software. |

## 15.2 Input Module Status Indicators

The following information is for models XS8si and XS16si.

| LED | Status | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| All | Sequence:<br>Green ON for 0.5 s<br>Red ON for 0.5 s<br>OFF for 0.5 s minimum | Power Applied |
| | OFF | Initialization Mode |
| Power Indicator | Green: ON | Power ON |
| | OFF | Power OFF |
| | Red: Flashing | Non-Operating Lockout Condition |
| Transmit / Receive Indicator | Green: ON | Transmitting or receiving data |
| | Red: ON | No communication |
| | Red: Flashing | Communication fault detected<br>OR<br>Safety Bus communication issue |
| Input Indicator | Green: ON | No input faults |
| | Red: Flashing | Input fault detected |

## 15.3 Output Module (Solid-State or Relay) Status Indicators

The following information is for models XS2so, XS4so, XS1ro, and XS2ro.

| LED | Status | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| All | Sequence:<br>Green ON for 0.5 s<br>Red ON for 0.5 s<br>OFF for 0.5 s minimum | Power Applied |
| | OFF | Initialization Mode |
| Power Indicator | OFF | Power OFF |
| | Green: ON | Power ON |
| | Red: Flashing | Non-Operating Lockout Condition |
| Transmit / Receive Indicator | Green: ON | Transmitting or receiving data |
| | Red: ON | No communication |
| | Red: Flashing | Communication fault detected<br>OR<br>Safety Bus communication issue |
| Safety Output Indicators | OFF | Output not configured |

Continued on page 343


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 342

| LED | Status | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| | Green: ON | Two single-channel Safety Outputs (both ON)<br>OR<br>Dual-channel or One single-channel Safety Output ON |
| | Red: ON | Two single-channel Safety Outputs (1 ON and 1 OFF) |
| | Red: ON | Two single-channel Safety Outputs (both OFF)<br>OR<br>Dual-channel or One single-channel Safety Output OFF (other channel not used) |
| | Red: Flashing | Safety Output fault detected |

## 15.4 EtherCAT® Communication Gateway Module Status Indicators

The following information is for model XSeCAT.

| LED | Status | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **Power/Fault** (System LED)<br>**Tx/Rx** (System LED) | OFF | Initialization Mode |
| | **Sequence:**<br>Green ON for 0.5 s<br>Red ON for 0.5 s<br>OFF for 0.5 s minimum | Power applied |
| **Power/Fault** (System LED) | OFF | Power OFF |
| | Green: ON | Power ON |
| | Green: Flashing | New configuration downloading (and a previous configuration contained EtherCAT) |
| | Red: Flashing | Non-operating Lockout Condition |
| **Tx/Rx** (System LED) | Green: ON | Transmitting or receiving data |
| | Red: ON | No communications |
| **RUN** (EtherCAT LED) | OFF | The device is in the state INIT |
| | Green: Flashing 200 ms ON/200 ms OFF | The device is in the state Pre-Operational |
| | Green: Single flash | The device is in the state Safe-Operational |
| | Green: ON | The device is in the state Operational |
| **ERROR** (EtherCAT LED) | OFF | No errors |
| | Red: Double flash | Process Data Watchdog Timeout/EtherCAT Watchdog Timeout—most likely a cable was unplugged while the system was running |
| | Red: Single flashing | Local Error—most likely a new configuration is loading into the Base Controller |
| | Red: Flashing 200 ms ON/200 ms OFF | Invalid configuration |
| **L/A IN** (EtherCAT LED) | OFF | No EtherCAT connection detected |
| | Green: ON | Cable connection detected, but no communication detected |
| | Green: Flashing 50 ms ON/50 ms OFF | Cable connection detected and communication detected |
| **L/A OUT** (EtherCAT LED) | OFF | No EtherCAT connection detected |
| | Green: ON | Cable connection detected, but no communication detected |
| | Green: Flashing 50 ms ON/50 ms OFF | Cable connection detected and communication detected |

## 15.5 SC10-2 LED Status

Use the following table to determine the status of the Safety Controller.

The LEDs are always on unless the Safety Controller is off.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

| LED | Status | Meaning |
|---|---|---|
| **All** | OFF | Initialization Mode |
| | **Sequence:**<br>Green ON for 0.5 s<br>Red ON for 0.5 s<br>OFF for 0.5 s minimum | Power applied |
| **Power/Fault** (1) | Green: Solid | 24 V DC connected |
| | Green: Flashing | Configuration or Manual Power-Up mode<br>Configuration via SC-XM3: Cycle Power |
| | Red: Flashing | Non-operating Lockout condition |
| **USB** (1) | Green: Solid | USB cable connected or SC-XM3 plugged in |
| | Green: Flashing | Factory default Safety Controller; no USB cable connected or SC-XM3 plugged in |
| | Green: Fast flashing for 3 s, then solid | Configured (locked or unlocked) SC-XM3 plugged into a factory default Safety Controller; the configuration, network settings, and PINs transfer from the SC-XM3 to the Safety Controller |
| | Green: Flashing for 3 s, then solid | Configured and unlocked SC-XM3 plugged into a configured Safety Controller with a matching configuration and matching PINs<br>**NOTE:** If there are mismatched network settings, the network settings transfer from the Safety Controller to an unlocked SC-XM3. Network settings do not transfer to a locked SC-XM3. |
| | Green: Flashing for 3 s, then Red flashing | Configured and locked SC-XM3 plugged into a configured Safety Controller with a matching configuration and matching PINs, but mismatched network settings |
| | Red: Solid | Configured Safety Controller; no USB cable connected or SC-XM3 plugged in |
| | Red: Flashing | Configured (locked or unlocked) SC-XM3 plugged into a configured Safety Controller with a mismatched configuration, a mismatched PIN, or a blank SC-XM3 plugged into any Safety Controller |
| **Inputs** (10) | Green: Solid | Configured as an input circuit: 24 V DC and no fault |
| | Green: Solid | Configured as a status output: Active |
| | Red: Solid | Configured as an input circuit: 0 V DC and no fault |
| | Red: Solid | Configured as a status output: Inactive |
| | Red: Flashing | All terminals of a faulted input (includes shared terminals) |
| **RO1, RO2** (2) | Green: Solid | ON (contacts closed) |
| | Red: Solid | OFF (contacts open) or not configured |
| | Red: Flashing | Safety Output fault detected or EDM fault detected or AVM fault detected |

| Ethernet Diagnostic LEDs | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Amber LED** | **Green LED** | **Description** |
| ON | Varies with traffic | Link established/normal operation |
| OFF | OFF | Hardware failure |

| Amber LED and Green LED Flash in Unison | Description |
|---|---|
| 5 flashes followed by several rapid flashes | Normal power up |
| 1 flash every 3 seconds | Contact Banner Engineering Corp. |
| 2 flash repeating sequence | In the past 60 seconds, a cable was unplugged while active |
| 3 flash repeating sequence | A cable is unplugged |
| 4 flash repeating sequence | Network not enabled in the configuration |
| 5+ flash repeating sequence | Contact Banner Engineering Corp. |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

| Flash Command | Meaning |
|---|---|
| All LEDs flash for 4 seconds   | The flashing LEDs indicate that the SC10-2 is connected. It is the result of the "Flash LED" command from the PROFINET network. |

## 15.6 Live Mode Information: Software

To display real-time Run mode information on a PC, the Safety Controller must be connected to the computer via the SC-USB2 cable or via an Ethernet cable (XS/SC26 FID 7or later Ethernet models). Click **Live Mode** to access the **Live Mode** tab. This feature continually updates and displays data, including Run, Stop, and Fault states of all inputs and outputs, as well as the Fault Codes table. The **Equipment** tab and the **Functional View** tab also provide device-specific visual representation of the data. See " Live Mode" on page 147 for more information.

The **Live Mode** tab provides the same information that can be viewed on the Safety Controller display (models with display).

## 15.7 Live Mode Information: Onboard Interface

To display real-time Run mode information on the Safety Controller display (models with display), select **System Status**[41] from the **System Menu** (see "XS/SC26 Onboard Interface" on page 188 for navigation map). **System Status** shows input device and Safety Output states; **Fault Diagnostics** shows current Fault information (a brief description, remedial step(s), and the Fault Code) and provides access to the **Fault Log**. For more information, see "XS/SC26 Onboard Interface" on page 188.

The Safety Controller display provides the same information that can be viewed via the **Live Mode** function in the Software.

## 15.8 Lockout Conditions

Input lockout conditions are generally resolved by repairing the fault and cycling the input Off and then back On.

Output lockout conditions (including EDM and AVM faults) are resolved by repairing the fault and then cycling the Reset Input connected to the FR node on the Safety Output.

System faults, such as low supply voltage, overtemperature, voltage detected on unassigned inputs, or Press Control faults may be cleared by cycling the System Reset input (any Reset Input assigned to be the System Reset). Only one reset button, either physical or virtual, can be configured to perform this operation.

A system reset is used to clear lockout conditions not related to safety inputs or outputs. A lockout condition is a response where the Safety Controller turns Off all affected Safety Outputs when a safety-critical fault is detected. Recovery from this condition requires all faults to be remedied and a system reset to be performed. A lockout will recur after a system reset unless the fault that caused the lockout has been corrected.

A system reset is necessary under the following conditions:

- Recovering from a system lockout condition
- Starting the Safety Controller after a new configuration has been downloaded
- Recovering from a Press Control fault

For internal faults, the System Reset likely will not work. The power will have to be cycled in an attempt to run again.

[41] **System Status** is the first screen that displays when the Safety Controller turns On after a reset. Click **ESC** to view the **System Menu**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**WARNING:**
- **Non-monitored resets**
- Failure to follow these instructions could result in serious injury or death.
- If a non-monitored reset (either latch or system reset) is configured and if all other conditions for a reset are in place, a short from the reset terminal to +24 V will turn on the safety output(s) immediately.

**WARNING:**
- **Clear the guarded area before applying power or resetting the system**
- Failure to clear the guarded area before applying power could result in serious injury or death.
- Verify that the guarded area is clear of personnel and any unwanted materials before applying power to the guarded machine or before resetting the system.

## 15.9 Recovering from a Lockout

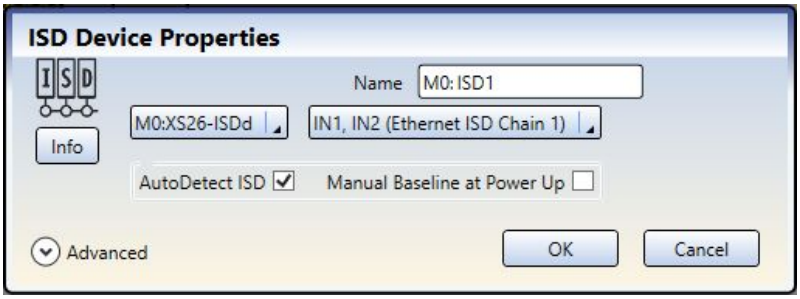
To recover from a lockout condition:
- Follow the recommendation in the fault display (models with display)
- Follow the recommended steps and checks listed in the "XS/SC26 Fault Code Table" on page 370 or "SC10-2 Fault Code Table " on page 375
- Perform a system reset
- Cycle the power and perform a system reset, if needed

If these steps do not remedy the lockout condition, contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381).

## 15.10 AutoDetect ISD Option

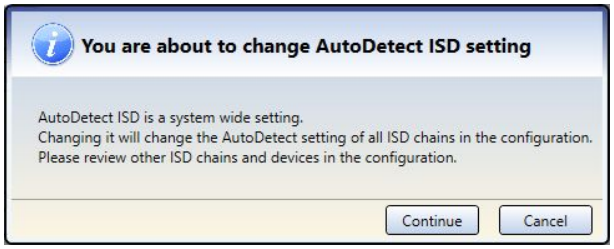
The **AutoDetect ISD** feature is available on XS26-ISD FID 5 or later.

*Figure 313. **ISD Device Properties—AutoDetect ISD Selected***




The **AutoDetect ISD** selection is a universal selection. It changes all ISD channels to Automatic Configuration, not just the one currently selected in the **ISD Device Properties** box. It also deletes any entries that have already been created in other ISD chains. Clearing the **AutoDetect ISD** checkbox does **not** return these entries (the undo button can return previous entries). When changing to **AutoDetect ISD** the following notice displays, allowing you to cancel the change:

*Figure 314. AutoDetect Change Confirmation*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

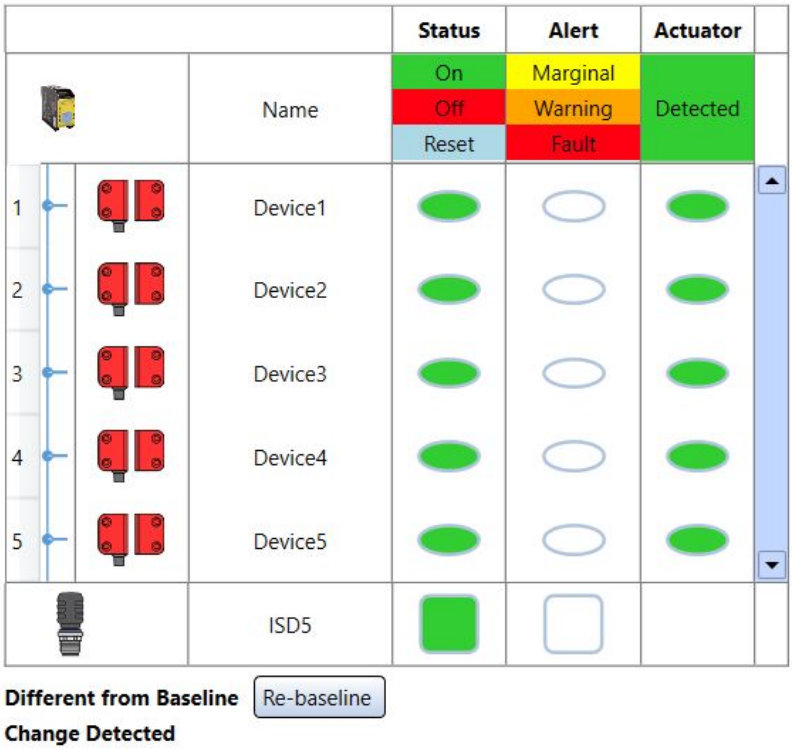
Selecting the **AutoDetect ISD** checkbox allows the safety controller to monitor more than the length and composition of ISD chains. When **AutoDetect ISD** is selected, the controller updates the configuration to match the new chain configurations (chain changes). The controller provides this composition to a PLC so that it can be verified as a valid configuration. The changes also display in the **Live Mode** view of the Banner Safety Controller software for manual verification.

> **NOTE:** The controller's safety response is based on the state of the OSSDs of the ISD inputs, not the ISD information carried on the OSSDs. The ISD information is non-safety chain and/or device status information.

When **AutoDetect ISD** is selected, the controller queries each of the configured ISD input chains to determine their device count, position, and type. The controller provides this information to the attached Banner Safety Controller software and/or PLC to verify it is correct for the given system.

- At power up the controller queries the configured ISD chains to determine their device count, device position, and type, and sets this as the baseline configuration of the chain. It passes this information to the controller software and/or an attached PLC to verify the information is correct. The controller does not notify the user of any changes that might have been made when the power was off.
- When **AutoDetect ISD** is selected, the **Manual Baseline Power Up** checkbox is available. If this box is selected, the controller will set the "Re-baseline" bit to the software and/or connected PLC. The "Accept this Baseline" bit must be returned to the controller to set the baseline. If the box is clear, the controller automatically accepts the existing configuration of all connected ISD chains. The **Manual Baseline Power Up** feature is a universal selection; selecting it for one chain applies it to all chains. Remember that the controller's safety response is based on the state of the OSSDs of the ISD inputs, not the ISD information.
- During operation, the controller notifies the user that a change has been detected in a specific ISD chain. If connected to the controller and in Live Mode, the following displays:

*Figure 315. **Re-baseline** Button Available*




When chain changes are detected, the view of the chain automatically updates to the new configuration. Below the changed chain, you might first see a notification that the ISD data is delayed. After the data is updated, the Chain Changed notice displays for 15 seconds. If the chain is different from what it was when it power up (baseline), the notice that the configuration is different from the baseline displays. If the change is acceptable it can be set as the new baseline by clicking **Re-baseline**. The controller also notifies the attached PLC that a chain has changed. The Chain Change Detected bit of the cyclic data for the affected chain is set to 1. It is cleared by acknowledging the change.

Because the controller does not know if the ISD chain connected to any input pair is correct, it is the responsibility of the user to make sure that the detected chain of ISD devices is correct. This can be done by:

- Physically checking the number of devices against the documentation


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- Checking the Live Mode ISD display against the documentation
- Reading the data into the PLC and comparing it to the loaded information for the specific machine structure

It can take the controller a few seconds to detect a change in the number of ISD devices in a chain. The controller detects the removal of the terminating plug and/or loss of the ISD information (for example, when the chain is severed between units). This information is part of the cyclic data that is passed between the controller and the PLC.

> **NOTE:** The ISD chain's OSSDs quickly turn off in either of these situations (within the response time of the ISD chain).

In most situations, the controller cannot detect a change in chain length until the chain has been completed (for example, the terminating plug removed, devices added, then the terminating plug re-installed). The OSSD outputs can be returned to the ON state after the terminating plug has been re-installed. The ISD information takes a few seconds to start transmitting again because the starting device may have changed.

The simplest way to ensure that the machine cannot start after a chain configuration change is to map the chain to a manual reset block (or to an output with an LR (latch reset) node selected) in the configuration. This requires operator action to re-arm the safety system every time the chain's OSSD outputs turn OFF then back ON. Then the operator has to re-start the machine. However, this process does not require the operator (or anything else) to verify that the new ISD chain structure is correct.

If a user desires to keep the machine in an OFF state until the operator has verified that the chain's length is correct for the current machine structure, configure the PLC to require a specific operator action every time the Terminating Plug Missing flag is turned ON for a chain. This operator action is either manually verifying the configuration is correct or selecting a function on the PLC for it to verify the configuration is correct.

> **NOTE:** It is the responsibility of the machine builder (user) to ensure the wiring/cabling is not easily manipulated by an operator to defeat the safety function(s); for example, cannot remove a switch from the system.

For a system where the ISD chains should not change, that is, the ISD chains are taught at machine installation, the machine builder (user) must ensure the wiring/cabling is not easily manipulated by an operator to defeat the safety function(s) of ISD devices.

For a system where the ISD chains can change during operation (for example, adding and removing carts from a trolley system), the machine builder (user) must ensure that the only changes that can be made to the wiring/cabling are those involved in the addition or removal of the appropriate machine sections. Perform a system verification after each machine change either automatically via a PLC or manually by an operator.

> **NOTE:** If a controller is set for Automatic Configuration and the configuration is read into the software, clearing the **AutoDetect ISD** checkbox deletes all of the received ISD inputs. To create a permanent configuration from one that is set to Auto Configuration, read the configuration from the controller, and then print it out. A new configuration can then be created from the printout (the ISD chains can be recreated after the **AutoDetect ISD** checkbox is cleared).

> **NOTE:** When **AutoDetect ISD** is selected, device #1 is closest to the controller. The device numbers increase the further they are away from the controller, toward the terminating plug. When the ISD devices are manually entered, device #1 is closest to the terminating plug. The device numbers increase the closer they are to the controller.

## 15.11 SC10-2 Using Automatic Terminal Optimization

Follow these steps for an example configuration that uses the Automatic Terminal Optimization (ATO) feature.

> **NOTE:** This procedure is an example only.

1. Click **New Project** to start a new project.
2. Select SC10-2 **Series**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.

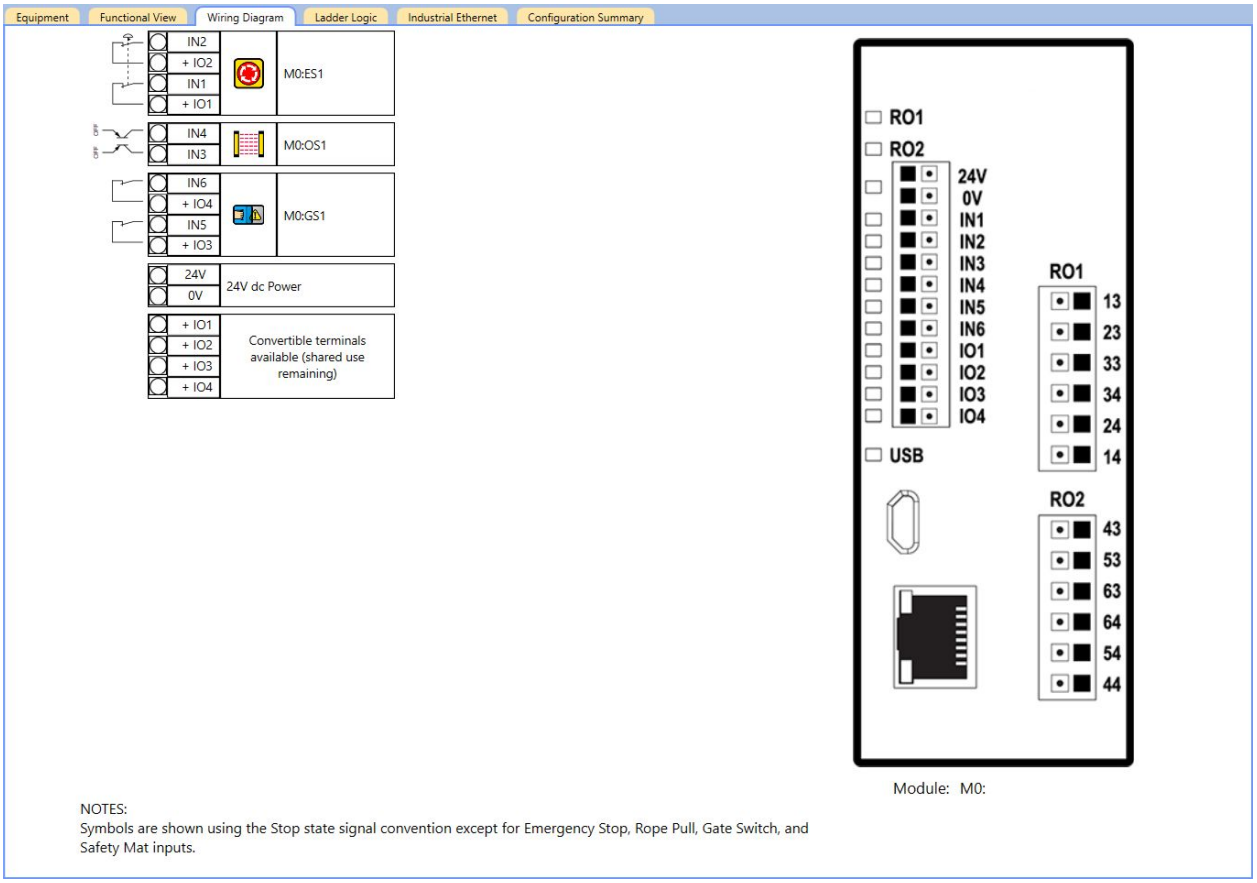
3. Define the project settings and click **OK**.

> **NOTE:** Make sure that **Disable Automatic Terminal Optimization Feature** checkbox is clear.

The project is created.

4. On the **Equipment** tab, click ✚ below the Safety Controller.
   The **Add Equipment** window opens.
5. Add an Emergency Stop button, and click **OK** to accept the default settings.
6. Click ✚.
7. Add an Optical Sensor, and click **OK** to accept the default settings.
8. Click ✚.
9. Add a Gate Switch, and click **OK** to accept the default settings.
10. Go to the **Wiring Diagram** tab, and notice the terminals that are used.

*Figure 316. **Wiring Diagram** tab with an E-stop button, optical sensor, and gate switch*

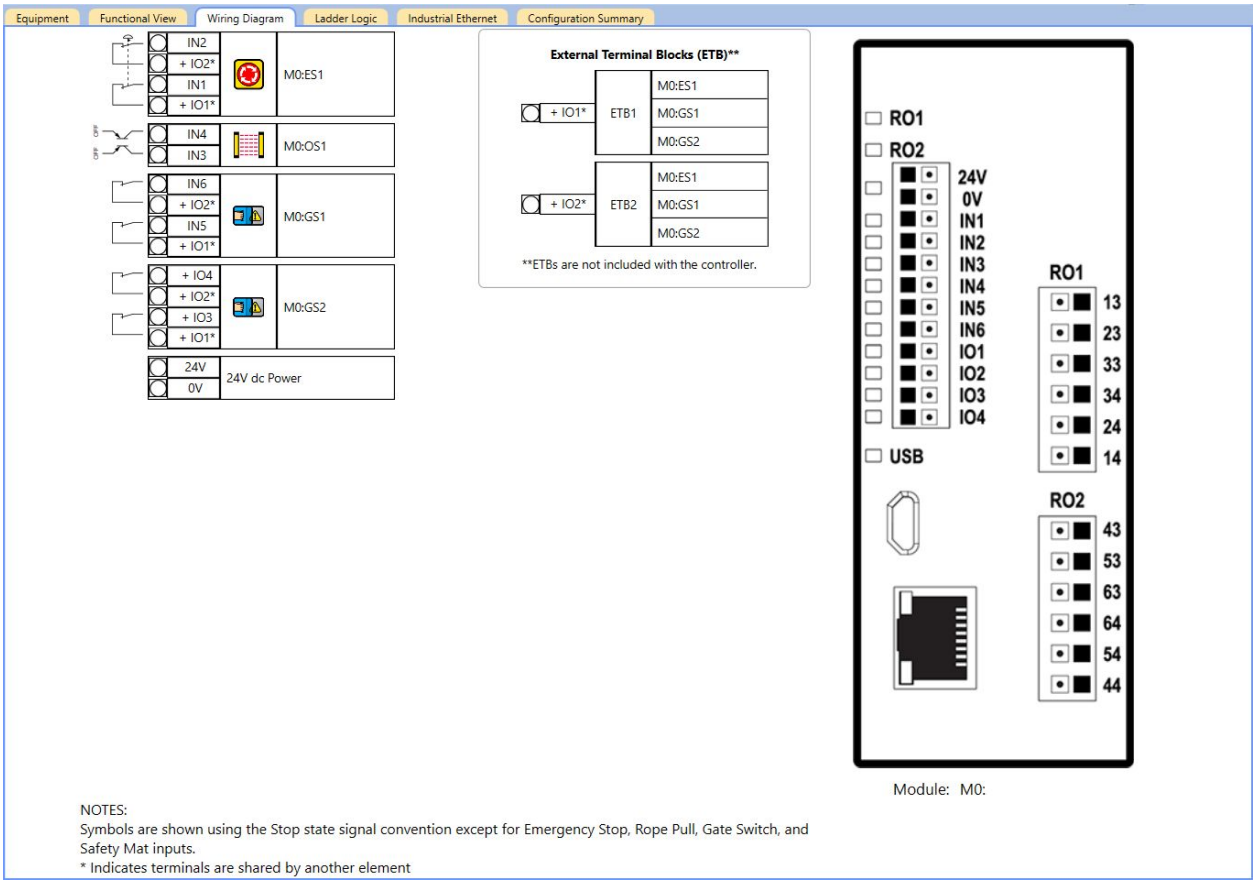



11. Go to the **Equipment** tab and click ✚.
12. Add a second Gate Switch, and click **OK** to accept the default settings.
13. Go to the **Wiring Diagram** tab, and notice that external terminal blocks (ETB) have been added to accommodate the second Gate Switch.

> **NOTE:** External terminal blocks are user-provided.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 317. **Wiring Diagram** Tab with Three E-stop Buttons and ETBs*




## 15.12 SC10-2 Example Configuration without Automatic Terminal Optimization

Follow these steps for an example configuration where the Automatic Terminal Optimization (ATO) feature is disabled.

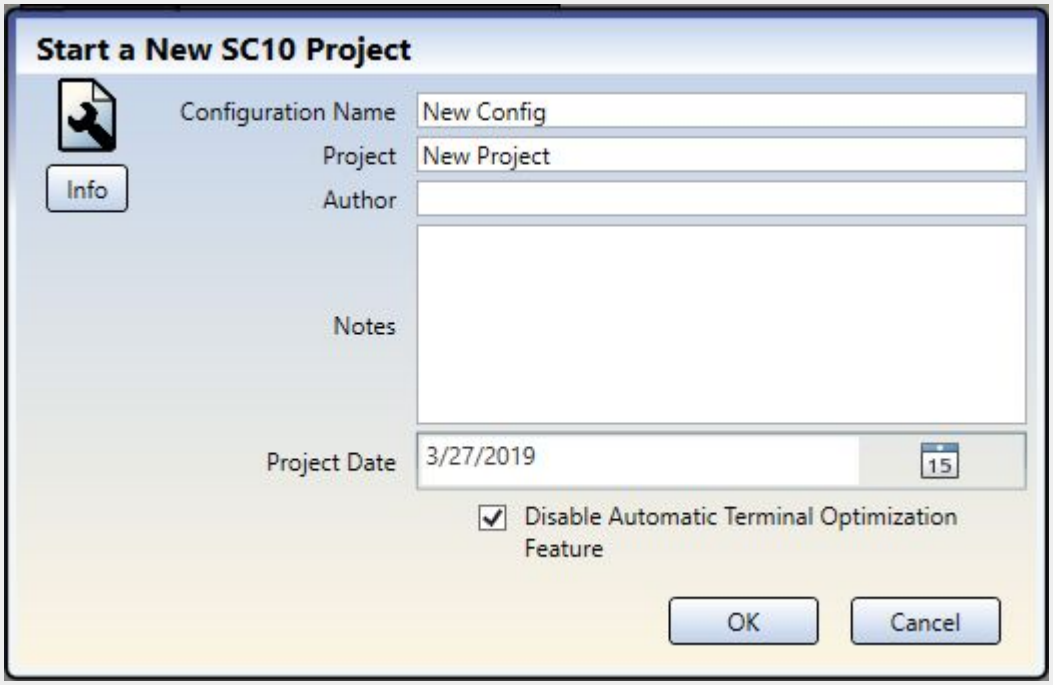
**NOTE:** This procedure is an example only.

1. Click **New Project** to start a new project.
2. Select SC10-2 **Series**.
3. Define the project settings, select the **Disable Automatic Terminal Optimization Feature** checkbox, and click **OK**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

**NOTE:** Make sure that **Disable Automatic Terminal Optimization Feature** checkbox is selected.

*Figure 318. **Disable Automatic Terminal Optimization Feature** Selected*

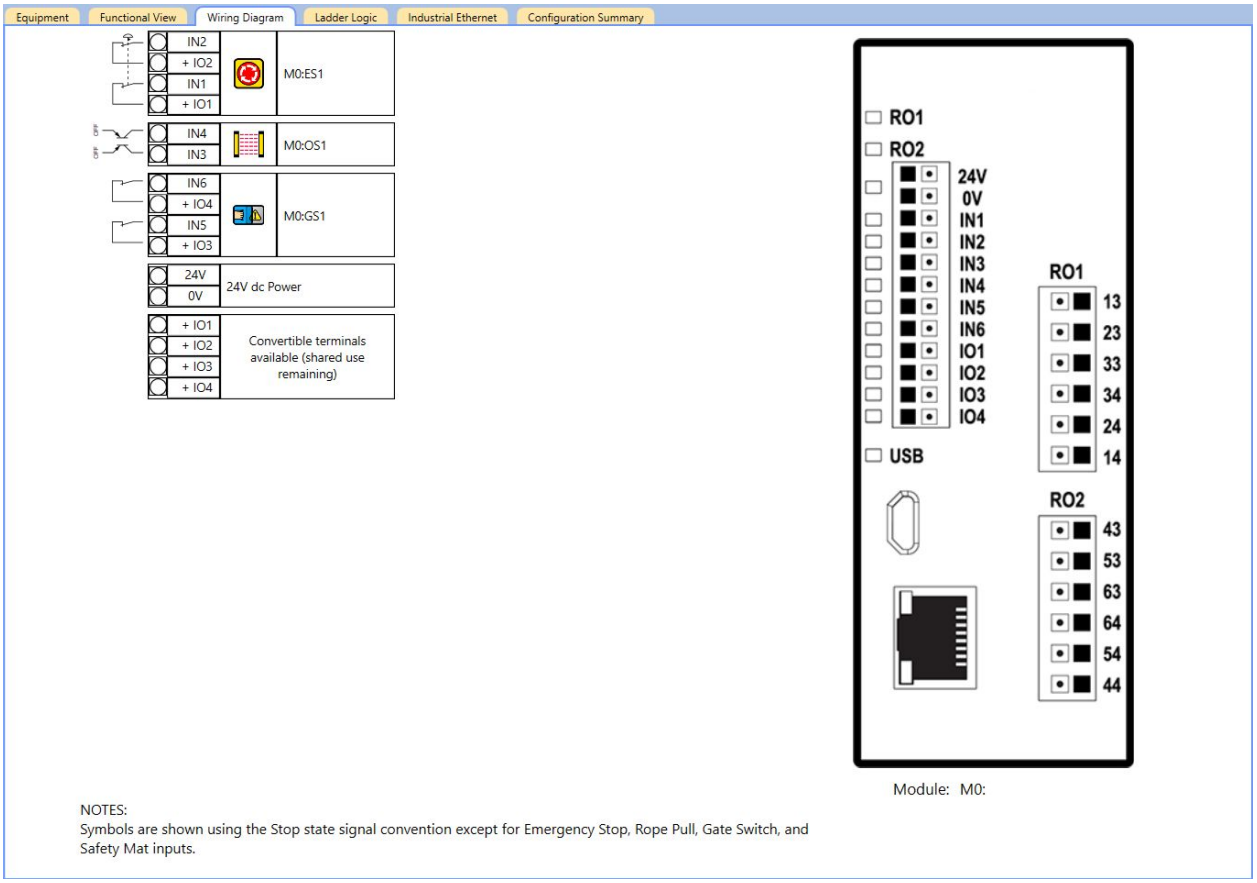



The project is created.

4. On the **Equipment** tab, click ✣ below the Safety Controller.
   The **Add Equipment** window opens.
5. Add an Emergency Stop button, and click **OK** to accept the default settings.
6. Click ✣.
7. Add an Optical Sensor, and click **OK** to accept the default settings.
8. Click ✣.
9. Add a Gate Switch, and click **OK** to accept the default settings.
10. Go to the **Wiring Diagram** tab, and notice the terminals that are used.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 319. **Wiring Diagram** tab with an E-stop button, optical sensor, and gate switch*




11. Go to the **Equipment** tab and and try to add another Gate Switch.

    No other equipment can be added ( does not appear) because the ATO feature is disabled and there are not enough terminals to support more equipment.

12. Go to the **Functional View** tab and try to add another Gate Switch.

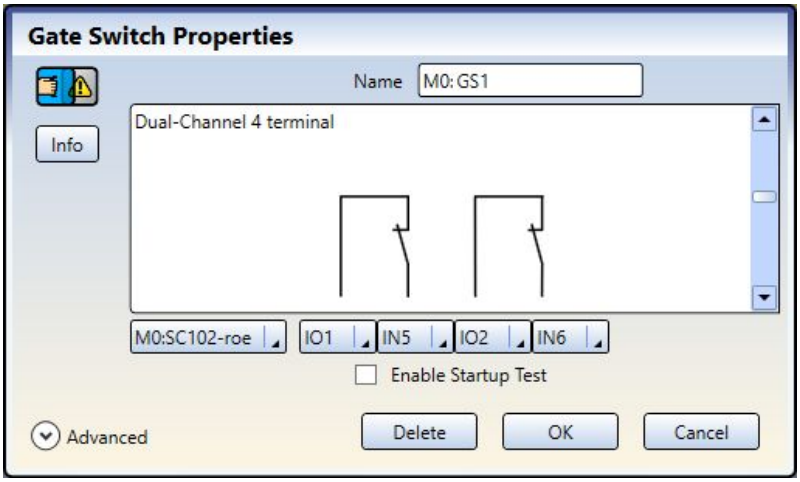
    No other equipment can be added here either because the ATO feature is disabled.

13. Click **Cancel**.

14. On the **Functional View** tab, click on the Gate Switch and then click **Edit** to change the properties.

    a. Change the IO3 and IO4 terminals to IO1 and IO2 respectively.

    *Figure 320. Gate Switch Properties*



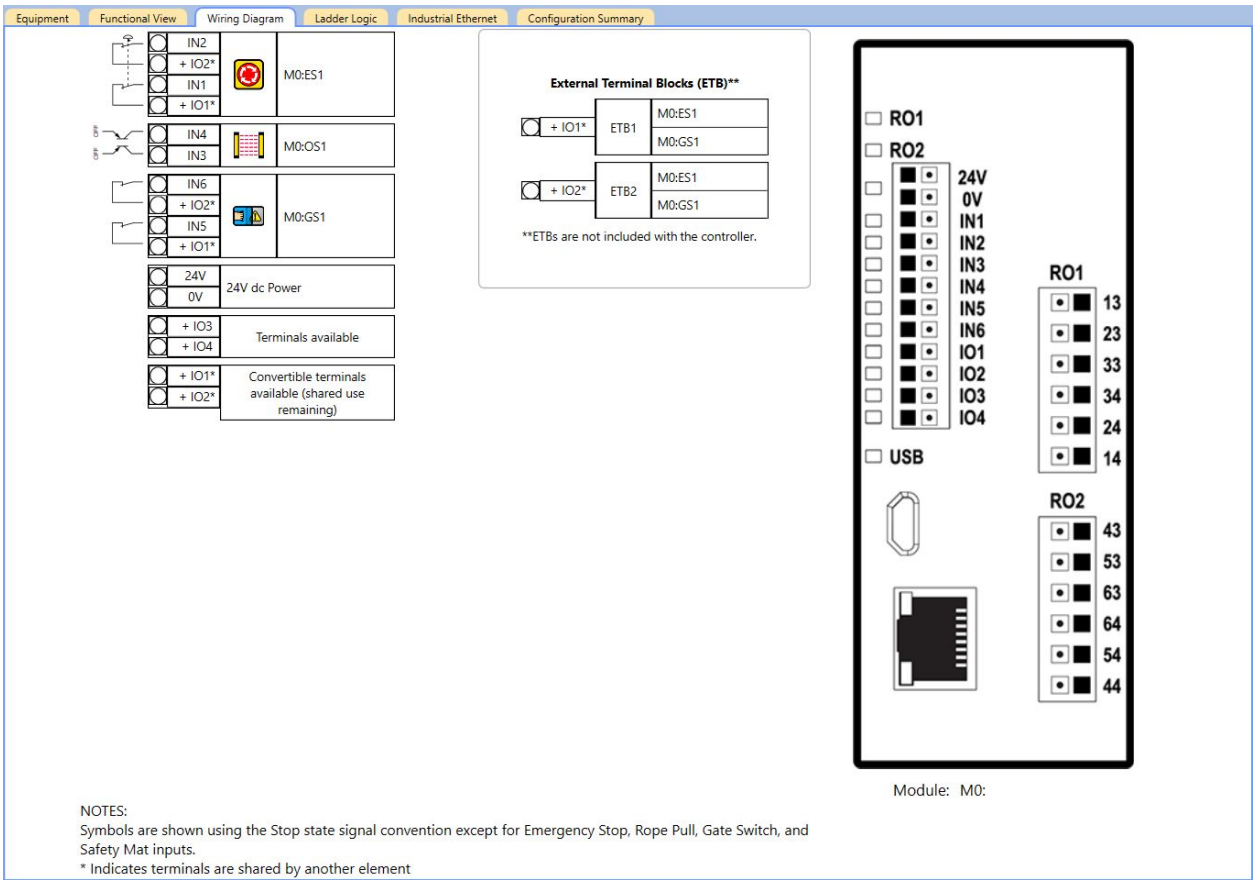

    b. Click **OK**.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

15. Go to the **Wiring Diagram** tab and notice that external terminal blocks (ETB) have been added to accommodate the change in terminal assignments of the Gate Switch.

> **NOTE:** External terminal blocks are user-provided.

*Figure 321. **Wiring Diagram** tab with an E-stop button, optical sensor, gate switch, and ETBs*



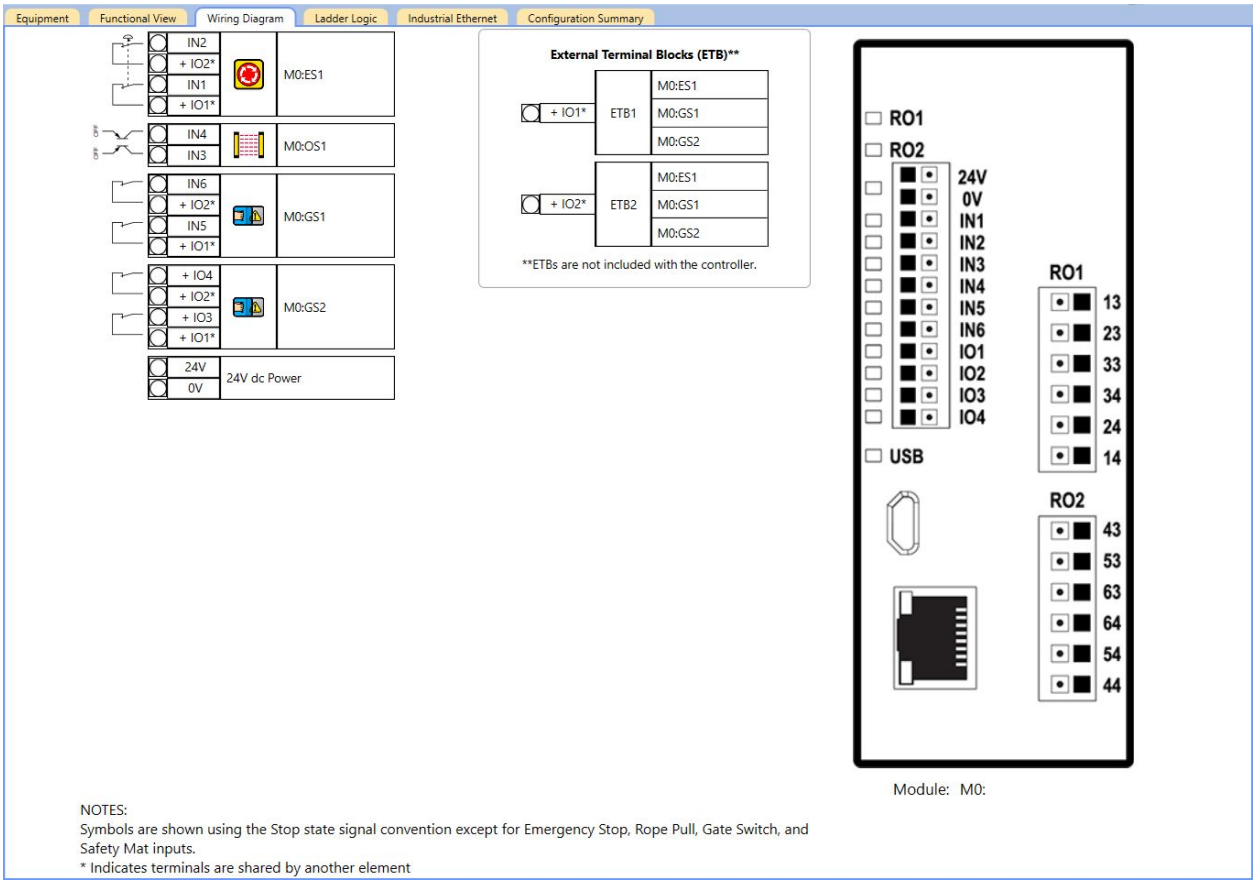

16. Go to the **Functional View** tab to try to add another Gate Switch.

    Another Gate Switch can now be added because terminal optimization has been done manually.

17. Add a second Gate Switch and click **OK** to accept the default settings.
18. Go to the **Wiring Diagram** tab and notice the second Gate Switch has been added and no additional ETB has been added.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 322. **Wiring Diagram** tab with an E-stop button, optical sensor, gate switches, and ETBs*




# 15.13 XS/SC26 Models without an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3

This procedure is for XS/SC26 and XS/SC26-2e models.

Use an SC-XM2 or SC-XM3 to:

- Store a confirmed configuration
- Quickly configure multiple XS/SC26 Safety Controllers with the same configuration (FID 3 and later)
- Replace one XS/SC26 Safety Controller with another using the SC-XM2/3 (FID 3 and later)

> **NOTE:** The Banner programming tool (SC-XMP2) and Banner Safety Controller Software are required to write a confirmed configuration to an SC-XM2/3. This limits access to authorized personnel.

1. Create the desired configuration using the Software.

   Using the latest version of the Software is recommended, however some functions are not available to older Safety Controllers. See the Checklist on the left side of the software screen for additional information as you create the configuration.
2. Review and confirm the configuration by loading it onto the XS/SC26.

   After review and approval, the configuration can be saved and used by the Safety Controller.
3. Write the confirmed configuration to the SC-XM2/3 using the programming tool.

   > **NOTE:** Only a confirmed configuration can be stored on the SC-XM2/3. See "Write a Confirmed Configuration to an SC-XM2/3 using the Programming Tool" on page 96.
4. Use a label to indicate the configuration that is stored on the SC-XM2/3.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

5. Install and/or connect power to the desired XS/SC26 (factory default Safety Controller or configured Safety Controller).
    - **FID 1 or FID 2 Controllers:** The USB LED is off.
    - **FID 3 or later Controllers:** The USB LED flashes green if the XS/SC26 is a factory default Safety Controller. The USB LED is off if the Safety Controller is a configured controller.

    **NOTE:** The factory default setting is based on the safety micros. Changing the default IP address does not change this setting. Configuring such a unit with the SC-XM2/3 will overwrite the network settings.

6. Insert the SC-XM2/3 into the micro USB port on the XS/SC26.

    **NOTE:** For additional information regarding the LEDs, see "XS/SC26 LED Status" on page 340.

    **FID 1 or FID 2 Safety Controller**
    - If the USB LED flashes green for 5 seconds, the configuration on the Safety Controller and the SC-XM2/3 match.
    - If the USB LED flashes red for 5 seconds, the configuration on the Safety Controller and the SC-XM2/3 do not match.

    **FID 3 or later Factory Default Safety Controller**
    - If the USB LED flashes green for 4 seconds, then stays on, the configuration, network settings, and PINs/passwords automatically download to the Safety Controller.
    - If the USB LED flashes red for 5 seconds, the configuration on the SC-XM2/3 was created using an older version of the Software (4.1 or earlier) or using an FID 2 or earlier Safety Controller and is inserted into an FID 3 or later Safety Controller. This means that the configuration cannot automatically be loaded unless the SC-XM2/3 configuration is re-created using software version 4.2 or later or using an FID 3 or later Safety Controller with a display.

    **FID 3 or later Configured Safety Controller**
    - If a SC-XM2/3 with a configuration that contains information that was created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.1 or earlier, or that was created from an FID 2 or earlier Safety Controller is inserted and:
        - The USB LED flashes green for 5 seconds, the configuration on the Safety Controller and the SC-XM2/3 match.
        - The USB LED flashes red for 5 seconds, the configuration on the SC-XM2/3 does not match.
    - If a SC-XM2/3 with a configuration that contains information that was created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.2 or later, or that was created from an FID 3 or later Safety Controller. is inserted and:
        - The USB LED flashes green for 5 seconds, the configuration and PINs/passwords on the Safety Controller and the SC-XM2/3 match. Also, if the network settings do not match (XS/SC26-2e models), the network settings of the Safety Controller transfer to the SC-XM2/3, as long as the SC-XM2/3 is not locked. If the SC-XM2/3 is locked, the USB LED flashes red for 5 seconds and if the SC-XM2/3 is not removed during these 5 seconds, the Safety Controller enters a lockout state.
        - The USB LED flashes red, the configuration or the PINs/passwords on the Safety Controller and the SC-XM2/3 do not match. If the SC-XM2/3 is not removed within 5 seconds, the power/fault LED flashes red and the Safety Controller enters a lockout state.
7. If the Safety Controller entered a lockout state, remove the SC-XM2/3 and cycle the power or perform a system reset.
8. For factory default FID 3 or later Safety Controllers: When the USB LED stops fast flashing, cycle the power or perform a system reset.

The Safety Controller is ready for commissioning. See "Commissioning Checkout Procedure" on page 333.

**NOTE:** If the industrial protocol PROFINET was being used on the replaced controller, use the PLC to assign the same PROFINET name to the replacement controller.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 15.14 XS/SC26 Models with an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3

The following procedures are for XS/SC26-2d, XS/SC26-2de, and XS26-ISDd models.

Use an SC-XM2 or SC-XM3 to:

- Store a confirmed configuration
- Quickly configure multiple XS/SC26 Safety Controllers with the same configuration
- Replace one XS/SC26 Safety Controller with another using the SC-XM2/3 (FID 3 or later feature)

**NOTE:** The Banner programming tool (SC-XMP2) and Banner Safety Controller Software are required to write a confirmed configuration to an SC-XM2/3. This limits access to authorized personnel. A configuration may also be written to an SC-XM2/3 using a Safety Controller with an onboard interface (XS/SC26-2d, -2de, and -ISDd models).

**NOTE:** The LEDs behave the same way with or without an onboard interface (for more details, see " XS/SC26 Models without an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3 " on page 354), however the following procedure focuses on what happens on the display.

## 15.14.1 XS/SC26 FID 1 or FID 2 Controllers with an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3

This procedure is for XS/SC26-2d and XS/SC26-2de models.

1. Create the desired configuration using the Software.

   Using the latest version of the Software is recommended, however some functions are not available to older Safety Controllers. See the Checklist on the left side of the software screen for additional information as you create the configuration.
2. Review and confirm the configuration by loading it onto a XS/SC26.

   After review and approval, the configuration can be saved and used by the Safety Controller.
3. Write the confirmed configuration to the SC-XM2/3 using the programming tool or the onboard interface (XS/SC26-2d and -2de models).

   **NOTE:** Only a confirmed configuration can be stored on the SC-XM2/3.
4. Use a label to indicate the configuration that is stored on the SC-XM2/3.
5. Install and/or connect power to the desired XS/SC26 (factory default Safety Controller or configured Safety Controller).

   The USB LED is off.
6. Insert the SC-XM2/3 into the micro USB port on the XS/SC26.
   - If a SC-XM2/3 with a configuration that was-
     - created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.1 or earlier, or that was created from an FID 2 or earlier Safety Controller
     - created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.2 or later, or that was created from an FID 3 or later Safety Controller

     -is plugged into a configured FID 1 or FID 2 Safety Controller, one of the following screens displays based on whether or not the configuration matches the Safety Controller:


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 323. Match*




*Figure 324. Mismatch*




For instructions on importing data from the SC-XM2/3, see "XS/SC26 Configuration Mode " on page 190.

- If a blank SC-XM2/3 is plugged into a configured FID 1 or FID 2 Safety Controller, the display indicates the issue:

  *Figure 325. Blank SC-XM2/3*

The Safety Controller is ready for commissioning. See "Commissioning Checkout Procedure" on page 333.

**NOTE:** If the industrial protocol PROFINET was being used on the replaced controller, use the PLC to assign the same PROFINET name to the replacement controller.

## 15.14.2 XS/SC26 FID 3 – FID 6 Controllers with an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3

This procedure is for XS/SC26-2d, XS/SC26-2de, and XS26-ISDd models.

1. Create the desired configuration using the Software.

   Using the latest version of the Software is recommended, however some functions are not available to older Safety Controllers. See the Checklist on the left side of the software screen for additional information as you create the configuration.
2. Review and confirm the configuration by loading it onto a XS/SC26.

   After review and approval, the configuration can be saved and used by the Safety Controller.
3. Write the confirmed configuration to the SC-XM2/3 using the programming tool or the onboard interface (XS/SC26-2d and -2de models and XS26-ISDd models).

   **NOTE:** Only a confirmed configuration can be stored on the SC-XM2/3.
4. Use a label to indicate the configuration that is stored on the SC-XM2/3.
5. Install and/or connect power to the desired XS/SC26 (factory default Safety Controller or configured Safety Controller).
   - The USB LED flashes green if the XS/SC26 is a factory default Safety Controller
   - The USB LED is off if the Safety Controller is a configured controller

   **NOTE:** The factory default setting is based on the safety micros. Changing the default IP address does not change this setting. Configuring such a unit with the SC-XM2/3 will overwrite the network settings.
6. Insert the SC-XM2/3 into the micro USB port on the XS/SC26.

   **Factory Default Safety Controller**


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

- If the FID of the configuration does not match the FID of the Safety Controller, the configuration will not match. The display indicates the issue and begins the count down to a system lockout:

  *Figure 326. FID Mismatch*




- If the configuration includes ISD, but the Safety Controller is not an XS26-ISD, the configuration is rejected. The display indicates the issue and begins the count down to a system lockout:

  *Figure 327. ISD Mismatch*




- If a SC-XM2/3 with a configuration that contains information that was created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.2 or later, or that was created from an FID 3 or later Safety Controller is plugged into a factory default FID 3 or later Safety Controller, the configuration, network settings, and PINs/passwords automatically download to the Safety Controller. The display indicates the autoload:

  *Figure 328. Autoload Status*




  After the autoload is done, the display shows: “Config received, please power cycle or system reset”.

- If a SC-XM2/3 with an configuration contains information that was created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.1 or earlier, or that was created from an FID 2 or earlier Safety Controller is plugged into a factory default FID 3 or later Safety Controller, the configuration will not match:

  *Figure 329. Mismatch*




- If a blank SC-XM2/3 is plugged into a factory default FID 3 or later Safety Controller, the display indicates the issue and begins the count down to a system lockout:

  *Figure 330. SC-XM2/3 Error*





© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

If the SC-XM2/3 is not disconnected from the Safety Controller within 3 seconds, the Safety Controller enters a lockout state:

*Figure 331. System Lockout*




### Configured Safety Controller

- If a SC-XM2/3 with a configuration contains information that was created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.1 or earlier, or that was created from an FID 2 or earlier Safety Controller is plugged into a configured FID 3 or later Safety Controller, one of the following screens displays based on whether or not the configuration matches the Safety Controller:

*Figure 332. Match*




*Figure 333. Mismatch*




For instructions on importing data from the SC-XM2/3, see "XS/SC26 Configuration Mode " on page 190.

- If a SC-XM2/3 with a configuration that contains information that was created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.2 or later, or that was created from an FID 3 or later Safety Controller. is plugged into a configured FID 3 or later Safety Controller and the configuration and PINs/password match, one of the following displays:

*Figure 334. XS/SC26-2d Models: Network settings ignored*




*Figure 335. XS/SC26-2de and XS26-ISDd Models: Network settings match*




Also, if the network settings do not match (XS/SC26-2de models), the network settings of the Safety Controller transfer to the SC-XM2/3. When this is complete, the display shows the following:

*Figure 336. Network Update*




Click **OK**. If the update fails (for example, the SC-XM2/3 is locked), the display indicates why it failed and begins the countdown to a system lockout:


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 337. Network Update Failed*




If the SC-XM2/3 is not disconnected from the Safety Controller within 3 seconds, the Safety Controller enters a lockout state:

*Figure 338. System Lockout*




- If a SC-XM2/3 with a configuration that contains information that was created using the Banner Safety Controller Software Version 4.2 or later, or that was created from an FID 3 or later Safety Controller is plugged in a configured FID 3 or later Safety Controller, but the configuration and/or the PINs/password do not match, the display indicates the issue and begins the count down to a system lockout:

*Figure 339. XS/SC26-2d Models: Mismatch*




*Figure 340. XS/SC26-2de Models: Mismatch*




If the SC-XM2/3 is not disconnected from the Safety Controller within 3 seconds, the Safety Controller enters a lockout state:

*Figure 341. XS/SC26-2d Models: System Lockout*




*Figure 342. XS/SC26-2de Models: System Lockout*




For instructions on importing data from the SC-XM2/3, see "XS/SC26 Configuration Mode " on page 190.

- If a blank SC-XM2/3 is plugged into a configured FID 3 or later Safety Controller, the display indicates the issue and begins the count down to a system lockout:


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 343. SC-XM2/3 Error*




If the SC-XM2/3 is not disconnected from the Safety Controller within 3 seconds, the Safety Controller enters a lockout state:

*Figure 344. System Lockout*




7. If the Safety Controller entered a lockout state, remove the SC-XM2/3 and cycle the power or perform a system reset.
8. For factory default Safety Controllers: When the USB LED stops fast flashing, cycle the power or perform a system reset.

The Safety Controller is ready for commissioning. See "Commissioning Checkout Procedure" on page 333.

**NOTE:** If the industrial protocol PROFINET was being used on the replaced controller, use the PLC to assign the same PROFINET name to the replacement controller.

### 15.14.3 XS/SC26 FID 7 and Later Controllers with an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3

This procedure is for XS/SC26-2d, XS/SC26-2de, and XS26-ISDd models.

1. See " XS/SC26 FID 3 – FID 6 Controllers with an Onboard Interface: Using the SC-XM2/3 " on page 357 for the procedure.

   The difference is that FID 7 and later controllers also store the Configuration via Network and Live Monitor via Network settings and store the network passwords.

## 15.15 SC10-2: Using the SC-XM3

Use an SC-XM3 to:

- Quickly configure multiple SC10-2 Safety Controllers with the same configuration
- Replace one SC10-2 Safety Controller with another using the SC-XM3 from the old Safety Controller

**NOTE:** The Banner programming tool (SC-XMP2) and Software are required to write a confirmed configuration to an SC-XM3. This limits access to authorized personnel.

1. Create the desired configuration using the Software.
2. Review and confirm the configuration by loading it onto an SC10-2.

   After review and approval, the configuration can be saved and used by the Safety Controller.
3. Write the confirmed configuration to the SC-XM3 using the programming tool.

   **NOTE:** Only a confirmed configuration can be stored on the SC-XM3. See "Write a Confirmed Configuration to an SC-XM2/3 using the Programming Tool" on page 96.
4. Use a label to indicate the configuration that is stored on the SC-XM3.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

5. Install and/or connect power to the desired SC10-2 (factory default Safety Controller or configured Safety Controller).
   - If the SC10-2 is a factory default Safety Controller, the power/fault LED is on green and the USB LED flashes green to indicate that the Safety Controller is waiting for a configuration.
   - If the SC10-2 is a configured Safety Controller, the power/fault LED is on green and the USB LED is on red.

   **NOTE:** The factory default setting is based on the safety micros. Changing the default IP address does not change this setting. Configuring such a unit with the SC-XM2/3 will overwrite the network settings.

6. Insert the SC-XM3 into the micro USB port on the SC10-2.

   **Factory Default Safety Controller**
   - The USB LED fast flashes for 3 seconds, then stays on, and the configuration, network settings, and PINs automatically download to the Safety Controller. Then, the power/fault LED flashes green to indicate that the Safety Controller is waiting for a power cycle.

   **Configured Safety Controller**
   - If the configuration and PINs on the Safety Controller and the SC-XM3 match, the USB LED flashes green for 3 seconds and then stays on. Also, if the network settings do not match, the network settings of the Safety Controller transfer to the SC-XM3 after 3 seconds, as long as the SC-XM3 is not locked. If the SC-XM3 is locked, the controller enters a lockout state.
   - If the configuration or the PINs on the Safety Controller and the SC-XM3 do not match, the USB LED flashes red. If the SC-XM3 is not disconnected from the Safety Controller within 3 seconds, the power/fault and USB LEDs flash red and the Safety Controller enters a lockout state due to the mismatch.

7. Cycle the power.

   The power/fault LED is green, the USB LED is green (if the SC-XM3 is still plugged in) or red (no SC-XM3 or USB cable connected), and the Input and Ouput LEDs show actual input status.

The Safety Controller is ready for commissioning. See "Commissioning Checkout Procedure" on page 333.

## 15.16 Reset the Safety Controller to Factory Defaults

Use the following procedure to reset the XS/SC26 with FID 3 or later or the SC10-2 Safety Controller to the factory default settings.

**NOTE:** XS/SC26 with FID 1 or FID 2 using Software version 4.2 or later will show the **Reset to Factory Default** option in gray.

The Safety Controller must be powered up and connected to the PC via the SC-USB2 cable or via an Ethernet cable (XS/SC26 FID 7 or later Ethernet models).

1. Click .
2. Click **Reset to Factory Default**.

   A caution displays reminding you that all settings will change to factory defaults.
3. Click **Continue**.

   The **Enter Password** screen opens.
4. Enter the User1 PIN if connected via USB or password if connected via Ethernet, and click **OK**.

   The Safety Controller is updated to the factory default settings and a confirmation window displays.
5. Click **OK**.
6. Cycle the power.

   The reset to factory default process is complete.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 15.17 Factory Defaults

The following table lists some of the factory default settings for both the Safety Controller and the Software.

| Setting | Factory Default | Applicable Product |
|---|---|---|
| AVM Function | 50 ms | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Closed-to-Open Debounce Time | 6 ms | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| EDM | No monitoring | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Function Block: Bypass Block—Default Nodes | IN, BP | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Function Block: Bypass—Time Limit | 1 s | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Function Block: Delay Block—Default Nodes | IN | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Function Block: Delay Block—Output Delay | 100 ms | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Function Block: Enabling Device Block—Default Nodes | ED, IN, RST | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Function Block: Enabling Device Block—Time Limit | 1 s | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Function Block: Latch Reset Block—Default Nodes | IN, LR | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Function Block: Muting Block—Default Nodes | IN, MP1 | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Function Block: Muting Block—Time Limit | 30 s | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Function Block: Two-Hand Control Block—Default Nodes | TC | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Function Block: One Shot Block—Default Nodes | IN | XS/SC26 |
| Function Block: One Shot Block—Time Limit | 100 ms | XS/SC26 |
| Industrial Ethernet: String (EtherNet/IP and PCCC Protocol) | 32 bit | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Network Settings: Gateway Address | 0.0.0.0 | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Network Settings: IP Address | 192.168.0.128 | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Network Settings: Link Speed and Duplex Mode | Auto Negotiate | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Network Settings: Subnet Mask | 255.255.255.0 | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Network Settings: TCP Port | 502 | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Open-to-Closed Debounce Time | 50 ms | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| PIN User1 | 1901 | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| PIN User2 | 1902 | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| PIN User3 | 1903 | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Ethernet Password User1 | 1901@Banner | XS/SC26 |
| Power up mode | Normal | SC10-2 |
| Safety Outputs | Automatic reset (trip mode) | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Safety Outputs: Power-up Mode | Normal | XS/SC26 |
| Safety Outputs: Split (Safety Outputs) | Function in pairs | XS/SC26 |
| Simulation Mode: Simulation Speed | 1 | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Automatic Terminal Optimization | Enabled | SC10-2 |
| Status Output Signal Conventions | Active = PNP On | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| Status Output Flashing Rate | None | XS/SC26 |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

16.1 Software: Troubleshooting ..... 364
16.2 **Live Mode** button is unavailable (grayed out) ..... 364
16.3 Unable to read from the Safety Controller or send the configuration to the Safety Controller (buttons grayed out) ..... 364
16.4 Unable to move a block to a different location ..... 365
16.5 SC-XM2/3 button is unavailable (grayed out) ..... 365
16.6 Software: Error Codes ..... 365
16.7 Verifying Driver Installation ..... 367
16.8 Safety Controller Drivers—Windows 7, 10, and 11 ..... 367
16.9 SC-XMP2 Drivers—Windows 7, 10, and 11 ..... 368
16.10 Resolve an Exclamation Mark, a Red ×, or a Down Arrow Indicator ..... 369
16.11 Resolve the Safety Controller listed in Device Manager as 'Generic USB Device' ..... 369
16.12 Finding and Fixing Faults ..... 370

# Chapter 16 Troubleshooting

The Safety Controller is designed and tested to be highly resistant to a wide variety of electrical noise sources that are found in industrial settings. However, intense electrical noise sources that produce electro-magnetic interference (EMI) or radio frequency interference (RFI) beyond these limits may cause a random trip or lockout condition.

If random trips or lockouts occur, check that:

- The supply voltage is within 24 V DC ± 20%
- The Safety Controller's plug-on terminal blocks are fully inserted
- Wire connections to each individual terminal are secure
- No high-voltage or high-frequency noise sources or any high-voltage power lines are routed near the Safety Controller or alongside wires that are connected to the Safety Controller
- Proper transient suppression is applied across the output loads
- The temperature surrounding the Safety Controller is within the rated ambient temperature (see "Specifications and Requirements " on page 24)

## 16.1 Software: Troubleshooting

### 16.2 Live Mode button is unavailable (grayed out)

1. Make sure the SC-USB2 cable is plugged into both the computer and the Safety Controller.

   **NOTE:** Use of the Banner SC-USB2 cable is preferred. If other USB cables are used, make sure that the cable includes a communication line. Many cell phone charging cables do not have a communication line.

2. Verify that the Safety Controller is installed properly—see "Verifying Driver Installation" on page 367.
3. Exit the Software.
4. Unplug the Safety Controller and plug it back in.
5. Start the Software.

### 16.3 Unable to read from the Safety Controller or send the configuration to the Safety Controller (buttons grayed out)

1. Make sure **Live Mode** is disabled.
2. Make sure the SC-USB2 cable is plugged into both the computer and the Safety Controller.

   **NOTE:** Use of the Banner SC-USB2 cable is preferred. If other USB cables are used, make sure that the cable includes a communication line. Many cell phone charging cables do not have a communication line.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

3. Verify that the Safety Controller is installed properly—see "Verifying Driver Installation" on page 367.
4. Exit the Software.
5. Unplug the Safety Controller and plug it back in.
6. Start the Software.

### 16.4 Unable to move a block to a different location

Not all blocks can be moved. Some blocks can be moved only within certain areas.

- **Safety Outputs** are placed statically and cannot be moved. **Referenced Safety Outputs** can be moved anywhere within the left and middle areas.
- **Safety** and **Non-Safety Inputs** can be moved anywhere within the left and middle areas.
- **Function** and **Logic blocks** can be moved anywhere within the middle area.

### 16.5 SC-XM2/3 button is unavailable (grayed out)

1. Make sure all connections are secure—SC-XMP2 to the USB port of the computer and to the SC-XM2 or SC-XM3 drive.
2. Verify that the SC-XMP2 Programming Tool is installed properly—see "Verifying Driver Installation" on page 367.
3. Exit the Software.
4. Disconnect and re-connect all connections—SC-XMP2 to the USB port of the computer and to the SC-XM2 or SC-XM3 drive.
5. Start the Software.

**NOTE:** Contact Banner Engineering Corp. if you require further assistance.

## 16.6 Software: Error Codes

The following table lists error codes that are encountered when attempting to make an invalid connection between blocks on the **Functional View** tab.

**WARNING:**

- **Configuration Conforms to Applicable Standards**
- Failure to verify the application may result in serious injury or death.
- The Banner Safety Controller Software primarily checks the logic configuration for connection errors. The user is responsible for verifying the application meets the risk assessment requirements and that it conforms to all applicable standards.

| Software Code | Error |
|---|---|
| A.1 | This connection creates a loop. |
| A.2 | A connection from this block already exists. |
| A.3 | Connecting a block to itself is not allowed. |
| B.2 | This Bypass Block is connected to the **TC** node of a Two-Hand Control Block. You can connect only a Two-Hand Control input to the **IN** node of this Bypass Block. |
| B.3 | This Bypass Block is already connected to another block. |
| B.4 | This Bypass Block is connected to the **TC** node of a Two-Hand Control Block and cannot be connected to any other blocks. |
| B.5 | Cannot connect Two-Hand Control Input to the **IN** node of this Bypass Block because it has the "Output turns OFF when both inputs (**IN** and **BP**) are ON" option disabled. |
| B.6 | The **IN** node of a Bypass Block cannot be connected to Emergency Stop and Rope Pull inputs. |
| B.7 | The **IN** node of a Bypass Block cannot be connected to Emergency Stop and Rope Pull inputs via other blocks. |
| C.1 | Only a Cancel OFF-Delay input can be connected to the **CD** node. |
| C.2 | A Cancel OFF-Delay input can be connected only to the **CD** node of a Safety Output, One Shot Function Block, or Delay Function Block. |
| D.1 | This External Device Monitoring input is configured for a Dual-Channel 2 Terminal circuit and can be connected only to the **EDM** node of a Safety Output. |

Continued on page 366


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 365

| Software Code | Error |
|---|---|
| E.1 | The Enabling Device Block output nodes (**P** or **S**) can be connected only to the **IN** node of a Safety Output. |
| E.2 | The **IN** node of an Enabling Device Block cannot be connected to Emergency Stop and Rope Pull inputs. |
| E.3 | The **ED** node of an Enabling Device Block can be connected only to an Enabling Device input. |
| E.4 | The **ED** node of an Enabling Device Block cannot be connected to Emergency Stop and Rope Pull inputs via other blocks. |
| E.5 | An Enabling Device Block that has a Two-Hand Control block connected to the **IN** node cannot be connected to a Safety Output that has *Safety Output Delay* set to "Off Delay". |
| F.1 | Emergency Stop and Rope Pull inputs cannot be muted, and thus cannot be connected to the **IN** node of a Mute Function Block or the **M Safety** input of the Press Control Inputs Function Block. |
| F.2 | Emergency Stop and Rope Pull inputs cannot be connected to a Latch Reset Block that is connected to a Muting Block. |
| F.3 | A Latch Reset Block that is connected to an Emergency Stop or a Rope Pull input cannot be connected to a Muting Block. |
| G.1 | **XS/SC26 FID 1, 2, & 3 and SC10-2:** Only a Manual Reset output can be connected to the **FR** node of a Safety Output.<br>**XS/SC26 FID 4 or later:** Only a Manual Reset input or an output node of a Reset-Designated OR Block can be connected to the **FR** node of a Safety Output. |
| G.2 | **XS/SC26 FID 1, 2, & 3 and SC10-2:** Only a Manual Reset input can be connected to the **LR** node of a Latch Reset Block or Safety Output.<br>**XS/SC26 FID 4 or later:** Only a Manual Reset input or the output node of a Reset-Designated OR Block can be connected to the **LR** node of a Latch Reset Block or Safety Output. |
| G.3 | **XS/SC26 FID 1, 2, & 3 and SC10-2:** Only a Manual Reset output can be connected to the **RST** node of an Enabling Device Block.<br>**XS/SC26 FID 4 or later:** Only a Manual Reset input or an output node of a Reset-Designated OR Block can be connected to the **RST** node of an Enabling Device Block. |
| G.4 | **XS/SC26 FID 1, 2, & 3 and SC10-2:** A Manual Reset input can be connected only to **LR** and **FR** nodes of a Safety Output, an **LR** node of a Latch Reset Block, an **RST** node of an Enabling Device Block, and **SET** and **RST** nodes of the Flip-Flop Blocks.<br>**XS/SC26 FID 4 or later:** A Manual Reset input can be connected only to **LR** and **FR** nodes of a Safety Output, an **LR** node of a Latch Reset Block, an **RST** node of an Enabling Device Block, **SET** and **RST** nodes of the Flip-Flop Blocks, **RST** node of a Press Control Block, and an input node of a Reset-Designated OR Block. |
| G.5 | The input node of a Reset-Designated OR Block can be connected only to a Manual Reset, Virtual Manual Reset input, and the output node of a Reset-Designated OR Block. |
| G.6 | The output node of a Reset-Designated OR Block can be connected only to **LR** and **FR** nodes of a Safety Output, an **LR** node of a Latch Reset Block, an **RST** node of an Enabling Device Block, **SET** and **RST** nodes of the Flip-Flop Blocks, and an input node of a Reset-Designated OR Block. |
| H.1 | A latch reset block already connected to a function block cannot connect to a Mute block. |
| H.2 | A latch reset block already connected to a Mute block cannot connect to another function block. |
| I.1 | Only Muting Sensor Pair, Optical Sensor, Gate Switch, Safety Mat, or Protective Stop inputs can be connected to the **MP1** and **MP2** nodes of a Muting Block or to the **MP1** node of a Two-Hand Control Block. |
| I.2 | The **MP1** and **MP2** nodes of a Muting Block and the **MP1** node of a Two-Hand Control Block can be connected to inputs that are using only Dual-Channel circuits. |
| I.3 | A Muting Sensor Pair input can be connected only to **MP1** and **MP2** nodes of a Muting Block or the **MP1** node of a Two-Hand Control Block. |
| J.1 | **XS/SC26 FID 1, 2, & 3 and SC10-2 FID 1:** A Two-Hand Control Block can be connected only to the **IN** node of an Enabling Device Block or the **IN** node of a Safety Output.<br>**XS/SC26 FID 4 or later or SC10-2 FID 2 or later :**A Two-Hand Control Block can be connected only to a Logic Block (excluding Flip-Flop Blocks), the **IN** node of an Enabling Device Block, or the **IN** node of a Safety Output. |
| J.3 | Only Two-Hand Control inputs or Bypass Blocks with Two-Hand Control inputs connected to them can be connected to the **TC** node of a Two-Hand Control Block. A Bypass Block with a Two-Hand Control input connected to its **IN** node can only be connected to the **TC** node of a Two-Hand Control Block. |
| K.1 | **XS/SC26 FID 1, 2, & 3 and SC10-2 FID 1:** A Two-Hand Control input can be connected only to a Two-Hand Control Block (**TC** node) or Bypass Block (**IN** node).<br>**XS/SC26 FID 4 or later or SC10-2 FID 2 or later:** A Two-Hand Control input can be connected only to a Two-Hand Control Block (**TC** node), Bypass Block (**IN** node), Logic Block (excluding Flip-Flop Blocks), Press Control Block (**GO** node), or an output (without an OFF-delay or without a Latch Reset Node enabled). |
| K.2 | **XS/SC26 FID 1, 2, & 3 and SC10-2 FID 1:** A Safety Output that has *Safety Output Delay* set to "OFF-Delay" cannot be connected to a Two-Hand Control Block.<br>**XS/SC26 FID 4 or later or SC10-2 FID 2 or later:** A Safety Output that has *Safety Output Delay* set to "OFF-Delay" cannot be directly connected to a Two-Hand Control Block. |
| K.3 | A Safety Output that has *Safety Output Delay* set to "OFF-Delay" cannot be connected to a Two-Hand Control Block via an Enabling Device Block. |
| L.1 | This Safety Output is disabled because a Status Output is using its terminals. |

Continued on page 367


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 366

| Software Code | Error |
|---|---|
| L.2 | The **IN** node of a Safety Output cannot be connected to External Device Monitoring, Adjustable Valve Monitor, Mute Sensor Pair, Bypass Switch, Manual Reset, Mute Enable, or Cancel OFF-Delay inputs. |
| L.3 | A Safety Output block that has *LR (Latch Reset)* function enabled cannot be connected to Two-Hand Control Blocks or Enabling Device Blocks. |
| L.4 | **XS/SC26 FID 1, 2 & 3 and SC10-2 FID 1:** A Safety Output block that has *Power up Mode* set to "Manual Reset" cannot be connected to Two-Hand Control Blocks or Enabling Device Blocks.<br><br>**XS/SC26 FID 4 or later or SC10-2 FID2 or later:** A Safety Output block that has *Power up Mode* set to 'Manual Reset' cannot be connected to Two-Hand Control Inputs, Two-Hand Control Blocks, or Enabling Device Blocks. |
| P.1 | Only physical or virtual ON/OFF inputs can be connected to the **RUN**, **INCH UP**, and **INCH DOWN** nodes of the Press Control Mode Function Block. |
| P.2 | Only a physical ON/OFF Input can be connected to the **TOS** and **BOS** nodes of the Press Control Function Block, and the **PIP** node of the Press Control Inputs Function Block. |
| P.3 | Only an **SQS** Input can be connected to the **SQS** Input node of the Press Control Input function block. |
| P.4 | The only input that can be connected to the **M Sensor** input of the Press Control Input function block is a Press Control Mute Sensor input device. |
| P.5 | When the Press Control block is configured for Single Actuator Control, the **GO** input node can only be connected to a Cycle Initiation input, a Foot Switch input, or a Two-Hand Control input. When the Press Control Block is configured for Manual Upstroke Setting, the **GO** input node can only be connected to a Foot Switch input or Two-Hand Control input. |
| P.6 | If Single Actuator Control is selected in the Press Control Function Block, then Sequential Stop (**SQS**) and Manual Upstroke are not allowed. |
| P.7 | Only a physical ON/OFF input or a Foot Switch input can be connected to the **Ft Switch** input of the Press Control Inputs Function Block. |
| P.8 | The Press Control Function Block output nodes (**U**, **D**, **H,** and **L**) can be connected only to the **IN** node of a Safety Output. |
| P.9 | When the Press Control Mute Sensor input is not selected, only a dual-channel SQS input can be connected to the **SQS** input node of the Press Control Input function block. |

# 16.7 Verifying Driver Installation

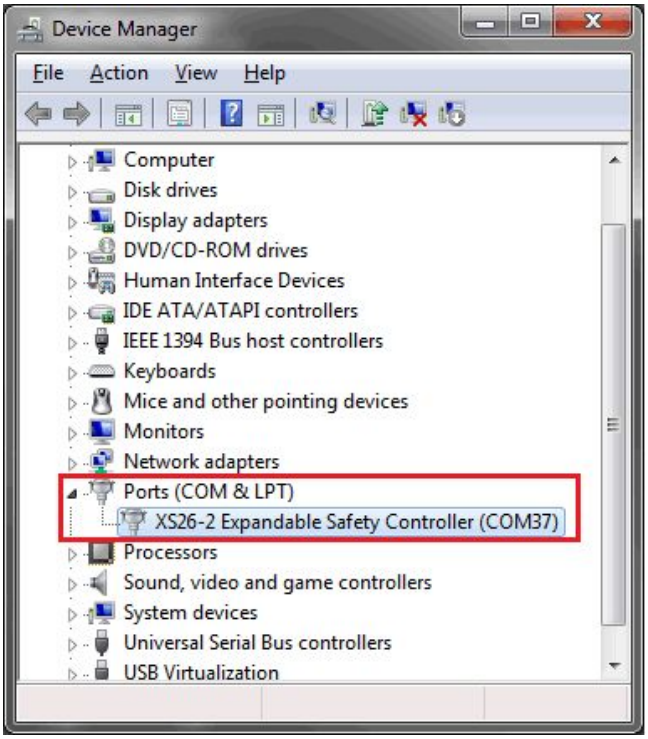
This section applies to both the XS/SC26 and the SC10-2.

## 16.8 Safety Controller Drivers—Windows 7, 10, and 11

1. Open **Device Manager**.
2. Expand the **Ports (COM & LPT)** dropdown menu.
3. Find **XS26-2 Expandable Safety Controller** followed by a COM port number (for example, COM3). It must not have an exclamation mark, a red ×, or a down arrow on the entry. If you do not have any of these indicators, your device is properly installed. If any of the indicators appear, use the instructions below to resolve these issues.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 345. XS/SC26 Safety Controller Drivers installed correctly*

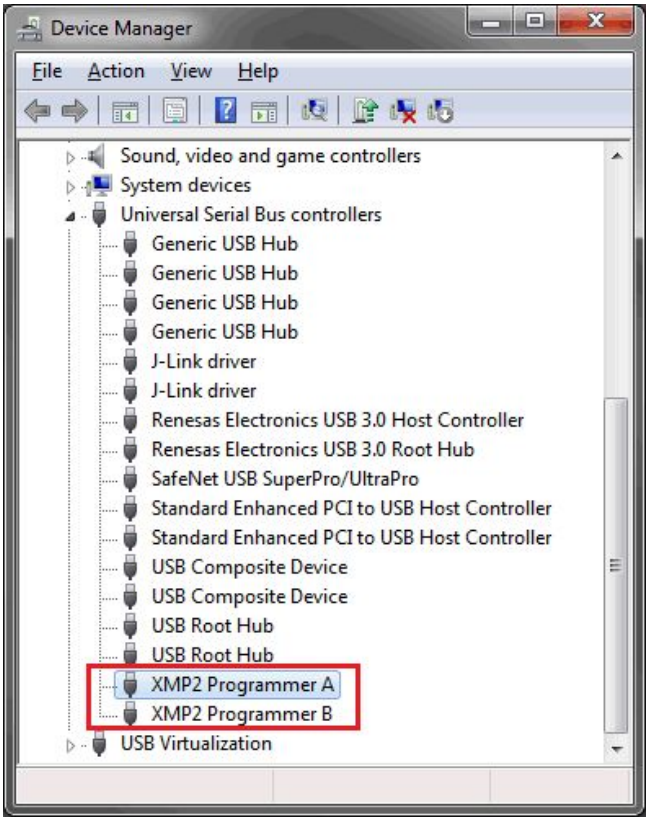



## 16.9 SC-XMP2 Drivers—Windows 7, 10, and 11

1. Open **Device Manager**.
2. Expand the **Universal Serial Bus controllers** dropdown menu.
3. Find **XMP2 Programmer A** and **XMP2 Programmer B**. Either one of the entries must not have an exclamation mark, a red ×, or a down arrow on the entry. If you do not have any of these indicators, your device is properly installed. If any of the indicators appear, use the instructions below to resolve these issues.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

*Figure 346. SC-XMP2 Drivers installed correctly*




## 16.10 Resolve an Exclamation Mark, a Red ×, or a Down Arrow Indicator

1. Make sure your device is enabled:
   a. Right-click on the entry that has the indicator.
   b. If you see **Disable**, the device is enabled; if you see **Enable**, the device is disabled.
      - If the device is enabled, continue with troubleshooting steps.
      - If the device is disabled, click **Enable**. If this does not remove the indicator, continue to the next step.
2. Unplug the USB cable either from the Safety Controller or from the computer, wait a few seconds and plug it back in. If this does not remove the indicator, continue to the next step.
3. Try plugging in the Safety Controller or SC-XMP2 to a different USB port. If this does not remove the indicator, continue to the next step.
4. Reboot your computer. If this does not remove the indicator, continue to the next step.
5. Uninstall and re-install the Software from **Add/Remove Programs** or **Programs and Features** located in the **Control Panel**. If this does not remove the indicator, continue to the next step.
6. Contact Banner Engineering Corp..

## 16.11 Resolve the Safety Controller listed in Device Manager as 'Generic USB Device'

1. Right click on the Generic USB Device port that is the Banner Engineering Corp. Safety Controller.
2. Click **Update Driver**.
3. Select **Browse my Computer for Driver Software**.
4. Click the **Browse** box to the right of the **Search this Location** box. A new window opens.
5. Select **Local Disk (C:) › Program Files (x86) › Banner Engineering › Banner Safety Controller › Driver**.
6. Click **OK**; the window closes.
7. In the update driver box, click **Next**. The driver should now be updated.

You might have to close the Banner Safety Controller Software and open it again. The USB ports should now link Banner Engineering Corp. Safety Controllers to the Software.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 16.12 Finding and Fixing Faults

Depending on the configuration, the Safety Controller is able to detect a number of input, output, and system faults.

These include:

- A stuck contact
- An open contact
- A short between channels
- A short to ground
- A short to a voltage source
- A short to another input
- A loose or open connection
- An exceeded operational time limit
- A power drop
- An overtemperature condition

When a fault is detected, a message describing the fault displays in the **Fault Diagnostics** menu (models with display). For models not equipped with a display, use the **Live Mode** tab in the Software on a PC connected to Safety Controller with the SC-USB2 cable or via an Ethernet cable (XS/SC26 FID 7 or later Ethernet models). Fault diagnostics are also available over the network. An additional message may also be displayed to help remedy the fault.

**NOTE:** The fault log is cleared when power to the Safety Controller is cycled.

## 16.12.1 XS/SC26 Fault Code Table

The following table lists the Safety Controller Fault Code, the message that displays, any additional messages, as well as the steps to resolve the fault.

The Error Code and the Advanced Error Code, taken together, form the Safety Controller Fault Code. The format for the Fault Code is `Error Code 'dot' Advanced Error Code`. For example, a Safety Controller Fault Code of 2.1 is represented by an Error Code of `2` and an Advanced Error Code of `1`. The Error Message Index value is the Error Code and the Advanced Error Code together, and includes a leading zero with the Advanced Error Code, if necessary. For example, a Safety Controller Fault Code of 2.1 is represented by an Error Message Index of `201`. The Error Message Index value is a convenient way to get the complete Fault Code while only reading a single 16-bit register.

**NOTE:** An error code of 1.1 is different from an error code of 1.10 (the zero is significant).

| Fault Code | Displayed Message | Additional Message | Steps to resolve |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1.1 | Output Fault | **Base Controller or Solid-State Module**<br>Check for shorts<br><br>**Relay Module**<br><br>n/a | **Base Controller or Solid-State Module**<br><br>A Safety Output appears ON when it should be OFF:<br>• Check for a short to the external voltage source<br>• Check the DC common wire size connected to the Safety Output loads. The wire must be a heavy-gauge wire or be as short as possible to minimize resistance and voltage drop. If necessary, use a separate DC common wire for each pair of outputs and/or avoid sharing this DC common return path with other devices (see "Common Wire Installation" on page 72)<br><br>**Relay Module**<br><br>• Replace Relay module |

Continued on page 371


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 370

| Fault Code | Displayed Message | Additional Message | Steps to resolve |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1.2 | Output Fault | **Base Controller or Solid-State Module**<br>Check for shorts<br>**Relay Module**<br>n/a | **Base Controller or Solid-State Module**<br>A Safety Output is sensing a fault to another voltage source while the output is ON:<br>• Check for a short between Safety Outputs<br>• Check for a short to the external voltage source<br>• Check load device compatibility<br>• Check the DC common wire size connected to the Safety Output loads. The wire must be a heavy-gauge wire or be as short as possible to minimize resistance and voltage drop. If necessary, use a separate DC common wire for each pair of outputs and/or avoid sharing this DC common return path with other devices (see "Common Wire Installation" on page 72)<br>**Relay Module**<br>• Replace Relay module |
| 1.3 – 1.8 | Internal Fault | - | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381) |
| 1.9 | Output Fault | Internal Relay Failure | • Replace Relay module |
| 1.10 | Output Fault | Check Input Timing | Sequence timing error:<br>• Perform a System Reset to clear the fault |
| 2.1 | Concurrency Fault | Cycle Input | On a dual-channel input, or a complementary input, with both inputs in the Run state, one input went to the Stop state then back to Run.<br>On a dual-complementary input, with both pairs of inputs in the Run state, one pair of inputs went to the Stop state then back to Run.<br>• Check the wiring<br>• Check the input signals<br>• Consider adjusting the debounce times |
| 2.2 | Simultaneity Fault | Cycle Input | On a dual-channel input, or a complementary input, one input went into the Run state but the other input did not follow the change within 3 seconds.<br>On a dual-complementary input, one pair of inputs went into the Run state but the other pair of inputs did not follow the change within 3 seconds.<br>• Check the wiring<br>• Check the input signal timing |
| 2.3 or 2.5 | Concurrency Fault | Cycle Input | On a dual-complementary input, with both inputs of one complementary pair in the Run state, one input of this complementary pair changed to Stop then back to Run:<br>• Check the wiring<br>• Check the input signals<br>• Check the power supply providing input signals<br>• Consider adjusting the debounce times |
| 2.4 or 2.6 | Simultaneity Fault | Cycle Input | On a dual-complementary input, one input of a complementary pair went into the Run state, but the other input of the same complementary pair did not follow the change within the time limit:<br>• Check the wiring<br>• Check the input signal timing |
| 2.7 | Internal Fault | | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381) |
| 2.8 – 2.9 | Input Fault | Check Terminal xx | Input stuck high:<br>• Check for shorts to other inputs or other voltage sources<br>• Check the input device compatibility<br>• Check for miss wired terminals (output terminal wired to wrong input terminal) |
| 2.10 | Input Fault | Check Terminal xx | • Check for a short between inputs |
| 2.11 – 2.12 | Input Fault | Check Terminal xx | • Check for a short to ground |

Continued on page 372


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 371

| Fault Code | Displayed Message | Additional Message | Steps to resolve |
|---|---|---|---|
| 2.13 | Input Fault | Check Terminal xx | Input stuck low<br>• Check for a short to ground |
| 2.14 | Input Fault | Check Terminal xx | Missing test pulses:<br>• Check for a short to other inputs or other voltage sources |
| 2.15 | Open Lead | Check Terminal xx | • Check for an open lead |
| 2.16 – 2.18 | Input Fault | Check Terminal xx | Missing test pulses:<br>• Check for a short to other inputs or other voltage sources |
| 2.19 | Open Lead | Check Terminal xx | • Check for an open lead |
| 2.20 | Input Fault | Check Terminal xx | Missing test pulses:<br>• Check for a short to ground |
| 2.21 | Open Lead | Check Terminal xx | • Check for an open lead |
| 2.22 – 2.23 | Input Fault | Check Terminal xx | • Check for an unstable signal on the input |
| 2.24 | Input Activated While Bypassed | Perform System Reset | A Two-Hand Control input was activated (turned ON) while it was bypassed. |
| 2.25 | Input Fault | Monitoring Timer Expired Before AVM Closed | After the associated Safety Output turned OFF, the AVM input did not close before its AVM monitoring time expired:<br>• The AVM may be disconnected; check the wiring to the AVM<br>• Either the AVM is disconnected, or its response to the Safety Output turning OFF is too slow<br>• Check the wiring to the AVM<br>• Check the timing setting; increase the setting if necessary<br>• Contact Banner Engineering Corp. |
| 2.26 | Input Fault | AVM Not Closed When Output Turned On | The AVM input was open, but should have been closed, when the associated Safety Output was commanded ON:<br>• The AVM may be disconnected; check the wiring to the AVM |
| 3.1 | EDMxx Fault | Check Terminal xx | EDM contact opened prior to turning ON the Safety Outputs:<br>• Check for a stuck ON contactor or relay<br>• Check for an open wire |
| 3.2 | EDMxx Fault | Check Terminal xx | EDM contact(s) failed to close within 250 ms after the Safety Outputs turned OFF:<br>• Check for a slow or stuck ON contactor or relay<br>• Check for an open wire |
| 3.4 | EDMxx Fault | Check Terminal xx | EDM contact pair mismatched for longer than 250 ms:<br>• Check for a slow or stuck ON contactor or relay<br>• Check for an open wire |
| 3.5 | EDMxx Fault | Check Terminal xx | • Check for an unstable signal on the input |
| 3.6 | EDMxx Fault | Check Terminal xx | • Check for a short to ground |
| 3.7 | EDMxx Fault | Check Terminal xx | • Check for a short between inputs |
| 3.8 | AVMxx Fault | Perform System Reset | After this Safety Output turned OFF, an AVM input associated with this output did not close before its AVM monitoring time expired:<br>• The AVM may be disconnected or its response to the Safety Output turning OFF may be too slow<br>• Check the AVM input and then perform a System Reset to clear the fault |
| 3.9 | Input Fault | AVM Not Closed When Output Turned On | The AVM input was open, but should have been closed, when the associated Safety Output was commanded On:<br>• The AVM may be disconnected; check the wiring to the AVM |
| 3.10 | Internal Fault | - | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381) |

Continued on page 373


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 372

| Fault Code | Displayed Message | Additional Message | Steps to resolve |
|---|---|---|---|
| 4.x | - | - | See the following table. |
| 5.1 – 5.3 | Internal Fault | - | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381) |
| 6.xx | Internal Fault | - | Invalid configuration data. Possible internal failure:<br>• Try writing a new configuration to the Safety Controller |
| 7.1 | Press Control Fault | Check TOS and BOS | TOS and BOS inputs on at the same time<br>• Check for shorts on the TOS and BOS inputs<br>• Check for functional issues with the TOS and BOS devices |
| 7.2 | Press Control Fault | Check TOS and SQS | TOS and SQS inputs on at the same time<br>• Check for shorts on the TOS and SQS inputs<br>• Check for functional issues with the TOS and SQS devices |
| 7.3 | Press Control Fault | Check TOS and PCMS | TOS and PCMS inputs on at the same time<br>• Check for shorts on the TOS and PCMS inputs<br>• Check for functional issues with the TOS and PCMS devices |
| 7.4 | Press Control Fault | Check SQS and BOS | SQS to BOS sequencing error (BOS came on before SQS)<br>• Check wiring of SQS and BOS sensors<br>• Check for placement and functional issues of SQS and BOS sensors |
| 7.5 | Press Control Fault | Check TOS | TOS Timeout error (On automatic upstroke, the internal 30 second time limit was exceeded)<br>• Check the wiring of the TOS system<br>• Check for placement and functional issues of the TOS sensor |
| 7.6 | Press Control Fault | Check BOS | BOS Timeout error (On automatic downstroke, the internal 30 second time limit was exceeded)<br>• Check the wiring of the BOS system<br>• Check for placement and functional issues of the BOS sensor |
| 7.7 | Press Control Fault | Check Mode Selection Inputs | Mode Selection Error (more than one mode selection input on at the same time<br>• Check the wiring from the mode state inputs<br>• Check the Mode selection switch for faults |
| 7.8 | Press Control Fault | - | Index Error (Internal Configuration Error)<br>Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381) |
| 7.9 | Press Control Fault | Check Foot Switch Input | Foot switch Error (when configured with a SQS, the Ft Switch input node came on instead of the GO input node)<br>• Sequencing error<br>• If it persists check wiring of THC and Foot Switch inputs |
| 7.10 | Press Control Fault | Check Down Cylinder | Down AVM Error (Down AVM is in wrong state when compared to expected state)<br>• Check Down AVM wiring<br>• Check Down AVM sensor and Down Stroke system |
| 7.11 | Press Control Fault | Check Up Cylinder | Up AVM Error (Up AVM is in wrong state when compared to expected state)<br>• Check Up AVM wiring<br>• Check Up AVM sensor and Up Stroke system |
| 7.12 | Press Control Fault | Check High Cylinder | High AVM Error (High AVM is in wrong state when compared to expected state)<br>• Check High AVM wiring<br>• Check High AVM sensor and High Stroke system |
| 7.13 | Press Control Fault | Check Low Cylinder | Low AVM Error (Low AVM is in wrong state when compared to expected state)<br>• Check Low AVM wiring<br>• Check Low AVM sensor and Low Stroke system |
| 7.14 | Press Control Fault | SQS to PCMS Simultaneity | SQS to PCMS simultaneity error (3 second time limit between inputs exceeded)<br>• Check wiring of SQS and PCMS<br>• Check placement of SQS and PCMS with considerations to ram speed |

Continued on page 374


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 373

| Fault Code | Displayed Message | Additional Message | Steps to resolve |
|---|---|---|---|
| 7.15 | Press Control Fault | Check SQS State | SQS State error (SQS state level not as expected during the press cycle)<br>• Check wiring of the SQS input<br>• Check the placement of the SQS sensor and its functionality |
| 7.16 | Press Control Fault | Check PCMS State | PCMS State error (PCMS state level not as expected during the press cycle)<br>• Check wiring of the PCMS input<br>• Check the placement of the PCMS sensor and its functionality |
| 7.17 | Press Control Fault | Check TOS State | TOS State error (TOS state level not as expected during the press cycle)<br>• Check wiring of the TOS input<br>• Check the placement of the TOS sensor and its functionality |
| 7.18 | Press Control Fault | Check BOS State | BOS State error (BOS state level not as expected during the press cycle)<br>• Check wiring of the BOS input<br>• Check the placement of the BOS sensor and its functionality |
| 10.xx | Internal Fault | - | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381) |

For fault codes 4.x, check the fault log for additional faults to determine the specific module in which the original fault occurred.

| Fault Code | Displayed Message | Additional Message | Steps to resolve |
|---|---|---|---|
| 4.1 | Supply Voltage Low | Check the power supply | The supply voltage dropped below the rated voltage for longer than 6 ms:<br>• Check the power supply voltage and current rating<br>• Check for an overload on the outputs that might cause the power supply to limit the current |
| 4.2 | Internal Fault | | A configuration parameter has become corrupt. To fix the configuration:<br>• Replace the configuration by using a backup copy of the configuration<br>• Recreate the configuration using the Software and write it to the Safety Controller |
| 4.3 – 4.11 | Internal Fault | - | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 4.12 | Configuration Timeout | Check Configuration | The Safety Controller was left in Configuration mode for more than one hour without pressing any keys.<br>• Cycle the power<br>• Perform a System Reset |
| 4.13 | Configuration Timeout | Check Configuration | The Safety Controller was left in Configuration mode for more than one hour without receiving any commands from the Software.<br>• Cycle the power<br>• Perform a System Reset |
| 4.14 | Configuration Unconfirmed | Confirm Configuration | The configuration was not confirmed after being edited:<br>• Confirm configuration using the Software |
| 4.15 – 4.19 | Internal Fault | - | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 4.20 | Unassigned Terminal in Use | Check Terminal xx | This terminal is not mapped to any device in the present configuration and should not be active:<br>• Check the wiring |
| 4.21 – 4.34 | Internal Fault | - | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 4.35 | Overtemperature | - | An internal overtemperature condition has occurred. Verify that the ambient and output loading conditions meet the specifications of the Safety Controller. |
| 4.36 – 4.39 | Internal Fault | - | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |

Continued on page 375


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 374

| Fault Code | Displayed Message | Additional Message | Steps to resolve |
|---|---|---|---|
| 4.40 – 4.41 | Module Communication Failure | Check module power | An output expansion module lost contact with the Base Controller. |
| 4.42 | Module Mismatch | - | The module or modules detected do not match the Safety Controller configuration. |
| 4.43 | Module Communication Failure | Check module power | An expansion module lost contact with the Base Controller. |
| 4.44 – 4.45 | Internal Fault | - | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 4.46 – 4.47 | Internal Fault | - | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 4.48 | Unused output | Check output wiring | A voltage was detected on an unconfirmed terminal. |
| 4.49 – 4.55 | Internal Fault | - | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 4.56 | Display Comm Failure | - | Display (Onboard Interface) Communication Failure:<br>• Cycle power to the Safety Controller. If fault code persists, contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381 |
| 4.57 – 4.59 | Internal Fault | - | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 4.60 | Output Fault | Check for shorts | An output terminal detected a short. Check output fault for details. |
| 4.61 | Config Mismatch | - | A feature (for example, ISD inputs, virtual inputs, expansion modules) contained in the loaded configuration is not supported by this controller model. The configuration is now confirmed and can be saved as a confirmed configuration and/or written to an SC-XM2/3. The configuration will not run on this model.<br>• Remove the features not supported by this model<br>• Load the configuration on a model that supports the selected features |

## 16.12.2 SC10-2 Fault Code Table

The following table lists the Safety Controller Fault Code, the message that displays, any additional messages, as well as the steps to resolve the fault.

The Error Code and the Advanced Error Code, taken together, form the Safety Controller Fault Code. The format for the Fault Code is `Error Code 'dot' Advanced Error Code`. For example, a Safety Controller Fault Code of 2.1 is represented by an Error Code of `2` and an Advanced Error Code of `1`. The Error Message Index value is the Error Code and the Advanced Error Code together, and includes a leading zero with the Advanced Error Code, if necessary. For example, a Safety Controller Fault Code of 2.1 is represented by an Error Message Index of `201`. The Error Message Index value is a convenient way to get the complete Fault Code while only reading a single 16-bit register.

**NOTE:** An error code of 1.1 is different from an error code of 1.10 (the zero is significant).

| Fault Code | Fault Code Description | Steps to resolve |
|---|---|---|
| 1.1 – 1.2 | Output Fault | Replace the Safety Controller |
| 1.3 – 1.8 | Internal Fault | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381) |
| 1.9 | Output Fault | Replace the Safety Controller |
| 1.10 | Output Fault | Sequence timing error:<br>• Perform a System Reset to clear the fault |
| 2.1 | Concurrency Fault | On a dual-channel input, or a complementary input, with both inputs in the Run state, one input went to the Stop state then back to Run.<br>On a dual-complementary input, with both pairs of inputs in the Run state, one pair of inputs went to the Stop state then back to Run.<br>• Check the wiring<br>• Check the input signals<br>• Consider adjusting the debounce times<br>• Cycle input |

Continued on page 376


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 375

| Fault Code | Fault Code Description | Steps to resolve |
|---|---|---|
| 2.2 | Simultaneity Fault | On a dual-channel input, or a complementary input, one input went into the Run state but the other input did not follow the change within 3 seconds.<br>On a dual-complementary input, one pair of inputs went into the Run state but the other pair of inputs did not follow the change within 3 seconds.<br>• Check the wiring<br>• Check the input signal timing<br>• Cycle input |
| 2.3 or 2.5 | Concurrency Fault | On a dual-complementary input, with both inputs of one complementary pair in the Run state, one input of this complementary pair changed to Stop then back to Run.:<br>• Check the wiring<br>• Check the input signals<br>• Check the power supply providing input signals<br>• Consider adjusting the debounce times<br>• Cycle input |
| 2.4 or 2.6 | Simultaneity Fault | On a dual-complementary input, one input of a complementary pair went into the Run state, but the other input of the same complementary pair did not follow the change within the time limit:<br>• Check the wiring<br>• Check the input signal timing<br>• Cycle input |
| 2.7 | Internal Fault | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381) |
| 2.8 – 2.9 | Input Fault | Input stuck high:<br>• Check for shorts to other inputs or other voltage sources<br>• Check the input device compatibility<br>• Check for miss wired terminals (output terminal wired to wrong input terminal) |
| 2.10 | Input Fault | • Check for a short between inputs |
| 2.11 – 2.12 | Input Fault | • Check for a short to ground |
| 2.13 | Input Fault | Input stuck low<br>• Check for a short to ground |
| 2.14 | Input Fault | Missing test pulses:<br>• Check for a short to other inputs or other voltage sources |
| 2.15 | Open Lead | • Check for an open lead |
| 2.16 – 2.18 | Input Fault | Missing test pulses:<br>• Check for a short to other inputs or other voltage sources |
| 2.19 | Open Lead | • Check for an open lead |
| 2.20 | Input Fault | Missing test pulses:<br>• Check for a short to ground |
| 2.21 | Open Lead | • Check for an open lead |
| 2.22 – 2.23 | Input Fault | • Check for an unstable signal on the input |
| 2.24 | Input Activated While Bypassed | A Two-Hand Control input was activated (turned On) while it was bypassed. |
| 2.25 | Input Fault | After the associated Safety Output turned Off, the AVM input did not close before its AVM monitoring time expired:<br>• The AVM may be disconnected; check the wiring to the AVM<br>• Either the AVM is disconnected, or its response to the Safety Output turning Off is too slow<br>• Check the wiring to the AVM<br>• Check the timing setting; increase the setting if necessary<br>• Contact Banner Engineering Corp. |

Continued on page 377


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 376

| Fault Code | Fault Code Description | Steps to resolve |
|---|---|---|
| 2.26 | Input Fault | The AVM input was open, but should have been closed, when the associated Safety Output was commanded On:<br>• The AVM may be disconnected; check the wiring to the AVM |
| 3.1 | EDMxx Fault | EDM contact opened prior to turning On the Safety Outputs:<br>• Check for a stuck On contactor or relay<br>• Check for an open wire |
| 3.2 | EDMxx Fault | EDM contact(s) failed to close within 250 ms after the Safety Outputs turned Off:<br>• Check for a slow or stuck On contactor or relay<br>• Check for an open wire |
| 3.4 | EDMxx Fault | EDM contact pair mismatched for longer than 250 ms:<br>• Check for a slow or stuck On contactor or relay<br>• Check for an open wire |
| 3.5 | EDMxx Fault | • Check for an unstable signal on the input |
| 3.6 | EDMxx Fault | • Check for a short to ground |
| 3.7 | EDMxx Fault | • Check for a short between inputs |
| 3.8 | AVMxx Fault | After this Safety Output turned Off, an AVM input associated with this output did not close before its AVM monitoring time expired:<br>• The AVM may be disconnected or its response to the Safety Output turning Off may be too slow<br>• Check the AVM input and then perform a System Reset to clear the fault |
| 3.9 | Input Fault | The AVM input was open, but should have been closed, when the associated Safety Output was commanded On:<br>• The AVM may be disconnected; check the wiring to the AVM |
| 3.10 | Internal Fault | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 4.1 | Supply Voltage Low | The supply voltage dropped below the rated voltage for longer than 6 ms:<br>• Check the power supply voltage and current rating<br>• Check for an overload on the outputs that might cause the power supply to limit the current |
| 4.2 | Internal Fault | A configuration parameter has become corrupt. To fix the configuration:<br>• Replace the configuration by using a backup copy of the configuration<br>• Recreate the configuration using the Software and write it to the Safety Controller |
| 4.3 – 4.12 | Internal Fault | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 4.13 | Configuration Timeout | The Safety Controller was left in Configuration mode for more than one hour without receiving any commands from the Software.<br>• Cycle the power<br>• Perform a System Reset |
| 4.14 | Configuration Unconfirmed | The configuration was not confirmed after being edited:<br>• Confirm configuration using the Software |
| 4.15 – 4.19 | Internal Fault | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 4.20 | Unassigned Terminal in Use | This terminal is not mapped to any device in the present configuration and should not be active:<br>• Check the wiring |
| 4.21 – 4.34 | Internal Fault | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 4.35 | Overtemperature | An internal overtemperature condition has occurred. Verify that the ambient and output loading conditions meet the specifications of the Safety Controller. |
| 4.36 – 4.47 | Internal Fault | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 4.48 | Unused output | A voltage was detected on an unconfirmed terminal. |

Continued on page 378


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Continued from page 377

| Fault Code | Fault Code Description | Steps to resolve |
|---|---|---|
| 4.49 – 4.59 | Internal Fault | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 4.60 | Output Fault | An output terminal detected a short. Check output fault for details. |
| 5.1 – 5.3 | Internal Fault | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |
| 6.xx | Internal Fault | Invalid configuration data. Possible internal failure:<br>• Try writing a new configuration to the Safety Controller |
| 10.xx | Internal Fault | Internal failure—Contact Banner Engineering Corp. (see "Repairs and Warranty Service" on page 381). |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

17.1 Replacement Parts and Accessories ..... 379
17.2 Ethernet Cordsets ..... 379
17.3 Interface Modules ..... 379

# Chapter 17 Components and Accessories

## 17.1 Replacement Parts and Accessories

| Model | Description | Applicable Product |
|---|---|---|
| **SC-USB2** | USB cable | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| **SC-XMP2** | Programming tool for SC-XM2/3 | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| **DIN-SC** | DIN End Clamp | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| **SC-XM2** | External memory drive for the XS/SC26 | XS/SC26 |
| **SC-XM3** | External memory drive for the SC10-2 | XS/SC26, SC10-2 |
| **XS/SC-TS2** | Screw terminal blocks controller | XS/SC26 |
| **SC-TS3** | Screw terminal blocks expansion module | XS/SC26 |
| **XS/SC-TC2** | Spring cage terminal blocks controller | XS/SC26 |
| **SC-TC3** | Spring cage terminal blocks expansion module | XS/SC26 |

## 17.2 Ethernet Cordsets

| Cat5e Shielded Cordsets | Cat5e Crossover Shielded Cordsets | Length |
|---|---|---|
| **STP07** | **STPX07** | 2.1 m (7 ft) |
| **STP25** | **STPX25** | 7.62 m (25 ft) |
| **STP50** | **STPX50** | 15.2 m (50 ft) |
| **STP75** | **STPX75** | 22.9 m (75 ft) |

## 17.3 Interface Modules

See datasheet p/n 62822 and p/n 208873 and "EDM and FSD Wiring" on page 76 for more information.

| Model | Input Voltage | Inputs | Safety Outputs | Aux. Outputs | Output Rating | EDM Contacts |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **IM-T-9A** | 24 V dc | 2 (dual-channel hookup) | 3 N.O. | — | 6 amps | 2 N.C. |
| **IM-T-11A** | | | 2 N.O. | 1 N.C. | | |
| **SR-IM-9A** | | | 3 N.O. | — | See datasheet for specifications | |
| **SR-IM-11A** | | | 2 N.O. | 1 N.C. | | |

### 17.3.1 Mechanically Linked Contactors

Mechanically Linked Contactors provide an additional 10 or 18 amp carrying capability to any safety system.

If used, two contactors per Safety Output pair are required for Category 4. A single output signal switching device (OSSD) output with 2 contactors can achieve Category 3. The N.C. contacts are to be used in an external device monitoring (EDM) circuit.

See "EDM and FSD Wiring" on page 76 for more information.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

| Model | Supply Voltage | Inputs | Outputs | Output Rating |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 11-BG00-31-D-024 | 24 V dc | 2 (dual-channel hookup) | 3 N.O. and 1 N.C. | 10 amps |
| BF1801L-024 | | | | 18 amps |


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

18.1 Cleaning ..... 381
18.2 Repairs and Warranty Service ..... 381
18.3 Contact Us ..... 381
18.4 Banner Engineering Corp Limited Warranty ..... 381
18.5 Banner Engineering Corp. Software Copyright Notice ..... 382

# Chapter 18 Product Support and Maintenance

## 18.1 Cleaning

1. **Disconnect power to the Safety Controller.**
2. Wipe down the polycarbonate enclosure and the display (models with display) with a soft cloth that has been dampened with a mild detergent and warm water solution.

## 18.2 Repairs and Warranty Service

Contact Banner Engineering for troubleshooting of this device. **Do not attempt any repairs to this Banner device; it contains no field-replaceable parts or components.** If the device, device part, or device component is determined to be defective by a Banner Applications Engineer, they will advise you of Banner's RMA (Return Merchandise Authorization) procedure.

> **IMPORTANT:** If instructed to return the device, pack it with care. Damage that occurs in return shipping is not covered by warranty.

To assist Banner Engineering Corp. with troubleshooting a problem, while the PC is connected to the Safety Controller, go to **Help** in the software and click **Support Information**. Click **Save Controller Diagnostics** to generate a file that contains status information. This information may be helpful to the support team at Banner. Send the file to Banner according to the instructions provided on screen.

## 18.3 Contact Us

Banner Engineering Corp. headquarters is located at: 9714 Tenth Avenue North | Plymouth, MN 55441, USA | Phone: + 1 888 373 6767

For worldwide locations and local representatives, visit www.bannerengineering.com.

## 18.4 Banner Engineering Corp Limited Warranty

Banner Engineering Corp. warrants its products to be free from defects in material and workmanship for one year following the date of shipment. Banner Engineering Corp. will repair or replace, free of charge, any product of its manufacture which, at the time it is returned to the factory, is found to have been defective during the warranty period. This warranty does not cover damage or liability for misuse, abuse, or the improper application or installation of the Banner product.

**THIS LIMITED WARRANTY IS EXCLUSIVE AND IN LIEU OF ALL OTHER WARRANTIES WHETHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTY OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE), AND WHETHER ARISING UNDER COURSE OF PERFORMANCE, COURSE OF DEALING OR TRADE USAGE.**

This Warranty is exclusive and limited to repair or, at the discretion of Banner Engineering Corp., replacement. **IN NO EVENT SHALL BANNER ENGINEERING CORP. BE LIABLE TO BUYER OR ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY FOR ANY EXTRA COSTS, EXPENSES, LOSSES, LOSS OF PROFITS, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR SPECIAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM ANY PRODUCT DEFECT OR FROM THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PRODUCT, WHETHER ARISING IN CONTRACT OR WARRANTY, STATUTE, TORT, STRICT LIABILITY, NEGLIGENCE, OR OTHERWISE.**

Banner Engineering Corp. reserves the right to change, modify or improve the design of the product without assuming any obligations or liabilities relating to any product previously manufactured by Banner Engineering Corp. Any misuse, abuse, or improper application or installation of this product or use of the product for personal protection applications when the product is identified as not intended for such purposes will void the product warranty. Any modifications to this product without prior express approval by Banner Engineering Corp will void the product warranties. All specifications published in this document are subject to change; Banner reserves the right to modify product specifications or update documentation at any time. Specifications and product information in English supersede that which is provided in any other language. For the most recent version of any documentation, refer to: www.bannerengineering.com.

For patent information, see www.bannerengineering.com/patents.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# 18.5 Banner Engineering Corp. Software Copyright Notice

© Banner Engineering Corp., All Rights Reserved.

https://www.bannerengineering.com/us/en/company/terms-and-conditions.html

**Disclaimer of Warranties**. This software is provided "AS-IS." To the maximum extent permitted by applicable law, Banner, it affiliates, and its channel partners disclaim all warranties, expressed or implied, including any warranty that the software is fit for a particular purpose, title, merchantability, data loss, non-interference with or non-infringement of any intellectual property rights, or the accuracy, reliability, quality or content in or linked to the services. Banner and its affiliates and channel partners do not warrant that the services are secure, free from bugs, viruses, interruption, errors, theft or destruction. If the exclusions for implied warranties do not apply to you, any implied warranties are limited to 60 days from the date of first use of this software.

**Limitation of Liability and Indemnity**. Banner, its affiliates and channel partners are not liable for indirect, special, incidental, punitive or consequential damages, damages relating to corruption, security, loss or theft of data, viruses, spyware, loss of business, revenue, profits, or investment, or use of software or hardware that does not meet Banner minimum systems requirements. The above limitations apply even if Banner and its affiliates and channel partners have been advised of the possibility of such damages. This Agreement sets forth the entire liability of Banner, its affiliates and your exclusive remedy with respect to the software use.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

Chapter Contents

19.1 Applicable US Standards ..... 383
19.2 Applicable OSHA Regulations ..... 384
19.3 Applicable European and International Standards ..... 384

# Chapter 19 Standards and Regulations

*The list of standards below is included as a convenience for users of this Banner device. Inclusion of the standards below does not imply that the device complies specifically with any standard, other than those specified in the Specifications section of this manual.*

## 19.1 Applicable US Standards

ANSI B11.0 Safety of Machinery

ANSI B11.1 Mechanical Power Presses

ANSI B11.2 Hydraulic Power Presses

ANSI B11.3 Power Press Brakes

ANSI B11.4 Shears

ANSI B11.5 Iron Workers

ANSI B11.6 Lathes

ANSI B11.7 Cold Headers and Cold Formers

ANSI B11.8 Drilling, Milling, and Boring

ANSI B11.9 Grinding Machines

ANSI B11.10 Metal Sawing Machines

ANSI B11.11 Gear Cutting Machines

ANSI B11.12 Roll Forming and Roll Bending Machines

ANSI B11.13 Single- and Multiple-Spindle Automatic Bar and Chucking Machines

ANSI B11.14 Coil Slitting Machines

ANSI B11.15 Pipe, Tube, and Shape Bending Machines

ANSI B11.16 Metal Powder Compacting Presses

ANSI B11.17 Horizontal Extrusion Presses

ANSI B11.18 Machinery and Machine Systems for the Processing of Coiled Strip, Sheet, and Plate

ANSI B11.19 Performance Requirements for Risk Reduction Measures: Safeguarding and Other Means of Reducing Risk

ANSI B11.20 Manufacturing Systems

ANSI B11.21 Machine Tools Using Lasers

ANSI B11.22 Numerically Controlled Turning Machines

ANSI B11.23 Machining Centers

ANSI B11.24 Transfer Machines

ANSI/RIA R15.06 Safety Requirements for Industrial Robots and Robot Systems


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.

NFPA 79 Electrical Standard for Industrial Machinery

ANSI/PMMI B155.1 Package Machinery and Packaging-Related Converting Machinery — Safety Requirements

## 19.2 Applicable OSHA Regulations

OSHA Documents listed are part of: Code of Federal Regulations Title 29, Parts 1900 to 1910

OSHA 29 CFR 1910.212 General Requirements for (Guarding of) All Machines

OSHA 29 CFR 1910.147 The Control of Hazardous Energy (lockout/tagout)

OSHA 29 CFR 1910.217 (Guarding of) Mechanical Power Presses

## 19.3 Applicable European and International Standards

ISO 12100 Safety of Machinery – General Principles for Design – Risk Assessment and Risk Reduction

ISO 13857 Safety of Machinery – Safety Distances to Prevent Hazard Zones Being Reached

ISO 13850 (EN 418) Emergency Stop Devices, Functional Aspects – Principles for Design

ISO 13851 Two-Hand Control Devices – Principles for Design and Selection

IEC 62061 Safety of Machinery – Functional Safety of Safety-Related Control Systems

ISO 13849-1 Safety of Machinery – Safety-Related Parts of Control Systems – Part 1: General Principles for Design

EN 13855 (EN 999) The Positioning of Protective Equipment in Respect to Approach Speeds of Parts of the Human Body

ISO 14119 (EN 1088) Interlocking Devices Associated with Guards – Principles for Design and Selection

EN 60204-1 Electrical Equipment of Machines Part 1: General Requirements

IEC 61496 Electro-sensitive Protection Equipment

IEC 60529 Degrees of Protection Provided by Enclosures

IEC 60947-1 Low Voltage Switchgear – General Rules

IEC 60947-5-1 Low Voltage Switchgear – Electromechanical Control Circuit Devices

IEC 60947-5-5 Low Voltage Switchgear – Electrical Emergency Stop Device with Mechanical Latching Function

IEC 61508 Functional Safety of Electrical/Electronic/Programmable Electronic Safety-Related Systems

IEC 62046 Safety of Machinery – Applications of Protective Equipment to Detect the Presence of Persons

ISO 16092-1 Machine Toll Safety – Presses, Part 1 Generic Safety Requirements

ISO 16092-3 Machine Tool Safety – Presses, Part 3 Safety Requirements for Hydraulic Presses

ISO 16092-4 Machine Tool Safety – Presses, Part 4 Safety Requirements for Pneumatic Presses

ISO 4413 Hydraulic Fluid Power – General Rules and Safety Requirements for Systems and their Components

ISO 4414 Pneumatic Fluid Power – General Rules and Safety Requirements for Systems and their Components


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.

# Index


## A

automatic terminal optimization 23, 17, 348, 350
ATO 23, 17, 348, 350
adjustable valve monitoring 52
AVM 52
abbreviations 116
AND 123
add
  status output 92
  safety input 89
  input 89
assembly objects 139
available 110
auto configure 132
Analog to digital conversion 329
ADC 329
AutoDetect ISD 346
accessories
  XS/SC26 379
  SC10-2 379

## B

bypass switch 51
bypass block 158
bypass 173, 336
Byte 195
bidirectional muting 335

## C

closed-to-open debounce time 39
cycle initiation 59
cable pull 42
configuration 94, 88, 93
configuration
  sample 97
  mode 188
  summary 188
confirming a configuration 94
controller name 135
common wire 72
Configuration Summary tab 140
CSV 138, 196
cancel delay 65, 336
Cyclic Redundancy Check 65, 299
CRC 65, 299
control logic 93
configuration log 146
controller data
  read 144
  view 144
  display 144
configuration mode 190
commissioning checkout 333, 332, 333
checkout 333, 333
controlling inputs 336
cleaning 381

## D

debounce time 39
dimensions 30
delay
  block 159
  cancel 65
  cancel 336
disabled 110
device not found 110
display controller data 144
data model 290, 319
DAP 290
Device Access Point 290
DWORD 195
display contrast 188
daily checkout 332
defaults 363
driver installation
  verifying 367
diagnostics
  save safety controller 381

## E

expansion modules 15
expansion modules
  XS/SC26 13
electrical installation 33
Ethernet 11
enabling device 43, 337, 338
edge, safety 47
emergency stop button 41
E-stop button 41, 334
Equipment tab 121
enabling device block 161
external device monitoring 76
EDM 76
EtherNet/IP™ 196



© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

EtherCAT slave information 319
ESI 319
ESI
install 327
EtherCAT 318
error codes 365

## F

functional stops 16
FID 21, 21, 14
function blocks 11, 126, 158
field bus tab 136
foot switch 61
function block
bypass 158
delay 159
enabling device 161
muting 165
latch reset 162
two-hand control 186
two-hand control 183
press control 176
one shot 174
field bus interface 136
Functional View tab 122
fault log 146
fault diagnostics 188, 370
factory defaults 363
faults 370
fault codes
XS/SC26 370
SC10-2 375

## G

guard, interlocked 43
gate, interlocked 43
General Station Description 289
GSD 289
GSD
Install 304

## H

Hex 195

## I

installation
electrical 33
ISD system status 54
interlocked guard 43
interlocked gate 43
ISD 53, 22, 138
input device
safety 36
interface
PC 10
PC 115
onboard 188
onboard 345
in-series diagnostic 22
ISD device-specific data 55, 230, 272, 286, 301
internal logic 11
ISD tab 128
input devices
non-safety 62
Industrial Ethernet tab 132
IP address 193
indicator
status 342
status 342
status 343
status 343
status 340

## J

jog output 337
jog 338

## L

logic blocks 11, 123
lockout 159, 346, 345
Ladder Logic tab 128
labels file 138
L5X 138, 198, 196
language
selection of 117
log
configuration 146
fault 146
live mode 147, 345, 364
latch reset block 162
latch reset 337
LED 342, 342, 343, 343, 340
LED status 342, 342, 343, 343, 340

## M

models
XS/SC26 13
SC10-2 20
mounting the safety controller 32
muting sensor 50


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

minimum distance
safety mat 48
two-hand control 46
mat, safety 47
module information 147
muting block 165
mute 335
mute
sensor 60
time limit 173
enable 172
time limit 335
bypass 336
manually connected 110
mute lamp output 173
ME 172
Modbus TCP 259
model # 188
muting 335
muting
bidirectional 335
unidirectional 335
one way 335
mute-dependent override 335
mode
live 345

## N

new project 119
NAND 123
NOR 123
NOT 123
Network Access tab 135
name
controller 135
network settings 132, 134, 134
network settings
Modbus TCP, Ethernet/IP, PCCC 136
EtherCAT 138
PROFINET 137
non-safety input devices 62
new configuration 93
network connected 110

## O

open-to-close debounce time 39
optical sensor 44, 334
operating conditions 27
OR 123
output
functionality 85
mute lamp 173
Octet 195
onboard interface 188, 345
onboard interface contrast 188
one shot block 174
one way muting 335
override
mute-dependent 335
off-delay 336, 336, 336, 337

## P

PC requirements 31
protective stop 43, 334
press control 59, 85, 100
password 12, 143, 142
password manager 12, 143, 142
PIN 12, 143, 142
protective stop circuits 78
project settings 120, 119
print 141
printing configuration 141
PCL tags 138
press control mute sensor 60
PCCC 274
PROFINET 289
press control block 176
PDO menu 328
PDO
turn off 328
turn on 329
periodic checkout 332
PLCopenXML 319

## R

rope pull 42, 334
RS Flip-Flop 123
RCD 65
restart 110
retrieve current controller information 144
read controller data 144
replacement parts
XS/SC26 379
SC10-2 379
repairs 381

## S

specifications
XS/SC26 24
SC10-2 27


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

SC-USB2 11
SC-XM2 11, 12, 354, 356, 356, 361, 357
SC-XM3 11, 12, 354, 356, 356, 361, 361, 357
Software 32, 10, 115, 117
safety relay outputs 22
safety circuit integrity levels 41
safety stop 43
switch
  bypass 51
safety input device 36
status outputs 92, 83
status outputs
  XS/SC26 16
  SC10-2 22
  virtual 86
safety distance
  safety mat 48
  two-hand control 46
SC-XMP2 programming tool 12
safety mat 47, 334
safety edge 47
safety outputs 16, 68
save
  configuration 94
  project 94
  safety controller diagnostics 381
safety stop circuits 78
shortcut 114
settings 119
settings
  project 120
  network 134
  network 134
sample configuration 97, 100, 97
SR Flip-Flop 123
status output 83, 84
SQS 59
sequential stop 59
safety controller data
  display 144
simulation mode 150
Simulation Mode tab 150
String 195
system status 188
set
  display contrast 188
  onboard interface contrast 188
status bits 322
safety input device operation 334
safety output
  off-delay 336
  off-delay 336
  off-delay 336
  off-delay 337
status indicator 342, 342, 343, 343, 340
system reset 345
secondary output 338
system checkout 332
semi-annual checkout 332
startup configuration 333

## T

test pulse 23, 348
two-hand control 44, 334, 335
two-hand control
  without muting 334
  with muting 335
THC 44
tab
  field bus 136
  Network Access 135
  ISD 128
  Equipment 121
  Wiring Diagram 126
  Ladder Logic 128
  Configuration Summary 140
  Functional View 122
  Industrial Ethernet 132
  Live Mode 147
  Simulation Mode 150
tagoug 159
tags
  PLC 138
time limit
  mute 173
  mute 335
two-hand control block 186, 183
two-way muting 335

## U

USB 11
USB connected 110
UINT 195
UDINT 195
unidirectional muting 335

## V

virtual status outputs 86
virtual status outputs
  XS/SC26 16
  SC10-2 22


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

virtual non-safety input devices 65
virtual manual reset 65
view controller data 144
verifying driver installation 367

## W

Wiring Diagram tab 126
Word 195
warranty 381

## X

XM2 12
XM3 12
XOR 123
XML file 138
XML 290


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

# Glossary

### automatic reset

An automatic reset is the safety input device control operation setting where the assigned safety output automatically turns on when all of its associated input devices are in the Run state. No manual reset operation is required for the safety output to turn on when controlled only by safety input devices configured for automatic reset. When automatic reset is selected, the input device may be said to be configured to run in auto start/restart mode.

### change of state

A change of state (COS) is when an input signal switches from Run-to-Stop or Stop-to-Run state. Dual-channel input signals, have two possible configurable COS settings describe the signal disparity limits that can exist between channels before a fault condition is registered: simultaneous and concurrent. If simultaneity is a requirement or a concern for the application, users must ensure they made the correct selection during configuration.

### closed-open debounce time

The closed-open debounce time is the time it takes to bridge a jittery input signal or bouncing of the input contacts to prevent nuisance tripping of the controller. Adjustable from 6 ms to 100 ms. The default value is 6 ms (50 ms for mute sensors). A longer closed-open debounce time also affects and increases the response time of the system and/or the machine response time.

### concurrent

Concurrent is the setting that permits an indefinite signal disparity between channels, without going into a fault condition. A fault condition is created if the Stop signal changes back to a Run signal before its allied signal changes to the Stop state. Both signals must change from the STOP state to the RUN state before the dual-channel device is considered to be in the RUN state.

### Designated Person

A Designated Person is a person or persons identified and designated in writing, by the employer, as being appropriately trained and qualified to perform a specified checkout procedure.

### dual-channel

A dual-channel device or configuration has redundant signal lines for each safety input or safety output.

### external device monitoring

External device monitoring (EDM) is a means by which a safety device (such as a safety light curtain) actively monitors the state (or status) of external devices that may be controlled by the safety device. A lockout of the safety device will result if an unsafe state is detected in the external device. External device(s) may include, but are not limited to: MPCEs, captive contact relays/contactors, and safety modules.

### fault

A fault is a state of a device characterized by the inability to perform a required function, excluding the inability during preventive maintenance or other planned actions, or due to lack of external resources. A fault is often the result of a failure of the device itself, but may exist without prior failure.

### final switching device

A final switching device (FSD) is the component of the machine's safety-related control system that interrupts the circuit to the machine primary control element (MPCE) when the output signal switching device (OSSD) goes to the OFF-state.

### In-Series Diagnostics

The In-Series Diagnostics (ISD) communication protocol provides performance and status information from each device in a chain to the PLC and/or HMI. Notification is sent for the opening or closing of a door, mismatched or misaligned sensors and actuators, and a range of additional system health attributes.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com

### machine primary control element

A machine primary control element (MPCE) is an electrically powered element, external to the safety system, that directly controls the machine's normal operating motion in such a way that the element is last (in time) to operate when the machine motion is either initiated or arrested.

### manual reset

A manual reset is the safety input device control operation setting where the assigned safety output turns on only after a manual reset is performed and if the other associated input devices are in their run state. When manual reset is selected, the input device may be said to be configured to run in manual start/restart (latch) mode; meaning that the controlled output has latched to the off state and requires a manual reset to turn back on. This reset is sometimes called a manual latch reset.

### open-closed debounce time

The open-closed debounce time is the time it takes to bridge a jittery input signal or bouncing of the input contacts to prevent an unwanted start of the machine. Adjustable from 10 ms to 500 ms.

### Qualified Person

A Qualified Person is a person who, by possession of a recognized degree or certificate of professional training, or who, by extensive knowledge, training and experience, has successfully demonstrated the ability to solve problems relating to the subject matter and work.

### simultaneous (also simultaneity)

The simultaneous setting is a setting in which both channels must be off at the same time AND, when they turn back on, they must turn on within three seconds of each other. If both conditions are not satisfied, the input will be in a fault condition.

### single-channel

Single-channel refers to having only one signal line for a safety input or safety output.


© Banner Engineering Corp. All rights reserved.

LinkedIn

X (formerly Twitter)

Facebook



© 2025. All rights reserved.
www.bannerengineering.com